

**BitRock InstallBuilder User Guide 15**

---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction to InstallBuilder</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	What Sets InstallBuilder Apart . . . . .	1
1.2	What's New In InstallBuilder 15 . . . . .	1
1.3	Features . . . . .	2
1.4	Supported Platforms . . . . .	3
1.5	Requirements . . . . .	3
1.6	Editions . . . . .	4
1.7	The GUI . . . . .	4
1.8	The XML . . . . .	9
<b>2</b>	<b>Installation and Getting Started</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1	Installation . . . . .	12
2.1.1	Installing on Windows . . . . .	12
2.1.2	Installing on Unix . . . . .	17
2.1.3	Installing on Mac OS X . . . . .	18
2.2	Registering your Copy of InstallBuilder . . . . .	18
2.2.1	Specifying a License in the Command Line . . . . .	18
2.2.2	Windows-specific License Registration Details . . . . .	18
2.3	Directory Structure . . . . .	19
2.4	Building Your First Installer . . . . .	19
2.4.1	Startup and Basic Information . . . . .	19
2.4.2	Select the Files . . . . .	21
2.4.3	Add Logic to the Installer . . . . .	22
2.4.4	Add a license key page . . . . .	22
2.4.5	Customize the Installer . . . . .	25
2.4.6	Packaging the Installer . . . . .	28
2.4.7	CDROM Installers . . . . .	29
2.4.7.1	How are disks on multidisk installers detected . . . . .	30
2.5	Sample installers bundled with InstallBuilder . . . . .	31
2.5.1	Basic demo project . . . . .	32

---

2.5.2	Components, component groups and downloadable components . . . . .	32
2.5.3	Showcase of available parameters . . . . .	34
2.5.4	Actions and when they are executed . . . . .	51
2.5.5	Creating multiple components . . . . .	51
2.6	Additional Support Resources . . . . .	52
<b>3</b>	<b>Architecture</b>	<b>53</b>
3.1	Installer basics . . . . .	53
3.1.1	Structure of a Generic Installer . . . . .	53
3.1.2	Structure of a BitRock Installer . . . . .	53
<b>4</b>	<b>Variables</b>	<b>55</b>
4.1	Basic Syntax . . . . .	55
4.2	Modifier Suffixes . . . . .	56
4.3	Accessing Environment Variables . . . . .	57
4.4	Advanced syntax . . . . .	57
4.4.1	Project properties . . . . .	57
4.4.2	Components . . . . .	58
4.4.3	Parameters . . . . .	59
4.5	Accessing Language Strings . . . . .	62
4.6	Escaping Variables . . . . .	62
4.7	Nested Variables . . . . .	62
4.8	Built-in variables . . . . .	63
<b>5</b>	<b>Components</b>	<b>73</b>
5.1	Enabling and disabling components . . . . .	75
5.2	Component Action Lists . . . . .	81
5.2.1	Component Selection Validation Actions . . . . .	81
5.2.2	On Download Error Actions . . . . .	83
5.3	Adding files and directories . . . . .	83
5.4	Adding shortcuts to the components . . . . .	84
5.5	Adding components from external files . . . . .	86
5.6	Excluding components at build time . . . . .	87
5.7	Component Groups . . . . .	88
5.7.1	Installing in text mode . . . . .	91
5.8	Downloadable components . . . . .	92
5.8.1	How to create downloadable components . . . . .	92
5.8.2	Running the installers with downloadable components . . . . .	93
5.8.3	Handling errors . . . . .	97
5.8.4	Text mode and unattended installers . . . . .	97
5.9	Adding or removing components to existing installations . . . . .	98
5.9.1	Storing installation information . . . . .	98
5.9.2	Installing additional components . . . . .	98
5.9.3	Uninstalling components . . . . .	98

---

<b>6</b>	<b>Working with Files and Folders</b>	<b>101</b>
6.1	Conditionally Packing a Folder . . . . .	103
6.2	Conditionally Unpacking a Folder . . . . .	103
6.3	Filters . . . . .	104
6.3.1	Basic Filters . . . . .	104
6.3.2	Advanced Filters . . . . .	106
6.4	Unix Permissions . . . . .	110
6.5	Symbolic Links . . . . .	111
6.6	Unpacking Before Installation Time . . . . .	111
<b>7</b>	<b>User Input</b>	<b>116</b>
7.1	Parameters . . . . .	116
7.1.1	Configuring Parameters At Runtime . . . . .	118
7.1.2	Validating User Input . . . . .	119
7.1.3	Available Parameters . . . . .	121
7.1.4	Populating Choice parameters at Runtime . . . . .	131
7.1.5	Parameter Groups . . . . .	136
7.1.6	Dynamic Parameter Groups . . . . .	137
7.1.6.1	Boolean Parameter Group . . . . .	137
7.1.6.2	Choice Parameter Group . . . . .	140
7.1.6.3	Nesting . . . . .	142
7.1.7	Command Line Parameters . . . . .	143
7.1.8	Option Files . . . . .	145
<b>8</b>	<b>Actions</b>	<b>146</b>
8.1	What are Actions? . . . . .	146
8.1.1	Showing the Progress Text in Builder GUI . . . . .	147
8.2	Action Lists . . . . .	147
8.2.1	Building the Installer . . . . .	148
8.2.2	Help Menu . . . . .	149
8.2.3	Installation Process . . . . .	149
8.2.4	Uninstallation . . . . .	152
8.2.5	Special action lists . . . . .	152
8.2.6	Unattended mode, RPM and DEB packages . . . . .	152
8.2.7	Main Project and Components Execution Order . . . . .	153
8.3	Running External Programs . . . . .	155
8.3.1	Launching in the Background . . . . .	159
8.3.2	Opening Programs in OS X . . . . .	159
8.4	Displaying Progress While Executing Long Running Actions . . . . .	160

---

8.5	Creating Custom Actions . . . . .	162
8.5.1	Returning values from a custom action . . . . .	165
8.5.2	Current Limitations . . . . .	166
8.6	Error Handling . . . . .	167
8.6.1	Handling Action Errors . . . . .	167
8.6.2	Installation Aborted Action List . . . . .	170
8.6.3	When Does an Error Not Abort the Installation? . . . . .	170
8.6.4	Cleaning and Rollback Directory Restoration . . . . .	171
8.7	List of Available Actions . . . . .	171
<b>9</b>	<b>Rules</b>	<b>247</b>
9.1	What is a Rule? . . . . .	247
9.2	Rule List . . . . .	248
9.3	Should Pack Rule List . . . . .	250
9.4	Rule Groups . . . . .	251
9.5	Creating Custom Rules . . . . .	251
9.6	Additional Rule Lists . . . . .	255
9.7	List of Available Rules . . . . .	255
<b>10</b>	<b>User Interface</b>	<b>270</b>
10.1	Installation Modes . . . . .	270
10.1.1	Full Graphic Modes . . . . .	270
10.1.2	Text Mode: . . . . .	270
10.1.3	Unattended mode: . . . . .	271
10.1.4	Selecting the Execution Mode . . . . .	272
10.1.5	Detecting the Execution Mode . . . . .	273
10.2	Pages . . . . .	273
10.2.1	Custom Pages . . . . .	273
10.2.2	Built-in Pages . . . . .	277
10.2.2.1	Final Page options . . . . .	277
10.2.3	Controlling the Flow of the Pages . . . . .	279
10.3	Dialogs . . . . .	281
<b>11</b>	<b>Menus and Shortcuts</b>	<b>282</b>
11.1	Defining Shortcuts at Build Time . . . . .	282
11.2	Shortcut Folder Structure . . . . .	285
11.3	Creating Shortcuts on Demand at Runtime . . . . .	287
11.4	Shortcuts/Aliases on OS X . . . . .	287
11.5	Shortcuts on Linux . . . . .	287

---

<b>12</b>	<b>Installer Customization</b>	<b>289</b>
12.1	Languages . . . . .	289
12.1.1	Autodetecting the System Language . . . . .	292
12.2	Changing Built-in Installer Text Strings . . . . .	293
12.2.1	Adding New Localized Strings . . . . .	294
12.2.2	Component-Level Translations . . . . .	295
12.2.3	Displaying a Localized License and Readme . . . . .	295
12.3	Images . . . . .	299
12.3.1	Splash Screen . . . . .	299
12.3.2	Left and Top Images . . . . .	299
12.3.3	Windows specific images . . . . .	305
12.3.3.1	Windows Icons . . . . .	305
12.3.3.2	Other Windows images . . . . .	306
12.3.4	OS X Icons . . . . .	307
12.3.5	Other images . . . . .	308
12.3.5.1	Window Manager Image . . . . .	308
12.3.5.2	Slide Show Images . . . . .	308
12.3.5.3	Label Parameter Images . . . . .	309
12.3.5.4	Option Images . . . . .	310
12.3.6	Recommended Image Sizes . . . . .	311
<b>13</b>	<b>Running the Installer</b>	<b>312</b>
13.1	Requiring Administrator Privileges . . . . .	312
13.2	Multiple Instances of the Installer . . . . .	313
<b>14</b>	<b>Uninstaller</b>	<b>315</b>
14.1	Uninstaller Action Lists . . . . .	315
14.2	Marking Additional Files for Deletion . . . . .	316
14.3	Preventing Files from Being Deleted . . . . .	317
14.4	Interacting with the End User . . . . .	317
<b>15</b>	<b>Services</b>	<b>318</b>
15.1	Linux Services . . . . .	318
15.2	Windows Services . . . . .	319
15.2.1	Using regular binaries as Windows services . . . . .	321
15.3	OS X Services . . . . .	322
15.3.1	Adding an Application to the System Startup . . . . .	323

<b>16 Code Signing</b>	<b>326</b>
16.1 OS X . . . . .	326
16.1.1 Built-in signing code . . . . .	326
16.1.1.1 How to export your signing certificate as a PKCS#12 file . . . . .	327
16.1.2 Native codesign mode . . . . .	329
16.1.2.1 Configuring the resource rules . . . . .	330
16.1.2.2 Configuring the Keychain . . . . .	331
16.1.3 Validating the signature . . . . .	332
16.1.4 Signing an already-built installer . . . . .	333
16.2 Microsoft Windows . . . . .	334
16.2.1 Manually signing Windows Installers . . . . .	334
<b>17 File associations</b>	<b>336</b>
17.1 Windows file associations . . . . .	336
17.2 Linux file associations . . . . .	337
17.3 OS X file associations . . . . .	339
<b>18 Java</b>	<b>340</b>
18.1 Java Specific Actions . . . . .	340
18.2 Bundling a JRE . . . . .	343
18.3 Launchers . . . . .	344
<b>19 Regular expressions</b>	<b>347</b>
19.1 Basics of regular expressions . . . . .	347
19.2 Bracket expressions . . . . .	349
19.3 Grouping . . . . .	350
19.4 Substituting text in regular expression . . . . .	350
<b>20 Rollback</b>	<b>352</b>
<b>21 Troubleshooting</b>	<b>353</b>
21.1 Debugger . . . . .	353
21.1.1 Including the debugger in your installer . . . . .	354
21.1.2 Enabling the debugger at runtime . . . . .	354
21.1.3 Testing installers with the debugger . . . . .	354
21.1.4 Debugger usage . . . . .	355
21.1.4.1 The toolbar . . . . .	356
21.1.4.2 Project tree editor . . . . .	356
21.1.4.3 Action List Execution Editor . . . . .	357
21.1.4.4 Debugger log . . . . .	358
21.1.4.5 Variable Editor . . . . .	359

---

21.1.4.6 XML evaluator . . . . .	359
21.2 Logs . . . . .	360
21.2.1 Installation Log . . . . .	360
21.2.1.1 Where the Log is Located . . . . .	360
21.2.1.2 Verbosity Level . . . . .	361
21.2.1.3 Logging custom information . . . . .	361
21.2.2 Debugtrace Log . . . . .	362
21.3 Other Debugging Methods . . . . .	362
<b>22 Updates</b>	<b>364</b>
22.1 What differentiates upgrade installers from normal installers? . . . . .	364
22.2 Setting the installer to upgrade installation mode . . . . .	364
22.3 Using normal mode when upgrading . . . . .	368
<b>23 AutoUpdate Tool</b>	<b>371</b>
23.1 How to Use AutoUpdate in InstallBuilder . . . . .	371
23.1.1 How Does it Work? . . . . .	371
23.1.2 Basic example . . . . .	375
23.2 Adding the AutoUpdate to an Existing InstallBuilder project . . . . .	381
23.3 Using AutoUpdate as a notifier . . . . .	382
23.4 How to execute custom actions after the update installer is downloaded . . . . .	382
23.5 AutoUpdate installers in unattended mode . . . . .	383
23.5.1 Regular unattended mode . . . . .	383
23.5.2 Download unattended mode . . . . .	384
23.6 Sequential updates . . . . .	385
<b>24 Native Packages</b>	<b>388</b>
24.1 Generation of Native Packages . . . . .	388
24.2 Integration with Native Package Systems . . . . .	388
24.2.1 Creating custom spec files for RPM installers . . . . .	389
<b>25 Builder</b>	<b>390</b>
25.1 Build . . . . .	390
25.2 Quickbuild . . . . .	390
25.3 Using the Command Line Interface . . . . .	391
25.4 Creating Custom Builds . . . . .	392
25.5 Compression algorithms . . . . .	393
25.5.1 LZMA Ultra Block Size . . . . .	394
25.6 Parallel compression . . . . .	394
25.7 Parallel decompression . . . . .	395

---



<b>26 Windows</b>	<b>397</b>
26.1 Windows Registry . . . . .	397
26.1.1 Managing the Windows Registry From InstallBuilder . . . . .	398
26.1.2 Windows Registry in 64bit Systems . . . . .	400
26.1.3 InstallBuilder built-in registry keys . . . . .	403
26.2 Windows 64bit . . . . .	404
26.2.1 Creating specific Windows 64bit installers . . . . .	406
26.2.2 Installing applications in 32bit and 64bit folders . . . . .	409
26.3 Managing Access Control Lists . . . . .	411
26.4 Changing file attributes . . . . .	413
<b>27 OS X</b>	<b>414</b>
27.1 Packaging installers as ZIP files . . . . .	414
27.2 Using DMGs to bundle your installers . . . . .	414
27.2.1 Manual DMG creation . . . . .	416
27.2.2 Creating fancy DMG . . . . .	420
27.3 Adding support for legacy OS X versions . . . . .	423
<b>28 Encryption and password protection</b>	<b>425</b>
28.1 Encrypting payload of the installer . . . . .	425
28.2 Support for platforms and build types . . . . .	426
28.2.1 Supported platforms . . . . .	426
28.2.2 RPM and DEB packages . . . . .	426
28.2.3 Downloadable components . . . . .	426
28.2.4 Multiplatform CD-ROM mode . . . . .	426
28.3 Manually specifying password . . . . .	427
28.3.1 Retrieving password over the Internet . . . . .	428

---

## Chapter 1

# Introduction to InstallBuilder

InstallBuilder is a modern, fully-featured, cross-platform installation tool. It is designed to simplify the deployment of both desktop and server software, helping you reduce support costs related to installation and provide a positive end-user experience.

This document provides an overview of InstallBuilder capabilities and architecture, as well as in-depth coverage of common installation topics. A companion appendix provides detailed information on each one of the XML configuration options.

### 1.1 What Sets InstallBuilder Apart

To fully understand the architecture and capabilities of InstallBuilder, it is useful to consider the previous generation of cross-platform installers. These were built using the Java programming language. Java is a fine choice for multiple scenarios and indeed over half of your users use InstallBuilder to package Java-based applications. However, it has a set of major drawbacks when the goal is to create setup programs. For example, it requires a Java runtime environment to be present in the machine, which increases the chances of something going wrong if one is not present or the one present is not a suitable version. Alternatively, if the user decides to bundle a JRE with the installer in order to avoid these potential problems, it will increase significantly the footprint of the installation. Java-based installers also require a self-extraction step, in which the files are first unpacked to disk before installation can begin. For large installers, this can be a time-consuming step and another source of installation-related issues if the end-user runs out of disk space during this process. Finally, and although alternative toolkits like SWT finally emerged, Java GUI development has traditionally suffered from poor performance and lack of a truly native look-and-feel. End-users react much more favorably to setup applications that are responsive and provide a familiar *native* interface, even if the functionality is identical.

The above is not intended as a rant against Java-based installers, rather as an illustration of the challenges that a cross platform installation tool faces. So, how does InstallBuilder address these issues? Installers generated with InstallBuilder are native applications that do not require any runtime to be present in the system to run. This means that the overhead the installer introduces is very small, typically around 2 to 3 Mb, versus the 15 Mb to 20 Mb that a bundled JRE requires. In addition to this, the installers do not perform a self-extraction step, meaning that they start up instantaneously, whereas some Java-based installers can take up to minutes to initialize for large installers. Installers created with InstallBuilder use the underlying system libraries for displaying their GUI interfaces, so users get a native look and feel for each platform the installers run on, such as Windows and Mac OS X. On Linux and other Unix platforms, there is not a single *standard* look and feel. In those cases, InstallBuilder provides a choice between the most common toolkits, Qt and GTK, as well as a built-in fallback mode.

### 1.2 What's New In InstallBuilder 15

InstallBuilder 15 provides a host of new features, including:

- **Multi-core installer creation:** InstallBuilder can take advantage of multiple cores/threads in LZMA and LZMA Ultra compression

- **Multi-core decompression:** Significantly faster file unpacking by using up to 8 cores/threads for LZMA and LZMA Ultra compressions
- **Installation time performance improvements:** Multiple changes in file management provide up to 20% speed increase for large installers
- **Support for cross-platform installer signing:** Signing installers for both Windows and Mac OS X can now be done from any platform

## 1.3 Features

InstallBuilder is a fully-featured tool capable of addressing multiple installation scenarios, from desktop games to engineering simulation tools to enterprise-level server software.

- **Multiplatform Support:** BitRock installers are native binaries that can run on Windows, OS X and Linux and most other flavors of Unix, including FreeBSD, OpenBSD, AIX, OS/400, HP-UX and IRIX.
  - **Desktop Integration:** BitRock installers provide native look and feel and desktop integration for Windows, OS X and Linux (KDE and Gnome).
  - **Optimized:** BitRock installers are optimized in size and speed and do not require a self-extraction step, reducing download, startup and installation time. Built-in LZMA support provides great compression ratios.
  - **No External Dependencies:** BitRock installers are single-file, self-contained native executables with no external dependencies and minimal overhead. Unlike competing products, all BitRock installers are truly native code and do not require bundling a Java Runtime Environment.
  - **Ease of Use:** BitRock installers provide an intuitive and easy to use interface on all platforms, even for end users without previous Linux experience.
  - **Ease of Development:** InstallBuilder includes an easy to learn, easy to use GUI environment. Design, build and test installers with the click of a button.
  - **Time Saving Functionality:** For advanced users, a friendly XML project format supports source control integration, collaborative development and customizing projects both by hand and using external scripts. A command line interface allows you to automate and integrate the building process. QuickBuild functionality allows you to update installers in a few seconds, without having to repack the entire application.
  - **Built-in Actions:** InstallBuilder provides convenient built-in actions for commonly required installation functionality such as auto-detecting a Java(tm) Runtime, changing file permissions and ownership, substituting text in a file, adding environment variables, adding directories to the path, creating symbolic links, changing the Windows registry, launching external scripts and so on.
  - **Crossplatform Build Support:** The installer builder tool can run on Windows, Mac OS X, Linux and all other supported Unix platforms and generate installers for all target platforms from a single project file. Create all your installers from a single build environment!
  - **Customization:** BitRock installers can be customized in a variety of ways, both graphically and in functionality. It is possible to ask for multiple parameters, like username and passwords, in the same installer screen. This functionality helps to simplify the installation process for end-users.
  - **Multiple Installation Modes:** BitRock installers provide: several GUI modes with native look-and-feel, for installation in a variety of desktop environments, a text-based installation mode, for console-based and remote installations, and a silent/unattended install mode which can be used for integration in shell scripts for automated deployment.
  - **Support for Qt® GUI Frontend:** The InstallBuilder for Qt family of products provides a GUI installation mode using the Qt crossplatform toolkit, enhancing the end-user experience
  - **Rollback Functionality:** BitRock installers by default perform a backup of all the files overwritten during installation, so if there is an error, the system can be recovered to its previous state.
-

- **Native Package Integration:** BitRock installers can register your software with the RPM and DEB package databases, combining the ease of use of an installer wizard with the underlying native package management system.
- **RPM and DEB generation:** In addition to creating native executables that can register with the RPM subsystem, BitRock InstallBuilder can generate self-contained RPM and Debian packages that can be installed using the native package management tools.
- **Uninstall Functionality:** An uninstall program is created as part of every installation, allowing users to easily uninstall the software. Like the installers, it can be run in a variety of modes. On Windows, uninstall functionality can also be accessed from the Add/Remove Programs entry in the Control Panel.
- **Startup Failure Detection:** BitRock installers will automatically and gracefully detect the best installation mode available. Users also have the option to manually select a mode.
- **Language and Platform Independent:** BitRock installers can install applications written in any language, including: Java, PHP, Perl, Python, Ruby, C/C++ and .NET/Mono.
- **Multiple Language Support:** BitRock installers support a variety of installation languages, including English, German, Japanese, Spanish, Italian, French, Portuguese, Traditional Chinese, Dutch, Polish, Valencian, Catalan, Estonian, Slovenian, Romanian, Hungarian, Russian and Welsh. Installers in Qt mode support right to left languages such as Arabic. The full list can be found in the Languages section. You can specify a default language or let the user decide. Please contact us if you require additional language support.

## 1.4 Supported Platforms

InstallBuilder provides support for all common (and not so common!) operating systems out there. If you want to know if InstallBuilder supports a particular platform, please contact us - chances are that it does. InstallBuilder-generated installers will run on:

- Windows XP, 2003, 2008, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1
- Mac OS X (PPC & Intel) 10.2 and later
- Linux (Intel x86/x64, Itanium, s390 and PPC) All distributions and version including Ubuntu, RHEL, SLES and Meego.
- Solaris (Intel and Sparc) 8, 9, 10, 11
- HP-UX (PA-RISC, Itanium)
- FreeBSD 4.x and later
- OpenBSD 3.x and later
- AIX 4.3 and later
- OS/400
- IRIX 6.5

## 1.5 Requirements

The command line builder tool will run on any of the supported platforms, allowing you to generate installers for any of the other supported platforms for the InstallBuilder edition you are using. For example, if you are running InstallBuilder Professional on Linux, you will be able to generate installers for Windows, Linux and OS X. This is particularly useful for situations in which you need to build the installers as part of a continuous integration/daily build scenario.

The GUI installer design tool helps you to visually create installation projects. The GUI design tool runs on Linux x86/x64, OS X and Windows with a minimum of 800x600 screen resolution. Note that you can always edit XML projects directly or even alternate between using the GUI and editing the XML project file as needed.

---

## 1.6 Editions

InstallBuilder is distributed in multiple editions, with the primary differentiation being the supported platforms that you can create installers for. The link below provides a detailed comparison of the available editions:

<http://installbuilder.bitrock.com/compare-installbuilder-editions.html>

## 1.7 The GUI

InstallBuilder allows projects to be created and edited with an easy to use graphical editor tool. Adding new actions to the installation logic or files to pack is as easy as double-clicking the appropriate element and navigating through the organized dialogs. The GUI is only available on Linux x86/x64, Windows and OS X.

Once the GUI is launched, you will be welcomed with the screen displayed in Figure 1.1. From this main screen you can use the top menu entries to create a new project or open an existing one, launch the build process, check for an updated version of InstallBuilder, register your copy of the tool and open the documentation.

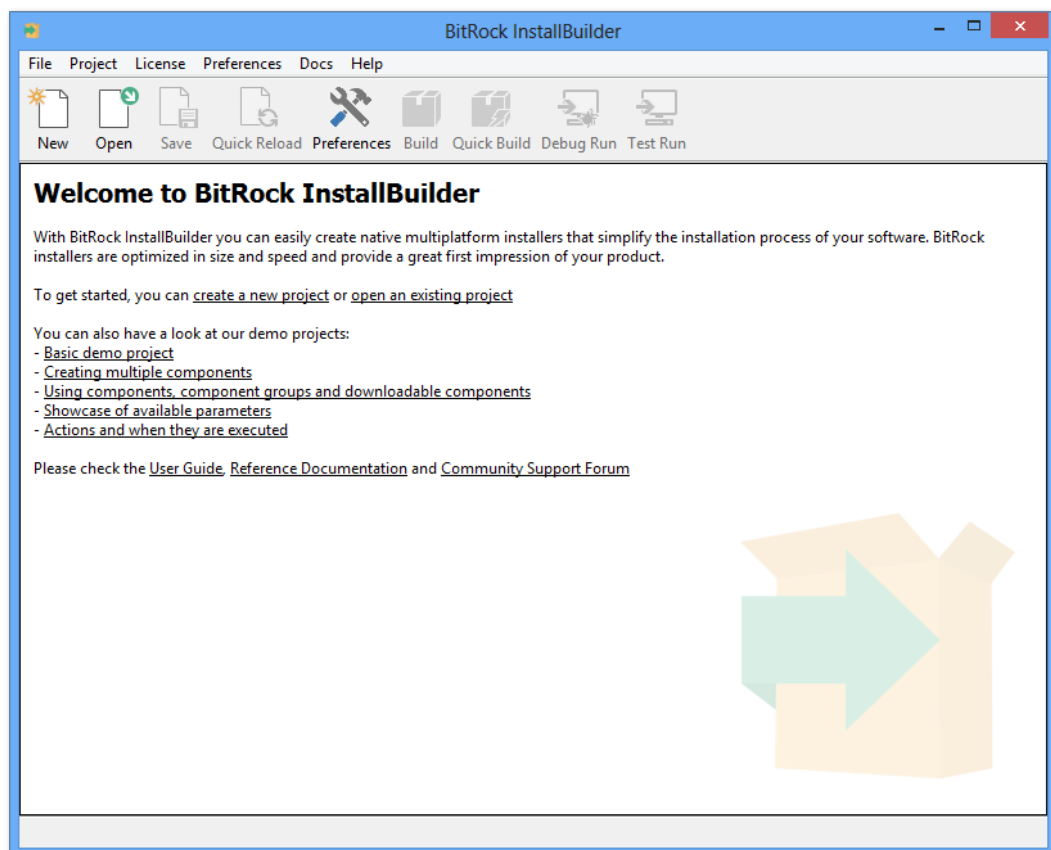


Figure 1.1: GUI welcome screen

Alternatively, you can use the shortcut buttons to perform the most common actions:

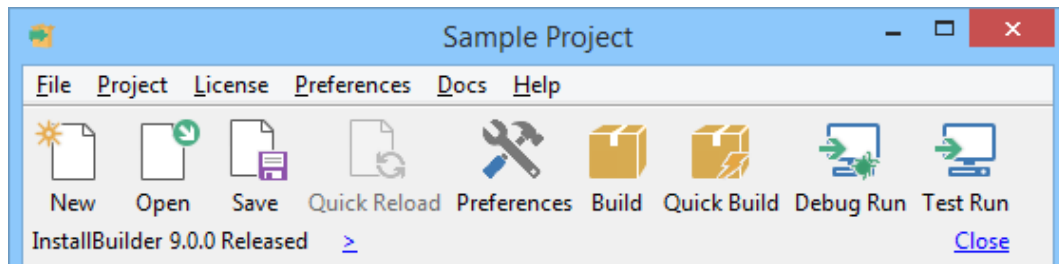


Figure 1.2: GUI Toolbar

Some of the toolbar buttons will be disabled depending on whether a project is loaded or not. Figure 1.2 also shows the notification you will see when a new version is available. If the builder has access to the Internet and is configured to check for updates, it will automatically report these notifications for each new version released. The process can also be manually triggered using the `Update` menu. Clicking on the blue arrow will open the downloads page in a web browser.

### Disabling checking for new versions of InstallBuilder

If you do not want the installer to check for updates on startup, you can edit the `update.dat` file located in the same directory as the builder and set `check_for_updates=0`

After loading or creating a new project, a new UI will appear, divided in different sections:

- **Product Details:** This section presents a quick overview of the basic configuration settings for the project (Figure 1.3).

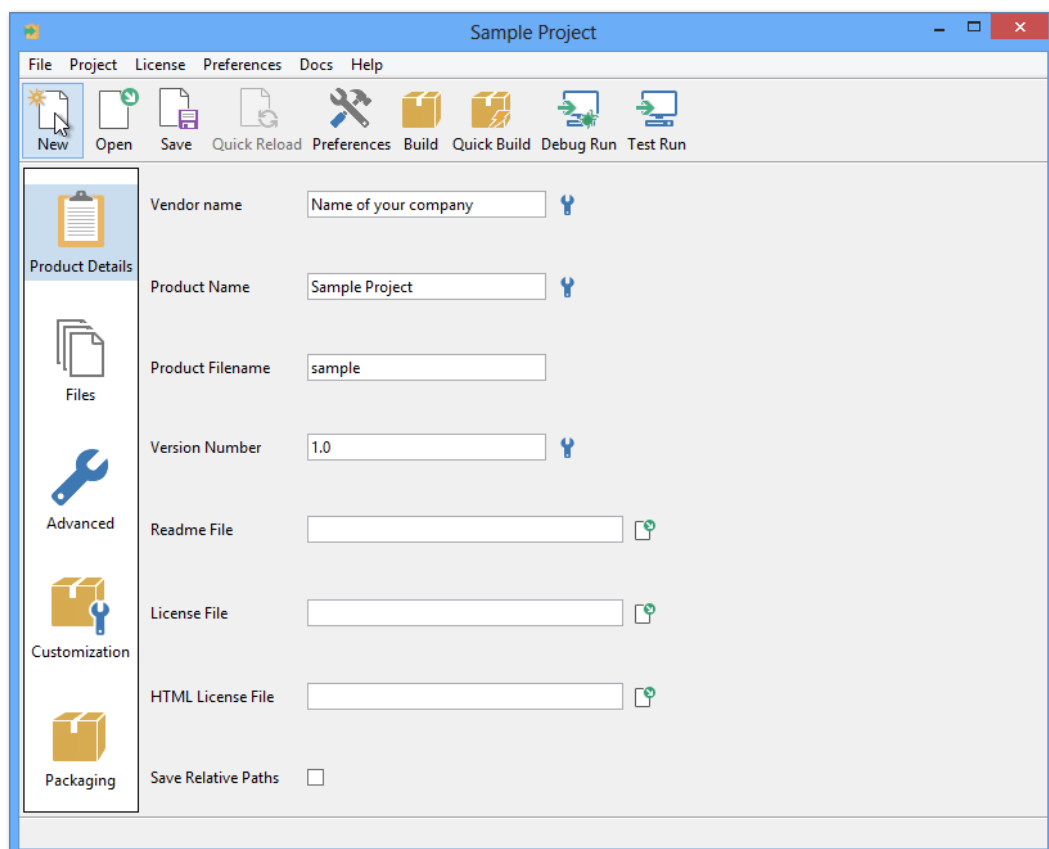


Figure 1.3: New project

The main project settings `Vendor name`, `Product Name`, `Product Filename` and `Version Number` are defined once and used multiple times when displaying information during the installation process; in the `Add/Remove Program` menu, the installer filename and so on. It is always possible to override these default values when necessary.

Enabling `Save Relative Paths` will convert all of the absolute paths related to the build process (files to pack, images, readme...) to relative paths, using the location of the project file as the reference. This setting will be applied automatically and transparently when saving and loading the project so it will not be noticeable while working in the GUI. This particular setting is especially useful when sharing a project between developers or operating systems, as the location of the resources is not hardcoded, as explained in the `When is it necessary to use the Save Relative Paths option?` note. If the paths were already manually configured as relative, they will be preserved and resolved when building, also using the location of the project to absolutize them.

The `License File` setting specifies a license file that will be displayed during installation. The end user will need to accept this license text before continuing with the installation process. If you do not provide a license file, the license acceptance screen will not be displayed to the end user.

You can also provide an alternate `HTML License File`. This HTML-formatted license will be used if the front-end supports it (currently only the case for the Qt front-end). Otherwise the default license text specified in the `License File` setting will be displayed.

You can also display multiple licenses in different languages or display them conditionally, as described in the `Displaying a localized license and readme` section.

- **Files:** This section allows managing all of the resources included in the project such as files to pack, and shortcuts to create. These resources are organized in components, designed to group common functionalities, and files, which are divided into folders (Figure 1.4).

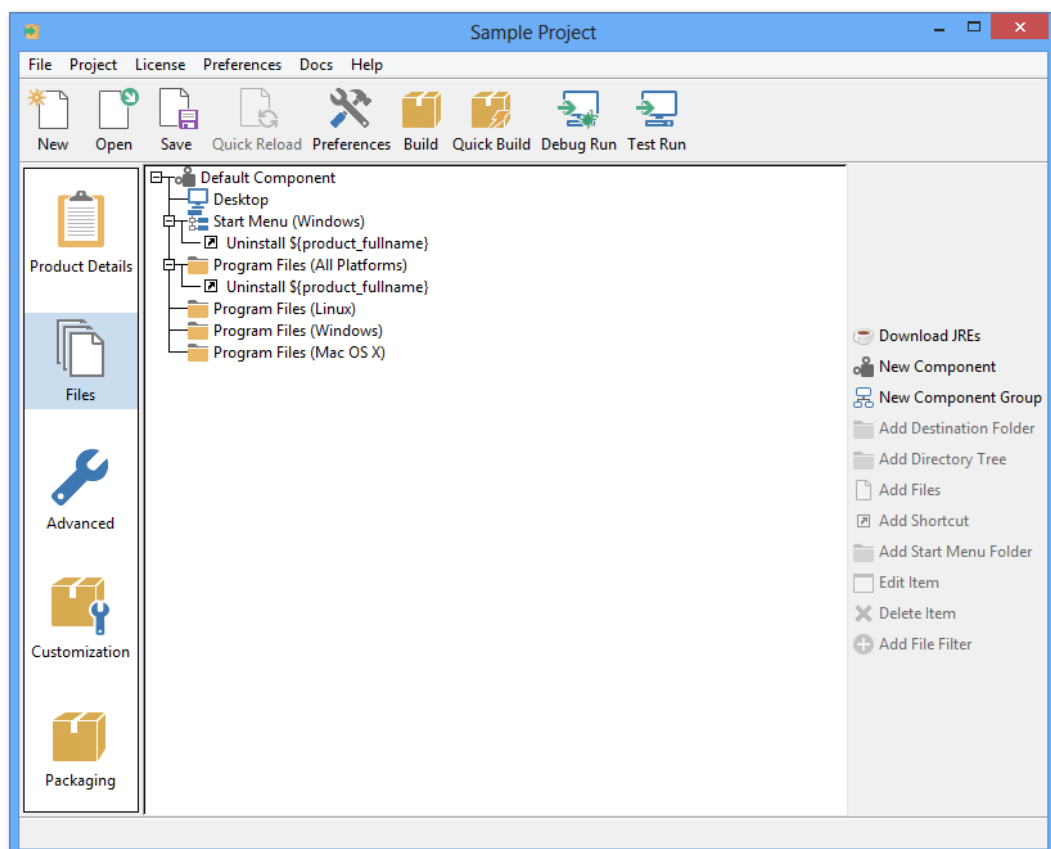


Figure 1.4: Files screen

Shortcuts may also be added in this section.

- **Advanced:** The same way the **Files** section specifies the resources that will be packaged, the **Advanced** section deals with the configuration of the actions and rules associated with them (Figure 1.5). It also allows you to describe the inputs that the installer will accept and the pages to display at runtime to interact with the end user. The nodes in the tree can also be reordered, moved (you can drag and drop them) and copied (press shift while performing a drag and drop operation). In addition, the root node, representing the project, allows configuring the global project properties.

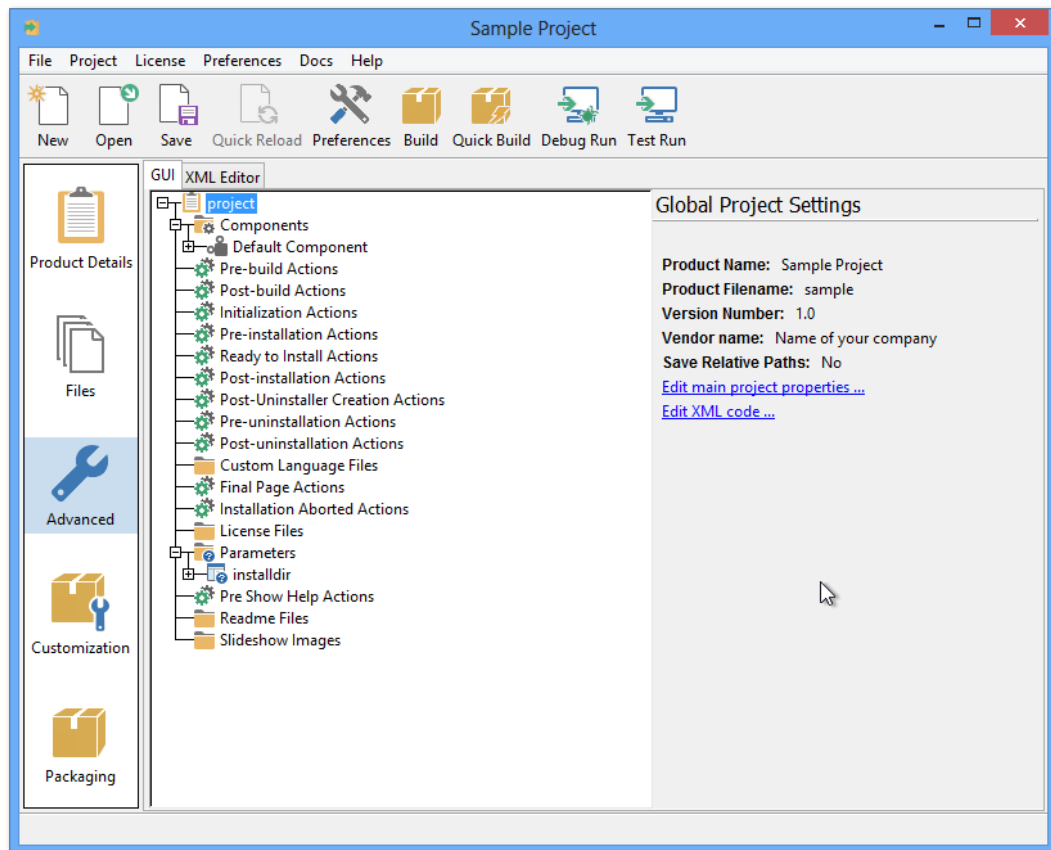


Figure 1.5: Advanced screen

- **Customization:** The **Customization** section (Figure 1.6) provides a convenient way to configure the most common project properties. It is a subset of the properties available in the **Advanced** tab.



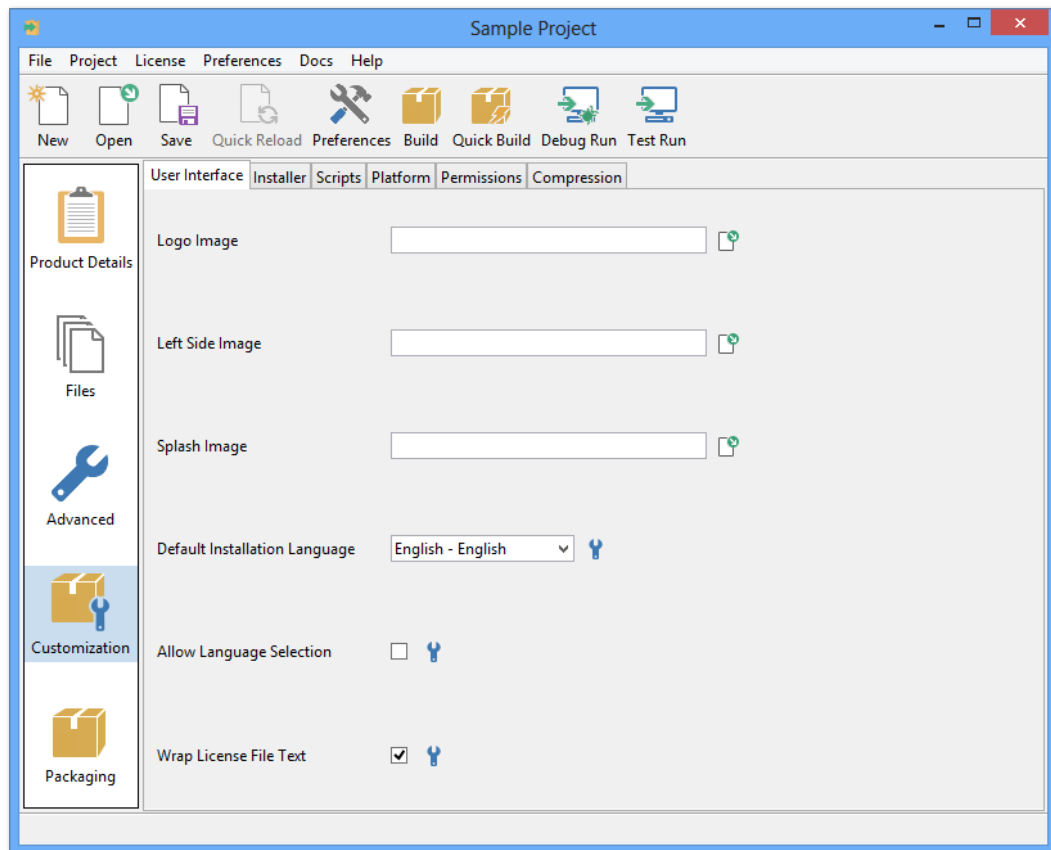


Figure 1.6: Customization screen

- **Packaging:** This section allows you to specify the target platform for which you want to build the installer. It provides a log of the build process, including a progress bar and displaying build-errors in red when they occur (Figure 1.7).

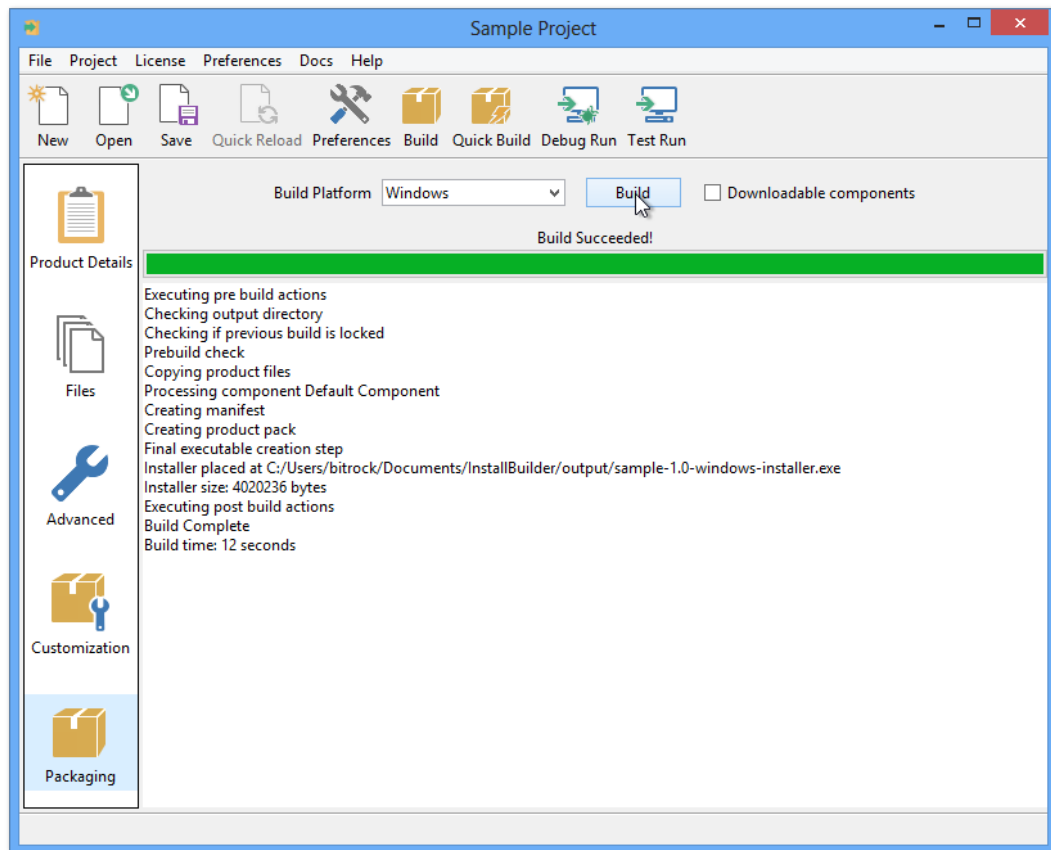


Figure 1.7: Packaging screen

**Note**

The GUI is only available on Linux, Linux x64, Windows and OS X. The command line builder is available on all platforms.

## 1.8 The XML

InstallBuilder project files are stored in XML format. This enables and simplifies source control integration, collaborative development and customizing projects both by hand and using external scripts.

Our XML is *human friendly*, and although the project can be fully managed through the GUI, advanced users can also directly edit the XML project using the built-in XML editor or their preferred text editor or IDE. The following is a complete example of what an InstallBuilder project looks like. This particular project does not package any files.

```
<project>
  <shortName>sample</shortName>
  <fullName>Sample Project</fullName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <enableRollback>1</enableRollback>
  <enableTimestamp>1</enableTimestamp>
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>default</name>
      <description>Default Component</description>
      <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
      <selected>1</selected>
      <show>1</show>
    </component>
  </componentList>
</project>
```

```

    <folderList>
      <folder>
        <description>Program Files</description>
        <destination>${installdir}</destination>
        <name>programfiles</name>
        <platforms>all</platforms>
        <shortcutList>
          <shortcut>
            <comment>Uninstall</comment>
            <exec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}</exec>
            <icon></icon>
            <name>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</name>
            <path>${installdir}</path>
            <platforms>all</platforms>
            <runAsAdmin>0</runAsAdmin>
            <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
            <windowsExec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}.exe</
              windowsExec>
            <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
            <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
            <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
          </shortcut>
        </shortcutList>
      </folder>
    </folderList>
    <startMenuShortcutList>
      <startMenuShortcut>
        <comment>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</name>
        <runAsAdmin>0</runAsAdmin>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
        <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
      </startMenuShortcut>
    </startMenuShortcutList>
  </component>
</componentList>
<parameterList>
  <directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
    <explanation>Installer.Parameter.installdir.explanation</explanation>
    <value></value>
    <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</
      default>
    <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
    <ask>yes</ask>
    <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
    <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
    <mustExist>0</mustExist>
    <width>30</width>
  </directoryParameter>
</parameterList>
</project>

```

If your XML editor supports it, you can use a RELAX NG schema for validation. It is included as `InstallBuilder.rng`, inside the `docs` directory of your installation.

Most of the examples presented in this guide are provided as XML snippets, but you can achieve identical functionality using the GUI

**Note**

The XML specification requires that specific characters are escaped. This is done automatically if entering the values through the GUI but if you are directly editing the XML code you must take it into account. The table below summarizes the most common characters and their escape sequence:

Table 1.1: Common XML escape sequences

Character	XML escaped sequence
&	&amp;
<	&lt;
>	&gt;
'	&apos;
"	&quot;
\n	&#xA;

Some of the values only need to be escaped if provided as part of an attribute value, not an element. The snippet below adds some lines to an existing file, separating them using escaped line breaks (\n):

```
<addTextToFile>
  <file>${installdir}/foo.txt</file>
  <text>line1&#xA;line2&#xA;line3</text>
</addTextToFile>
```

It is also possible to escape a full block of code using the <![CDATA[ . . ]]> notation

```
<writeFile>
  <path>${installdir}/${project.vendor}-x-my-mime.xml</path>
  <text><![CDATA[
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<mime-info xmlns='http://www.freedesktop.org/standards/shared-mime-info'>
  <mime-type type="application/x-my-mime">
    <comment>My new file type</comment>
    <glob pattern="*.mymime"/>
  </mime-type>
</mime-info>
]]></text>
</writeFile>
```

The text inside the <![CDATA[ . . ]]> block will be interpreted literally, so you do not need to escape any character.

## Chapter 2

# Installation and Getting Started

### 2.1 Installation

This section describes how to get up and running with InstallBuilder on a variety of platforms

#### 2.1.1 Installing on Windows

You can download BitRock InstallBuilder from the BitRock website: [installbuilder.bitrock.com](https://installbuilder.bitrock.com). To start the installation process, double-click on the downloaded file.

You will be greeted by the Welcome screen shown in Figure 2.1:

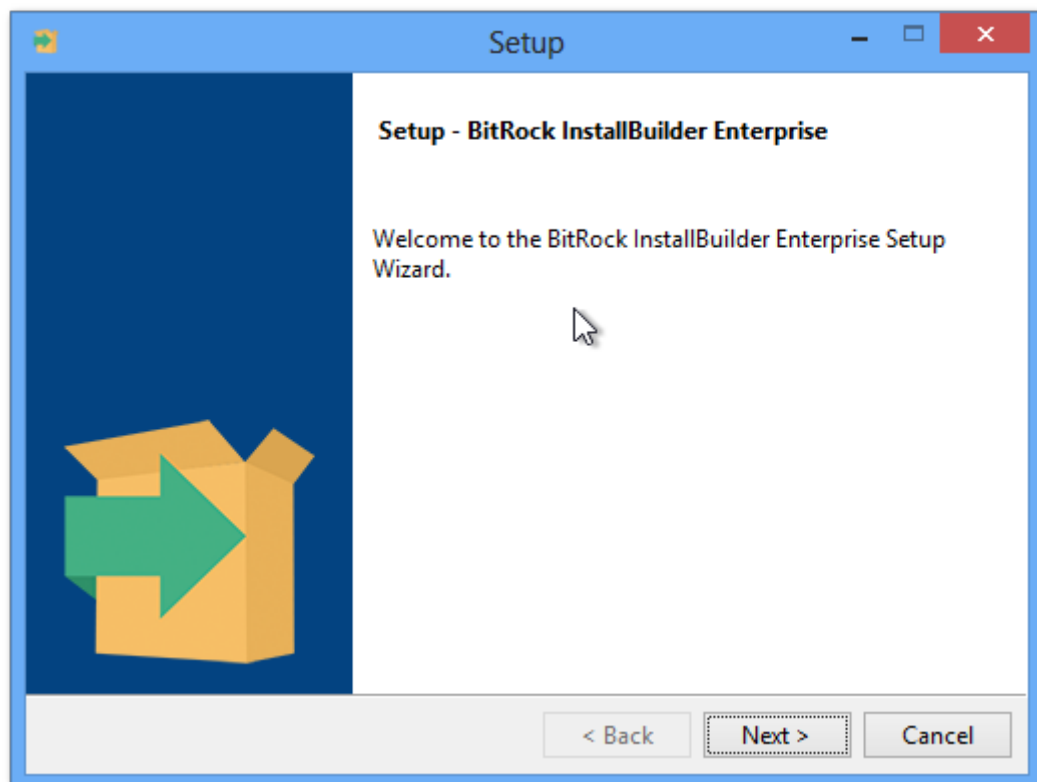


Figure 2.1: Windows Welcome Screen

Pressing Next will take you to the License Agreement page, shown in Figure 2.2. You need to accept the agreement to continue with the installation. The next step is to select the installation directory Figure 2.3. The default value is C:\Program Files\BitRock InstallBuilder\

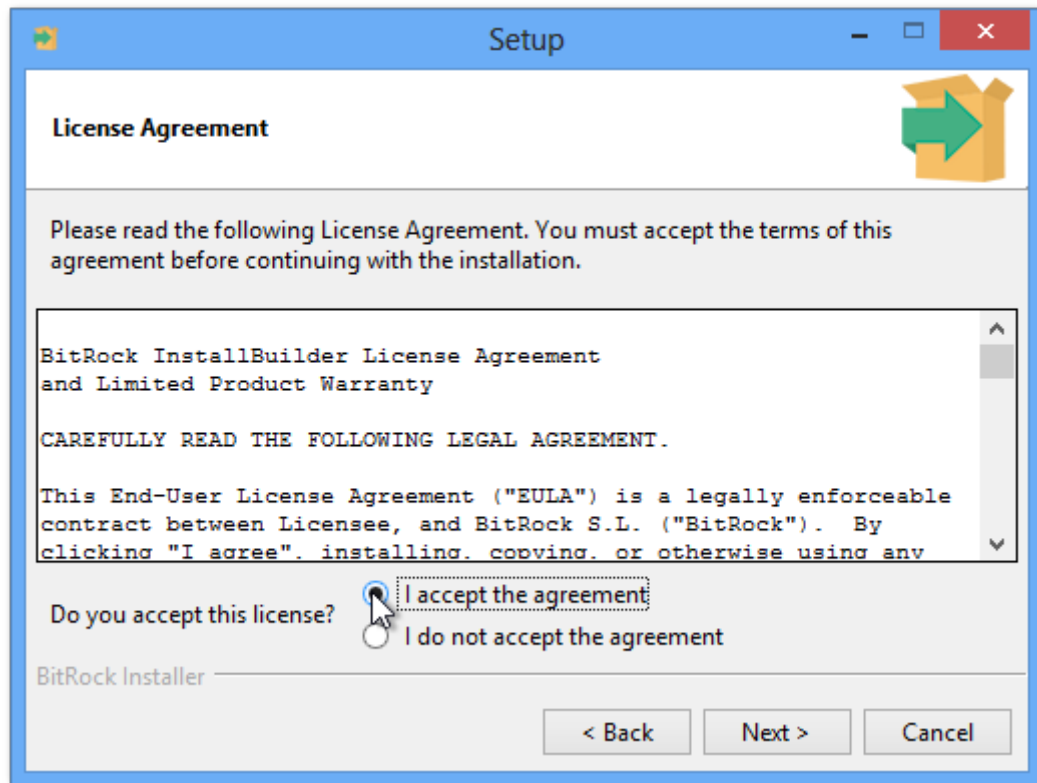


Figure 2.2: Windows License Agreement

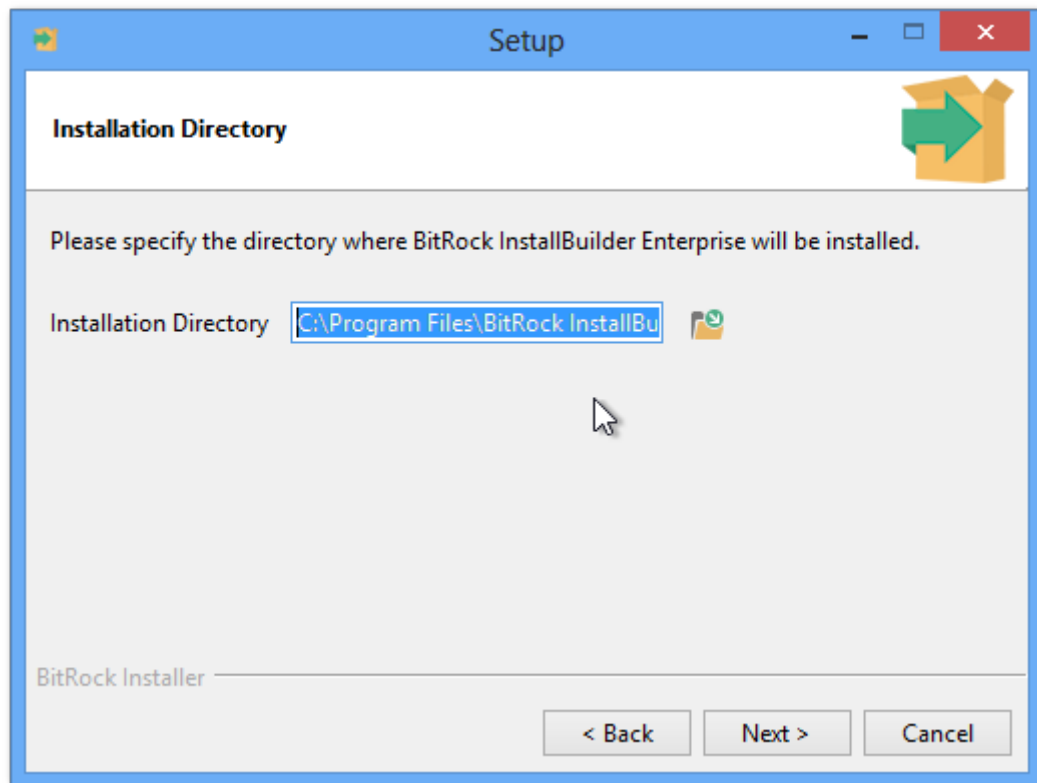


Figure 2.3: Windows Select Installation Directory

The rest of this guide assumes you installed BitRock InstallBuilder in `C:\Program Files\BitRock InstallBuilder\`

You are now ready to start the installation process itself (Figure 2.4), which will take place once you press Next (Figure 2.5). When the installation completes, you will see the Installation Completed page shown in Figure 2.6. You may choose to view the README file at this point.

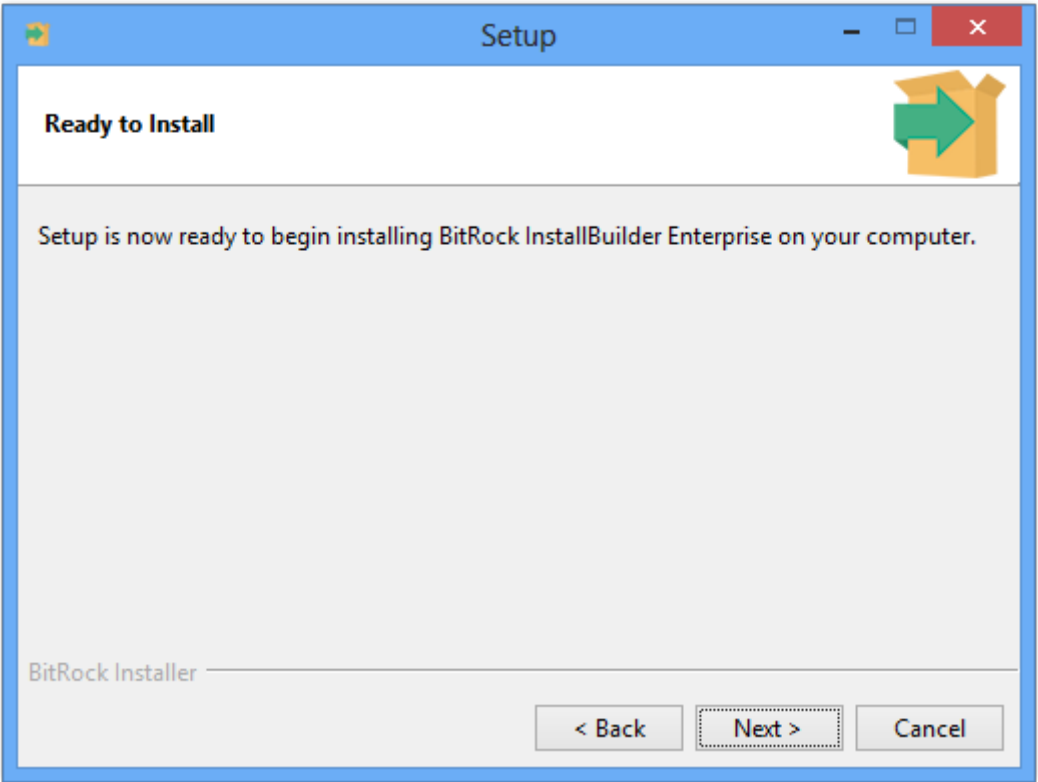


Figure 2.4: Windows Ready To Install



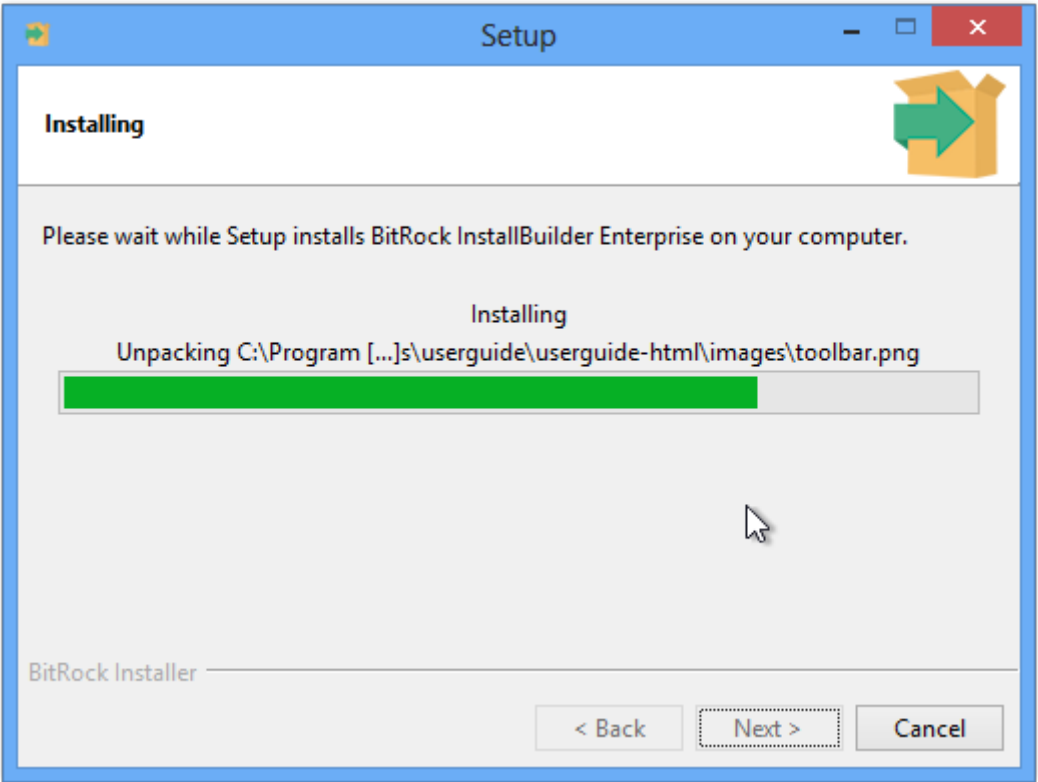


Figure 2.5: Windows Installation Under Way

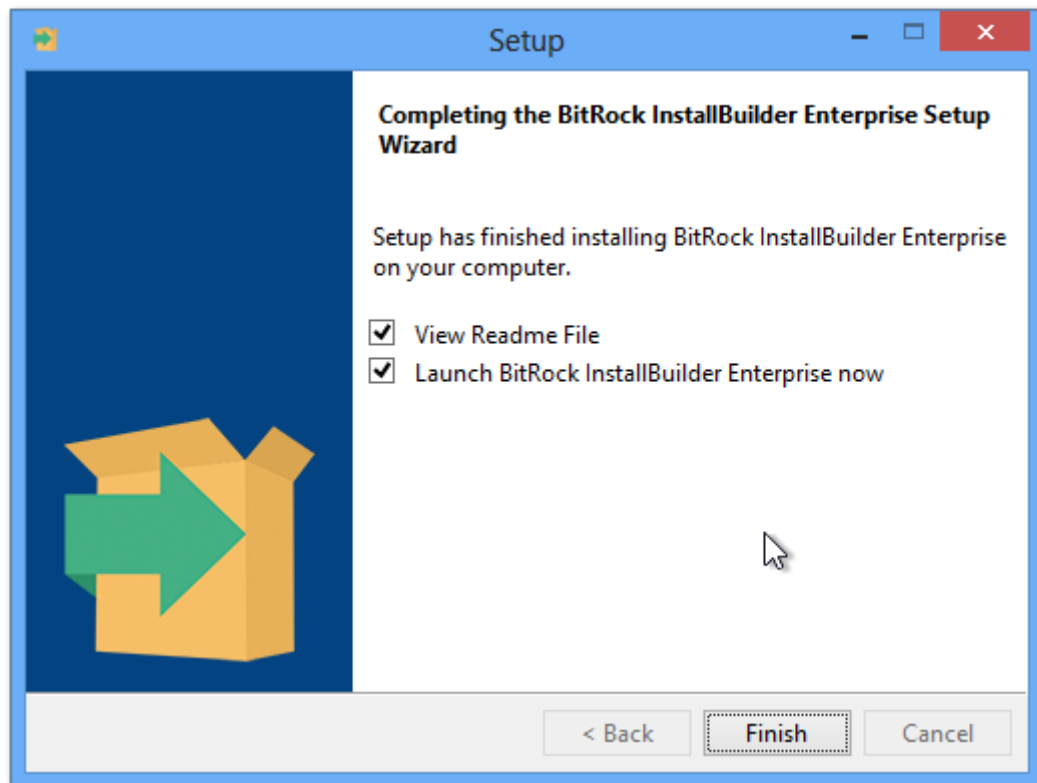


Figure 2.6: Windows Installation Completed

---

**Note**

If you found a problem and could not complete the installation, please refer to the Troubleshooting section or contact us at [support@bitrock.com](mailto:support@bitrock.com). Please refer to the Support section for details on which information you should include with your request.

---

### 2.1.2 Installing on Unix

The process for installing on Linux and other Unix platforms is similar. The rest of this section assumes you are running Linux. You can download the BitRock InstallBuilder binary from the BitRock website. It should have a name similar to `installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-linux-installer.run`. Make sure it has read and executable permissions by right clicking on the file, selecting "Properties" and then setting the appropriate permissions. Alternatively you can issue the following shell command:

```
$> chmod +x installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-linux-installer.run
```

You can now start the installation by double-clicking on the file from your Desktop environment or by invoking it directly from the command line with:

```
$> ./installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-linux-installer.run
```

You will be greeted by a Welcome screen if you are running in a Desktop environment or a text message (if no GUI mode is available).

The default value for installation will be a folder in your home directory if you are running the installer as a regular user (recommended) or `/opt/installbuilder-15.9.0/` if you are running the installation as superuser (root).

---

### 2.1.3 Installing on Mac OS X

The Mac OS X version of InstallBuilder is distributed as a zip file containing a .app that will be uncompressed automatically at download time by the browser. Alternatively you can unzip it with:

```
$> unzip installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-osx-installer.app.zip
```

You can launch the application by double-clicking on it in Finder or from the command line with the following instruction

```
$> open installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-osx-installer.app
```

## 2.2 Registering your Copy of InstallBuilder

The InstallBuilder version you can download from [installbuilder.bitrock.com](http://installbuilder.bitrock.com) is a fully functional evaluation version. It can only be used for a period of 30 days, and is intended for evaluation purposes only. It will add a reminder message to each installer ("Created with an evaluation version of BitRock InstallBuilder") which will disappear once you purchase and register a license.

There are two ways of registering your license with the product:

- Using the GUI interface: From the main application menu select "License", then "Register License", and a window will appear where you can enter the location of your license file.
- Manually: The product can be manually registered by copying the `license.xml` file to the directory where InstallBuilder was installed.

### 2.2.1 Specifying a License in the Command Line

Sometimes you may need to specify a license at build time, instead of registering your copy of InstallBuilder. For example, this is necessary when you do not have write permissions for the InstallBuilder installation directory.

To do so, you can use the `--license` flag both with the GUI and command line builder.

```
$> builder build ~/project.xml --license ~/licenses/license.xml
```

```
$> builder --license ~/licenses/license.xml
```

The code above will launch the command line or GUI builder and all generated installers will be registered with the license `~/licenses/license.xml`. If the GUI builder is closed and then reopened without specifying the `--license` flag, the generated installers will use a previously registered license. If no license is registered or an incorrect one is provided, the message `Built with an evaluation version of InstallBuilder` will be displayed while building. A similar message will also be displayed in the `Welcome` page of the generated installers.

### 2.2.2 Windows-specific License Registration Details

On certain Windows versions, especially those that are UAC-enabled such as Vista and Windows 7, regular users cannot write to the default installation directory of InstallBuilder under `c:\Program Files`. When registering a new license, the builder will try first to write it to the main installation directory. If it is not writable, it will be placed in the user's personal folder.

When the builder is launched, it will try to load the license from the user's personal folder and if none is found, it will look for it in the installation directory.

This process allows multiple users to share the same installation of Installbuilder without interference, even if they do not have administrative rights. It also allow using different licenses for each user. The output directory follows a similar approach as explained in the "Directory structure" section.

## 2.3 Directory Structure

The installation process will create several directories:

- **bin:** BitRock InstallBuilder application binaries.
- **paks:** Support files necessary for creating installers.
- **autoupdate:** Support and binary files for the bundled automatic update tool.
- **projects:** Project files for your installers. See note below for Windows Vista.
- **docs:** Product documentation.
- **demo:** Files for the sample demo project.
- **output:** Generated installers. See note below for Windows Vista and Windows 7.

On Windows Vista and Windows 7, in line with the Application Development Requirements for User Account Control (UAC), the **projects** and **output** directories are installed under the user **Documents** folder, so usually they can be found at `C:\Users\user\Documents\InstallBuilder\projects` and `C:\Users\user\Documents\InstallBuilder\output`, respectively.

You are ready now to start the application and create your first installer, as described in the next section "Building your First Installer".

## 2.4 Building Your First Installer

This section explains how to create your first installer in a few simple steps.

### 2.4.1 Startup and Basic Information

If you are running Gnome or KDE and performed the installation as a regular user, a shortcut was created on your Desktop. You can either start BitRock InstallBuilder by double-clicking on it or by invoking the binary from the command line:

```
$> /home/user/installbuilder-15.9.0/bin/builder
```

If you are running Windows, the installer created the appropriate Start Menu entries. Additionally, a shortcut was placed on your Desktop. Please refer to the Using the Command Line Interface section later in the document for more information on building installers from the command line.

The initial screen will appear (Figure 2.7). Press the "New Project" button or select that option from the **File** menu on the top left corner. A pop-up Window will appear, asking you for four pieces of information:

- **Product Name:** The full product name, as it will be displayed in the installer
  - **Product Filename:** The short version of product name, which will be used for naming certain directories and files. It can only contain alphanumeric characters
  - **Version Number:** Product version number, which will be used for naming certain directories and files.
  - **Vendor name:** Vendor name that will be used to generate native packages, register the application with the package database or the Windows Add/Remove/Program menu
-

The rest of this tutorial assumes you kept the default values: "Sample Project", "sample", "1.0" and "Name of your Company".

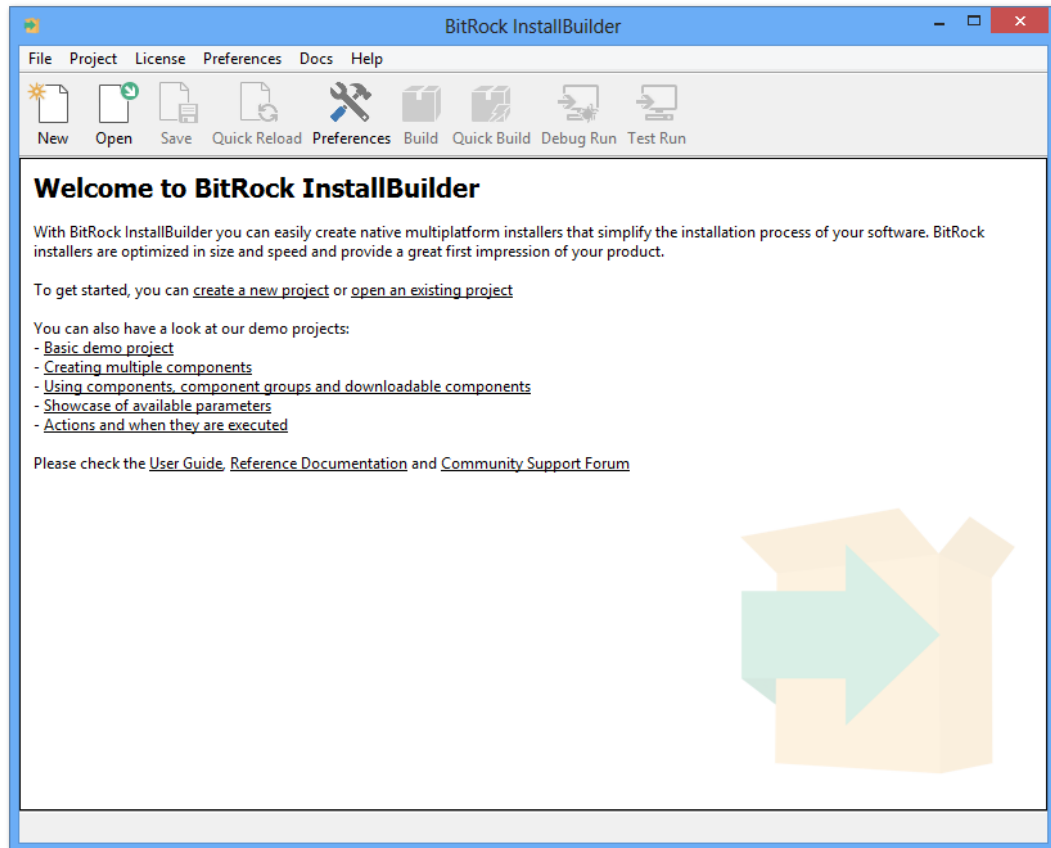


Figure 2.7: Main Screen

Once you enter the information, the "Basic settings screen" (Figure 2.8) will be shown. Here you can specify additional settings:

- **License File:** Path to the license file that the user must accept in order to install the software
- **Readme File:** Path to the README file that can be shown to the user after installation is completed
- **Save Relative Paths:** Determines whether or not to convert absolute paths to relative when saving project files. This is important if the same project file is used by multiple developers. The path will be relative to the location of the project file.

If you do not want to display a license agreement or a README file during installation, you can leave those fields blank.

---

#### When is it necessary to use the Save Relative Paths option?

It is necessary when the same project file is shared by multiple developers on different machines or when using the same project file on Windows and Unix. This is due to the differences in how paths are specified on each platform. For example, a Windows path includes a drive identifier, such as `c:\myproject\images\logo.png`. This is fine if only one developer is building the project in the same machine, but will cause problems if the project needs to be rebuilt on a Unix machine. With the *save relative paths* setting enabled, it is possible to specify the location of the file as `..\images\logo.png` which will be appropriately translated as `../images/logo.png` on Unix systems.

---

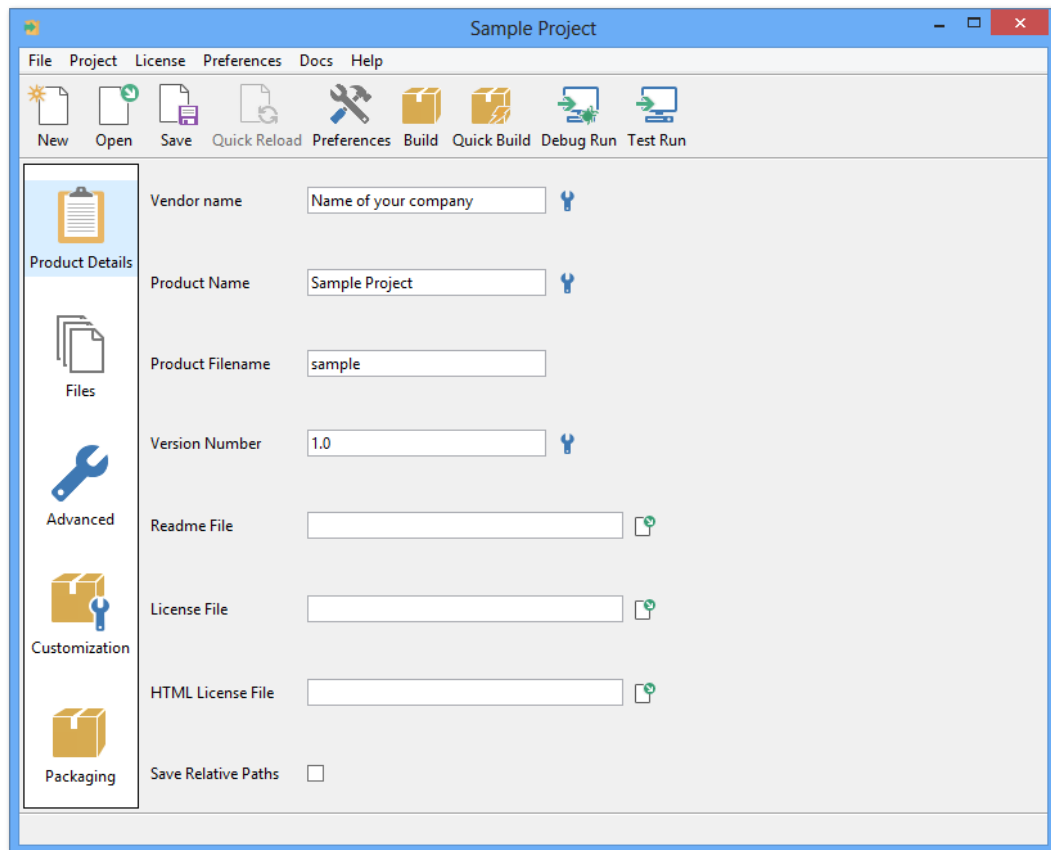


Figure 2.8: Basic Settings

### 2.4.2 Select the Files

The next step is to click on the "Files" icon, which will lead to the screen shown in Figure 2.9.

The "Program Files" folder represents the target installation directory. You can add files and directories to this folder by selecting the "Program Files" folder and using the "Add File" and "Add Directory Tree" buttons. You can add multiple files by pressing down the Control key and clicking on them in the File selection dialog. Multiple selection is not available for directories at this time. The selected files and directories will be copied to the destination the user chooses during installation. If a folder only supports a particular target platform, such as Linux, it will only be included in installers for that particular platform.

Most applications only install files under the main installation directory ("Program Files" folder in the Files screen). It is possible, however, to add additional folders to copy files and directories to, such as `/usr/bin` or `/etc/` by pressing the "Add Destination Folder" button in the Files screen. If you need special permissions to write to the destination folders, you may need to require installation by root (see "Customization of the installer" below).

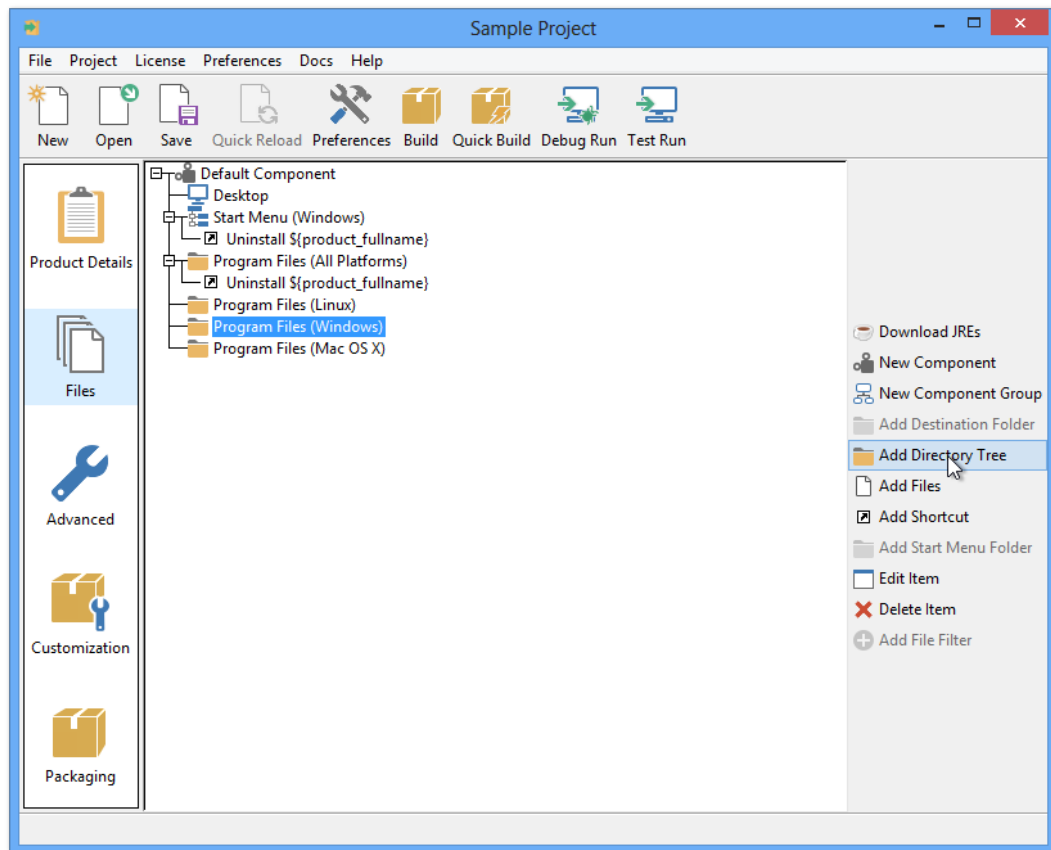


Figure 2.9: Files Screen

Shortcuts can also be added to folders or the component. Depending on where it is added, it will be created in different places. For example, if a shortcut is added to a folder, it will be created in the destination of that folder. If the shortcuts are added to the Desktop or the Start Menu sections of the component they will be created in those locations (if applicable, Start Menu shortcuts are just created on Windows).

Please refer to the "Menus and Shortcuts" section to find additional information.

### 2.4.3 Add Logic to the Installer

You can add logic to the installer, such as asking for information from the end user, creating users or writing some information to the registry. The **Advanced** section allows managing both custom pages and actions.

In most cases, a `<initializationActionList>` or `<preInstallationActionList>` element is used to perform a first validation of the system, such as checking for previous installations or enough disk space and the `<postInstallationActionList>`, executed after the unpack process, is used to perform actions with the installed files. For example, tasks such as changing permissions or starting a bundled Apache server would be performed after your software is installed. You can get a comprehensive list of available actions in the Actions appendix. A listing of all available points during the installation process in which these actions will be executed can be found in the Action Lists section.

With regards to getting information from the end user such as the installation directory, ports or passwords, the User Input and Pages sections include countless examples of how to retrieve all of the information required and how to properly create complex layouts.

### 2.4.4 Add a license key page

In some cases it is desirable to prevent your users from installing your software without providing a previously purchased license key. The example below explains how to create a custom license key page and how to validate its input:

```

<project>
...
<!-- Component bundling the validator -->
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>tools</name>
    <folderList>
      <folder>
        <name>license</name>
        <destination>${installdir}</destination>
        <distributionFileList>
          <distributionFile origin="/path/to/validator.exe"/>
        </distributionFileList>
      </folder>
    </folderList>
  </component>
</componentList>
...
<parameterList>
  ...
  <!-- License key page -->
  <parameterGroup>
    <name>licensekey</name>
    <title>License Key</title>
    <explanation>Please enter your registration key</explanation>
    <value></value>
    <default></default>
    <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
    <parameterList>
      <!-- A stringParameter for each field. We include a "-" as description to ↵
      simulate the license-type format -->
      <stringParameter name="field1" description="" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
      <stringParameter name="field2" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
      <stringParameter name="field3" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
      <stringParameter name="field4" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
    </parameterList>
  </parameterGroup>
  <validationActionList>
    <!-- Check all the fields have the appropriate length -->
    <foreach variables="field">
      <values>${field1} ${field2} ${field3} ${field4}</values>
      <actionList>
        <throwError>
          <text>${field}: Field should be four digits length</text>
          <ruleList>
            <compareTextLength text="${field}" logic="equals" length="4" negate ↵
            ="1"/>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
        <throwError>
          <text>${field}: Should be a pure digit string</text>
          <ruleList>
            <stringTest text="${field}" type="digit" negate="1"/>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </actionList>
    </foreach>
    <!-- Join all the fields to create the license number -->
    <setInstallerVariable name="normalizedkey" value="${field1}${field2}${field3}${ ↵
    field4}"/>
    <!-- Unpack a bundled validator program and check if the license is correct -->
    <unpackFile>

```



```

        <destination>${system_temp_directory}</destination>
        <component>tools</component>
        <folder>license</folder>
        <origin>validator.exe</origin>
    </unpackFile>
    <runProgram>
        <program>${system_temp_directory}/validator.exe</program>
        <programArguments>${normalizedkey}</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <throwError text="Wrong license key, please enter a valid one">
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="${program_stdout}" logic="equals" value="1"/>
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</validationActionList>
<ruleList>
    <compareText text="${installer_ui}" logic="equals" value="gui"/>
</ruleList>
</parameterGroup>
...
</parameterList>
...
</project>

```

Please note that this layout won't be properly displayed in text mode so the example hides the page if the `${installer_ui}` is not `gui` (see Installation Modes for additional details). If you plan to support it, you should create an additional simplified page to be displayed in text mode:

```

<stringParameter>
    <name>licensekeytext</name>
    <title>License Key</title>
    <description>Please introduce your registration key:</description>
    <validationActionList>
        ...
    </validationActionList>
    <ruleList>
        <compareText text="${installer_ui}" logic="equals" value="text"/>
    </ruleList>
</stringParameter>

```

In the example, the validation code makes use of an external tool to validate the license. If you do not have any tool, you could implement an algorithm in your XML code to validate it. A very simple validation would be to check that:

`${field1}+${field3}==${field2}+${field4}`

```

<validationActionList>
    <mathExpression>
        <text>${field1}+${field3}</text>
        <variable>sum1</variable>
    </mathExpression>
    <setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
        <name>trimmedSum1</name>
        <pattern>.*(\d{4})$</pattern>
        <substitution>\1</substitution>
        <text>${sum1}</text>
    </setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
    <mathExpression>
        <text>${field2}+${field4}</text>
        <variable>sum2</variable>
    </mathExpression>
    <setInstallerVariableFromRegex>

```

```

        <name>trimmedSum2</name>
        <pattern>.*(\d{4})$</pattern>
        <substitution>\1</substitution>
        <text>${sum2}</text>
    </setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
    <throwError>
        <text>Invalid License or License Count Exceeded</text>
        <ruleList>
            <compareValues>
                <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
                <value1>${trimmedSum2}</value1>
                <value2>${trimmedSum1}</value2>
            </compareValues>
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</validationActionList>

```

Please note this is a very simple algorithm. If you plan to use this in your installer you can create more complex checks using `<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>` and `<md5>` actions.

Another option is to send the provided license key to your server to validate:

```

<validationActionList>
    <httpPost>
        <filename>${system_temp_directory}/post_result</filename>
        <url>http://www.example.com/validate.php</url>
        <queryParameterList>
            <queryParameter name="key" value="${normalizedkey}" />
        </queryParameterList>
    </httpPost>
    <md5>
        <text>${normalizedkey}+secretKey</text>
        <variable>expected</variable>
    </md5>

    <readFile name="result" path="${system_temp_directory}/post_result"/>
    <throwError text="Invalid License or License Count Exceeded">
        <ruleList>
            <compareText>
                <logic>does_not_contain</logic>
                <text>${result}</text>
                <value>${expected}</value>
            </compareText>
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
    <deleteFile path="${system_temp_directory}/post_result"/>
</validationActionList>

```

You can also send additional information, such as a required username and password so you can track which user is providing the license key. The drawback of using this approach is that it requires an Internet connection.

## 2.4.5 Customize the Installer

On the Customization (Figure 2.10) and the Packaging screens, you can change the default installation settings to match your needs:

### User Interface Settings

- **Logo Image:** 48x48 GIF or PNG logo image that will be placed at the top right corner of the installer. If no image is specified, the default image will be used

- **Left Side Image:** 163x314 GIF or PNG image that will be placed at the left side of the installer in the Welcome and Installation Finished pages. If no image is specified, the default image will be used
- **Windows Executable Icon:** ICO file with an specific format -see below- to set the icon for the installer executable file on Windows systems.
- **Default Installation Language:** Default language for the installer
- **Allow Language Selection:** Allow language selection. If this setting is enabled, the user will be required to specify the language for the installation
- **Wrap License File Text:** Wrap license file text displayed to the user
- **Splash screen delay:** Extra display time of the splash screen

### Installer Settings

- **Require Install by Administrator:** Whether or not installation will require super user privileges (root on Linux, Administrator user on Windows and OS X). This setting will prevent the installer from running if the user is not root or Administrator on all operating systems except for OS X. In OS X, the regular authentication dialog window will be shown, asking the user for the administrator password so the installer can be run with root privileges
- **Installer Name:** Name of the installer created by the build process.
- **CDROM Files Directory:** Name of the directory that will contain the CDROM files created by the build process
- **Uninstaller Directory:** Directory where the uninstaller will be created
- **Compression Algorithm:** Compression algorithm that will be used to pack the files inside the installer. LZMA compression is available only on Linux, Windows and OS X platforms
- **Backup Directory:** Path to a directory where existing files will be stored if enableRollback property is enabled
- **Installation Scope:** Whether or not to install Start Menu and Desktop links for All Users or for the current user. If set to auto, it will be installed for All Users if the current user is an administrator or for the current user otherwise.

It is recommended that instead of using the above settings, you use the equivalent action lists, such as `<postInstallationActionList>` and `<preUninstallationActionList>`.

### Permissions

Please note that these options only take effect when creating installers for Unix platforms from Windows.

- **Default Unix File Permissions:** Default Unix file permissions in octal form
  - **Default Unix Directory Permissions:** Default Unix directory permissions in octal form
-

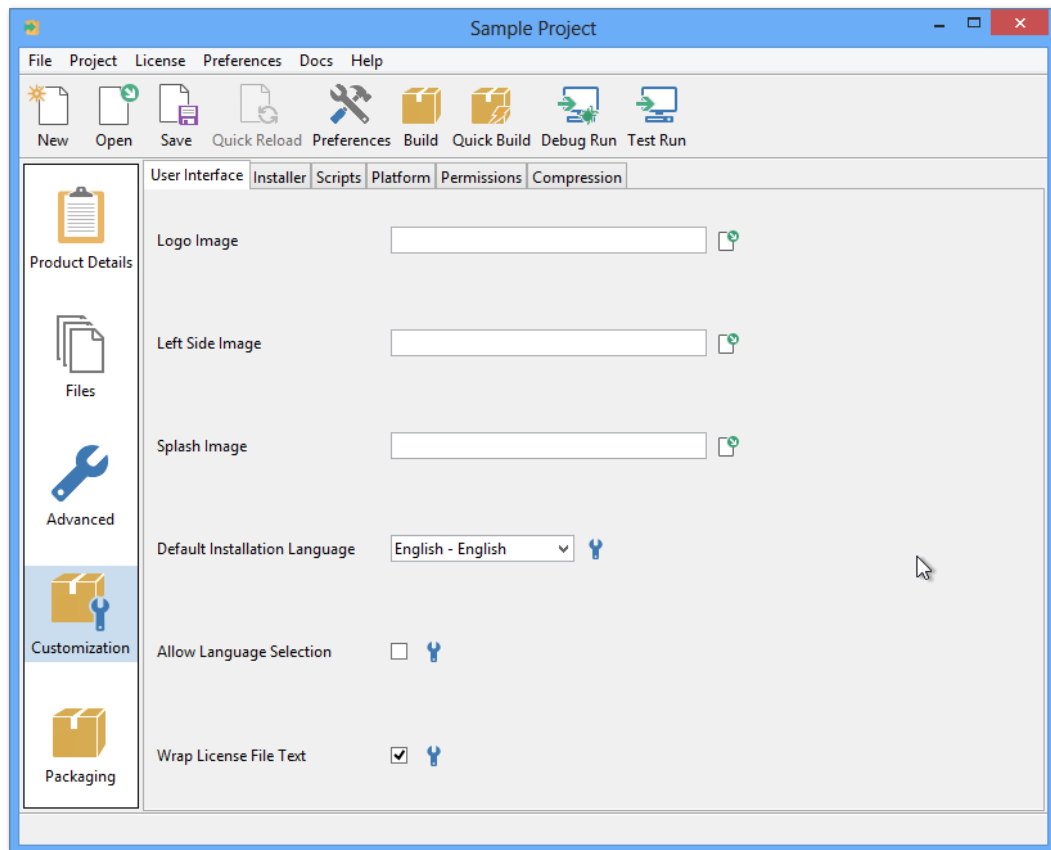


Figure 2.10: Customization screen

Check the Customization section for an in-depth customization guide.

All of these project-level configuration settings can be customized based on the platform using the `<platformOptionsList>` tag:

```
<platformOptionsList>
  <platformOptions>
    <platform>linux</platform>
    <leftImage>images/abc_linux_left.png</leftImage>
    <height>400</height>
  </platformOptions>
  <platformOptions>
    <postInstallationScript>${installdir}/linux-x64-script.sh</postInstallationScript>
    <platform>linux-x64</platform>
  </platformOptions>
  <platformOptions>
    <platform>solaris-sparc</platform>
    <leftImage>images/abc_solaris_sparc_left.png</leftImage>
  </platformOptions>
  <platformOptions>
    <platform>solaris-intel</platform>
    <leftImage>images/abc_solaris_intel_left.png</leftImage>
  </platformOptions>
  <platformOptions>
    <platform>windows</platform>
    <leftImage>images/abc_left.png</leftImage>
  </platformOptions>
  <platformOptions>
    <platform>osx</platform>
```

```

<leftImage>images/abc_osx_left.png</leftImage>
<height>500</height>
</platformOptions>
</platformOptionsList>

```

## 2.4.6 Packaging the Installer

You can now build the installer by pressing the "Build" button. This will take you to the Packaging screen and start the installer building process, as shown in Figure 2.11. If the build process succeeds, an installer named `sample-1.0-linux-installer.run` will be placed at the output directory (`C:\Users\user\Documents\InstallBuilder\projects` under Windows Vista and Windows 7, as explained earlier). If you are building a Windows installer, the file will be named `sample-1.0-windows-installer.exe`. If you are building a Mac OS X installer, its name will be `sample-1.0-osx-installer.app`. The Mac OS X installer binary will need to be packaged inside an archive file or disk image. If any problem is found, such as a file not being readable, a message will be displayed in red and the build will stop.

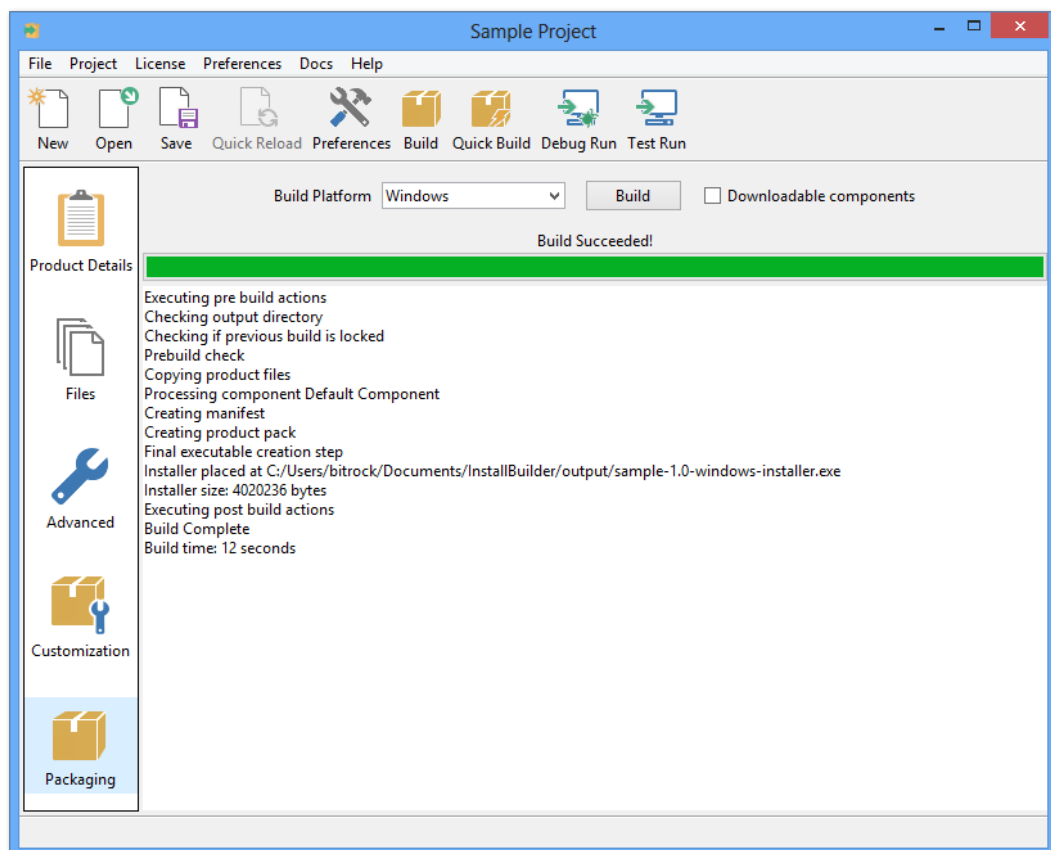


Figure 2.11: Building the installer

You can test the generated installer by pressing the "Test Run" button, as seen in Figure 2.12.

### What is the difference between Full Build and Quick build?

Creating an installer can take a long time if your product is hundreds of megabytes in size. You can use the Quick Build button to avoid rebuilding an installer from scratch if you are just making changes to installer-specific settings, such as license and readme files, the default installation path or logo image. It will also do incremental packaging of files that have been added or removed. This incremental package will increase the size of the installer, so it is recommended that you do a full build after development of the installer has completed and before release.

You can customize additional installer functionality as explained in the *Advanced Functionality* section.

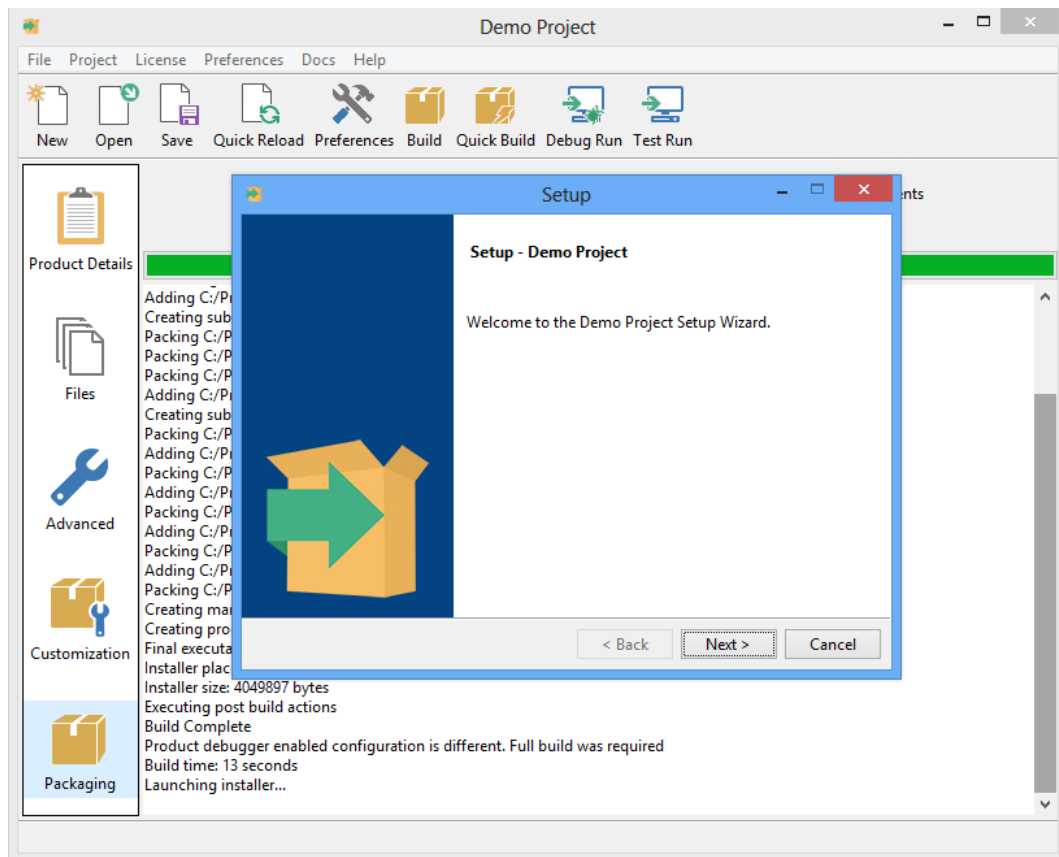


Figure 2.12: Testing the installer

## 2.4.7 CDROM Installers

It is possible to select a CDROM build target. In this case, a directory including a folder with common installer files and a setup file for each one of the supported architectures is created. This allows you to provide a single CDROM for all platforms, avoiding duplication of data.

This method is also the recommended approach for installers above 1GB, especially on Windows, where the UAC mechanism tries to copy the full installer to the %TEMP% folder before launching it, which results in very high delays when starting the installer. Another known issue on Windows is that executables above 1GB do not show their icons.

Using the cdrom-type build will create a set of lightweight installers for the configured platforms and the packed files separately.

To build a CDROM installer you just have to select `Multiplatform CDROM` as `Build Platform` in the `Packaging` screen when using the GUI mode or just provide `cdrom` as the target in the command line interface:

```
$> bin/builder build project.xml cdrom
```

InstallBuilder will then generate a set of folders, each of them containing the files to be burned in the CDROM disk. For example, for a 4 disk installer you will get:

```
$> ls output/

sample-1.0-cdrom
sample-1.0-cdrom.1
sample-1.0-cdrom.2
sample-1.0-cdrom.3
```

Where the name of the folders is defined through the `<cdromDirectory>` project property. The first disk is contained in the folder named `sample-1.0-cdrom` and, apart from the packed files, it will contain the installers for the different platforms. The other folders will just contain the rest of the files to install. When installing the generated multidisk installer, InstallBuilder will automatically ask for the next disk when needed.

A CDROM build is configured through the below project properties:

- `<cdromFirstDiskSize>`: The size (in bytes) of the first CDROM (default value: 650000000). This tag will allow you to reserve some space in the first disk to include presentations, images or video tutorials without affecting the size of the rest of the disks. If you don't need this extra space in the first disk you can just set it to the same value as the `<cdromDiskSize>` property.
- `<cdromDiskSize>`: The size (in bytes) of the remaining CDROMS (default value: 700000000)
- `<cdromPlatforms>`: Space-separated list of platforms that the CDROM installer will support. A launcher binary will be added in the first disk for each of these platforms.
- `<cdromDirectory>`: Name of the directory that will contain the CDROM files created by the build process (defaults to `${project.shortName}-${project.version}-cdrom`)
- `<compressPackedFiles>`: Compress files as if they were being packed into the installer file (defaults to `0`). Setting this option to `true` results in the creation of a `dist` file that has packed all the files inside it. It usually achieves better compression rates.

---

### Creating DVD disks

In case of DVD disks, the appropriate values for the `<cdromFirstDiskSize>` and `<cdromDiskSize>` tags are:

```
<project>
...
<cdromFirstDiskSize>4650000000</cdromFirstDiskSize>
<cdromDiskSize>4700000000</cdromDiskSize>
...
</project>
```

---

### Distributing big installers in other media formats

If your product is distributed in other media formats such as a USB drive or SD card you can still use the CDROM-type build. You just need to set a `<cdromFirstDiskSize>` above your required disk space so InstallBuilder does not split the data into multiple disks. As internally calculating the required disk space for each disk does not currently take into account the compression gain, a safe value to set would be twice the size of your files.

In the case of a USB bundling your 10GB of files:

```
<project>
...
<cdromFirstDiskSize>20000000000</cdromFirstDiskSize>
...
</project>
```

---

#### 2.4.7.1 How are disks on multidisk installers detected

A common error while testing the multidisk installers is not being able to detect the next disk when the installer requests it. To understand why this happens, it is important to understand how InstallBuilder detects that the inserted disk is valid:

- 1) When the unpack process starts, InstallBuilder looks for the `dist` file (or folder depending on the value of the `<compressPackedFiles>` property) in its parent directory and starts unpacking the files
  - 2) When InstallBuilder finds a file that requires a new disk during the unpack process, a dialog prompts for it.
-

3) After the new disk is inserted and the user accepts the dialog, InstallBuilder looks for a `dist` file in the same location of the previous one. If InstallBuilder cannot find it, it will report that the disk is incorrect and will ask again for the disk.

The most common mistake in this step is to rename the `dist` or to move it to another directory in the new disk.

4) If the `dist` file is correctly placed and InstallBuilder finds it, it will then look for the next file to unpack. If the `dist` file does not contain the requested file, InstallBuilder will report that it cannot find the disk as in the previous step.

This error may occur because the wrong disk number was inserted. If this is not the case and you are not using `<compressPackedFiles>1</compressPackedFiles>`, the filenames inside the `dist` folder may have been shortened by the burning software. For example, a Joilet file system will only allow you to write up to 64 characters filenames. Using `<compressPackedFiles>1</compressPackedFiles>` or properly burning the disk to allow long filenames will solve the problem.

5) Once the new file is found, the installation process continues, requesting a new disk if necessary.

## 2.5 Sample installers bundled with InstallBuilder

InstallBuilder provides several sample projects to help you get started with building your installer.

The welcome screen in the InstallBuilder GUI shows a list of the available projects. These projects will be automatically loaded when clicked:

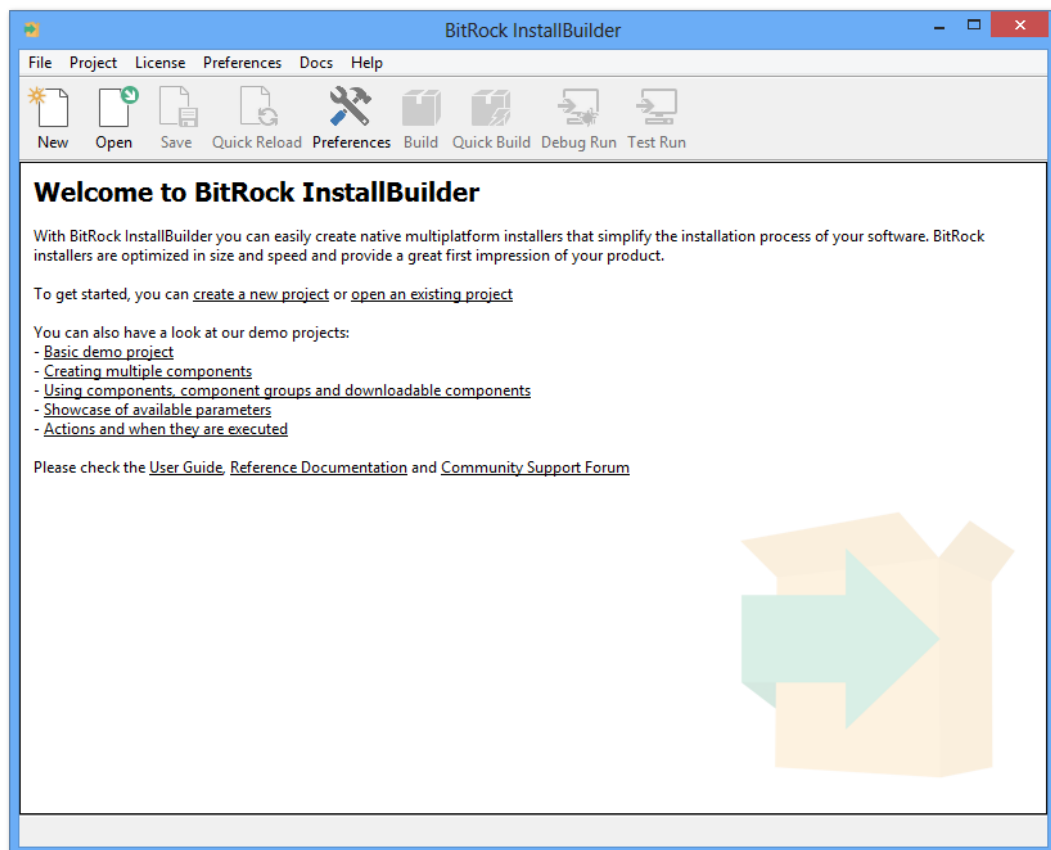


Figure 2.13: List of example projects in GUI

Each of these projects can be opened, built and tested without applying any changes. You can also try modifying them to see how the solutions shown in the examples can be reworked to suit your product's needs.



### 2.5.1 Basic demo project

This project provides a simple, ready to use installer that will:

- Prompt the user to accept a license agreement.
- Display a page to select the installation directory.
- Install the packed files.
- Show an optional README file with information about the installation, selectable through a checkbox in the final page.

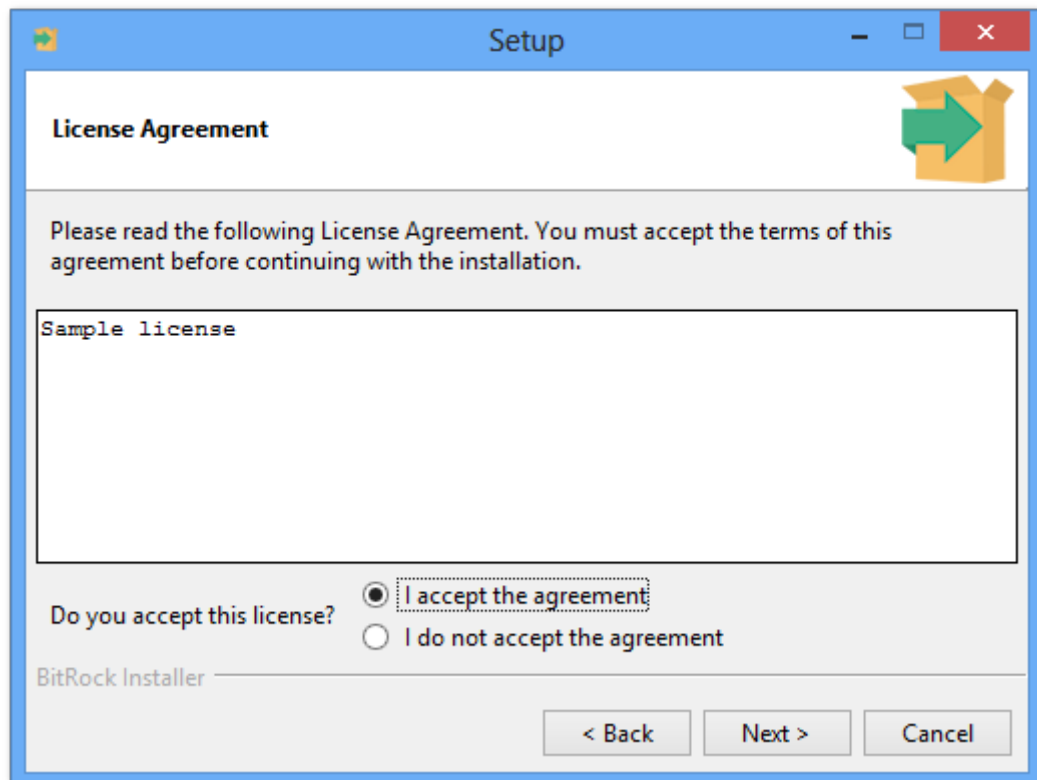


Figure 2.14: Demo project's sample license

The demo project includes files for multiple platforms. Depending on the platform built, it will pack different sets of files.

### 2.5.2 Components, component groups and downloadable components

This project demonstrates how components and component groups can be used to package a complex application. It demonstrates how component groups can be used to organize common files and functionality. Deselecting or selecting the parent parameter group will also affect the installation of its child components.

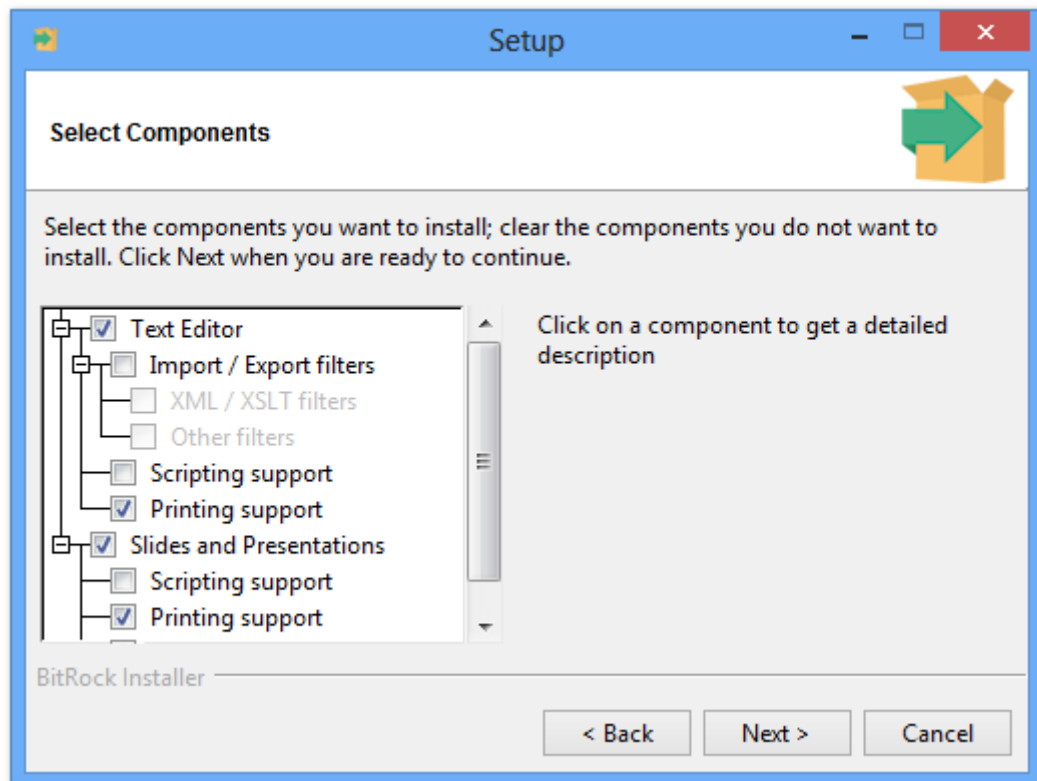


Figure 2.15: Component selection for structured components

The project will help you to understand how parent and child components interact. Selecting the **Text Editor** component will cause some of its child components (**Printing support** by default) to be installed while **Slides and Presentations** will enable **Printing support** and **Projector support** by default.

Deselecting **Import / Export filters** causes all of its children to automatically be deselected. Selecting **Import / Export filters** again will cause the selection status of **XML / XSLT filters** and **Other filters** to be restored.

Additional details regarding components and child components can be found in the component groups section of the documentation.

This example project also shows how downloadable components work and how to implement more advanced functionality such as mirror selection for downloads. Several components are marked as `component.downloadable`, which means that they will be created as separate files when built with the downloadable components flag enabled.

More information about creating installers with downloadable components can be found in downloadable components section of the manual.

---

#### Downloadable components and being able to run the installer

When building the project with the downloadable components option enabled during build, the installer will try to download the created components from `mirror1.example.com` or `mirror2.example.com` and will fail.

In order to test that the downloadable components functionality is working, copy the generated packages from `components/componentgroupsexample-1.0` under the output directory to a web server (you can easily setup a web server using LAMPStack (Linux), WAMPStack (Windows) or MAMPStack (OS X) from [BitNami.org](http://bitnami.org)) and modify the link in the `<componentsUrl>` in demo project:

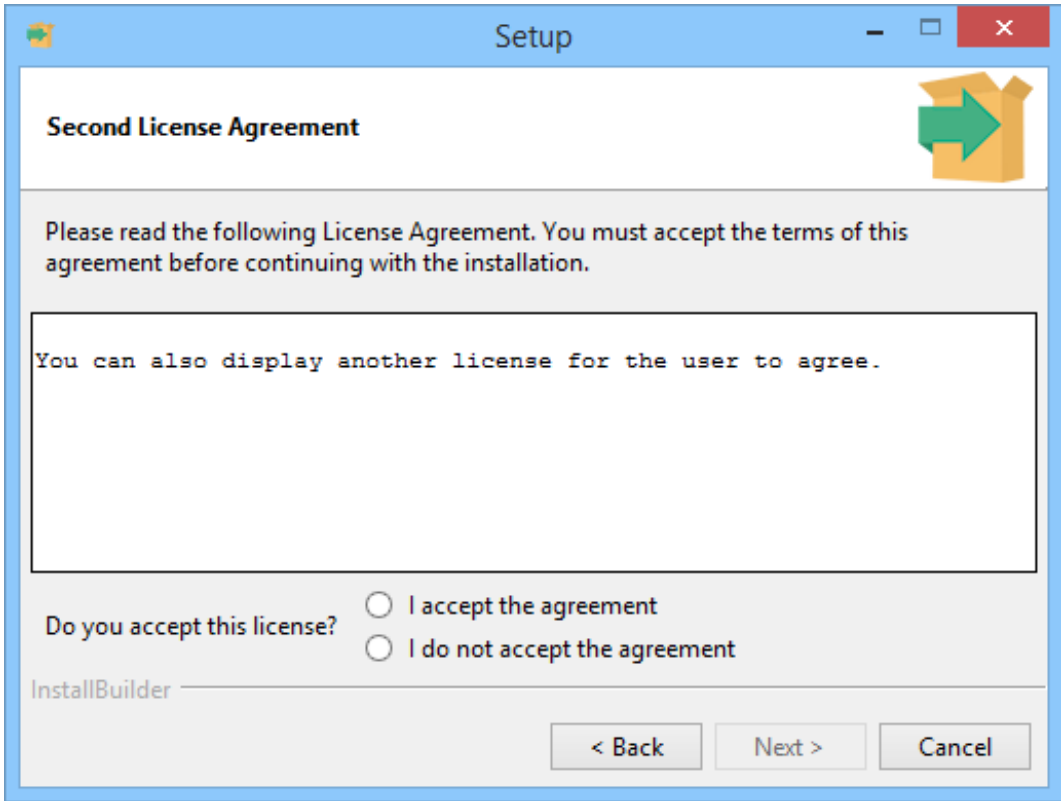
```
<componentsUrl>http://localhost:8080/components/componentgroupsexample-1.0/</componentsUrl>
```

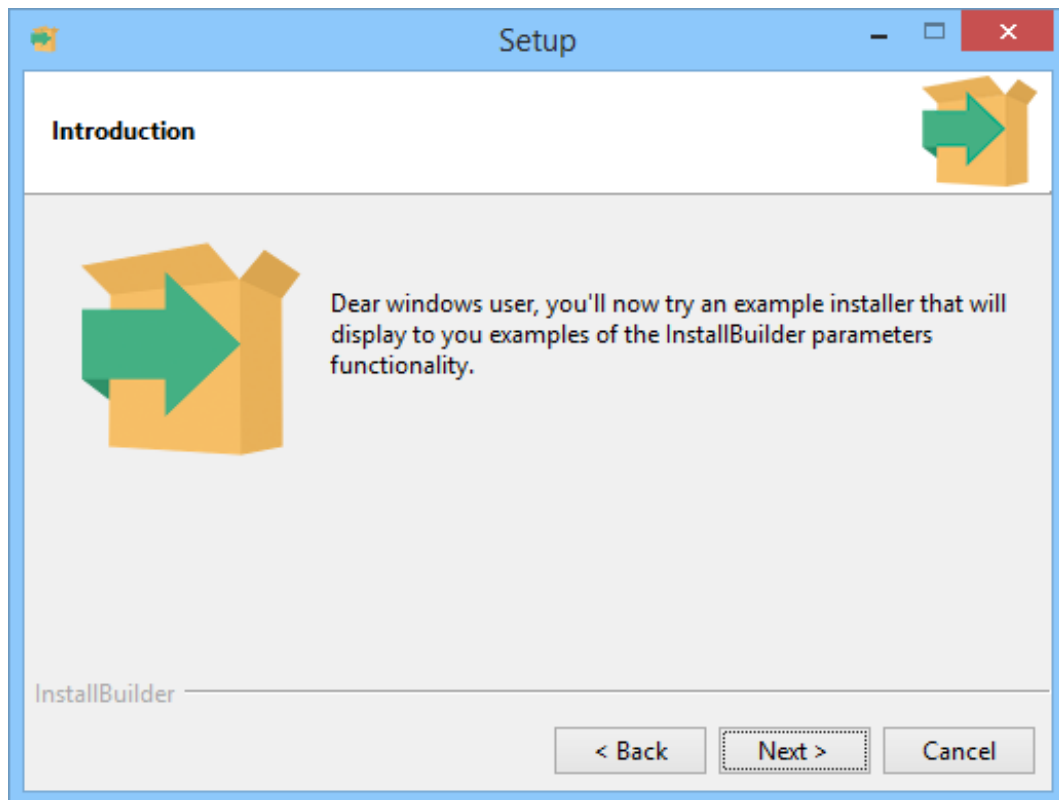
---

### 2.5.3 Showcase of available parameters

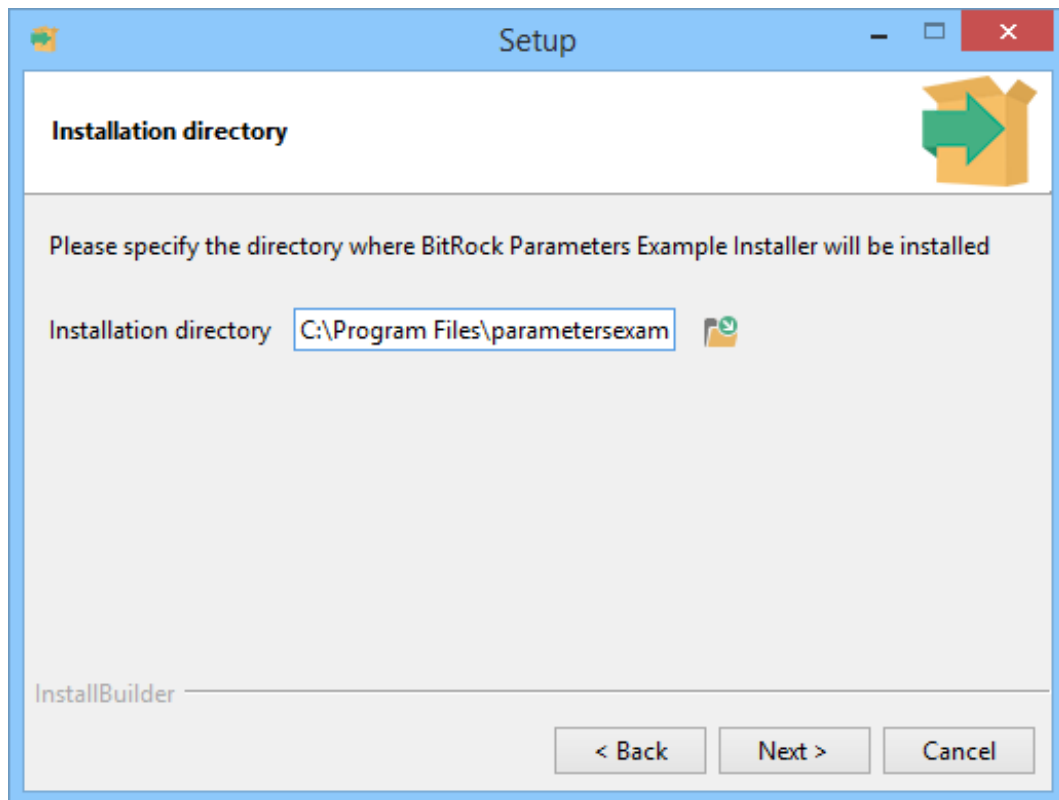
This project shows what types of parameters are available and how you can use them to retrieve information from the user. It explains how to combine them using parameter groups to create more complex GUIs.

The rest of the section provides examples of the available parameters, including their XML code and how they look in the GUI:

Additional license dialog

<pre>&lt;licenseParameter&gt;   &lt;title&gt;Second License Agreement&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;name&gt;other_license&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;file&gt;docs/otherLicense.txt&lt;/file&gt;   &lt;wrapText&gt;1&lt;/wrapText&gt; &lt;/licenseParameter&gt;</pre>

**Show a text and image with a <labelParameter>**

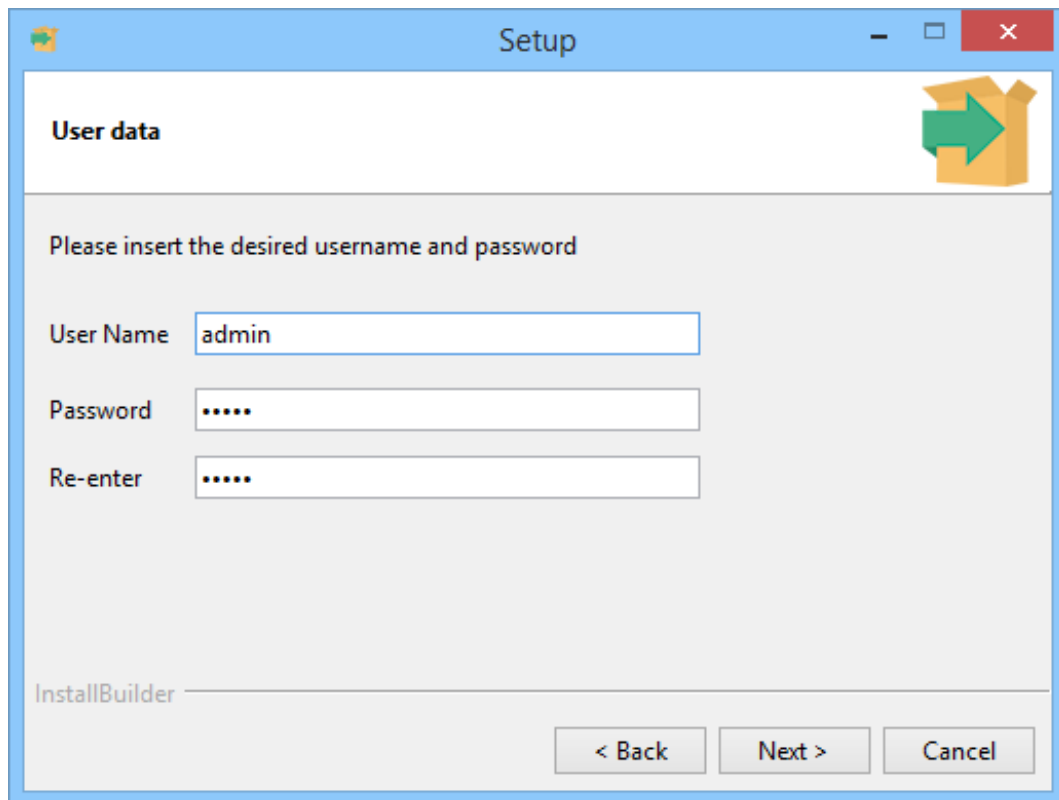
```
<labelParameter>
  <name>non_linux_user</name>
  <title>Introduction</title>
  <description>Dear ${platform_name} user, you'll now try an example installer that
will display to you examples of the InstallBuilder parameters functionality.</
  description>
  <image>img/icon.png</image>
</labelParameter>
```

**Installation directory selection with a <directoryParameter>**

```

<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <description>Installation directory</description>
  <explanation>Please specify the directory where
  ${project.fullName} will be installed</explanation>
  <insertAfter>welcome_label</insertAfter>
  <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
  <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
  <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
  <mustExist>0</mustExist>
</directoryParameter>

```

**Group multiple fields using a <parameterGroup>**

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Setup". Inside, there is a section titled "User data" with a green arrow icon pointing right. Below this, a message says "Please insert the desired username and password". There are three input fields: "User Name" containing "admin", "Password" with five dots, and "Re-enter" with five dots. At the bottom left, it says "InstallBuilder". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "< Back", "Next >", and "Cancel".

Setup

**User data**

Please insert the desired username and password

User Name

Password

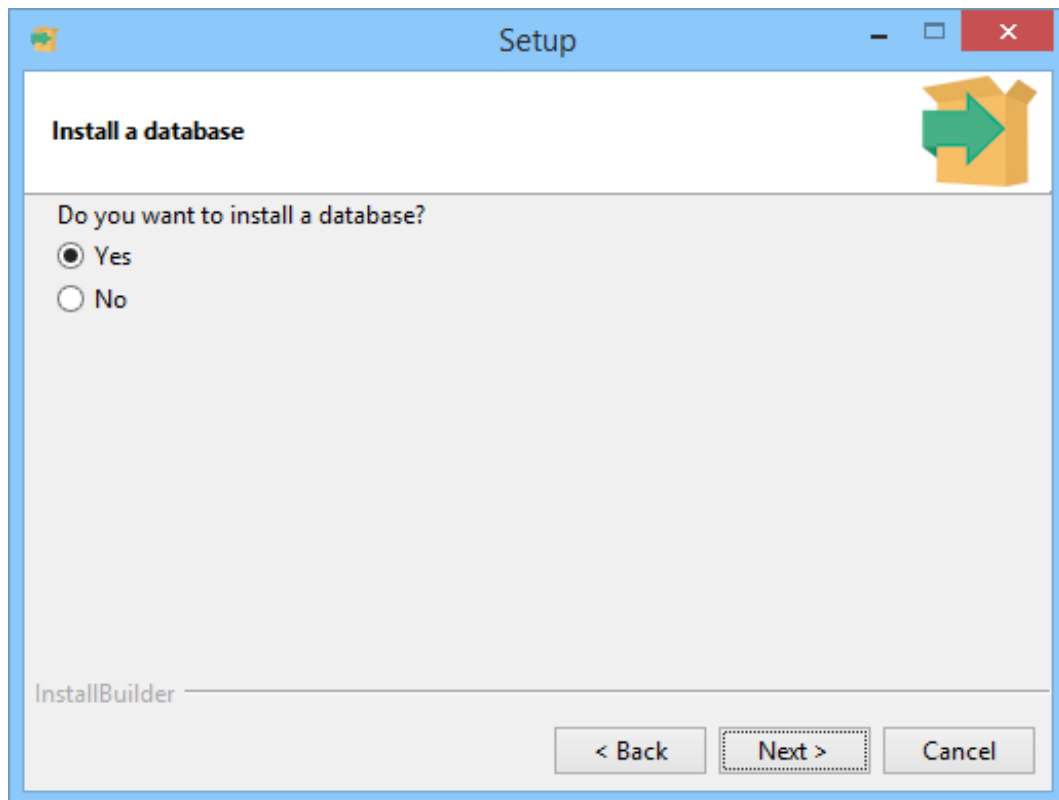
Re-enter

InstallBuilder

< Back   Next >   Cancel

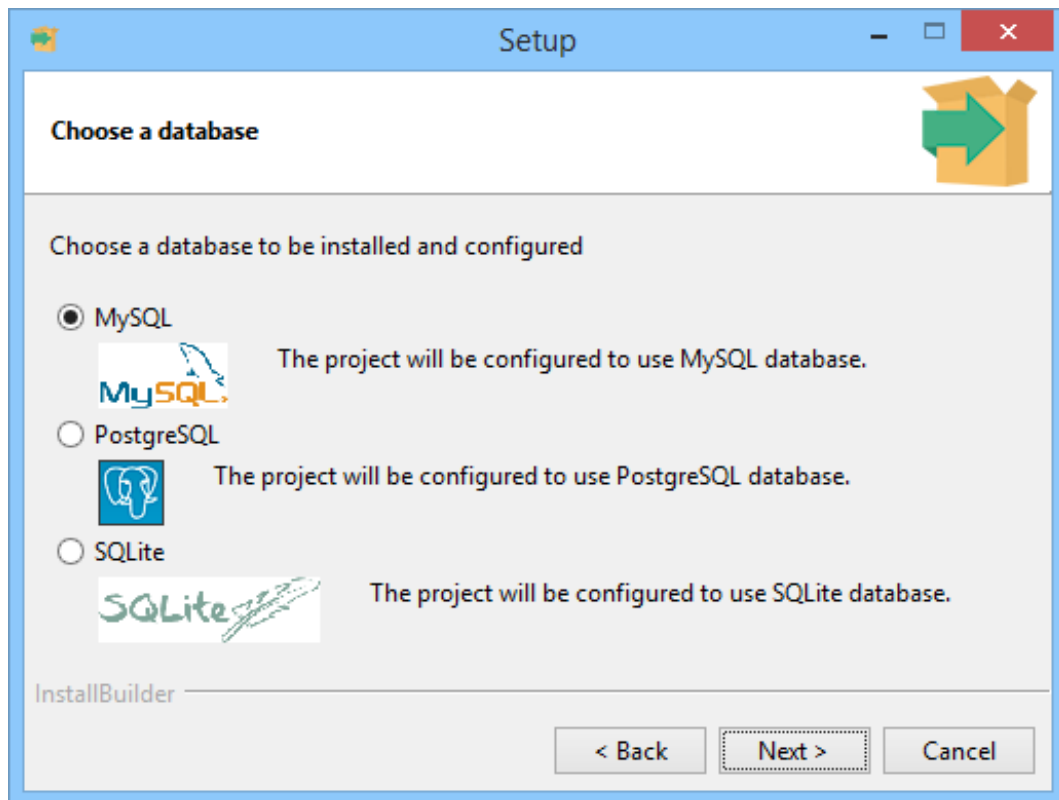
**Group multiple fields using a <parameterGroup>**

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>user_data</name>
  <title>User data</title>
  <explanation>Please insert the desired username and password</explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>username</name>
      <description>User Name</description>
      <value>admin</value>
      <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
    </stringParameter>
    <passwordParameter>
      <name>userpasswd</name>
      <title>User Password</title>
      <description>Password</description>
      <descriptionRetype>Re-enter</descriptionRetype>
      <!-- throw an error if password is empty -->
      <validationActionList>
        <throwError>
          <text>You need to provide a non-empty password</text>
          <ruleList>
            <compareText text="{userpasswd}"
              logic="equals" value="" />
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </validationActionList>
    </passwordParameter>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
```

**Ask if a database should be installed with a <booleanParameter>**

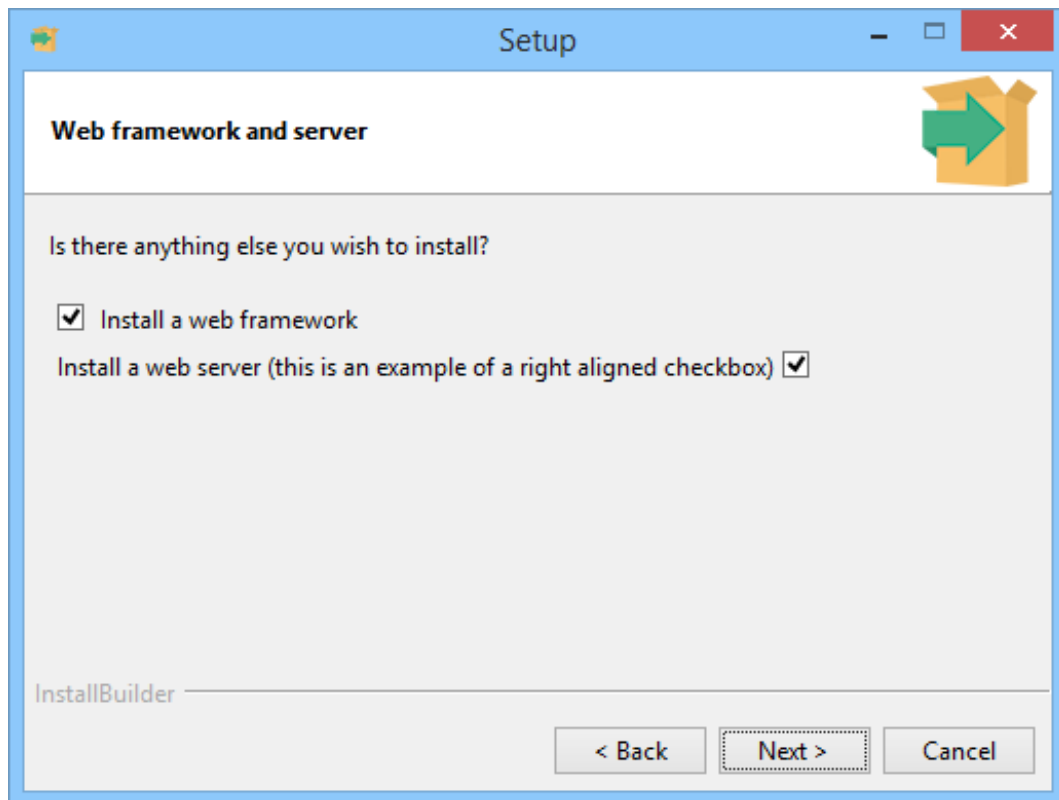
```
<booleanParameter>
  <name>install_db</name>
  <title>Install a database</title>
  <description>Do you want to install a database?</description>
  <default>1</default>
</booleanParameter>
```



**Select the preferred database using radiobuttons**

**Select the preferred database using radiobuttons**

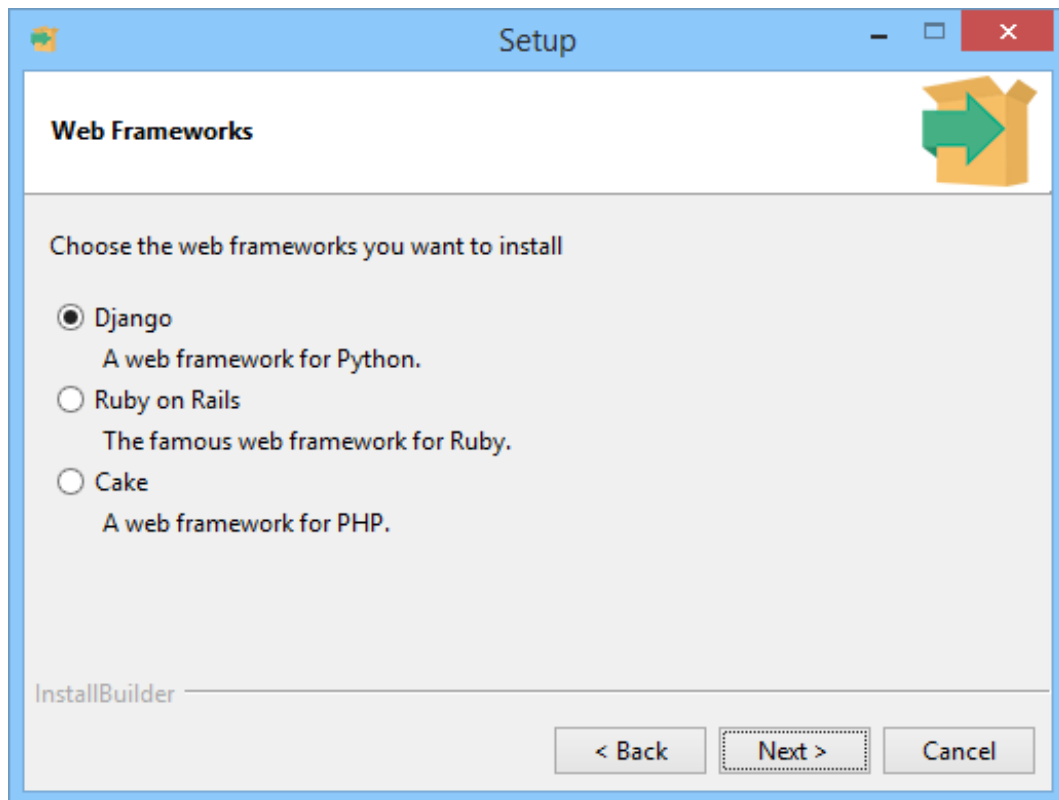
```
<choiceParameter>
  <name>preferred_database</name>
  <title>Choose a database</title>
  <explanation>Choose a database to be installed
and configured</explanation>
  <default>mysql</default>
  <cliOptionName>${project.shortName}_database</cliOptionName>
  <displayType>radiobuttons</displayType>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <text>MySQL</text>
      <image>img/mysql.png</image>
      <value>mysql</value>
      <description>The project will be configured
to use MySQL database.</description>
    </option>
    <option>
      <text>PostgreSQL</text>
      <image>img/postgres.png</image>
      <value>postgres</value>
      <description>The project will be configured
to use PostgreSQL database.</description>
    </option>
    <option>
      <text>SQLite</text>
      <image>img/sqlite.png</image>
      <value>sqlite</value>
      <description>The project will be configured
to use SQLite database.</description>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</choiceParameter>
```

**Multiple <booleanParameter> parameters in a <parameterGroup>**

```

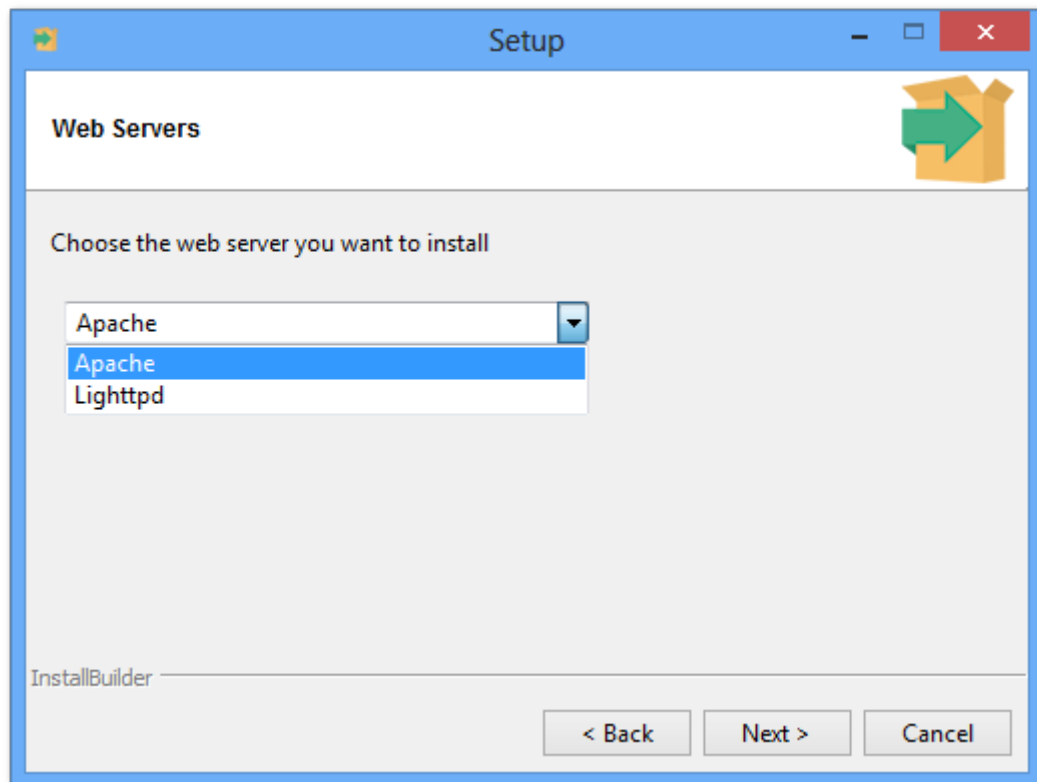
<parameterGroup>
  <name>apps_and_server</name>
  <title>Web framework and server</title>
  <explanation>Is there anything else you wish to install?</explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <booleanParameter>
      <name>install_webframework</name>
      <value>1</value>
      <description>Install a web framework</description>
      <displayStyle>checkbox-left</displayStyle>
    </booleanParameter>
    <booleanParameter>
      <name>install_server</name>
      <value>1</value>
      <description>Install a web server (this is an example of a
right aligned checkbox)</description>
      <displayStyle>checkbox-right</displayStyle>
    </booleanParameter>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>

```

**Choose the preferred framework using radiobuttons**

**Choose the preferred framework using radiobuttons**

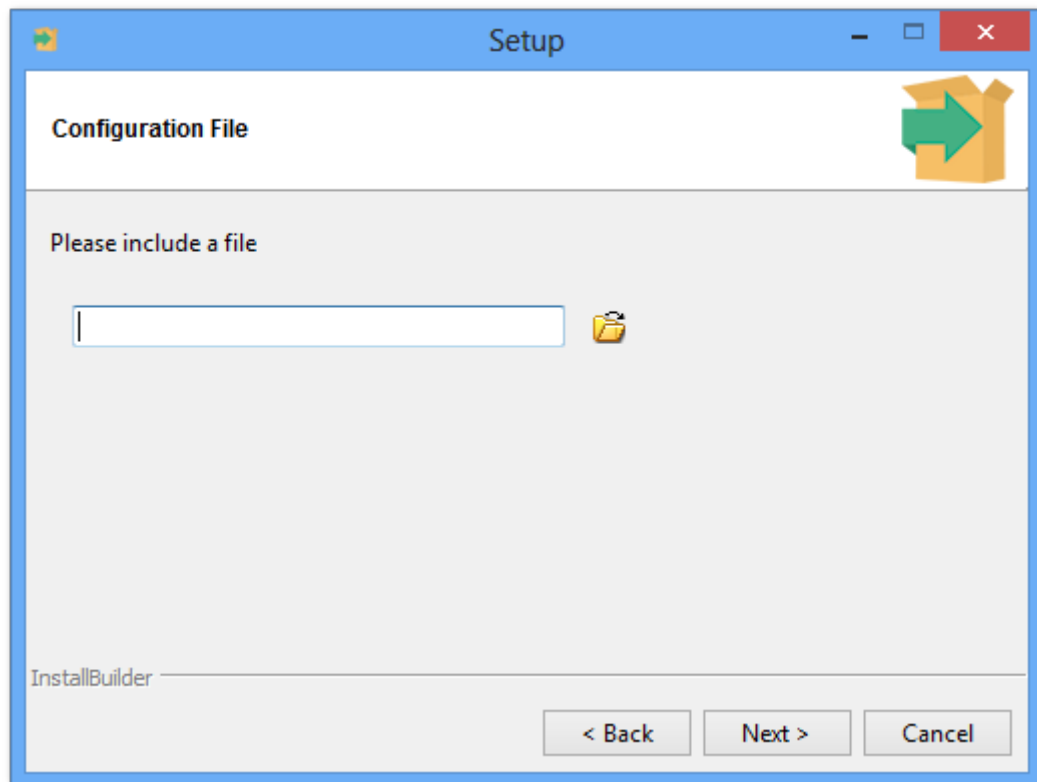
```
<choiceParameter>
  <name>preferred_apps</name>
  <title>Web Frameworks</title>
  <explanation>Choose the web frameworks you want to install</explanation>
  <default>django</default>
  <cliOptionName>${project.shortName}_apps</cliOptionName>
  <displayType>radiobuttons</displayType>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <text>Django</text>
      <value>django</value>
      <description>A web framework for Python.</description>
    </option>
    <option>
      <text>Ruby on Rails</text>
      <value>ror</value>
      <description>The famous web framework for Ruby.</description>
    </option>
    <option>
      <text>Cake</text>
      <value>cake</value>
      <description>A web framework
for PHP.</description>
    </option>
  </optionList>
  <ruleList>
    <compareValues>
      <value1>${install_webframework}</value1>
      <logic>equals</logic>
      <value2>1</value2>
    </compareValues>
  </ruleList>
</choiceParameter>
```

**Choose between multiple web server using a combobox**

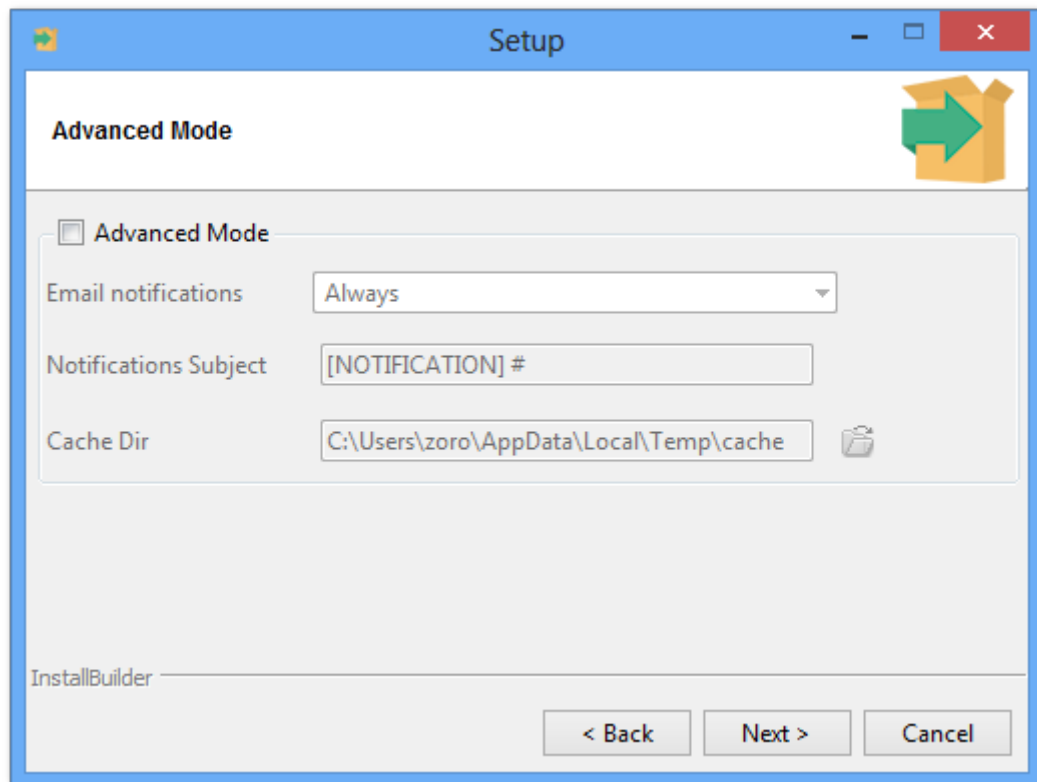
```

<choiceParameter>
  <name>preferred_server</name>
  <title>Web Servers</title>
  <explanation>Choose the web server you want to install </explanation>
  <default>apache</default>
  <cliOptionName>${project.shortName}_server</cliOptionName>
  <displayType>combobox</displayType>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <text>Apache</text>
      <value>apache</value>
    </option>
    <option>
      <text>Lighttpd</text>
      <value>light</value>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

**Choose a file using a <fileParameter>**

```
<fileParameter>
  <name>chooseAFile</name>
  <title>Configuration File</title>
  <explanation>Please include a file</explanation>
  <mustExist>1</mustExist>
</fileParameter>
```

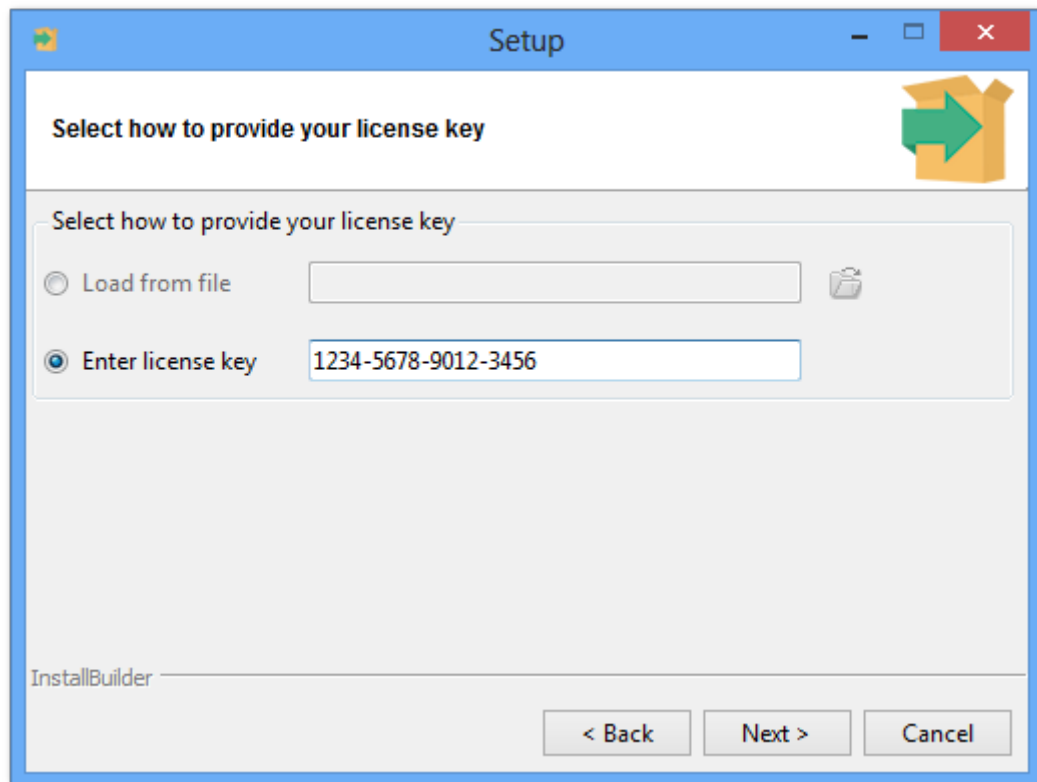
Using a `<booleanParameterGroup>` to show optional configuration options

```

<booleanParameterGroup>
  <name>advanced</name>
  <description>Advanced Mode</description>
  <parameterList>
    <choiceParameter>
      <name>emailNotifications</name>
      <description>Email notifications</description>
      <value>always</value>
      <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
      <displayType>combobox</displayType>
      <ordering>default</ordering>
      <width>40</width>
      <optionList>
        <option description="Always send notifications"
          text="Always" value="always" />
        <option description="Never send notifications"
          text="Never" value="never" />
      </optionList>
    </choiceParameter>
    <stringParameter name="subject"
      description="Notifications Subject"
      value="[NOTIFICATION] #" />
    <directoryParameter name="cacheDir"
      description="Cache Dir"
      value="${system_temp_directory}/cache" />
  </parameterList>
</booleanParameterGroup>

```



**Using a <choiceParameterGroup> to show multiple options for registration**

```

<choiceParameterGroup>
  <name>keyChoice</name>
  <description>Select how to provide your license key </description>
  <parameterList>
    <fileParameter
      name="keyFile"
      description="Load from file"/>
    <stringParameter
      name="licenseText"
      description="Enter license key"/>
  </parameterList>
</choiceParameterGroup>

```

**<booleanParameterGroup> page with embedded <choiceParameterGroup>**

Setup

**Register Installation**

☒ Register Installation

Username

Select how to provide your license key

☐ Load from file

☒ Enter license key

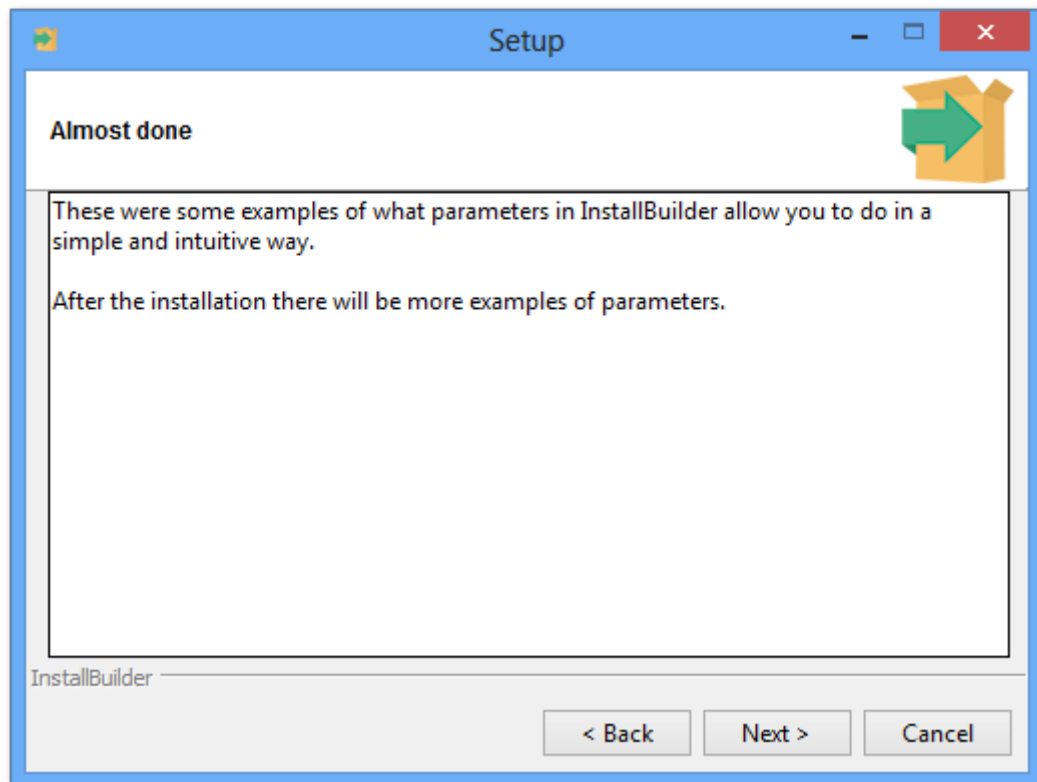
InstallBuilder

< Back   Next >   Cancel

```

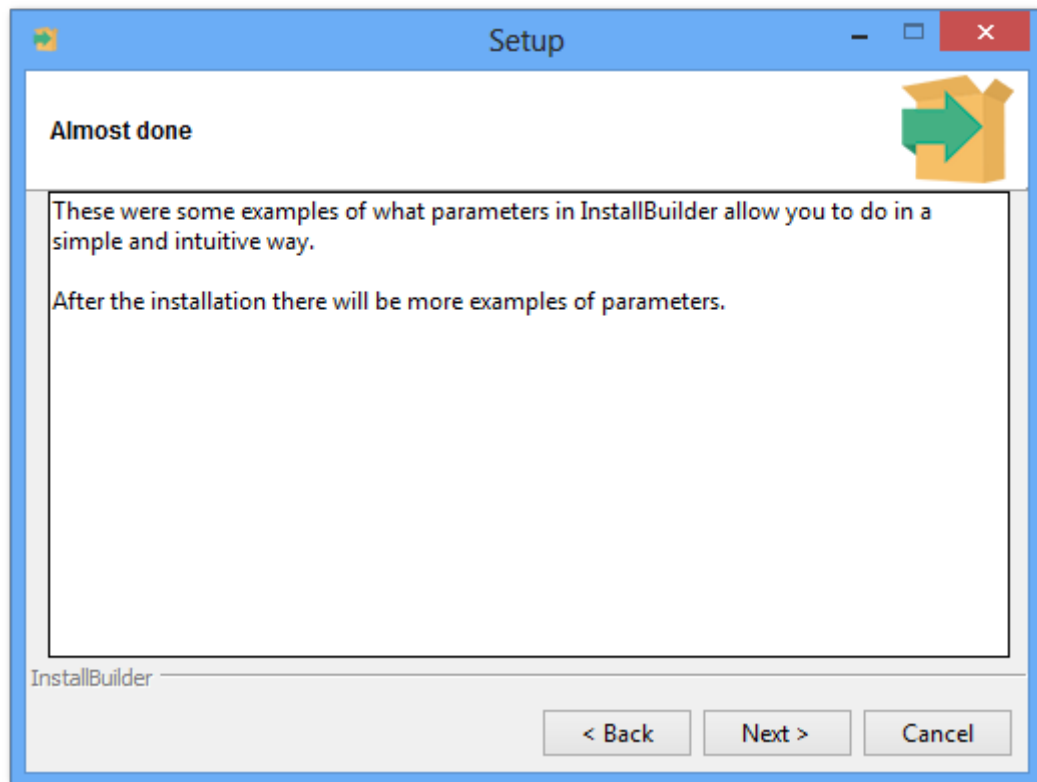
<booleanParameterGroup>
  <name>registerNested</name>
  <description>Register Installation</description>
  <value>1</value>
  <validationType>ifSelected</validationType>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>registerUser</name>
      <description>Username</description>
    </stringParameter>
    <choiceParameterGroup>
      <name>registerKeyChoice</name>
      <description>Select how to provide your license key</description>
      <parameterList>
        <fileParameter>
          name="registerKeyFile"
          description="Load from file"/>
        <stringParameter>
          name="registerLicenseText"
          description="Enter license key"/>
        </parameterList>
      </choiceParameterGroup>
    </parameterList>
  </booleanParameterGroup>

```

**Show multiple lines of text with an <infoParameter>**

```
<infoParameter>
  <name>final_review</name>
  <title>Almost done</title>
  <value>These were some examples of what parameters in InstallBuilder
allow you to do in a simple and intuitive way.

After the installation there will be more examples of parameters.</value>
</infoParameter>
```

**Show a clickable link using a <linkParameter>**

```

<linkParameter>
  <name>open_browser</name>
  <title>Open Browser</title>
  <explanation>You can also add parameters to be shown after the installation is  ←
    complete.
Here's a link parameter:</explanation>
  <insertAfter>installation</insertAfter>
  <clickedActionList>
    <launchBrowser>
      <url>http://www.bitrock.com</url>
    </launchBrowser>
  </clickedActionList>
  <description>Open BitRock Website</description>
</linkParameter>

```

**2.5.4 Actions and when they are executed**

This project shows when actions are run during build, before, during and after the installation, uninstallation and actions related to parameters.

Actions run during various stages of installation and uninstallation and can be set for both project and its individual components. More information about when certain actions are run and their execution order can be found in the action list section.

**2.5.5 Creating multiple components**

This is a basic project with multiple components and shows how components can be put in separate files.

It shows how the `<include>` tag can be used to extract components into external files, which can be reused in multiple projects. You can use this approach to create reusable features such as `Apache`, `MySQL` or `Tomcat` and use them as construction blocks in your projects.

You can find more information about the `<include>` directive in the adding components from external files section.

## 2.6 Additional Support Resources

In addition to the current document, you can find additional information regarding developing with InstallBuilder in the following resources:

- A Community Support Forum found at [answers.bitrock.com](http://answers.bitrock.com)
- A Relax-NG schema (`InstallBuilder.rng`) is bundled in the `docs` directory. It can be used with code editors to validate the code being written.
- We aim to provide useful and timely support services. If you have any questions or suggestions, please do not hesitate to contact us online at <http://installbuilder.bitrock.com/contact-support.html> or email us at [support@bitrock.com](mailto:support@bitrock.com)

## Chapter 3

# Architecture

### 3.1 Installer basics

#### 3.1.1 Structure of a Generic Installer

At a high level, you can think of an installer as three related components (resources, logic and user input) delivered together as part of an installation package.

- **Installation Resources**

These are the objects that will be bundled in the installer to be delivered to the end-user machine. They may be executable files for your software, SQL scripts or image files.

- **Installation Logic**

The installation logic specifies a set of actions that will be performed on the resources, such as copying files around and substituting values in them or the system itself, starting or stopping services or creating a new user. The installation logic can be conditional, based on a set of rules that can take into account multiple factors such as the operating system the installer is running on or which options the end-user selected.

- **External Input**

Often, you want to make the installation logic depend on input from the end user, such as the installation directory or the TCP/IP port the application should listen to. The user input is usually collected through a GUI frontend, but could also be provided using command line options passed to the installer or written in a response file.

- **Installation Package**

The installation package contains the installation logic and resources. It can be a self-contained executable or a native package, such as an RPM or Debian package.

The following section explains how the previous concepts are implemented within InstallBuilder.

#### 3.1.2 Structure of a BitRock Installer

- **Installation Resources**

InstallBuilder supports multiple types of resources. The most important ones are files and directories that will be bundled when the installer is created, but also supports desktop and start menu shortcuts. Files and directories get assigned to folders, which specify a location in the target machine. The location does not need to be fixed and can be changed at runtime. Installer resources can be further organized in components that specify multiple folders and shortcuts that go together. In addition to the resources that will be installed in the end user's system, there are resources for customizing the installer itself, such as graphics, language files and descriptions of the installer screens.

- **Installation Logic**

InstallBuilder allows controlling the flow of the installation using actions and rules. InstallBuilder includes built-in actions for the most common functionality, such as creating users, starting services or changing file permissions, but it is also possible to invoke external programs. Actions can be run at multiple points during the installer lifecycle, such as at build time, startup time or when certain UI screens are displayed. Rules can be attached to these actions to decide which of them should be executed at runtime based on the external input.

- **External Input**

InstallBuilder presents a set of pages to collect user input in addition to a command line interface. It is also possible to retrieve environment variables or information about the OS in which the installer is running.

- **Installation Package**

By default, InstallBuilder generates single-file, self-contained installers which can easily be distributed over the Internet. The end user just needs to download the file, and double-click or execute it from a console prompt in order to launch the installer. It is also possible to generate multiplatform CDROM/DVD installers and native Linux packages, such as Debian and RPM. For native packages, the end result of the build process is an .rpm or .deb package that contains the installation files and a small binary that encapsulates the installation logic and will be run automatically at package install time. Installation values are fixed at build time for native packages and there is no external input collected at runtime.

---

## Chapter 4

# Variables

### 4.1 Basic Syntax

Installer variables are an important concept in InstallBuilder. They allow you to store user input, temporary values, establish flags and use that information at different points during the build and installation processes. There are a number of built-in variables and you are also able to create them directly. The basic way of creating or changing the value of a variable in InstallBuilder is using the `<setInstallerVariable>` action:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="foo" value="bar"/>
```

The action above will store the value `bar` in the variable `foo`. Once you have defined the variable, its value can be accessed in any other part of the project as `${foo}`. If you require a variable that you are creating at install time to be also available in the uninstallation steps, you have to set the optional `persist` attribute to `1`:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="foo" value="bar" persist="1"/>
```

Variable names must not contain characters other than digits, letters, dashes and underscores. There is only one exception to this rule: it is possible to use a variable as part of the name of another variable (as long as it is a valid one).

For example, if you have a variable `foo` with a value of `bar`, then:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="${foo}" value="Hello"/>
```

will be equivalent to:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="bar" value="Hello"/>
```

In addition to regular variables, parameters can also be accessed as variables. One good example is the well-known `install dir` variable which is in reality a `<directoryParameter>`:

```
<runProgram program="${installdir}/myApplication.run" programArguments="--install ←  
"/>
```

Some additional information to take into account when working with variables is:

- Curly brackets are mandatory: Although the syntax is similar to the notation used in Unix bash-like shells to access variables, it is not the same. If `$foo` is used instead of `${foo}`, it will not be resolved but treated as a literal string.
- Accessing an undefined variable will not throw an error. Instead, if the variable name was `bar`, the value will be set to `***unknown variable bar***`
- Variables are not case sensitive. This means that you can use any of the following variants, `${variablename}`, `${VariableName}` or `${VARIABLENAME}` and obtain the same value in all cases.



## 4.2 Modifier Suffixes

When accessing a variable, some operations can be specified through the usage of special suffixes:

- `${installdir.dos}`: If the variable contains a path, this modifier returns the DOS-style name for it. This will only take effect if the file exists and the platform is Windows. This is particularly useful when the value of the variable may contain spaces and you need to pass it as an argument to a program. Using the `.dos` suffix will remove the need of quoting the path as spaces will be removed. Take into account that using `.dos` over a path with forward slashes won't convert them to backslashes.
- `${installdir.unix}`: If the variable contains a path, it will be converted to a Unix-style path and all of the backslashes will be translated into forward slashes. This will only take effect if the platform is Windows.
- `${myPassword.password}`: The `.password` suffix is used to mark a variable as a password to be hidden in the logs. This way, you can use a password as an argument in a `<runProgram>` action and log the execution without showing the plain text password. For example, the following action:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="pass" value="myhiddenpassword!" />
<runProgram>
  <program>mysql</program>
  <programArguments>-u root --password=${pass.password}</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

will be logged as:

```
Executing mysql -u root --password=****
Script exit code: 0
```

Please note this suffix is only considered when resolving variables that will be used when writing to the installation log or in the error messages thrown by the `<runProgram>` and `<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>` actions. For example, `<logMessage>` will interpret the suffix when logging its information but `<writeFile>` will ignore it.

- `${myVariable.escape_backslashes}`: This will escape all of the backslashes in the text stored in the variable. It is especially useful for substitution of values in Java property files.
- `${installdir.dos.unix.escape_backslashes}`: The modifiers can be combined.

The below table summarizes all the suffixes:

Original value	Modifier	Resolved value
alongfilename.txt	<code>\${installdir.dos}</code>	ALONGF~1.TXT
c:\Program Files\myFile.exe	<code>\${installdir.unix}</code>	c:/Program Files/myFile.exe
c:\Program Files\myFile.exe	<code>\${myVariable.escape_backslashes}</code>	c:\\Program Files\\myFile.exe
c:\Program Files\myLongFile.exe	<code>\${installdir.dos.unix}</code>	C:/PROGRA~1/MYLONG~1.EXE

---

**Convert forward slashes to backslashes**

InstallBuilder does not have a modifier suffix to convert forward slashes to backslashes the same way as the `.unix` suffix does. To achieve the same result you just have to use a `<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>` action:

```
<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
  <name>backslash_path</name>
  <pattern>/</pattern>
  <substitution>\</substitution>
  <text>${forwardslash_path}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
```

The above will store the backslash-version of the Unix-like `${forwardslash_path}` in the `backslash_path` variable.

---

## 4.3 Accessing Environment Variables

It is possible to access any environment variable using the `${env(varname)}` construct, where `varname` is the name of an environment variable. For example, on Windows you can refer to the system drive with `${env(SYSTEMDRIVE)}` and, on Linux, Mac OS X and other Unix systems to the user home directory with `${env(HOME)}`

To get a list of the environment variables on your system that will be available to the installer you can execute:

- On Windows Systems: Open a command window and execute: `set`
- On Unix Systems: Open a console and execute: `env`

Both commands will print a list of the defined environment variables. However, you must take into account that some of these variables could vary from one machine to another.

## 4.4 Advanced syntax

Almost all of the elements of an InstallBuilder project can be accessed and modified as variables. This makes InstallBuilder a very versatile tool because it allows installers to customize themselves at runtime, based on the environment or on end user feedback. The three basic elements which can be accessed are:

### 4.4.1 Project properties

All of the project properties such as `<version>`, `<shortName>`, `<installerFilename>` and so on, can be referenced using the notation `${project.property}`. For example, `${project.shortName}` for the `<shortName>`. Similarly to regular variables, you can use any capitalization when referencing an element. Using `${Project.InstallerFilename}` is equivalent to using `${project.installerFilename}`.

The below example changes the `<installationType>` at runtime to perform an upgrade if the previous installed version, stored in an environment variable, is lower than the current one:

```
<project>
  ...
  <shortName>myProduct</shortName>
  <installationType>normal</installationType>
  ...
  <initializationActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>project.installationType</name>
      <value>upgrade</value>
    <ruleList>
```

---

```

    <!-- Check that the env variable exists -->
    <compareText>
      <text>${env(MYPRODUCT_VERSION)}</text>
      <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
      <value></value>
    </compareText>
    <!-- Compare the versions -->
    <compareVersions>
      <version1>${project.version}</version1>
      <logic>greater</logic>
      <version2>${env(MYPRODUCT_VERSION)}</version2>
    </compareVersions>
  </ruleList>
</setInstallerVariable>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

You can refer to the Project Properties appendix for the complete list of properties.

## 4.4.2 Components

Using this notation you can also modify component settings:

- `${project.component(default).selected}`
- `${project.component(mysql).show}`

This allows, for example, disabling components at runtime when the user does not provide a license key:

```

<stringParameter>
  <name>licenseKey</name>
  <description>Please provide a license key. If you leave the field empty
  you just will be able to test the basic functionality</description>
  <insertBefore>components</insertBefore>
  <postShowPageActionList>
    <actionGroup>
      <actionList>
        <setInstallerVariable>
          <name>project.component(premiumComponent).selected</name>
          <value>0</value>
        </setInstallerVariable>
        <setInstallerVariable>
          <name>project.component(premiumComponent).canBeEdited</name>
          <value>0</value>
        </setInstallerVariable>
      </actionList>
    </actionGroup>
    <ruleList>
      <compareText>
        <text>${licenseKey}</text>
        <logic>equals</logic>
        <value></value>
      </compareText>
    </ruleList>
  </postShowPageActionList>
</stringParameter>

```

You can refer to the Components appendix for the complete list of properties.

### 4.4.3 Parameters

Using the advanced syntax on parameters will allow you to modify not only their values but their entire set of properties such as `<description>`, `<explanation>` and the especially useful `<ask>`. The basic usage is:

```
${project.parameter(nameOfTheParameter).propertyName}
```

For example:

- `${project.parameter(installdir).value}`
- `${project.parameter(tomcat).description}`
- `${project.parameter(mySQL).default}`

If the parameter to access is a child of a `<parameterGroup>`, the parent must also be specified. For example, the port parameter in the below code:

```
<project>
...
<parameterList>
  <parameterGroup>
    <name>mysqlConfiguration</name>
    <parameterList>
      <stringParameter name="port" description="MySQL port" value="3306"/>
      <passwordParameter name="password" description="MySQL root password" value=""/>
      ...
    </parameterList>
  </parameterGroup>
</parameterList>
...
</project>
```

Can be accessed using:

```
${project.parameter(mysqlConfiguration).parameter(port).value}
```

If the parameters are also included inside a component, instead of directly under the `<project>` `<parameterList>`, it must be also specified. For example, reusing the above example:

```
<project>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>mySQL</name>
    <parameterList>
      <parameterGroup>
        <name>mysqlConfiguration</name>
        <parameterList>
          <stringParameter name="port" description="MySQL port" value="3306"/>
          <passwordParameter name="password" description="MySQL root password" value=""/>
          ...
        </parameterList>
      </parameterGroup>
    </parameterList>
  </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>
```

The parameter should now be accessed using:

```
${project.component(mysql).parameter(mysqlConfiguration).parameter(port).value}
```

You can use this functionality to disable pages or parameters at runtime based on the user input:

```
<project>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>mySQL</name>
    <parameterList>
      <booleanParameter>
        <name>enableAdvanced</name>
        <description>Do you want to enable the advanced configuration?</description>
        <postShowPageActionList>
          <!-- Enable the page, which is disabled by default -->
          <setInstallerVariable>
            <name>project.component(mySQL).parameter(mysqlAdvanced).ask</name>
            <value>1</value>
            <ruleList>
              <isTrue value="${project.component(mySQL).parameter(enableAdvanced).value}
                <!-->
              </isTrue>
            </ruleList>
          </setInstallerVariable>
        </postShowPageActionList>
      </booleanParameter>
      <parameterGroup>
        <name>mysqlAdvanced</name>
        <parameterList>
          <stringParameter name="mysqlPort" description="MySQL port" value="3306"/>
          <passwordParameter name="mysqlPassword" description="MySQL root password"
            value=""/>
          ...
        </parameterList>
      </parameterGroup>
    </parameterList>
  </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>
```

Parameters are also handy when you want to preserve variables defined at build time. Accessing a variable defined in the `<preBuildActionList>` at runtime will result in an `***unknown variable varName***` error. To workaroud this issue, you could use a hidden parameter (setting `ask="0"`), that won't be displayed in the help menu nor the installer pages. For example, to pass a random generated key for each of the built installers you could use the below code:

```
<project>
...
<parameterList>
  ...
  <stringParameter name="build_identifier" value="" ask="0"/>
  ...
</parameterList>
<preBuildActionList>
  <!-- Create random identifier for the build -->
  <generateRandomValue>
    <variable>build_identifier</variable>
  </generateRandomValue>
  <!-- Date of the build -->
  <createTimeStamp>
    <variable>timestamp</variable>
  </createTimeStamp>
</preBuildActionList>
</project>
```

```

    <!-- Register the build information in a local file -->
    <addTextToFile>
      <file>${build_project_directory}/builds</file>
      <text>${build_identifier} - Product Version: ${project.version} - IB Version: ${ ←
        installer_builder_version} - Built On: ${timestamp}</text>
    </addTextToFile>
  </preBuildActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

As you are using a hidden parameter, the `${build_identifier}` will be available at runtime and you could, for example, send it to your server using an `<httpPost>` action to register the installations for each release:

```

<postInstallationActionList>
  ...
  <httpPost url="http://www.example.com/register.php" filename="${installdir}/ ←
    activationUrl">
    <queryParameterList>
      <queryParameter name="build_identifier" value="${build_identifier}"/>
      <queryParameter name="version" value="${project.version}"/>
    </queryParameterList>
  </httpPost>
</postInstallationActionList>

```

### Accessing a parameter as a regular variable

If you try to access a parameter as if it were a regular variable, it will give you its value. That is, using `${installdir}` or `${project.parameter(installdir).value}` will return the same result.

The advantage of using the long notation is that it provides a very descriptive path to the element you are modifying. For example, if you are working with a very big project that is maintained by multiple developers and divided into multiple files using the `<include>` directive, locating where the below values are located could be troublesome (they could be parameters or regular variables, located in any of the included files or the main project):

```

<throwError text="You have selected strict password checking and your password is too ←
  short" >
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${enableStrictChecking}"/>
    <compareTextLength>
      <text>${password}</text>
      <logic>less</logic>
      <length>${minLength}</length>
    </compareTextLength>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

Where using the long location will point you directly to where they are defined (assuming the included files are named according to the component names, for example):

```

<throwError text="You have selected strict password checking and your password is too ←
  short" >
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${project.component(settings).parameter(basicConfiguration). ←
      parameter(enableStrictChecking).value}"/>
    <compareTextLength>
      <text>${password}</text>
      <logic>less</logic>
      <length>${project.component(settings).parameter(defaultPasswordSettings). ←
        parameter(minLength).value}</length>
    </compareTextLength>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

In addition to the above-mentioned elements, any other tag in the XML project with a unique identifier can be referenced. For example, is possible to reference a folder in a component to get its destination:

```
<showInfo text="\${project.component(mysql).folder(mysqlConfig).destination}"/>
```

But not a file in its `<distributionFileList>` because files do not have a unique name.

## 4.5 Accessing Language Strings

You can also access language strings, either built-in or user-defined (check the Languages section for more details), using the special notation `\${msg(stringKey)}`. It will be resolved to the localized string identified by the key `stringKey` in the current installation language:

```
<showInfo text="\${msg(hello.world)}"/>
```

If you have defined the `hello.world` localized string in the `<customLanguageFileList>`, depending on the installation language you will get results such as `Hello world!`, `Hola Mundo!` or `Hallo Welt`.

## 4.6 Escaping Variables

In some cases, for example when modifying shell scripts programmatically, you may need a literal `\${foo}` instead of the contents of the `foo` variable (which may result in an `***unknown variable foo***`). For these cases, InstallBuilder implements a special notation to specify that you want the text treated literally, without trying to be resolved: `\${'\${variableName}'}`.

For example, `\${'\${foo}'}` will be resolved to: `\${foo}`. More complex text can be escaped as shown in the snippet below:

```
<writeFile>
  <path>~/.bashrc</path>
  <text>\${'
PATH=\${PATH}:/some/path
Foo=\${bar}
'}</text>
</writeFile>
```

It will write:

```
PATH=\${PATH}:/some/path
Foo=\${bar}
```

As shown in the example, it accepts line breaks in the text to escape. The only limitation is that it cannot contain the characters `' }` in the text to escape or it will be interpreted as the end of the escaped reference.

## 4.7 Nested Variables

Nested variables are also allowed. They will be evaluated from the most inner reference:

```
<showInfo>
  <text>\${text_${foo-${i}}_${bar}}</text>
</showInfo>
```

This feature is especially useful when iterating using a `<foreach>` action. For example, if you have a list of component names and you want to create a list with those that are selected:

```

<setInstallerVariable name="selectedComponents" value=""/>
<foreach variables="component" values="componentA componentB componentC componentD">
  <actionList>
    <setInstallerVariable name="slectedComponents" value="{selectedComponents} { ←
      component}" >
    <ruleList>
      <isTrue value="{project.component ({component}) .selected}"/>
    </ruleList>
    </setInstallerVariable>
  </actionList>
</foreach>

```

## 4.8 Built-in variables

InstallBuilder also provides a list of built-in variables containing information about the installer or the environment in which it is executed:

### HTTP

- **installer\_http\_code**: Contains the HTTP status code of the last httpGet or httpPost action.

**Example values:**

200, 404, 500

### JAVA

- **java\_autodetected**: Whether or not a valid Java was autodetected

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **java\_bitness**: Autodetected Java bitness

**Possible values:**

32, 64

- **java\_executable**: Location of the autodetected Java executable

**Example values:**

/usr/bin/java, c:/Program Files/Java/jre1.6.0\_10/bin/java.exe

- **java\_vendor**: Autodetected Java vendor

**Possible values:**

Any, IBM, Sun

- **java\_version**: Autodetected Java version

**Example values:**

1.6.0, 1.5.0

- **java\_version\_full**: Autodetected Java full version

**Example values:**

1.6.0\_07, 1.5.0\_11

- **java\_version\_major**: Autodetected Java major version

**Example values:**

1.6, 1.5



- **javaw\_executable:** Autodetected javaw executable path

**Example values:**

/usr/bin/java, c:/Program Files/Java/jre1.6.0\_10/bin/java.exe

- **javaws\_executable:** Location of the autodetected Java Web Start executable

**Example values:**

/usr/bin/javaws, c:/Program Files/Java/jre1.6.0\_10/bin/javaws.exe

## USER INTERFACE

- **installer\_interactivity:** The level of interactivity of the installation mode

**Possible values:**

none, normal, minimalWithDialogs, minimal

- **installer\_ui:** The mode in which the installer is run

**Possible values:**

unattended, gui, text

- **installer\_ui\_detail:** The detailed mode in which the installer is run

**Possible values:**

unattended, xwindow, qt, text, osx, gtk, win32

## .NET FRAMEWORK

- **dotnet\_autodetected:** Whether or not a valid .NET framework was autodetected

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **dotnet\_framework\_type:** .NET framework type

**Possible values:**

, full, client

- **dotnet\_version:** .NET framework version

**Example values:**

2.0, 3.5, 4.0, 4.5

## INSTALLER

- **installation\_aborted\_by\_user:** Whether or not installation was manually aborted by user

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **installation\_finished:** Whether or not the installation finished successfully

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **installation\_guid:** Unique installation ID

**Example values:**

1564139c-526b-4f43-7028-51232f2de987

- **installation\_language\_code:** Language code of the installation

**Possible values:**

es, lt, sv, ro, et, lv, ko, eu, az, cy, pt, it, id, da, tr, sk, va, sl, ru, fa, pt\_BR, fr, el, de, bg, zh\_CN, es\_AR, hr, nl, ja, en, ar, zh\_TW, th, pl, sq, ca, sr, no, hu, he, kk, cs, vi, tk, fi

- **installer\_builder\_timestamp:** Timestamp of the InstallBuilder used to build the installer

**Example values:**

201001220702

- **installer\_builder\_version:** Version of InstallBuilder used to build the installer

**Example values:**

6.2.7

- **installer\_command\_line\_arguments:** Command line arguments as passed to installer

**Example values:**

--mode gtk, --installdir /opt/app-1.0

- **installer\_error\_message:** Contains the error of the last failed action, possibly masked by its <customErrorMessage>

**Example values:**

Unknown error installing MySQL

- **installer\_error\_message\_original:** Contains the original error of the last failed action

**Example values:**

Unknown error executing action

- **installer\_exit\_code:** Installer Exit Code value. It is equal 0 by default and set to 0 if there was an error executing an action.

- **installer\_installation\_log:** The location of the installer log

**Example values:**

/tmp/bitrock\_install.log, C:\Documents and Settings\user\Local Settings\Temp

- **installer\_is\_root\_install:** Whether or not the current user has root privileges

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **installer\_package\_format:** Type of installer

**Possible values:**

executable

- **installer\_pid:** PID of the running installer or uninstaller

**Example values:**

53008

- **program\_exit\_code:** Exit code from program; set by runProgram and setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput actions

**Example values:**

0, 1

- **program\_stderr:** Program's error output; set by runProgram and setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput actions

**Example values:**

- **program\_stdout:** Program's output; set by runProgram and setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput actions

**Example values:**

- **required\_diskspace:** Required disk space to install the application in Kilobytes

**Example values:**

10000, 25000

**WINDOWS FOLDERS**

- **windows\_folder\_program\_files:** Directory for program files

**Example values:**

C:\Program Files

- **windows\_folder\_program\_files\_common:** Directory for components shared across applications

**Example values:**

C:\Program Files\Common Files

- **windows\_folder\_system:** Windows system directory

**Example values:**

C:\Windows\system32

- **windows\_folder\_systemroot:** Windows root directory

**Example values:**

C:\Windows

- **windows\_folder\_windows:** Windows root directory

**Example values:**

C:\Windows

**WINDOWS FOLDERS - SYSTEM SCOPE**

- **windows\_folder\_common\_admintools:** Directory that stores administrator tools for all users

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Administrative Tools

- **windows\_folder\_common\_appdata:** Directory that stores common application-specific data

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData

- **windows\_folder\_common\_desktopdirectory:** Directory that stores common desktop files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Public\Desktop

- **windows\_folder\_common\_documents:** Directory that stores common document files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Public\Documents

- **windows\_folder\_common\_favorites:** Directory that stores common favorite items

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Favorites

- **windows\_folder\_common\_music:** Directory that stores common music files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Public\Music

---

- **windows\_folder\_common\_pictures:** Directory that stores common picture files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Public\Pictures

- **windows\_folder\_common\_programs:** Directory that stores common program groups in start menu

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs

- **windows\_folder\_common\_startmenu:** Directory that stores common start menu items

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu

- **windows\_folder\_common\_startup:** Directory that stores common Startup program group

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Startup

- **windows\_folder\_common\_templates:** Directory that stores common templates

**Example values:**

C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Templates

- **windows\_folder\_common\_video:** Directory that stores common video files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Public\Videos

#### CROSS-PLATFORM FOLDERS

- **installdir:** The installation directory

**Example values:**

/home/user/programx, C:\Program Files\programx

- **installer\_directory:** The directory location of the installer binary

**Example values:**

/home/user/example, C:\example

- **installer\_pathname:** The full path of the installer binary

**Example values:**

/home/user/example/installer.bin, C:\example\installer.exe

- **platform\_install\_prefix:** The platform specific default installation path

**Example values:**

/home/user, C:\Program Files, /Applications

- **system\_temp\_directory:** Path to the system's temporary directory

**Example values:**

/tmp, C:\Documents and Settings\Username\Local Settings\Temp

- **user\_home\_directory:** Path to the home directory of the user who is running the installer

**Example values:**

/home/username, C:\Documents and Settings\Username

#### BUILD-TIME VARIABLES

---

- **build\_project\_directory:** Directory containing the XML project used to generate the installer.

**Example values:**

/home/username/installbuilder-7.0.0/projects, C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder for Windows 7.0.0\projects

- **installbuilder\_install\_root:** Installation directory of InstallBuilder. This variable is available only at build time, as it does not make sense to access this information at runtime

**Example values:**

/home/username/installbuilder-7.0.0, C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder for Windows 7.0.0

- **installbuilder\_output\_directory:** InstallBuilder output directory. This variable is available only at build time, as it does not make sense to access this information at runtime

**Example values:**

/home/username/installbuilder-7.0.0/output, C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder for Windows 7.0.0\output

- **installbuilder\_output\_filename:** Location of the generated installer. This variable is available only at build time, as it does not make sense to access this information at runtime

**Example values:**

/home/username/installbuilder-7.0.0/output/sample-1.0-linux-installer.run, C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder for Windows 7.0.0\output\sample-1.0-window-installer.exe

- **installbuilder\_ui:** The mode in which the builder is run

**Possible values:**

gui, text

## WINDOWS FOLDERS - USER SCOPE

- **windows\_folder\_admintools:** Directory that stores administrator tools for individual user

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Administrative Tools

- **windows\_folder\_appdata:** Directory that stores user application-specific data

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming

- **windows\_folder\_cookies:** Directory that stores user cookies

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Cookies

- **windows\_folder\_desktopdirectory:** Directory that stores user desktop files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop

- **windows\_folder\_favorites:** Directory that stores user favorite items

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Favorites

- **windows\_folder\_history:** Directory that stores user Internet history items

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\History

- **windows\_folder\_internet\_cache:** Directory that stores user temporary internet files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Temporary Internet Files

- **windows\_folder\_local\_appdata:** Directory that stores user local (non-roaming) repository for application-specific data

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Local

- **windows\_folder\_mymusic:** Directory that stores user music files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Music

- **windows\_foldermypictures:** Directory that stores user picture files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Pictures

- **windows\_folder\_myvideo:** Directory that stores user video files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Videos

- **windows\_folder\_nethood:** Directory that stores user network shortcuts

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Network Shortcuts

- **windows\_folder\_personal:** Directory that stores user document files

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\Documents

- **windows\_folder\_printhood:** Directory that stores printer shortcuts

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Printer Shortcuts

- **windows\_folder\_profile:** Directory that stores user profile

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator

- **windows\_folder\_programs:** Directory that stores user program groups in start menu

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs

- **windows\_folder\_recent:** Directory that stores shortcuts to user's recently used documents

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Recent

- **windows\_folder\_sendto:** Directory that stores user Send To menu items

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\SendTo

- **windows\_folder\_startmenu:** Directory that stores user start menu items

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu

- **windows\_folder\_startup:** Directory that stores user Startup program group

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Startup

- **windows\_folder\_templates:** Directory that stores user templates

**Example values:**

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\Templates

## LINUX SPECIFIC

- **linux\_distribution:** Type of Linux distribution

**Possible values:**

gentoo, suse, redhat, redflag, slackware, fedora, arch, amazon, mandrake, debian

- **linux\_distribution\_codename:** Linux distribution code name (based on Linux Standard Base tool: lsb\_release)
- **linux\_distribution\_description:** Linux distribution description (based on Linux Standard Base tool: lsb\_release)

**Example values:**

Debian, GNU/Linux

- **linux\_distribution\_fullname:** Linux distribution fullname

**Possible values:**

Suse, Scientific Linux, Fedora, Core, Flag, openSUSE, Red, Mandrake, Red Hat Linux, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Debian, Gentoo, CentOS, SME Server Linux, Slackware, Arch

- **linux\_distribution\_id:** Linux distribution distributor's ID (based on Linux Standard Base tool: lsb\_release)

**Example values:**

Debian

- **linux\_distribution\_release:** Linux distribution release number(based on Linux Standard Base tool: lsb\_release)

**Example values:**

3.1

- **linux\_distribution\_shortcode:** Linux distribution shortcode

**Possible values:**

gentoo, suse, redflag, slackware, fedora, arch, amazon, rh, mandrake, debian, rhel

- **linux\_distribution\_version:** Linux distribution mayor version

**Example values:**

5.0

## OSX SPECIFIC

- **osx\_major\_version:** OSX major version number

**Example values:**

10.3, 10.5

- **osx\_version:** OSX version number

**Example values:**

10.3.9, 10.5.7

## WINDOWS SPECIFIC

- **windows\_os\_family:** Type of Windows OS

**Possible values:**

Windows NT, Windows 95

- **windows\_os\_family\_shortcode:** Windows OS family shortcode

**Possible values:**

winnt, win9x

- **windows\_os\_flavor:** Flavor of Windows OS

**Possible values:**

Home Premium, Enterprise, Home, Standard, Home Basic, Storage Server Workgroup, Ultimate, Foundation, Server, Web Edition, Data Center, Business, Workstation, Storage Server Standard, Advanced Server, Professional, Starter

- **windows\_os\_name:** Windows OS name

**Possible values:**

Windows 2012, Windows 7, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 2012 R2, Windows 2000, Windows 2003, Windows 95, Windows 2008 R2, Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows 7 WSLK, Windows 10, Windows 98, Windows 2008

- **windows\_os\_service\_pack:** Windows OS Service Pack version number

**Example values:**

1, 2, 3

- **windows\_os\_uac\_enabled:** Whether or not UAC is enabled

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **windows\_os\_version\_number:** Windows OS version number

**Possible values:**

6.0, 5.1, 7.0, 6.1, 5.2, 4.0, 5.0, 4.1

## SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

- **machine\_cpu\_count:** Number of CPUs in the machine

**Example values:**

1, 2

- **machine\_cpu\_speed:** The machine's CPU speed in MHZ

**Example values:**

1500

- **machine\_fqdn:** The machine's fully qualified domain name

**Example values:**

bitrock-desktop.mydomain.com

- **machine\_hostname:** The machine's hostname

**Example values:**

example.com

- **machine\_ipaddr:** The machine's IP address

**Example values:**

10.0.0.2

- **machine\_swap\_memory:** The machine's swap memory in MB

**Example values:**

512

- **machine\_total\_memory:** The machine's total physical memory in MB



**Example values:**

512

- **platform\_exec\_suffix:** The platform specific binary suffix

**Possible values:**

app, run, exe

- **platform\_has\_smp:** Whether or not the machine has multiple processors

**Possible values:**

0, 1

- **platform\_name:** At build-time, it contains the target build platform. At runtime, the platform in which the installer is running

**Possible values:**

linux, osx, windows

- **platform\_path\_separator:** The platform specific path separator

**Possible values:**

\, /

- **system\_locale:** Current system locale

**Possible values:**

es, lt, sv, ro, et, lv, ko, eu, az, cy, pt, it, id, da, tr, sk, va, sl, ru, fa, pt\_BR, fr, el, de, bg, zh\_CN, es\_AR, hr, nl, ja, en, ar, zh\_TW, th, pl, sq, ca, sr, no, hu, he, kk, cs, vi, tk, fi

- **system\_username:** Name of the user who is running the installer

**Example values:**

root, Administrator, guest

**INSTALLER PAGE ORDER CONTROL**

- **back\_page:** The previous page to show

**Example values:**

installdir, welcome, installation, installationFinished

- **next\_page:** The next page to show

**Example values:**

installdir, welcome, installation, installationFinished

## Chapter 5

# Components

Depending on the complexity of your software, you may need to split your project into several components. Components are a bundle of folders and associated installation logic.

They are able to execute actions (include Action Lists), copy files and prompt the user for data (display Parameters), as the project does:

```
<component>
  <name>component</name>
  <description>component</description>
  <detailedDescription>This is a component</detailedDescription>
  <initializationActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable name="my_variable" value="1" />
  </initializationActionList>
  <parameterList>
    <booleanParameter>
      <name>boolean_question</name>
      <title>Boolean Question</title>
      <description>Please answer yes or no</description>
    </booleanParameter>
  </parameterList>
  <folderList>
    <folder>
      <description>Program Files</description>
      <destination>${installdir}</destination>
      <name>programfiles</name>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <distributionFileList>
        <distributionDirectory origin="program" />
      </distributionFileList>
    </folder>
  </folderList>
</component>
```

The ability to enable / disable components at build time and runtime allows your installer to provide as many setup combinations as you need.

The basic properties you should configure when adding a component are:

- **<name>**: Name of the Component. This name must be unique and just contain alphanumeric characters and underscores.
- **<description>**: Description of the Component. This description will be included in the list of the visible components presented to the user.
- **<detailedDescription>**: A detailed description of the component. This detailed description will be displayed when clicking in the component description in the component selection page.

- `<selected>`: Whether or not the component is selected. If the component is not selected, its action lists won't be executed and its folders won't be unpacked.
- `<show>`: Whether or not the component is visible in the component selection page.
- `<canBeEdited>`: Whether or not the component can be edited in the component selection page.
- `<requiredSize>`: Required disk space in the target system. If 0, then it will automatically be calculated based on the size of the packed files. The sum of the sizes of all of the installed components can be later accessed through the built-in variable `${required_diskspace}`.

Components are defined in the project `<componentList>` and presented to the end user as in the Figure 5.1:

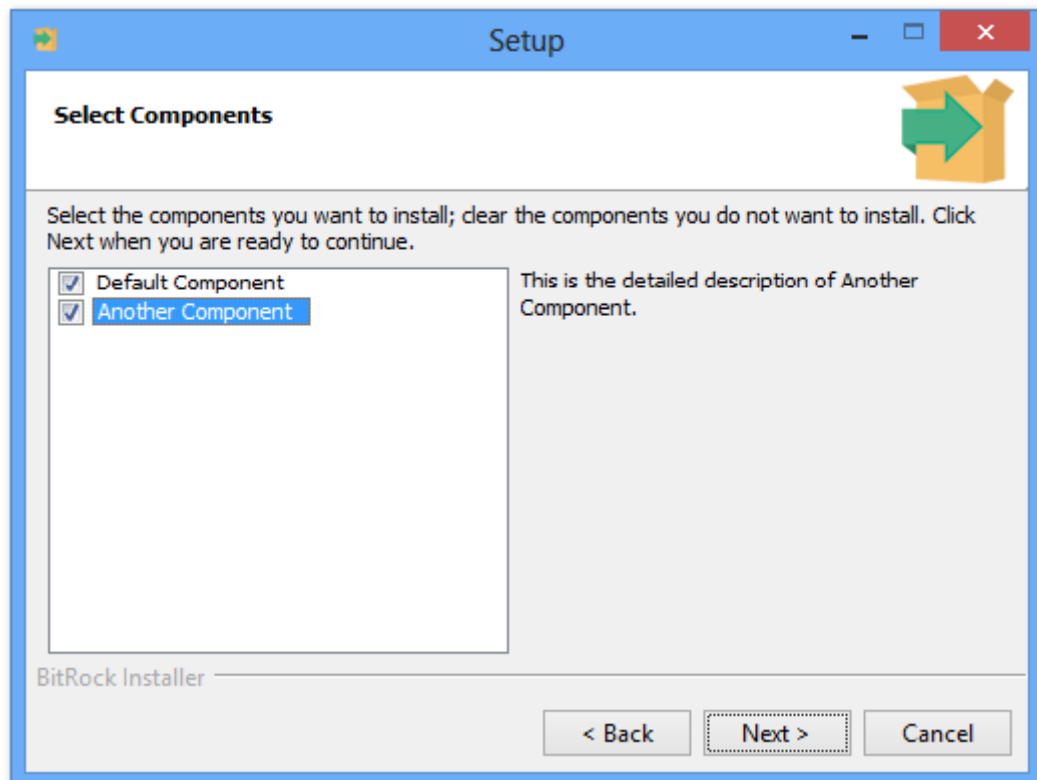


Figure 5.1: Component Selection Page

As mentioned above, depending on the value of `<show>`, the component will be visible or not, and if so, the `<canBeEdited>` property will decide if the user will be able to select and deselect it.

The example below illustrates some of the possible combinations when including components:

```
<project>
...
<!-- Shows the component selection page -->
<allowComponentSelection>1</allowComponentSelection>
...
<componentList>
  <!-- Main base component, it must be always
  installed. We hide it -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>main</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
```

```

        <show>0</show>
        ...
    </component>
    ...
    <!-- Important required component. We show it
    in the component selection but made it mandatory
    to install -->
    <component>
        ...
        <name>core</name>
        <description>Core product</description>
        <detailedDescription>This is the base of the application.</detailedDescription>
        <selected>1</selected>
        <show>1</show>
        <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
        ...
    </component>
    ...
    <!-- Optional Useful Component. We allow deselecting it but we suggest it
    by default setting show=1 -->
    <component>
        ...
        <name>docs</name>
        <description>Documentation</description>
        <detailedDescription>Documentation of the product</detailedDescription>
        <selected>1</selected>
        <show>1</show>
        <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
        ...
    </component>

    <!-- Additional Optional Component. It is not very important so
    we do not include it by default (show=0) -->
    <component>
        ...
        <name>extra</name>
        <description>Extra files</description>
        <detailedDescription>Extra files including images
        and translation files</detailedDescription>
        <selected>0</selected>
        <show>1</show>
        <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
        ...
    </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

Please note that the code also enables `<allowComponentSelection>1</allowComponentSelection>`. This setting makes the component selection page (which is hidden by default) visible to the end user.

## 5.1 Enabling and disabling components

The easiest way of configuring if a component will be selected or not is by modifying its `<selected>` property:

```

<componentList>
    <!-- This component is selected -->
    <component>
        ...
        <name>component1</name>
    </component>
</componentList>

```

```

    ...
    <selected>1</selected>
    ...
  </component>
  <!-- This component is not selected -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>component2</name>
    ...
    <selected>0</selected>
    ...
  </component>
</componentList>

```

However, in most of the cases you will need to decide whether to select or not components at runtime, based on certain conditions. For this purpose, InstallBuilder includes a `<componentSelection>` action. For example, if you detect an existing installation of your product, you may want to deselect your core component and select the update component:

```

<project>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>core</name>
      ...
      <selected>1</selected>
      ...
    </component>
    <component>
      <name>update</name>
      ...
      <selected>0</selected>
      ...
    </component>
  </componentList>
  <readyToInstallActionList>
    <componentSelection>
      <deselect>core</deselect>
      <select>update</select>
      <ruleList>
        <fileExists path="{installdir}/wellKnown/file"/>
      </ruleList>
    </componentSelection>
  </readyToInstallActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

The `<componentSelection>` action also accepts multiple components to select or deselect, separated by commas, in its `<deselect>` and `<select>` tags. This way you can change the behavior of the installer with a single action.

The code below explains how to prompt the user to select between a minimal (core components), standard (core and useful components) and full installation (also include documentation and videos):

```

<project>
  ...
  <allowComponentSelection>0</allowComponentSelection>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>core</name>
      ...
    </component>
    <component>

```

```

        <name>xmlEditor</name>
        ...
    </component>
    <component>
        <name>debugger</name>
        ...
    </component>
    <component>
        <name>documentation</name>
        ...
    </component>
    <component>
        <name>videos</name>
        ...
    </component>
</componentList>
...
<parameterList>
    <choiceParameter>
        <name>installationMode</name>
        <ask>1</ask>
        <default>normal</default>
        <description>Please select the installation mode</description>
        <title>Installation Mode</title>
        <optionList>
            <option>
                <value>minimal</value>
                <text>Minimal</text>
            </option>
            <option>
                <value>standard</value>
                <text>Standard</text>
            </option>
            <option>
                <value>full</value>
                <text>Full</text>
            </option>
        </optionList>
    </choiceParameter>
    <postShowPageActionList>
        <componentSelection>
            <deselect>xmlEditor, debugger, documentation, videos</deselect>
            <select>core</select>
            <ruleList>
                <compareText>
                    <text>${installationMode}</text>
                    <logic>equals</logic>
                    <value>minimal</value>
                </compareText>
            </ruleList>
        </componentSelection>
        <componentSelection>
            <deselect>documentation, videos</deselect>
            <select>core, xmlEditor, debugger</select>
            <ruleList>
                <compareText>
                    <text>${installationMode}</text>
                    <logic>equals</logic>
                    <value>standard</value>
                </compareText>
            </ruleList>
        </componentSelection>
    </postShowPageActionList>
</parameterList>

```

```

        <deselect></deselect>
        <select>core,xmlEditor,debugger,documentation,videos</select>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText>
                <text>${installationMode}</text>
                <logic>equals</logic>
                <value>full</value>
            </compareText>
        </ruleList>
    </componentSelection>
</postShowPageActionList>
</choiceParameter>
</parameterList>
...
</project>

```

You can also check the state of a component using the `<componentTest>` rule:

```

<throwError>
    <text>You cannot install 'Component A' and 'Component B' at the same time!</text>
    <ruleList>
        <componentTest name="componentA" logic="selected"/>
        <componentTest name="componentB" logic="selected"/>
    </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

Another way of selecting or deselecting a component is to directly modify the `<selected>` property using the `<setInstallerVariable>` action as explained in the Advanced Syntax section:

```

<setInstallerVariable name="project.component(core).selected" value="0"/>

```

The same way, you can check if a component is selected (or any other of its properties):

```

<directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <validationActionList>
        <actionGroup>
            <actionList>
                <getFreeDiskSpace path="${installdir}" units="KB" variable="diskSpace"/>
                <throwError>
                    <text>You don't have enough disk space to install
                    ${project.component(bigComponent).description}</text>
                <ruleList>
                    <compareValues>
                        <value1>${project.component(bigComponent).requiredSize}</value1>
                        <logic>greater</logic>
                        <value2>${diskSpace}</value2>
                    </compareValues>
                </ruleList>
            </throwError>
        </actionList>
    </ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${project.component(bigComponent).selected}"/>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
</validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>

```

Finally, visible and editable components can also be selected and deselected using the command line:

```

$> /path/to/installer --disable-components windowsdata,unixdata --enable-components osxdata

```

Where `--disable-components` and `--enable-components` accept a comma-separated list of components. Only visible components (`<show>1</show>`) will be displayed in the help menu and only those which are also editable (`<canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>`) will be configurable using these flags. For example, if your project has the component list below:

```
<componentList>
  <!-- Main base component, it must be always
  installed. We hide it -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>main</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>0</show>
    ...
  </component>
  ...
  <!-- Important required component. We show it
  in the component selection but made it mandatory
  to install -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>core</name>
    <description>Core product</description>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>1</show>
    <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
    ...
  </component>
  ...
  <!-- Optional Useful Component. We allow deselecting it but we suggest it
  by default setting show=1 -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>docs</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>1</show>
    <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
    ...
  </component>
  ...
  <!-- Additional Optional Component. It is not very important so
  we do not include it by default (show=0) -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>extra</name>
    <selected>0</selected>
    <show>1</show>
    <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
    ...
  </component>
</componentList>
```

The output in the help menu will be:

```
--enable-components <enable-components> Comma-separated list of components
                        Default: core,docs
                        Allowed: docs extra

--disable-components <disable-components> Comma-separated list of components
                        Default: extra
                        Allowed: docs extra
```

In this output, `main` is not mentioned, as it was configured as hidden, and just `docs` and `extra` are allowed values, as `core` was configured as a non-editable component and always selected.



These command line options are only available if `<allowComponentSelection>` is enabled.

---

**Only the hardcoded state of the components is considered when displaying the help menu.**

As the help menu is completely independent from regular action lists, even if you are changing the components properties in the `<initializationActionList>` using a `<setInstallerVariable>` action, the changes won't be visible when displaying the help. For example:

```
<componentList>
  <!-- Main base component, it must be always
  installed. We hide it -->
  <component>
    ...
    <name>A</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>0</show>
    ...
  </component>
  <component>
    ...
    <name>B</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>0</show>
    ...
  </component>
  <component>
    ...
    <name>C</name>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>0</show>
    ...
  </component>
</componentList>
<initializationActionList>
  <setInstallerVariable name="component (A) .show" value="1"/>
  <setInstallerVariable name="component (B) .show" value="1"/>
  <setInstallerVariable name="component (C) .show" value="1"/>
</initializationActionList>
```

Will result in an empty list of components in the help menu:

```
--enable-components <enable-components> Comma-separated list of components
                        Default:

--disable-components <disable-components> Comma-separated list of components
                        Default:
```

But all of them will be visible and editable in the graphical component selection.

---

**The <selected> property cannot contain variables**

The component <selected> tag cannot contain variables. The below component will always be deselected, regardless of the value of the variable:

```
<project>
...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      ...
      <name>documentation</name>
      ...
      <!-- The variable won't be resolved, so it will
      be considered false -->
      <selected>${installDocumentation}</selected>
      ...
    </component>
  </componentList>
...
</project>
```

If you need to bind a boolean variable to the <selected> tag, you should modify the property using a <setInstallerVariable> instead:

```
<booleanParameter>
  <name>installDocumentation</name>
  <title>Documentation</title>
  <description>Would you like to install the documentation files?</description>
  <postShowPageActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>project.component(dokumentation).selected</name>
      <value>${installDocumentation}</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
  </postShowPageActionList>
</booleanParameter>
```

## 5.2 Component Action Lists

Components can include all of the Action Lists available for the main project with the exception of the <preShowHelpActionList> and the <finalPageActionList>.

In addition, components include a few new action lists:

### 5.2.1 Component Selection Validation Actions

The <componentSelectionValidationActionList> is executed right after clicking Next in the component selection page and allows checking if the provided component configuration is valid. It works the same way as the <validationActionList>; if an error is thrown inside it, instead of aborting the installation, the error message is displayed and the page redrawn.

This is really useful when implementing dependencies between components:

```
<project>
...
  <allowComponentSelection>1</allowComponentSelection>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      ...
      <name>A</name>
```

```

    ...
</component>
<component>
    ...
    <name>B</name>
    ...
</component>
<component>
    <name>C</name>
    <description>Component C</description>
    <detailedDescription>This component depends on 'A' and 'B'</detailedDescription>
    ...
    <componentSelectionValidationActionList>
        <throwError>
            <text>Component 'C' cannot be installed if you have not selected both 'A' and ' ←
                B'.</text>
        <ruleList>
            <isFalse value="{component(A).selected}" />
            <isFalse value="{component(B).selected}" />
        </ruleList>
        </throwError>
    </componentSelectionValidationActionList>
    ...
</component>
    ...
</componentList>
    ...
</project>

```

The `<componentSelectionValidationActionList>` is only executed when the component selection page is displayed and the component defining the validation is selected (regardless of whether or not it is visible). This could be an issue if, for example, you need to validate that at least one of two optional components are selected and if the user deselects them, none of the validations will be executed. In these cases, you can use a hidden component, just used to validate the others:

#### How to establish dependencies between components

```

<project>
    ...
    <allowComponentSelection>1</allowComponentSelection>
    ...
    <componentList>
        <component>
            ...
            <name>A</name>
            ...
        </component>
        <component>
            ...
            <name>B</name>
            ...
        </component>
        <component>
            <name>validatorComponent</name>
            <selected>1</selected>
            <show>0</show>
            ...
            <componentSelectionValidationActionList>
                <throwError>
                    <text>You have to select at least one component.</text>
                <ruleList>
                    <isFalse value="{component(A).selected}" />
                    <isFalse value="{component(B).selected}" />
                </ruleList>
            </throwError>
        </componentSelectionValidationActionList>
    </component>
    ...
</componentList>
    ...
</project>

```

```

        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</componentSelectionValidationActionList>
    ...
</component>
    ...
</componentList>
    ...
</project>

```

### 5.2.2 On Download Error Actions

If the component was marked as `<downloadable>` and the installer was built accordingly (check the Downloadable components section for more details), the `<onDownloadErrorActionList>` allows providing a set of actions to execute if the download process fails and the user decides to ignore it.

This allows properly recovering from the error, for example, deselecting other components that depend on it.

## 5.3 Adding files and directories

Components can also contain a list of `<folder>` elements, which are mainly used to define files to pack:

```

<component>
    ...
    <name>default</name>
    ...
    <folderList>
        <!-- The installation directory -->
        <folder>
            <name>programfiles</name>
            <description>Program Files</description>
            <destination>${installdir}</destination>
            <platforms>all</platforms>
            <distributionFileList>
                <distributionFile>
                    <origin>/path/to/file.txt</origin>
                </distributionFile>
                ...
                <distributionDirectory>
                    <origin>/path/to/directory</origin>
                </distributionDirectory>
                ...
            </distributionFileList>
        </folder>

        <!-- Configuration files that should be installed inside
        /etc, and for linux only -->
        <folder>
            <name>linuxconfigfiles</name>
            <description>Linux Configuration Files</description>
            <destination>/etc</destination>
            <platforms>linux</platforms>
            <distributionFileList>
                ...
            </distributionFileList>
        </folder>
    </folderList>
    ...
</component>

```

The next section explains in detail how to work with folders.

## 5.4 Adding shortcuts to the components

Each component has three shortcut lists which can be used to create shortcuts:

- `<desktopShortcutList>`: Shortcuts to be placed in the Desktop. Its available shortcuts are: `<shortcut>`, `<linkShortcut>` and `<fileShortcut>`

```
<component>
  <name>default</name>
  ...
  <desktopShortcutList>
    <!-- Intended to launch an application -->
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Launch My Program</comment>
      <exec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram</exec>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>My Program</name>
      <path>${installdir}/bin</path>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram.exe</windowsExec>
      <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
      <windowsPath>${installdir}/bin</windowsPath>
    </shortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a web browser pointing to a specific url -->
    <linkShortcut>
      <comment>Launch a web browser pointing to My Program website</comment>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>Visit My Program website</name>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <url>http://www.example.com/myprogram</url>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </linkShortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a viewer for a specific file -->
    <fileShortcut>
      <comment>Check the user guide</comment>
      <filePath>${installdir}/doc/userguide.pdf</filePath>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>My Program User Guide</name>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </fileShortcut>
    ...
  </desktopShortcutList>
  ...
</component>
```

- `<startMenuShortcutList>`: Link to applications, documents or URL for the Windows Start menu. Its available shortcuts are: `<startMenuShortcut>`, `<startMenuLinkShortcut>` and `<startMenuFileShortcut>`:

```

<component>
  <name>default</name>
  ...
  <startMenuShortcutList>
    <!-- Intended to launch an application -->
    <startMenuShortcut>
      <comment>Launch My Program</comment>
      <exec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram</exec>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>My Program</name>
      <path>${installdir}/bin</path>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram.exe</windowsExec>
      <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
      <windowsPath>${installdir}/bin</windowsPath>
    </startMenuShortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a web browser pointing to a specific url -->
    <startMenuLinkShortcut>
      <comment>Launch a web browser pointing to My Program website</comment>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>Visit My Program website</name>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <url>http://www.example.com/myprogram</url>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </startMenuLinkShortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a viewer for a specific file -->
    <startMenuFileShortcut>
      <comment>Check the user guide</comment>
      <filePath>${installdir}/doc/userguide.pdf</filePath>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>My Program User Guide</name>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
      <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
      <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </startMenuFileShortcut>
    ...
  </startMenuShortcutList>
  ...
</component>

```

- **<quickLaunchShortcutList>**: Shortcuts to be placed in the Windows Quick Launch toolbar. Its available shortcuts are: **<startMenuShortcut>**, **<startMenuLinkShortcut>** and **<startMenuFileShortcut>**:

```

<component>
  <name>default</name>
  ...
  <quickLaunchShortcutList>
    <!-- Intended to launch an application -->
    <quickLaunchShortcut>
      <comment>Launch My Program</comment>
      <exec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram</exec>
      <icon></icon>
      <name>My Program</name>
      <path>${installdir}/bin</path>
      <platforms>all</platforms>
    </quickLaunchShortcut>
  </quickLaunchShortcutList>

```

```

        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/bin/myprogram.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
        <windowsPath>${installdir}/bin</windowsPath>
    </quickLaunchShortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a web browser pointing to a specific url -->
    <quickLaunchLinkShortcut>
        <comment>Launch a web browser pointing to My Program website</comment>
        <icon></icon>
        <name>Visit My Program website</name>
        <platforms>all</platforms>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <url>http://www.example.com/myprogram</url>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </quickLaunchLinkShortcut>

    <!-- Intended to launch a viewer for a specific file -->
    <quickLaunchFileShortcut>
        <comment>Check the user guide</comment>
        <filePath>${installdir}/doc/userguide.pdf</filePath>
        <icon></icon>
        <name>My Program User Guide</name>
        <platforms>all</platforms>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
    </quickLaunchFileShortcut>
    ...
</quickLaunchShortcutList>
...
</component>

```

## 5.5 Adding components from external files

Components can also be extracted to a different file, making them usable as modules between different projects. These external files can be later inserted in the `<componentList>` using the `<include>` directive as seen in the code below:

```

<componentList>
    <include file="my_external_component.xml" />
</componentList>

```

Of course, you can mix external and internal components in the project file

```

<componentList>
    <component>
        <name>internal</name>
    </component>
    <include file="my_external_component.xml" />
</componentList>

```

In fact, the `<include>` directive can be used to include any external piece of XML code in any place of the project if some conditions are met:

- The parent XML node is a `<*List>` tag: `<actionList>`, `<parameterList>`, `<ruleList>`...
- The inserted code is valid in the insertion point. For example, trying to include a file containing a `<showInfo>` action in a `<ruleList>` will fail.

- The inserted XML code is grouped in a single element. For example, inserting a code containing two `<runProgram>` actions will fail but inserting an `<actionGroup>` with multiple actions on it will work.

```
<project>
  <shortName>sample</shortName>
  <fullName>Sample Project</fullName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <enableRollback>1</enableRollback>
  <enableTimestamp>1</enableTimestamp>
  <componentList>
    <!-- component.xml contains a component -->
    <include file="path/to/component.xml"/>
    <component>
      <name>default</name>
      <description>Default Component</description>
      <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
      <selected>1</selected>
      <show>1</show>
      <folderList>
        <!-- folder.xml contains a folder -->
        <include file="path/to/folder.xml"/>
      </folderList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
  <parameterList>
    <!-- installdir.xml contains a directory parameter -->
    <include file="path/to/installdir.xml"/>
    <booleanParameter>
      <name>boolean_question</name>
      <title>Boolean Question</title>
      <description>Please answer yes or no</description>
      <validationActionList>
        <!-- validationActions.xml contains an actionGroup -->
        <include file="path/to/validationActions.xml"/>
        <throwError text="You must click yes!" >
          <ruleList>
            <!-- isTrue.xml contains a set of rules in a ruleGroup -->
            <include file="path/to/isTrue.xml"/>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </validationActionList>
    </booleanParameter>
    ...
  </parameterList>
  ...
</project>
```

It is not possible to configure whether or not an `<include>` should be inserted. The `<include>` directives are evaluated when loading the project so they cannot contain variables or rules.

## 5.6 Excluding components at build time

Although a component can be disabled and hidden at runtime by modifying its `<selected>` and `<show>` properties, sometimes it is desirable to do not bundle them at all. In these situations, you can use the `<shouldPackRuleList>`. This set of rules is evaluated at build time and will decide whether or not the component containing them will be packed. For example, to just pack a component when building for OS X:

```
<component>
  <name>osxComponent</name>
```



```

    <description>OS X Component</description>
    <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <show>1</show>
    ...
    <shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>and</shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>
    <shouldPackRuleList>
        <compareText>
            <logic>equals</logic>
            <text>${platform_name}</text>
            <value>osx</value>
        </compareText>
    </shouldPackRuleList>
</component>

```

Please note the usage of the built-in variable `${platform_name}`, which contains the build target at build time. In this case, using a `<platformTest>` will not work because it would evaluate the platform in which the builder is running and not the platform for which the installer is being built.

The same way as a `<ruleList>`, the `<shouldPackRuleList>` can contain `<ruleGroup>` rules to create complex conditions. You can also configure its rule evaluation logic using the `<shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>` property.

## 5.7 Component Groups

A `<componentGroup>` is a special type of `<component>` that can contains other components in its `<componentList>`:

```

<project>
    ...
    <componentList>

        <!-- componentGroup, a component with sub-components -->
        <componentGroup>
            <name>application1</name>
            <description>Application 1</description>
            ...
            <folderList>
                ...
            </folderList>
            <componentList>
                <component>
                    <name>feature1</name>
                    <description>Optional feature 1</description>
                    <folderList>
                        ...
                    </folderList>
                </component>
                <component>
                    <name>feature2</name>
                    <description>Optional feature 2</description>
                    <folderList>
                        ...
                    </folderList>
                </component>

                <!-- embedding a group inside a group -->
                <componentGroup>
                    <name>feature3</name>
                    <description>Optional feature 3</description>
                    <componentList>
                        <component>

```

```

        <name>feature4</name>
        <description>Optional feature 4</description>
        <folderList>
            ...
        </folderList>
    </component>
</componentList>
<folderList>
    ...
</folderList>
</componentGroup>
</componentList>
</componentGroup>

<component>
    <name>application2</name>
    <description>Application 2</description>
    <folderList>
        ...
    </folderList>
</component>

<!-- component group that is always selected and cannot be edited -->
<componentGroup>
    <name>application3</name>
    <description>Application 3</description>
    <selected>1</selected>
    <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
    <folderList>
        ...
    </folderList>
    <componentList>
        <component>
            <name>feature5</name>
            <description>Optional feature 5</description>
            <folderList>
                ...
            </folderList>
        </component>
    </componentList>
</componentGroup>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

Component groups are displayed as a tree in the component selection page, where the user may choose to install any subset of its sub-components.

The following image shows the component selection screen for the example above:

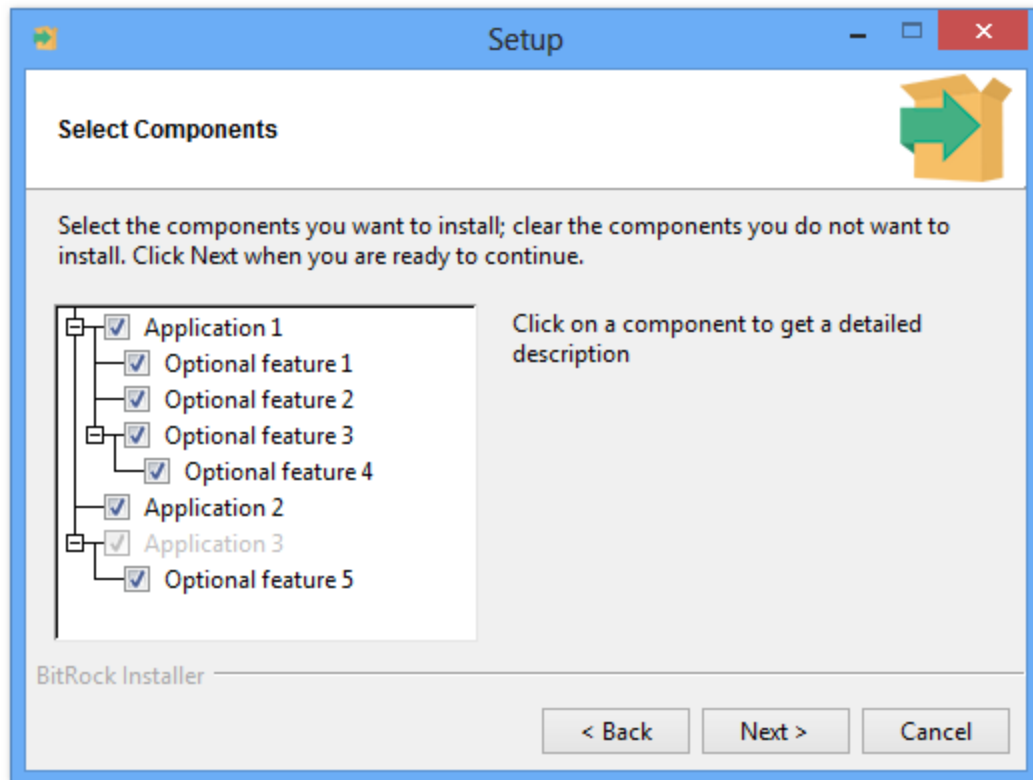


Figure 5.2: Component selection screen

As with a regular component, a component group can include its own files (in its `<folderList>`) and actions.

Component groups may also be nested, creating multiple levels. This can be done by embedding a `<componentGroup>` in the `<componentList>` of another `<componentGroup>`. The `feature4` component is an example of this - it is inside the `feature3` `<componentGroup>`, which is a sub-component of `application1`.

A child component will be installed only if it is selected and all of its parent component groups are selected as well. For example, if `application1` is not selected, then regardless of whether or not `feature1` was previously selected, it will not be installed. In the GUI component selection, this behavior is represented by visually deselecting all of the child components when deselecting a parent. For example, the following shows that when `application1` is deselected, all of its child components are automatically deselected and cannot be edited:

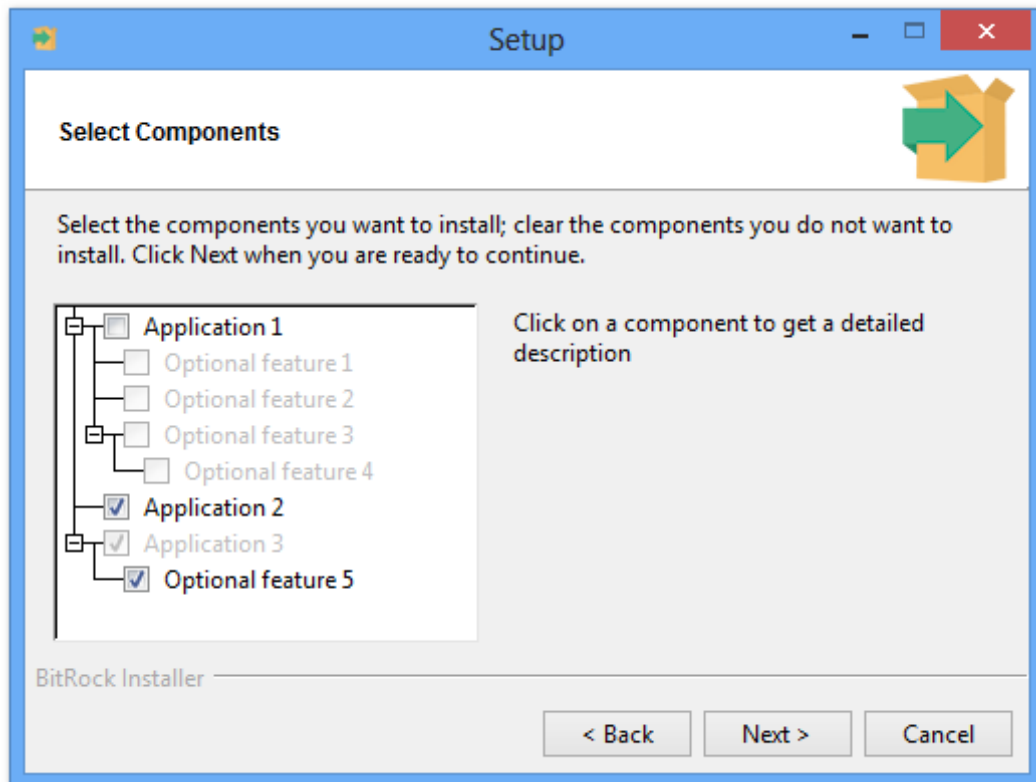


Figure 5.3: Component selection screen

Selecting a child component for installation requires enabling its parent components. In the example, in order to install `feature1`, the user first has to select `application1` by clicking on the checkbox next to it. This will allow editing of the children of `application1`. Similarly, to enable `feature4`, the user needs to select both the `application1` and `feature3` component groups.

Specifying which components to enable from the command line differs in behavior. Whenever the user specifies `--enable-components`, all parents of specified components are also automatically selected. For example, if the user specifies that `feature4` should be enabled, `feature3` and `application1` are automatically selected.

### 5.7.1 Installing in text mode

When running an installer in text mode, sub-components can only be chosen if a parent has been chosen. For example:

```
$> /path/to/installer --mode text

...

Select the components you want to install; clear the components you do not want
to install. Click Next when you are ready to continue.

Application 1 [Y/n] :y

Application 1 - Optional feature 1 [Y/n] :y

Application 1 - Optional feature 2 [Y/n] :y

Application 1 - Optional feature 3 [Y/n] :n

Application 2 [Y/n] :y
```

```
Application 3 : Y (Cannot be edited)
Application 3 - Optional feature 5 [Y/n] :n
...
```

Please note that the user was not asked about `feature4` since the `feature3` component group was not selected.

As a regular parameter group, a `<componentGroup>` with its `<show>` property set to `false` won't be visible, hidden its child as well.

If a `<componentGroup>` has its `<canBeEdited>` set to `false` but is selected by default, its sub-components can be still edited (if they individually allow it). However, in the case of a deselected component group that cannot be edited, their child won't allow any user interaction, regardless of their individual configurations.

## 5.8 Downloadable components

InstallBuilder provides the ability to configure some or all of the available components to be separate, downloadable content instead of being embedded in the installer. This means that elements of the application that are not always used can be made downloadable to decrease an installer's size.

Each downloadable component is built as a separate file for each platform. After building a project, its components should be copied to a web server or file hosting service so that users can download it.

### 5.8.1 How to create downloadable components

Any existing or new project can be configured to have its components downloadable as separate files.

To do so, enable the `<downloadable>` tag for any `<component>` in the project that should be made downloadable.

In addition, the `<componentsUrl>` should be a URL that points to the directory where all files are to be placed.

For example, the following is a complete project, including the URL where the components will be copied:

```
<project>
  <shortName>downloadabledemo</shortName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <componentsUrl>http://example.com/installer/components/</componentsUrl>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <!-- component that should be embedded in the installer -->
    <component>
      <name>core</name>
      <description>Core features</description>
      ...
    </component>

    <!-- another component that should be embedded in the installer, specified explicitly -->
    <component>
      <name>osintegration</name>
      <downloadable>0</downloadable>
      <description>Integration with operating system</description>
      ...
    </component>

    <!-- another component that should be built as downloadable component -->
    <component>
      <name>optional</name>
```

```

        <downloadable>1</downloadable>
        <description>Optional content</description>
        ...
    </component>

</componentList>
...
</project>

```

In order to build the project with downloadable components enabled, the `--downloadable-components` flag should be passed to the CLI.

```
$> path/to/bin/builder build project.xml linux --downloadable-components
```

When using the GUI, the `downloadable components` checkbox should be enabled in the `Build` section before building the project.

After building the project for Linux, an additional directory `downloadabledemo-1.0-components` will be created with an `optional-1.0-linux.pak` file inside. When a project contains more components or is built for other platforms, additional files will be created in this directory.

After building the project, all contents of this directory should be uploaded to a web server so that they are available at `<componentsUrl>`. For the example above, the full URL should be `http://example.com/installer/components/optional-1.0-linux.pak`.

Some components may be available under different URLs. In this case, it is possible to specify the location using the `<url>` tag. The example below shows how optional content can be placed at a different URL:

```

<project>
...
<componentList>
    <!-- another component that should be built as downloadable component -->
    <component>
        <name>optional3rdparty</name>
        <downloadable>1</downloadable>
        <description>Optional content, provided by other vendor</description>
        <url>http://example.net/downloads/optional3rdparty-1.0-${platform_name}.pak</url>
        ...
    </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

The component above will be downloaded from a different website using different platform names.

It is also possible to configure the directory for outputting the components using the `<componentsDirectory>` tag. This can be specified relatively. In this case it is relative to `<outputDirectory>`.

For example, to copy all component files into the same directory as `<outputDirectory>`, do the following:

```

<project>
    <componentsDirectory>.</componentsDirectory>
    ...
</project>

```

## 5.8.2 Running the installers with downloadable components

The behavior for installers with one or more downloadable components is the same as it is with regular installers.

The component selection page shows the downloadable file size for each component available for download:

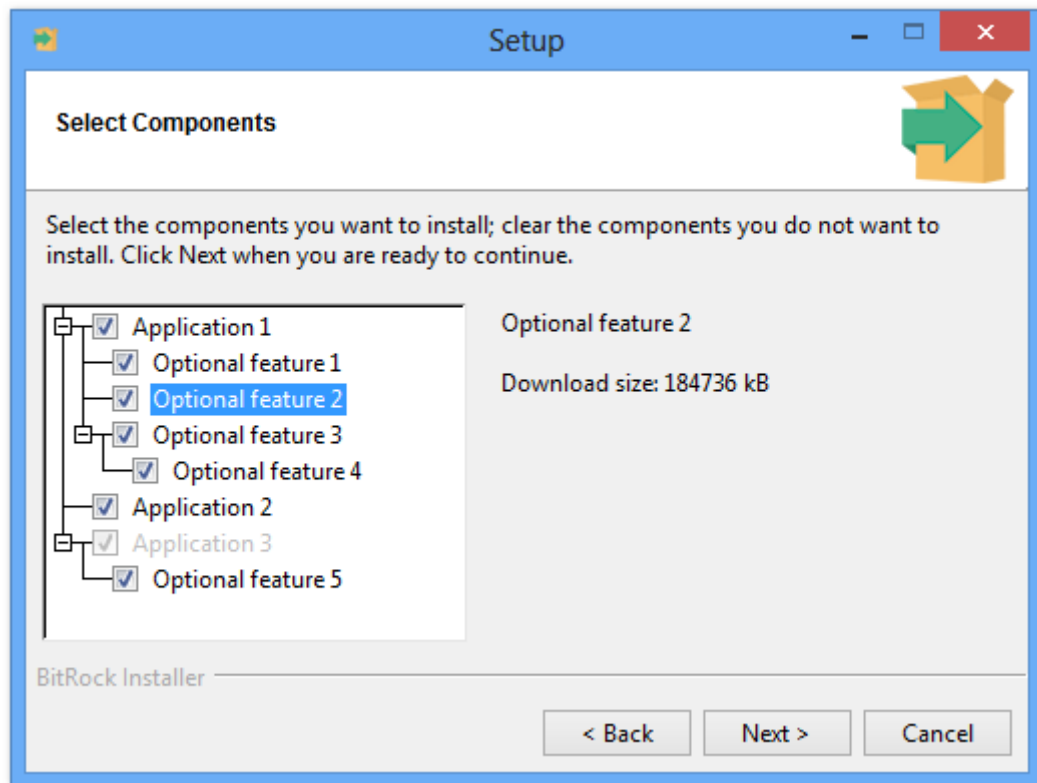


Figure 5.4: Component selection with downloadable component

If a user does not select any downloadable component, the installer does not perform any download or show any additional information related to downloading components.

If a user does want to install a downloadable component, after the Ready To Install page is shown, the user is presented with a proxy configuration page:

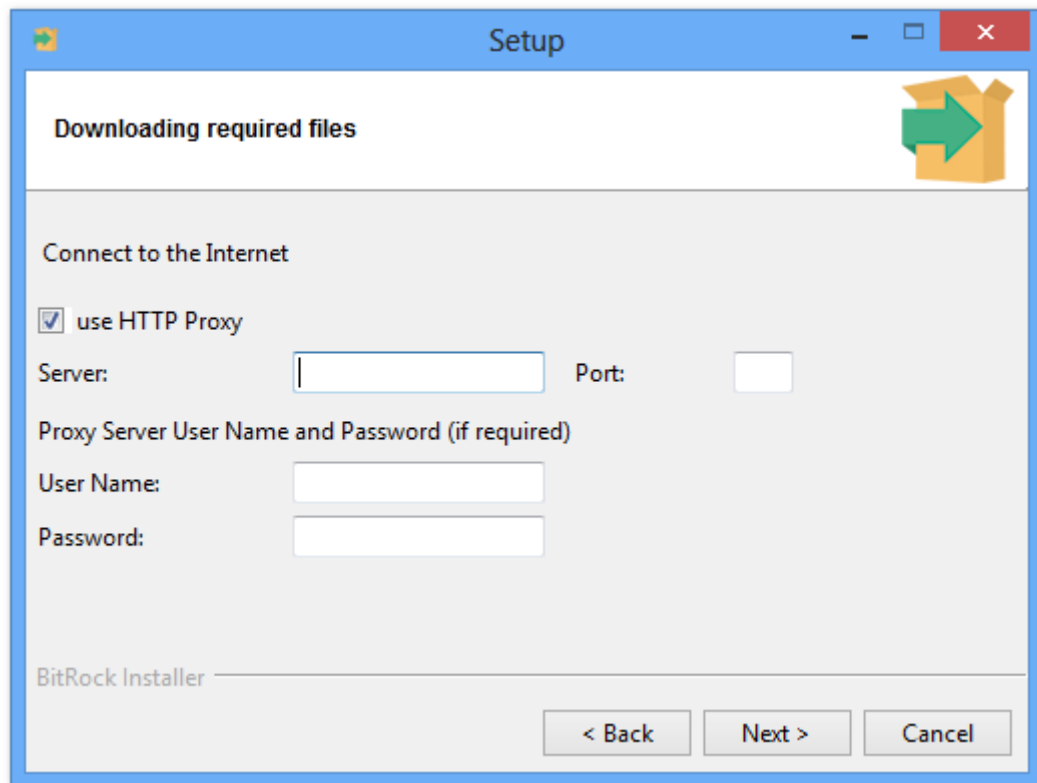


Figure 5.5: Proxy server configuration

After the user configures or skips the proxy server configuration, the installer starts downloading the specified components:



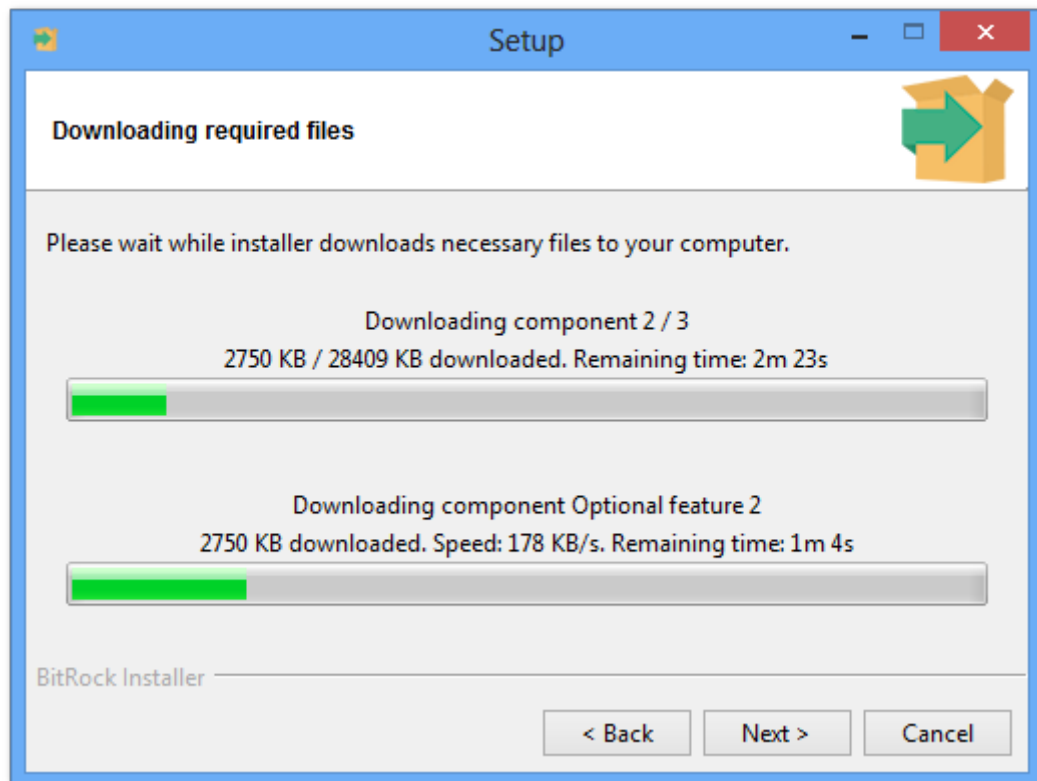


Figure 5.6: Download progress

If no error occurs, the installation proceeds when all components are downloaded and no user interaction is required. In the event of an error, the user is prompted with three options:

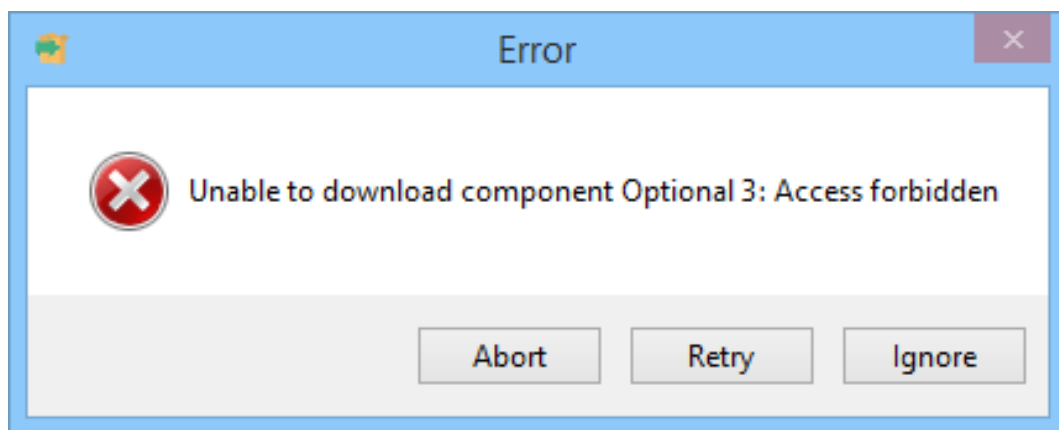


Figure 5.7: Download error

- **Retry** - retry the download
- **Ignore** - do not attempt to download the current component and proceed without installing it
- **Abort** - abort installation

### 5.8.3 Handling errors

In the event of download errors, the user is able to ignore the fact that a component could not be downloaded and proceed with the installation. It is possible to define actions that should be run when a component failed to download and the user chose to ignore it. For example:

```
<project>
  <shortName>downloadabledemo</shortName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <componentsUrl>http://example.com/installer/components/</componentsUrl>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>php</name>
      <downloadable>1</downloadable>
      <description>PHP module for Apache</description>
      <onDownloadErrorActionList>
        <throwError>
          <text>PHP module is required for phpMyAdmin. Aborting installation</text>
          <ruleList>
            <isTrue>
              <value>${project.component (phpmyadmin) .selected}</value>
            </isTrue>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </onDownloadErrorActionList>
    </component>

  </componentList>
  ...
</project>
```

In this case, if the PHP module is not downloaded and another component depends on it, the installation will abort.

### 5.8.4 Text mode and unattended installers

Text mode installers provide the same support for downloadable components as GUI installers. After all parameters have been specified and at least one component needs to be downloaded, the user is prompted with a proxy configuration question. The user may choose to skip proxy configuration or specify it.

Next, downloading begins and the overall progress of installation is shown (this is the same feedback provided in the form of a progress meter for GUI installations).

Unattended installers also provide support for downloadable components. Components are downloaded and installation occurs automatically.

If `unattendedmodeui` is specified as `minimalWithDialogs`, progress for downloads is shown only as the overall download progress.

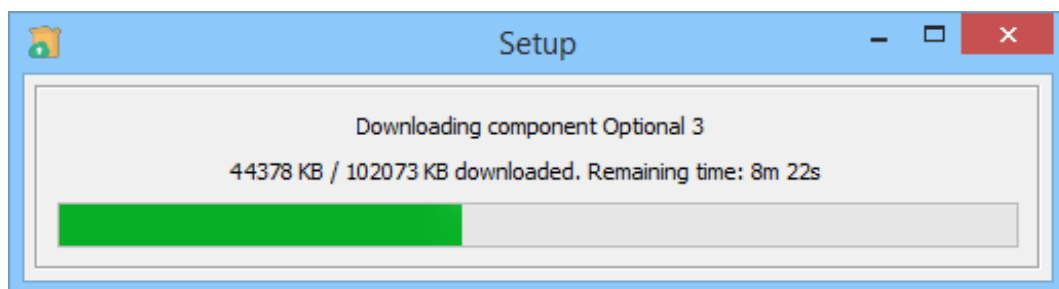


Figure 5.8: Download in unattended mode UI

Similar to GUI installers, when all components are downloaded, the installation proceeds.

## 5.9 Adding or removing components to existing installations

InstallBuilder offers the ability to install and uninstall individual components without reinstalling or uninstalling the entire application.

This functionality is disabled by default. In order to enable it, enable `<allowAddRemoveComponents>`.

### 5.9.1 Storing installation information

InstallBuilder stores the location of all applications inside of the application directory. When performing an installation, the user specifies the directory where the application should be installed. If `<allowAddRemoveComponents>` is enabled, a check is made to see if a previous installation exists in specified directory before the component selection page is shown.

If it contains information about a previous installation, it is used by the installer. This information will consist of currently installed components and optionally for storing previous values for parameters that allow it.

It also contains information about the currently installed version. If the versions do not match, information about the currently selected components and values for parameters that allow it is used. However, all components are reinstalled in such a case.

### 5.9.2 Installing additional components

If `<allowAddRemoveComponents>` is enabled, the installer will automatically detect whenever a valid installation of the application is present in the installation directory.

Components previously installed will always be selected and the user will not be able to uninstall components using the installer. The user may choose to install additional components.

Whenever any change is made, all actions for newly selected components are run. However, actions for components previously installed are not run. This prevents actions that set up default values from overriding settings that user has already modified.

After a successful installation, the uninstaller and all related information will be updated to reflect that the user has installed additional components.

### 5.9.3 Uninstalling components

If `<allowAddRemoveComponents>` is enabled, running the uninstaller will show an additional choice page with the following options:

- **Entire application** - removes the entire application and all files installed by the application
- **Individual components** - removes individual components while leaving the rest of the application intact.

When a user selects the **Entire application** option, the behavior is the same as when `<allowAddRemoveComponents>` is disabled.

When a user selects **Individual components**, a component selection page will be shown. All components not currently installed will not be shown in the component selection tree. Components that have their `<canBeEdited>` disabled will not be editable.

When a user selects a component group, the component and all of its sub-components will be removed. For example if a user selects `application1`, this causes `feature1`, `feature2`, `feature3` and `feature4` to be uninstalled:

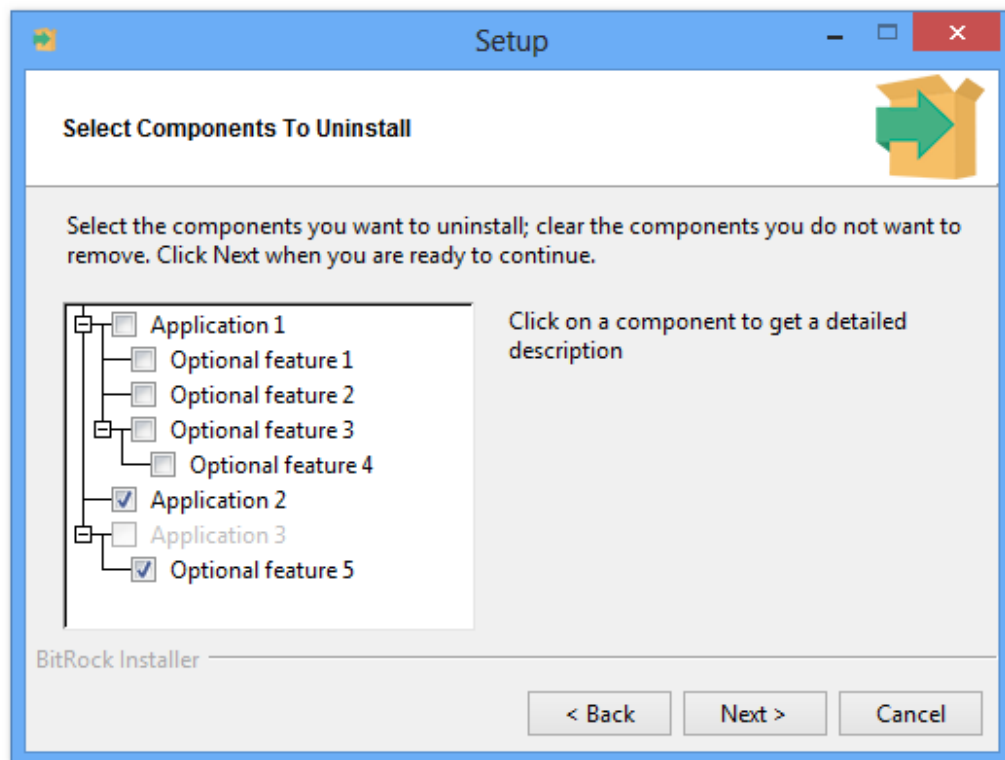


Figure 5.9: Selecting components to uninstall

Selecting a component group to be uninstalled also causes all of its child components to be uninstalled. Those components are shown as selected and cannot be edited. For example the following shows that the component `application1` will be uninstalled, which will also cause all of its child components to be uninstalled:

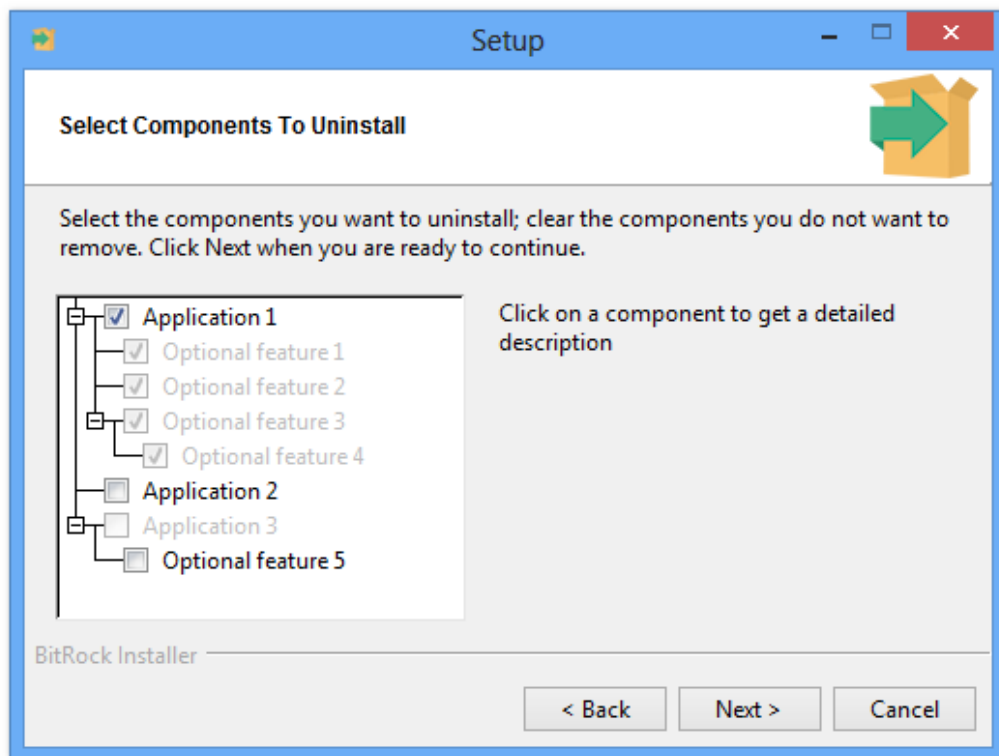


Figure 5.10: Selecting components to uninstall

If a parent is deselected, the selection of its children is reverted - if a child component was previously explicitly selected before selecting the parent, it will remain selected. Otherwise the child component will be deselected.

When a user selects all of the components, the installer will behave as if the **Entire application** option was chosen. Otherwise, selected components will be removed and pre- and post- uninstallation actions for these components will be run. Remaining components will remain installed and no actions for these components will be run.

After successful uninstallation, the uninstaller and all related information will be updated to reflect that the user has uninstalled some of the components.

When the **Entire application** option is chosen or the user selects all components in the component tree, the entire application is uninstalled along with uninstaller itself. This also triggers pre- and post- uninstallation actions for the project to be run.

## Chapter 6

# Working with Files and Folders

The installation resources (files and directories) are grouped into `<folder>` elements.

```
<project>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>myComponent</name>
      ...
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <name>documents</name>
          <destination>${installdir}/docs</destination>
          <platforms>linux windows</platforms>
          <distributionFileList>
            <distributionDirectory origin="/home/johndoe/docs"/>
            <distributionFile origin="/home/johndoe/README"/>
          </distributionFileList>
          <shortcutList>
            ...
            <shortcut/>
            ...
          </shortcutList>
          <actionList>
            <addTextToFile file="${installdir}/docs/README" text="some text"/>
          </actionList>
        </folder>
      </folderList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
</project>
```

The most important tags in a folder element are:

- `<distributionFileList>`: Contains the list of packed files. A directory (and its contents) is defined as a `<distributionDirectory>` while a file is represented through a `<distributionFile>`. All of the defined elements will be packed and unpacked at runtime. Both the `<distributionDirectory>` and `<distributionFile>` elements support the below tags:
  - `<origin>`: Path to the file or directory to pack in the build machine. If the path is relative, it will be absolutized when building using the project file parent directory as a reference.
  - `<allowWildcards>`: Configures whether or not the path configured in the `<origin>` tag must be considered a pattern (thus being resolved using global matching) or a literal location.

- **<excludeFiles>**: When enabling **<allowWildcards>**, the list of files matching this pattern will be ignored. If **<allowWildcards>** is set to false, this pattern is ignored. See the Filters section for more information.
- **<includeFiles>**: When enabling **<allowWildcards>**, only the list of files matching this pattern will be considered. If **<allowWildcards>** is set to false, this pattern is ignored. See the Filters section for more information.

```
<folder>
...
<distributionFileList>
  <distributionFile>
    <origin>${build_project_directory}/license.txt</origin>
  </distributionFile>
  <distributionDirectory allowWildcards="1">
    <origin>${build_project_directory}/readmeFiles/*.txt</origin>
    <includeFiles>*/README-*.txt</includeFiles>
    <excludeFiles>*/README-template.txt</excludeFiles>
  </distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>
```

- **<platforms>**: This tag defines a space-separated list of platforms for which the files will be packed. This is evaluated at build time and matched against the specified build target. It allows a single project to define a multiplatform installer. The special platform identifier **all** can be used and represents all platforms. The full list of supported values in the tag is summarized in the table below:

Supported Platforms	
Platform Identifier	Platform Description
all	All Platforms
linux	Linux
linux-x64	Linux x86 64 bits
linux-ia64	Linux IA64
windows	Windows
osx	Mac OS X
solaris-sparc	Solaris Sparc
solaris-intel	Solaris Intel
linux-ppc	Linux PPC
linux-s390	Linux s390
linux-s390x	Linux s390x
freebsd	FreeBSD 5
freebsd4	FreeBSD 4
freebsd6	FreeBSD 6
freebsd6-x64	FreeBSD 6 64 bits
freebsd7	FreeBSD 7/8
freebsd7-x64	FreeBSD 7/8 64 bits
openbsd3	OpenBSD x86
hpux	HP-UX
aix	AIX, OS/400
irix-n32	IRIX

- **<destination>**: The destination directory in which all the bundled files in the folder will be unpacked.
- **<shortcutList>**: Along with the files, a folder can define a list of shortcuts to create. You can find a detailed reference in the shortcuts section.
- **<actionList>**: Actions executed right after the files of the folder are unpacked.

## 6.1 Conditionally Packing a Folder

Although the `<platforms>` tag provides a built-in mechanism to avoid packing folders for different platforms, there are scenarios in which you need a more complex condition than just the target platform. This can be achieved using the `<shouldPackRuleList>`:

```
<folder>
  <name>documents</name>
  <destination>${installdir}/docs</destination>
  <platforms>linux</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory origin="/home/johndoe/docs"/>
    <distributionFile origin="/home/johndoe/README"/>
  </distributionFileList>
  <shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>and</shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>
  <shouldPackRuleList>
    <fileExists path="/home/johndoe/docs"/>
    <fileExists path="/home/johndoe/README"/>
  </shouldPackRuleList>
</folder>
```

The above folder will only be packed if the target platform is `linux` and the files exist. The evaluation logic of the rules can be modified through the `<shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>` property.

This is also helpful when you are developing the installer and do not need all of the files that will be included in the final version (that can greatly increase the build time) to be packed. For example, you could create an environment variable (`DEMO_BUILD`) to indicate to the builder you do not need an official build:

```
<folder>
  <name>optionalFiles</name>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <platforms>linux</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory origin="videos"/>
    <distributionDirectory origin="images"/>
    <distributionDirectory origin="documentation"/>
  </distributionFileList>
  <shouldPackRuleList>
    <!-- Check if the variable is defined -->
    <compareText text="${env(DEMO_BUILD)}" logic="equals" value=""/>
  </shouldPackRuleList>
</folder>
```

You can find a more complex example in the "Custom Build Targets" section.

---

### Do not confuse `<shouldPackRuleList>` with `<ruleList>`

Rules inside a `<ruleList>` are evaluated at runtime while rules within a `<shouldPackRuleList>` are evaluated at build time.

---

## 6.2 Conditionally Unpacking a Folder

By default, folders will be unpacked if they were packed (as described in the previous section) and if the `<component>` in which they are bundled was selected. However, you can add additional logic to discern if it should be unpacked by attaching rules to its `<ruleList>`:

```
<folder>
  <name>documents</name>
```

---



```

<destination>${installdir}/docs</destination>
<platforms>windows</platforms>
<distributionFileList>
  <distributionDirectory origin="/home/johndoe/docs"/>
  <distributionFile origin="/home/johndoe/README"/>
</distributionFileList>
<ruleEvaluationLogic>and</ruleEvaluationLogic>
<ruleList>
  <platformTest type="windows-xp"/>
</ruleList>
</folder>

```

The above folder will be packed for any Windows target but will only be unpacked if the platform in which the installer is executing is Windows XP.

## 6.3 Filters

### 6.3.1 Basic Filters

InstallBuilder implements a basic filtering mechanism for folders. This functionality will allow you to pack the contents of a folder instead of including the folder itself and to apply filters to include or exclude specific files. For example, if you have a folder named "documentation" and you want to pack a subset of its contents and unpack it to `${installdir}/myDocs`, you just need to use the snippet below:

```

<folder>
  <description>Documentation Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}/myDocs</destination>
  <name>documentation</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory allowWildcards="1">
      <origin>/some/path/to/documentation/*</origin>
      <includeFiles>*/project-1-*.txt</includeFiles>
      <excludeFiles>*/project-1-secret.txt</excludeFiles>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

In the above example, all of the .txt files related to "project-1" will be packaged, with the exception of "project-1-secret.txt"

The following are the filtering-related tags that you can use:

- **<allowWildcards>** : This tag determines the behavior of the filtering mechanism. If it is set to "0" (the default), there will not be any global pattern interpretation and patterns will be taken as literal strings. For example, if you define `<origin>/some/path/to/documentation/*</origin>`, the installer will look for a folder named "\*" inside the `/some/path/to/documentation/` directory. In addition, the `includeFiles` and `excludeFiles` tags will be ignored.

However, if `allowWildcards` is set to "1", the `<origin>` will be expanded and the installer will generate a list of matching files.

- **<includeFiles>** : This tag allows you to select files over the matches produced by the `<origin>` tag when wildcards are enabled. The default value of the `<includeFiles>` tag is "\*" so all the files matched by the `<origin>` tag will be packed.
- **<excludeFiles>** : Once the list of files has been filtered with the `<includeFiles>` pattern, the `<excludeFiles>` filter will be applied over the result. The default value of this tag is empty so no filter is applied. This tag is ignored if wildcards are disabled. Only files directly returned by the evaluation of the `<origin>` pattern can be excluded, the builder won't try to recursively exclude files at deeper hierarchy levels in the packed directories.

The pattern interpretation in the `<origin>`, `<includeFiles>` and `<excludeFiles>` does not follow the same rules. The `<origin>` pattern is expanded over the existing files, like a `"dir c:\Program Files\*txt"` on Windows or `"ls ~/*txt"` on Unix. Forward and backwards slashes are normalized according to the platform. However, the patterns in the `<includeFiles>` and `<excludeFiles>` tags follow a stricter format:

- Forward slashes are used as path separators, which let us escape special characters using backslashes. For example, to match `.txt` files, you must use `*/*.txt` files in both Windows and Unix systems.
- The pattern is applied over the full path of the files and a string comparison is performed: `<includeFiles>my.txt</includeFiles>` will not work because it will compare `"/some/path/to/my.txt"` with `"my.txt"`. `*/my.txt` has to be used instead.
- Multiple patterns can be included and must be separated by `;` or `\n` characters:

```
<distributionDirectory allowWildcards="1">
  <origin>/some/path/*</origin>
  <includeFiles>*/*.txt;*/*.jpg;*/*.bmp</includeFiles>
  <excludeFiles>*/*secret*.txt;*/myImage.bmp</excludeFiles>
</distributionDirectory>
```

The special characters used in all of the patterns are listed below:

- `?` : Matches any single character.
  - `*` : Matches any sequence of zero or more characters.
  - `[chars]` : Matches any single character in `chars`. If `chars` contains a sequence of the form `a-b` then any character between `a` and `b` (inclusive) will match.
  - `{a,b,...}` : Matches any of the strings `a`, `b`, etc.
-

**Basic filters do not operate recursively**

The basic filters mechanism is not intended to recursively skip packing files in the directory provided in the `<origin>` tag. Just the results returned by the evaluation of the `<origin>` pattern can be filtered. For example, if you are packing a directory `images` and want to exclude the file `demo.png`, the below won't work:

```
<folder>
...
<destination>${installdir}</destination>
...
<distributionFileList>
  <distributionDirectory allowWildcards="1">
    <origin>images</origin>
    <excludeFiles>*/demo.png</excludeFiles>
  </distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>
```

The reason is that the `<origin>` pattern will only return `images` as matching file, which does not match the exclusion pattern `*/demo.png`.

If `demo.png` is packed directly under `images` you could use:

```
<folder>
...
<destination>${installdir}/images</destination>
...
<distributionFileList>
  <distributionDirectory allowWildcards="1">
    <origin>images/*</origin>
    <excludeFiles>*/demo.png</excludeFiles>
  </distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>
```

In this case, evaluating `<origin>` will return all the contained images (`sample-01.png`, `left-image.jpg`, `details.gif`, **`demo.png`**, ...), and the exclusion pattern will be able to match `demo.png`.

If you want to filter certain files at any level of the hierarchy in the packed directory, you should use the Advanced Filters instead, which operate recursively.

## 6.3.2 Advanced Filters

In addition to the basic filters, which allow providing a pattern to the `<origin>` tag while excluding some of the results returned, InstallBuilder also includes a more complex filtering mechanism that allows excluding files located at any level in the folder hierarchy of the `<distributionDirectory>`.

Note that you have to define filters that will decide if the file will be packed or not. Currently, just filters based on the file path are allowed: `<fileNameFilter>`. These are the basic tags in the `<fileNameFilter>`:

- `<pattern>`: Pattern to match against the path of the file
- `<patternType>`: Whether to use glob or regular expressions matching
- `<logic>`: Whether or not the pattern must match to pass the filter.

These filters are grouped into the `<onPackingFilterList>`. If the file in consideration matches the expressed conditions in this list, it will be packed, if not, it will be skipped.

For example, if you want to pack a folder `dist-files`:

```
dist-files/
|-- bin
```

```

|   '-- productA
|       '-- data
|           |-- info.ini
|           '-- info.ini~
|-- docs
|   '-- reference
|       |-- README.tct~
|       |-- reference.html
|       |-- reference.html~
|       |-- reference.pdf
|       '-- reference.pdf~
'-- libraries
    |-- lib1.so
    |-- .#lib2.so
    '-- lib2.so

```

To exclude all of the temporary files (files ending in ~), you could use:

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="*~" logic="does_not_match" patternType="glob"/>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

After the installation, you will find the `dist-files` directory clean of temporary files:

```

sample-1.0
|-- dist-files
|   |-- bin
|   |   '-- productA
|   |       '-- data
|   |           '-- info.ini
|   |-- docs
|   |   '-- reference
|   |       |-- reference.html
|   |       '-- reference.pdf
|   '-- libraries
|       |-- lib1.so
|       |-- .#lib2.so
|       '-- lib2.so
|-- uninstall
'-- Uninstall Sample Project.desktop

```

If you also want to exclude files starting with `.#`, you just need to add another filter to the `<onPackingFilterList>`:

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>

```

```

    <filterEvaluationLogic>and</filterEvaluationLogic>
    <onPackingFilterList>
      <fileNameFilter pattern="*~" logic="does_not_match" patternType="glob"/>
      <fileNameFilter pattern="*/.#*" logic="does_not_match" patternType="glob"/>
    </onPackingFilterList>
  </distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

The default `<filterEvaluationLogic>` is `and` but you can also set it to `or`. A file will be packed if its full path in the build machine matches all the filters when using `and` logic or when matching any of them when using `or`.

For example, if you want to pack just `.png` and `.jpg` files, you could rewrite the code with `or` logic:

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <filterEvaluationLogic>or</filterEvaluationLogic>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="*.png" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="*.jpg" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

The filters can also include more complex patterns if instead of using the `glob` `<patternType>` you set it to `regexp`. For example, you can exclude `.txt` files that start with a number and contain `temp` in their paths and `.png` files that start with three capital letters using a single filter:

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="/([A-Z]{3}[^/]*\.png|[0-9]+[^/]*temp[^/]*\.txt)$" logic ←
          ="does_not_match" patternType="regexp"/>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

Both `regexp` and `glob` pattern types allow providing a semicolon-separated list of sub patterns. If any of the sub patterns in the list evaluates to true, the full pattern will also evaluate to true. For example, to pack all of the `.png` and `.jpg` files in a directory, you could use any of the below snippets:

```

<folder>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <onPackingFilterList>

```

```

        <fileNameFilter pattern="*.png;*.jpg" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
    </onPackingFilterList>
</distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <filterEvaluationLogic>or</filterEvaluationLogic>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="*.jpg" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
        <fileNameFilter pattern="*.png" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

```

<folder>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <filterEvaluationLogic>and</filterEvaluationLogic>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <fileNameFilter pattern=".*\.(png|jpg)$" logic="matches" patternType="regexp"/>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

Even more complex conditions can be expressed using a `<filterGroup>`. This special type of filter allows grouping a set of filters with a configurable `<filterEvaluationLogic>`. For example, you can exclude all of the `.txt` files except for those in the `readme` folder and exclude all of the `.png` and `.jpg` files that are not under the `images` folder:

```

<folder>
  <description>Program Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>programfiles</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>dist-files</origin>
      <filterEvaluationLogic>and</filterEvaluationLogic>
      <onPackingFilterList>
        <!-- Include files that do not end in .txt or if they are located in the readme  ←
           dir -->
        <filterGroup>
          <filterEvaluationLogic>or</filterEvaluationLogic>
          <onPackingFilterList>
            <fileNameFilter pattern="*.txt" logic="does_not_match" patternType="glob"/>
            <fileNameFilter pattern="*/readme/*" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
          </onPackingFilterList>
        </filterGroup>
      </onPackingFilterList>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

```

        <!-- Include files that do not end in .png or .jpg or if they are located in the ←
            images dir -->
        <filterGroup>
            <filterEvaluationLogic>or</filterEvaluationLogic>
            <onPackingFilterList>
                <fileNameFilter pattern=".*\.png;.*\.jpg" logic="does_not_match" patternType ←
                    ="regex"/>
                <fileNameFilter pattern="*/images/*" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
            </onPackingFilterList>
        </filterGroup>
    </onPackingFilterList>
</distributionDirectory>
</distributionFileList>
</folder>

```

Filter groups can also be nested as needed.

Take into account that all of the files in the `<distributionDirectory>` will be matched against the filter, so using a lot of very complex files could slightly increase the build time (the performance at runtime will not be affected at all).

---

#### The pattern is applied to the full path of the file

Because the pattern is applied to the full path of the file to be packed, when trying to match files ending in an specific suffix, you should always prefix it with `*` (when using `glob` `<patternType>`) or `.` `*` (when using `regex` `<patternType>`). For example, specifying:

```
<fileNameFilter pattern="images/*.png" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
```

Won't work because it will be matched against the full path, for example: `/home/bitrock/demo/files/images/foo.png`

To make it independent to the location, it should be rewritten to:

```
<fileNameFilter pattern="*/images/*.png" logic="matches" patternType="glob"/>
```

Or

```
<fileNameFilter pattern="${build_project_directory}/files/images/*.png" logic=" ←
    matches" patternType="glob"/>
```

---

## 6.4 Unix Permissions

InstallBuilder preserves the permissions of bundled files. It also includes two convenient tags: `<defaultUnixGroup>` and `<defaultUnixOwner>`. If a value is specified for those tags, the owner and group of the unpacked files will be modified at runtime:

```

<project>
    ...
    <defaultUnixGroup>wheel</defaultUnixGroup>
    <defaultUnixOwner>root</defaultUnixOwner>
    ...
</project>

```

Please take into account that the specified group and owner must exist in the target machine. If not, you can always create them before the installation phase:

```

<project>
    ...
    <defaultUnixGroup>coolUsers</defaultUnixGroup>
    <defaultUnixOwner>john</defaultUnixOwner>

```

---

```

...
<readyToInstallActionList>
  <addUser username="john"/>
  <addGroup groupname="coolUsers"/>
</readyToInstallActionList>
...
</project>

```

Despite the permissions being preserved, in some situations they must be fixed. The most convenient way of fixing them is to use the `<actionList>` of the folder containing the files and set the appropriate rights:

```

<folder>
  <description>Binary Files</description>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <name>executables</name>
  <platforms>all</platforms>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>/some/path/executables</origin>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
  <actionList>
    <changePermissions permissions="0755" files="${installdir}/executables/*"/>
  </actionList>
</folder>

```

A common scenario in which permissions must be fixed is when you are building a Linux installer on Windows. In that case, you could either manually fix the permissions as explained in the latest snippet or define the default permissions:

```

<project>
  ...
  <defaultUnixFilePermissions>644</defaultUnixFilePermissions>
  <defaultUnixDirectoryPermissions>755</defaultUnixDirectoryPermissions>
  ...
</project>

```

Please take into account that, contrary to the owner and group tags, the default Unix permissions are only applied when building on Windows. This way, if the installer is created on Unix, the configured values will be ignored.

---

#### Files packed on Windows lose their executable permissions

Windows does not understand Unix permissions, so Unix installers created on Windows will be unpacked without executable permissions and must be manually fixed. It is recommended that you use Unix machines to build the installers as they do not present any limitation.

---

## 6.5 Symbolic Links

When a symbolic link is specified as a `<distributionFile>`, InstallBuilder does not follow the link to pack its target. Depending on the build type, it will either pack the link (deb, rpm) or it will be registered and recreated at runtime.

## 6.6 Unpacking Before Installation Time

It is common to have a separate tool or program that must be bundled with and run from the installer but before the file copying phase of the installation process has completed. A common example would be a license validation program. Typically, all files bundled within an installer are unpacked and then any tools are run. In the case of a license validation tool, that is less than ideal

---



because the user may end up waiting for the files to be unpacked only to find that the license is not valid. The user would then have to wait for the installation to be rolled back.

InstallBuilder provides you with actions to deal with these situations. The most important are `<unpackFile>` and `<unpackDirectory>`:

```
<unpackDirectory>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <component>tools</component>
  <folder>license</folder>
  <origin>management</origin>
</unpackDirectory>
```

```
<unpackFile>
  <destination>${system_temp_directory}</destination>
  <component>tools</component>
  <folder>license</folder>
  <origin>management/validator.exe</origin>
</unpackFile>
```

The `<unpackDirectory>` action is intended to unpack a directory and its contents while the `<unpackFile>` action operates over files. Trying to unpack the wrong type in those actions will generate an error at runtime.

The configuration options for these actions specify the folder and component bundling the files, the path relative to the packed element, and the destination directory to unpack them.

The structure in Figure 6.1 (also represented in XML code) should help you understand how to reference internal files:

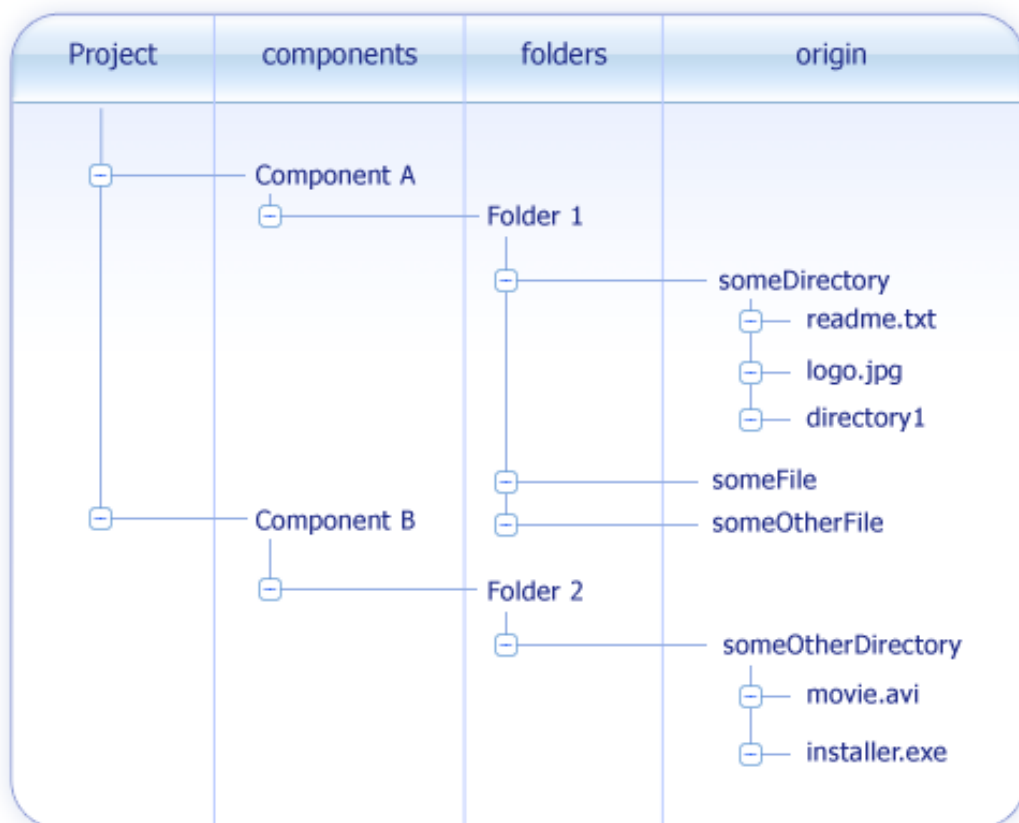


Figure 6.1: Internal Files Structure

```

<project>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>componentA</name>
    <description>Component A</description>
    <folderList>
      <folder>
        <name>folder1</name>
        <description>Folder 1</description>
        <distributionFileList>
          <distributionDirectory>
            <!-- someDirectory contains: readme.txt,
              logo.jpg and directory1 -->
            <origin>/path/to/someDirectory</origin>
          </distributionDirectory>
          <distributionFile>
            <origin>/path/to/someFile</origin>
          </distributionFile>
          <distributionFile>
            <origin>/path/to/someOtherFile</origin>
          </distributionFile>
        </distributionFileList>
      </folder>
    </folderList>
  </component>
  <component>
    <name>componentB</name>
    <description>Component B</description>
    <folderList>
      <folder>
        <name>folder2</name>
        <description>Folder 2</description>
        <distributionFileList>
          <distributionDirectory>
            <!-- someDirectory contains: movie.avi and
              installer.exe -->
            <origin>/path/to/someOtherDirectory</origin>
          </distributionDirectory>
        </distributionFileList>
      </folder>
    </folderList>
  </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

To reference logo.jpg:

```

<unpackFile>
  <component>componentA</component>
  <folder>folder1</folder>
  <origin>someDirectory/logo.jpg</origin>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
</unpackFile>

```

You could also unpack directory1:

```

<unpackDirectory>
  <component>componentA</component>
  <folder>folder1</folder>

```

```

    <origin>someDirectory/directory1</origin>
    <destination>${installdir}</destination>
</unpackDirectory>

```

Please note the `<origin>` is always provided as the relative path to the file or directory to unpack, relative to the `<folder>` containing it. It does not matter where the file was originally located in the building machine, just the path inside the installer:

```

<component name="componentA">
  <folderList>
    <folder>
      <name>folder1</name>
      <distributionFileList>
        <distributionDirectory>
          <origin>/some/long/path/in/the/building/machine/someDirectory</origin>
        </distributionDirectory>
      </distributionFileList>
    </folder>
  </folderList>
</component>

```

The example below details a real scenario, in which the installer unpacks a license validator and checks the provided key in the `<validationActionList>` of the page:

```

<project>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>tools</name>
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <name>license</name>
          <destination>${installdir}</destination>
          <distributionFileList>
            <!-- The management directory contains a lot of
                  tools, one of the our validator.exe -->
            <distributionDirectory origin="/path/to/dir/to/management"/>
          </distributionFileList>
        </folder>
      </folderList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>licenseCheck</name>
      <description>Introduce your license key</description>
      <value></value>
      <validationActionList>
        <unpackFile>
          <component>tools</component>
          <folder>license</folder>
          <!-- Relative path from the packed folder 'management' -->
          <origin>management/validator.exe</origin>
          <destination>${system_temp_directory}</destination>
        </unpackFile>
        <runProgram>
          <program>${system_temp_directory}/validator.exe</program>
          <programArguments>${project.parameter(licenseCheck).value}</programArguments>
        </runProgram>
        <throwError text="Wrong license key, please enter a valid one">
          <ruleList>
            <compareText text="${program_stdout}" logic="equals" value="1"/>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </validationActionList>
    </stringParameter>
  </parameterList>

```

```
        </throwError>
    </validationActionList>
</stringParameter>
</parameterList>
...
</project>
```

## Chapter 7

# User Input

### 7.1 Parameters

In most cases, you will need to request some information from your end users, such as the installation directory or username and password. For this purpose, InstallBuilder allows the creation of custom pages, which make it easy to request and validate user input. In addition, the provided information will automatically be stored in installer variables so it can be used later in the installation process, for example to pass it as arguments to a script in the post-installation. You can define such pages by adding parameters to the `<parameterList>` section in the XML project file.

There are different types of parameters: strings, booleans, option selection, and so on. Each one of them will be displayed to the user appropriately through the GUI and text interfaces. For example, a file parameter will be displayed with a graphical file selection button next to it and an option selection parameter will be displayed as a combobox. The parameters will also be available as command line options and as installer variables.

#### Parameter example

```
<fileParameter>
  <name>apacheconfig</name>
  <cliOptionName>apacheconfig</cliOptionName>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <default>/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf</default>
  <title>Configuring Apache</title>
  <explanation>Please specify the location of the Apache configuration file</explanation <
  >
  <description>Apache Configuration File</description>
  <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
  <mustExist>1</mustExist>
  <value></value>
</fileParameter>
```

This will create the appropriate GUI screens for the graphical installers and make the parameter available as the command line option `--apacheconfig` and as the installer variable `${apacheconfig}`. It is also possible to have a different name for the command line flag and the internal variable name using the `<cliOptionName>` tag. For example, the `installdir` parameter (accessible using `${installdir}`) is usually mapped to the `--prefix` command line flag:

```
<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  ...
  <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
  ...
</directoryParameter>
```

A number of fields are common across all parameters:

- **<name>**: Name of the parameter. This will be used to create the corresponding installer variable and command line option. Because of that, it may only contain alphanumeric characters.
- **<value>**: Value for the parameter.
- **<default>**: Default value, in case one is not specified by the user.
- **<explanation>**: Long description for the parameter.
- **<description>**: Short description for the parameter.
- **<title>**: Title that will be displayed for the corresponding installer page. If none is specified, the **<description>** field will be used instead.
- **<cliOptionName>**: Command line option associated with the parameter. If none is provided, it will default to the value of the **<name>** field.
- **<ask>**: Whether or not to show the page to the end user (it can still be set through the command line interface). If it is set to 0, the page not only won't be displayed but also the associated command line option won't appear in the help menu.
- **<leftImage>**: When using **<style>custom</style>** inside the **<project>** tag in your project file, it displays a custom PNG or GIF image at the left side of the installer page associated with this parameter. Its purpose is the same as the **<leftImage>** property inside the **<project>** tag, but allows you set a different image for each parameter page.

Each one of the fields can reference installer variables (`${project.fullName}`, `${installdir}`, and so on) that will be substituted at runtime.

---

#### Difference between the **<default>** and **<value>** tags

The **<default>** tag of a parameter is used when its **<value>** is empty, either because it was configured that way or because the user set it. For example, for the parameter below:

```
<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <value></value>
  <description>Installation Directory</description>
  <explanation>Please specify the directory where ${project.fullName} will be
    installed</explanation>
  <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
  <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
</directoryParameter>
```

As **<value>** is empty, the value displayed in the page will be configured in the **<default>** field: `${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}`. If the user manually set that value to empty, the installer will automatically restore it to its **<default>** value when clicking next.

If you want to allow your users to provide an empty value but still display an initial value in the page, you should set **<default>** to empty and use **<value>** instead:

```
<stringParameter>
  <name>customWelcome</name>
  <value>Welcome!!</value>
  <description>Introduce here the desired welcome message</description>
  <default></default>
</stringParameter>
```

This way, the user can provide an empty welcome message.

---

### 7.1.1 Configuring Parameters At Runtime

Parameters can be configured at runtime by modifying their properties using the `<setInstallerVariable>` action as explained in the Variables section. Although any action list can be used, the recommended approach is to use their `<preShowPageActionList>` and `<postShowPageActionList>` action lists, when possible:

- `<preShowPageActionList>`: This Action List is executed right before displaying the page containing the parameter. It is really useful to modify the information displayed. For example, if you are working to implement a summary page using a `<labelParameter>`, you should construct the information in its `<preShowPageActionList>`:

```
<labelParameter>
  <name>summary</name>
  <title>Summary</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <preShowPageActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>text</name>
      <value>You are about to install ${project.fullName}.
```

Please review the below information:

Installation Directory: \${installdir}

Username: \${username}

License File: \${license\_file}

Installed Components:

```
</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <foreach>
    <variables>component</variables>
    <values>component1 component2 component3</values>
    <actionList>
      <!-- Just include selected Components -->
      <continue>
        <ruleList>
          <isFalse>
            <value>${component (${component}).selected}</value>
          </isFalse>
        </ruleList>
      </continue>
      <setInstallerVariable>
        <name>text</name>
        <value>${text}

${component (${component}).description}</value>
      </setInstallerVariable>
    </actionList>
  </foreach>
</preShowPageActionList>
</labelParameter>
```

- `<postShowPageActionList>`: This Action List is executed after clicking Next in the page containing the parameter and after successfully executing the `<validationActionList>`. One example of how this is useful is configuring installation settings based on the user input:

```
<choiceParameter>
  <name>installMode</name>
```

```

<description>Select the installation mode</description>
<explanation></explanation>
<displayType>combobox</displayType>
<width>30</width>
<optionList>
  <option>
    <description>Upgrade</description>
    <text>Upgrade</text>
    <value>upgrade</value>
  </option>
  <option>
    <description>Uninstall</description>
    <text>Uninstall</text>
    <value>uninstall</value>
  </option>
</optionList>
<postShowPageActionList>
  <!-- Set upgrade mode in the project -->
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>project.installationType</name>
    <value>upgrade</value>
    <ruleList>
      <compareText text="${installMode}" logic="equals" value="upgrade"/>
    </ruleList>
  </setInstallerVariable>
</postShowPageActionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

### 7.1.2 Validating User Input

Parameters can also include checks to validate the data introduced through their <validationActionList>. The actions included in this <actionList> will be executed right after clicking Next. If an error occurs, it will be displayed and, instead of aborting the installation, the page will be redrawn. For example, you can use the snippet below to check if a provided password is strong enough:

```

<passwordParameter>
  <name>password</name>
  <description>Password</description>
  <explanation>Administrator account password. It must include at least 2 uppers, 2 lowers ←
    , 2 digits and 2 special characters and be at least 10 characters long.</explanation>
  <value></value>
  <default></default>
  <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
  <descriptionRetype></descriptionRetype>
  <width>20</width>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="The password provided is not strong enough">
      <ruleList>
        <regExMatch>
          <logic>does_not_match</logic>
          <pattern>^(?=(?:\D*\d){2})(?=(?![a-z]*[A-Z]){2})(?=(?![A-Z]*[a-z]){2}) ←
            (?=(?![!@#%&*+=]*[!@#%&*+=]){2}).{10,}$</pattern>
          <text>${password}</text>
        </regExMatch>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</passwordParameter>

```

Or validate if the user has enough free disk space install your application:



```

<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <value></value>
  <description>Installation Directory</description>
  <explanation>Please specify the directory where ${project.fullName} will be installed ↵
    </explanation>
  <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
  <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError>
      <text>You don't have enough disk space to install the application,
        please select another installation directory</text>
      <ruleList>
        <checkFreeDiskSpace>
          <logic>less</logic>
          <path>${installdir}</path>
          <!-- ${required_diskspace} is automatically calculated by
            InstallBuilder with all the files packed -->
          <size>${required_diskspace}</size>
        </checkFreeDiskSpace>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>

```

You must take into account that these validations won't be executed in unattended mode (as explained here). If you want to validate the information provided through command line when running in unattended mode, you can include the validations in the `<preInstallationActionList>`, executed after the command line options are processed:

```

<preInstallationActionList>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <!-- Validate the password is not empty -->
      <throwError text="You must provide a non-empty password using --masterpassword ↵
        command line flag">
        <ruleList>
          <compareText text="${masterpassword}" logic="equals" value=""/>
        </ruleList>
      </throwError>

      <!-- Validate the installation directory has enough disk space -->
      <throwError>
        <text>You don't have enough disk space to install the application,
          please select another installation directory</text>
        <ruleList>
          <checkFreeDiskSpace>
            <logic>less</logic>
            <path>${installdir}</path>
            <!-- ${required_diskspace} is automatically calculated by
              InstallBuilder with all the files packed -->
            <size>${required_diskspace}</size>
          </checkFreeDiskSpace>
        </ruleList>
      </throwError>

      ...
    </actionList>
  </ruleList>
  <compareText>
    <text>${installer_interactivity}</text>
  </compareText>
</preInstallationActionList>

```

```

        <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
        <value>normal</value>
    </compareText>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
</preInstallationActionList>
...
<parameterList>
    <passwordParameter>
        <ask>yes</ask>
        <name>masterpassword</name>
        <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
        <description>Password</description>
        ...
    </passwordParameter>
    <directoryParameter>
        <name>installdir</name>
        <value></value>
        <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
        ...
    </directoryParameter>
    ...
</parameterList>

```

### 7.1.3 Available Parameters

This section provides an exhaustive list of all of the available parameters.

#### String Parameter

The `<stringParameter>` allows you to request a text string from the user. It accepts all of the common options.

```

<stringParameter>
    <name>hostname</name>
    <default>localhost</default>
    <value></value>
    <ask>1</ask>
    <description>Hostname</description>
    <explanation>Please enter the hostname for your application server.</explanation>
</stringParameter>

```

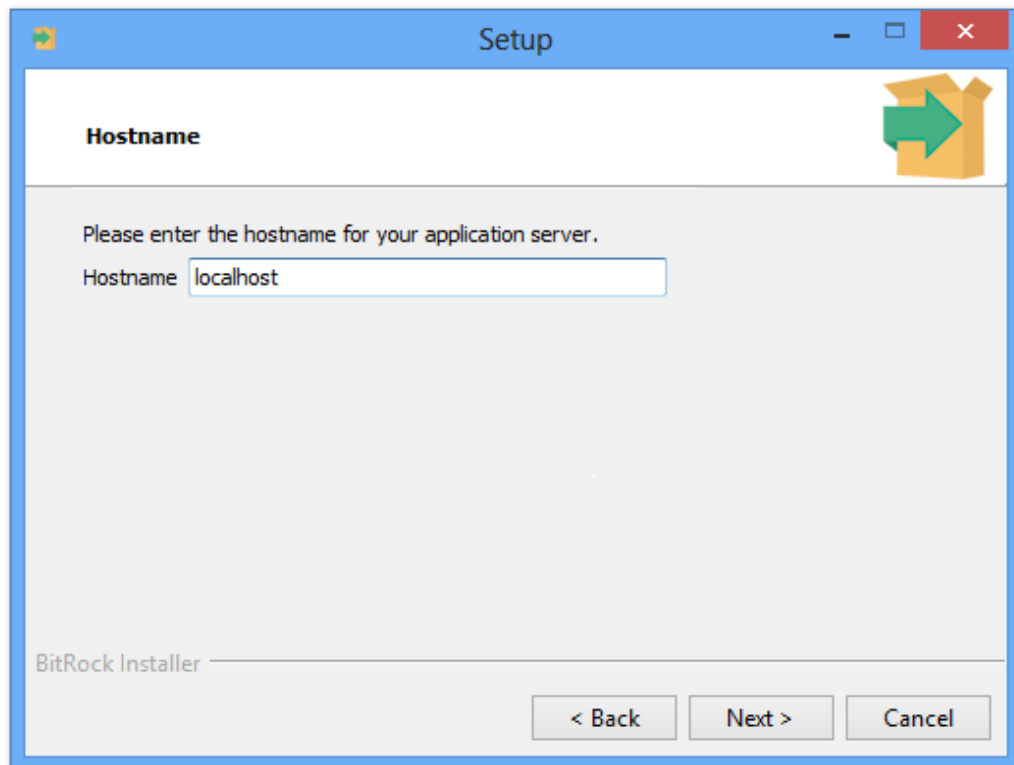


Figure 7.1: String Parameter

### Label Parameter

The `<labelParameter>` allows you to display a string of read-only text inside an installer page. Optionally, you can include an image to the left side of the text.

```
<labelParameter>
  <name>label</name>
  <title>labelParameter test</title>
  <description>This is a warning message inside an installer page.</description>
  <image>/path/to/icons/warning.png</image>
</labelParameter>
```

It is also useful to display a read-only version of the installation directory:

```
<!-- The installation directory won't be selectable by the end user so we
hide it setting ask=0 -->
<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  ...
  <description>Installation Directory</description>
  <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
  <ask>0</ask>
  ...
</directoryParameter>
<!-- We display the read-only version of the installation directory -->
<labelParameter>
  <name>readOnlyInstalldir</name>
  <title>Installation Directory</title>
  <explanation>Directory where ${project.fullName} will be installed</explanation>
  <description>Installation Directory: ${installdir}</description>
```

```
</labelParameter>
```

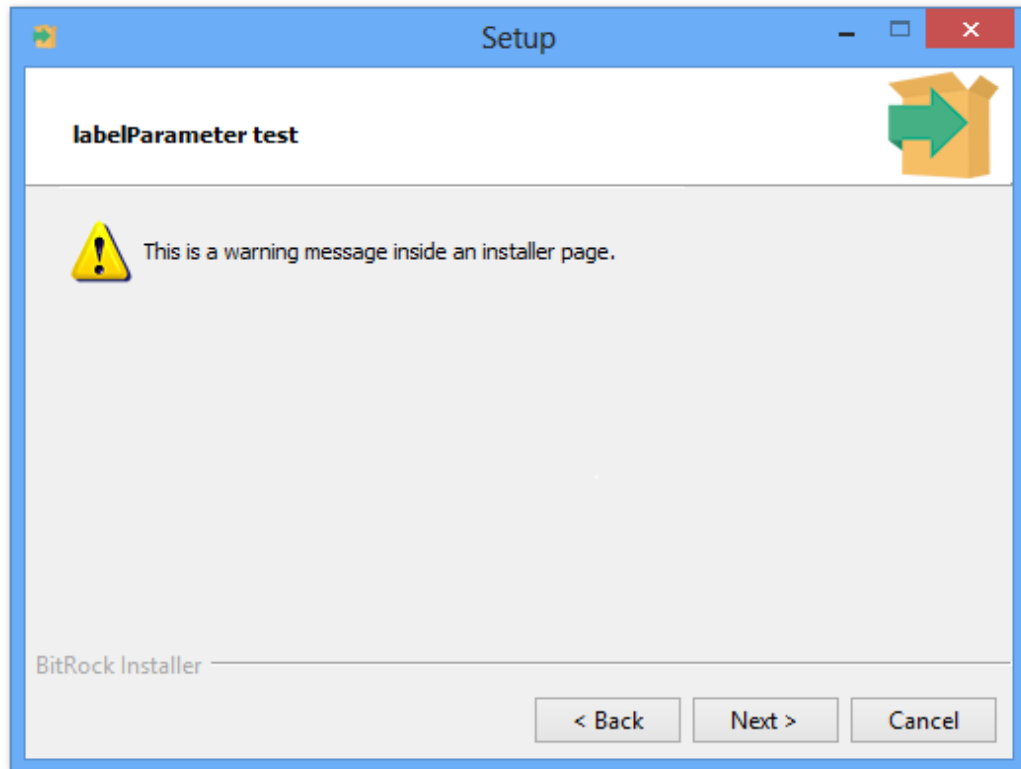


Figure 7.2: Label Parameter

### Link Parameter

The `<linkParameter>` displays a hyperlink-like label or a button, which executes its `<clickedActionList>` when clicked, usually launching a browser. The link parameter is intended to be displayed in GUI mode. In text mode, the user will be asked whether or not to run the associated actions, similarly to how a `<booleanParameter>` will behave.

```
<linkParameter>
  <name>visitwebsite</name>
  <description>More information.</description>
  <clickedActionList>
    <launchBrowser url="http://example.com/more_information.html" />
  </clickedActionList>
</linkParameter>
```

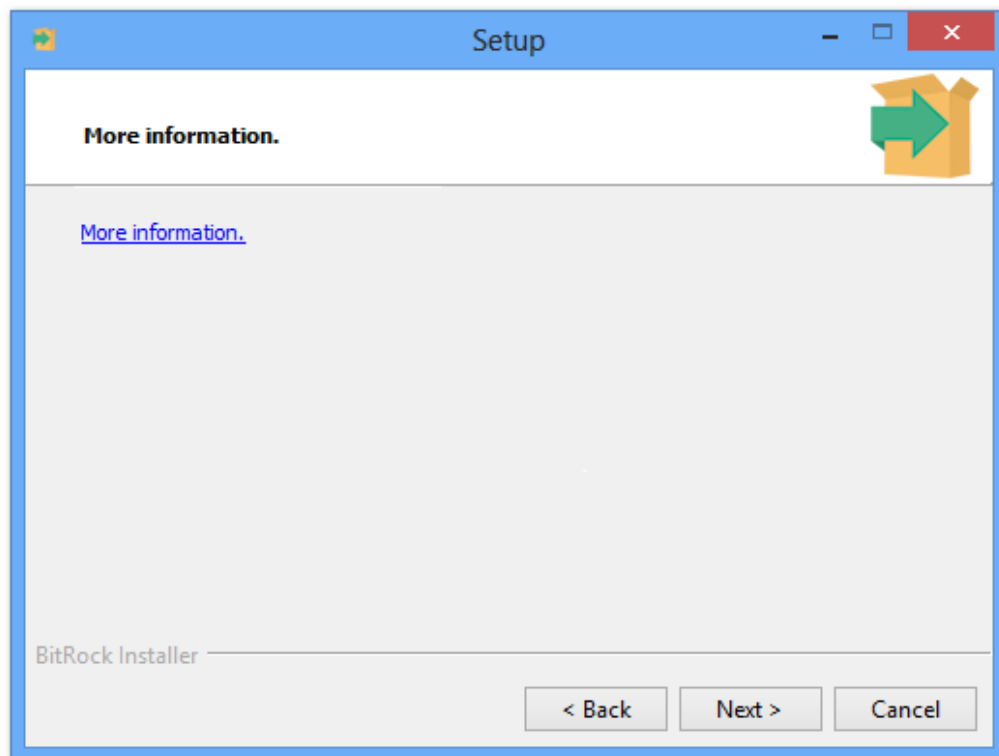


Figure 7.3: Link Parameter

### File Parameter

The `<fileParameter>` asks the user to enter a file. They also support additional fields:

- `<mustExist>`: Whether or not to require that the file must already exist.
- `<mustBeWritable>`: Whether or not to require that the file must be writable.
- `<osxBundlesAreFiles>`: Whether or not OS X bundles (\*.app and \*.bundle) will be considered files. The setting will just have effect on OS X, in other platforms they will be always considered directories.

```
<fileParameter>
  <name>licenseFile</name>
  <value></value>
  <description>License File</description>
  <explanation>Please specify the downloaded license file</explanation>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
</fileParameter>
```

Usually, on OS X, some bundles are considered as files although they really are special directories. Using the `<osxBundlesAreFiles>` tag, you can configure whether you want the parameter to validate them as files or to complain when trying to select them. Note that \*.bundle and \*.app bundles will be considered as \*.framework bundles and are not treated as files by the OS.

```
<fileParameter>
  <name>previousProductPath</name>
  <value></value>
  <description>Previous Installation Path</description>
```

```

<explanation>The installer cannot find "${project.shortName}-${oldVersion}.app" bundle ←
    under /Applications. Please manually select it</explanation>
<osxBundlesAreFiles>1</osxBundlesAreFiles>
<ruleList>
    <fileExists path="/Applications/${project.shortName}-${oldVersion}.app" negate ←
        ="1"/>
</ruleList>
</fileParameter>

```

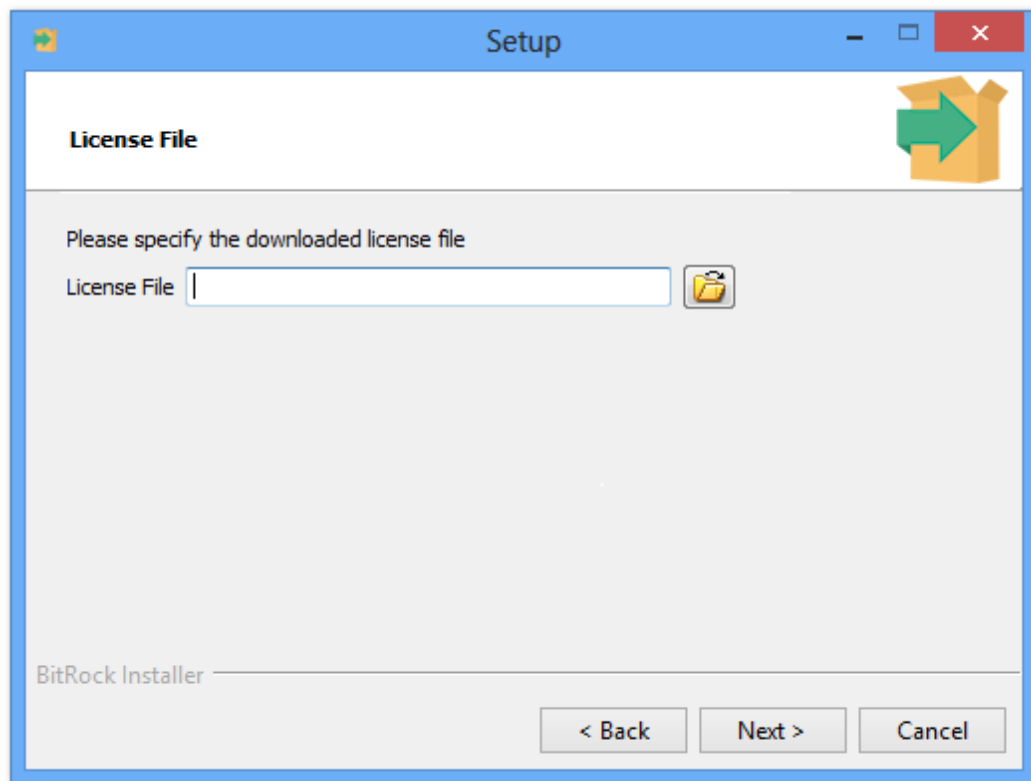


Figure 7.4: File Parameter

### Directory Parameter

The `<directoryParameter>` asks the user to enter a directory. They also support additional fields:

- `<mustExist>`: Whether or not to require that the directory must already exist.
- `<mustBeWritable>`: Whether or not to require that the directory must be writable.
- `<osxBundlesAreFiles>`: Whether or not OS X bundles (\*.app and \*.bundle) will be considered files. The setting will just have effect on OS X, in other platforms they will be always considered directories

```

<directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <value></value>
    <description>Installation Directory</description>
    <explanation>Please specify the directory where ${project.fullName} will be installed ←
        </explanation>
    <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
    <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>

```

```
<ask>yes</ask>
<mustBeWritable>yes</mustBeWritable>
</directoryParameter>
```

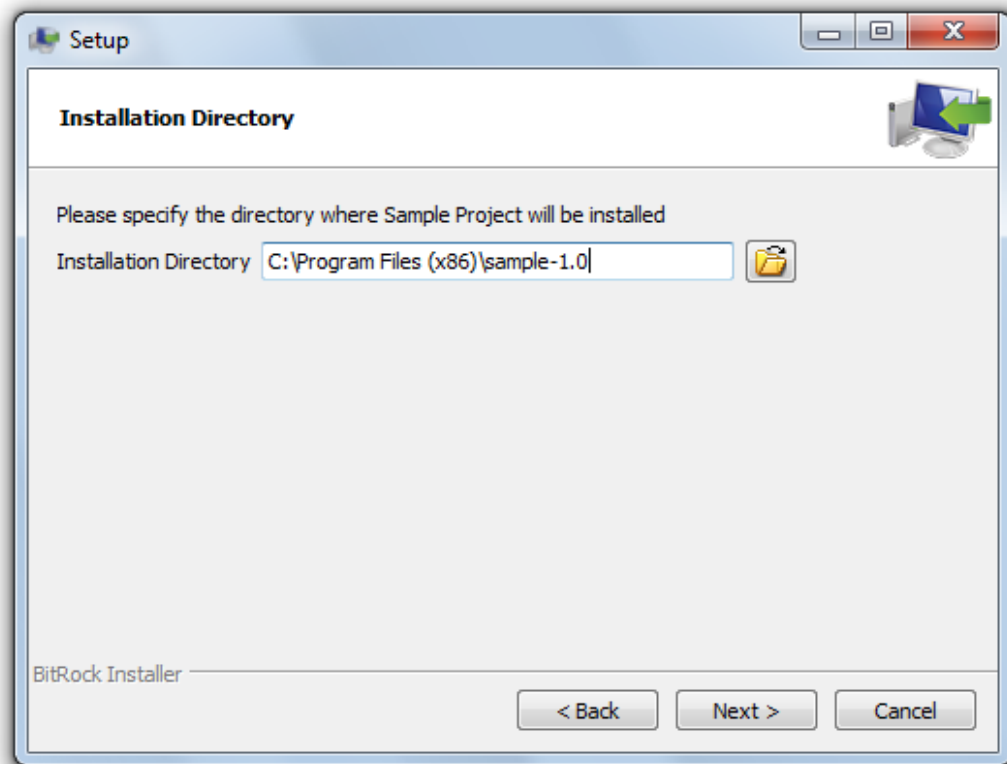


Figure 7.5: Directory Parameter

### Boolean Parameter

The `<booleanParameter>` is identical to the `<stringParameter>`, except it accepts either a 1 or a 0 as a value. You can control how the boolean parameter is displayed in GUI mode using the `<displayStyle>` tag with the values of `combobox`, `checkboxbutton-left` and `checkboxbutton-right`.

```
<booleanParameter>
  <name>createdb</name>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <default>1</default>
  <title>Database Install</title>
  <explanation>Should initial database structure and data be created?</explanation>
  <value>1</value>
</booleanParameter>
```

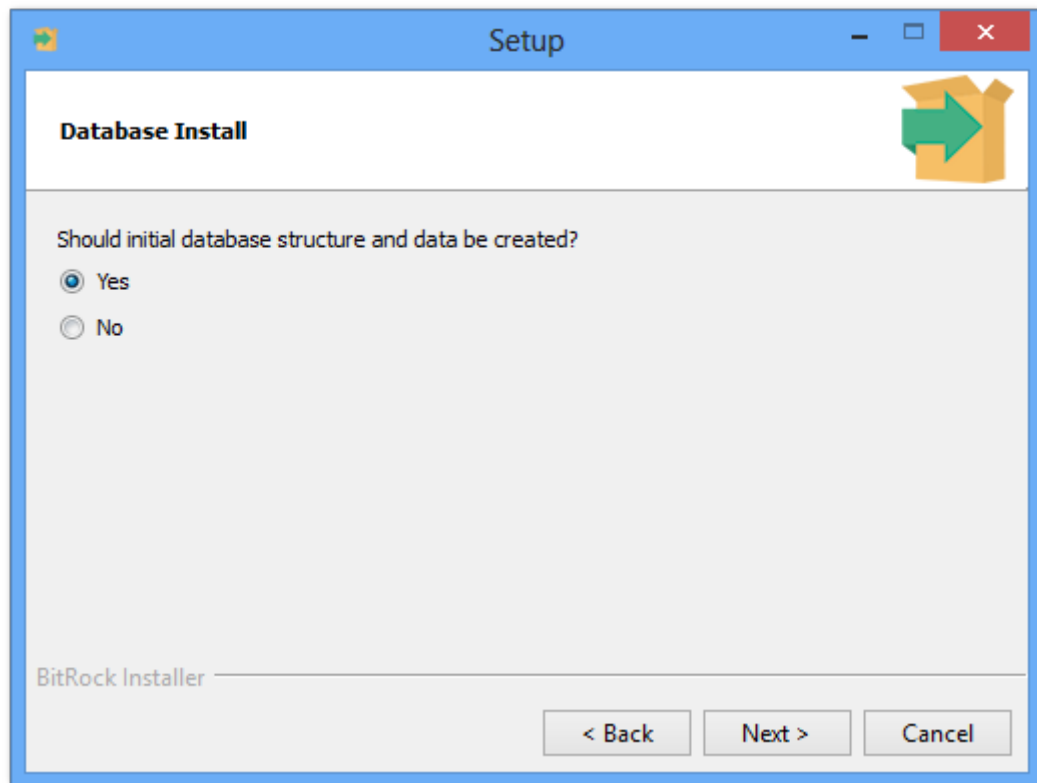


Figure 7.6: Boolean Parameter

### Text Display Parameter

The `<infoParameter>` will display a read-only text information page. It does not support the `<cliOptionName>` field as it is a read-only parameter.

```
<infoParameter>
  <name>serverinfo</name>
  <title>Web Server</title>
  <explanation>Web Server Settings</explanation>
  <value>Important Information! In the following screen you will be asked to provide ↵
    (...)</value>
</infoParameter>
```



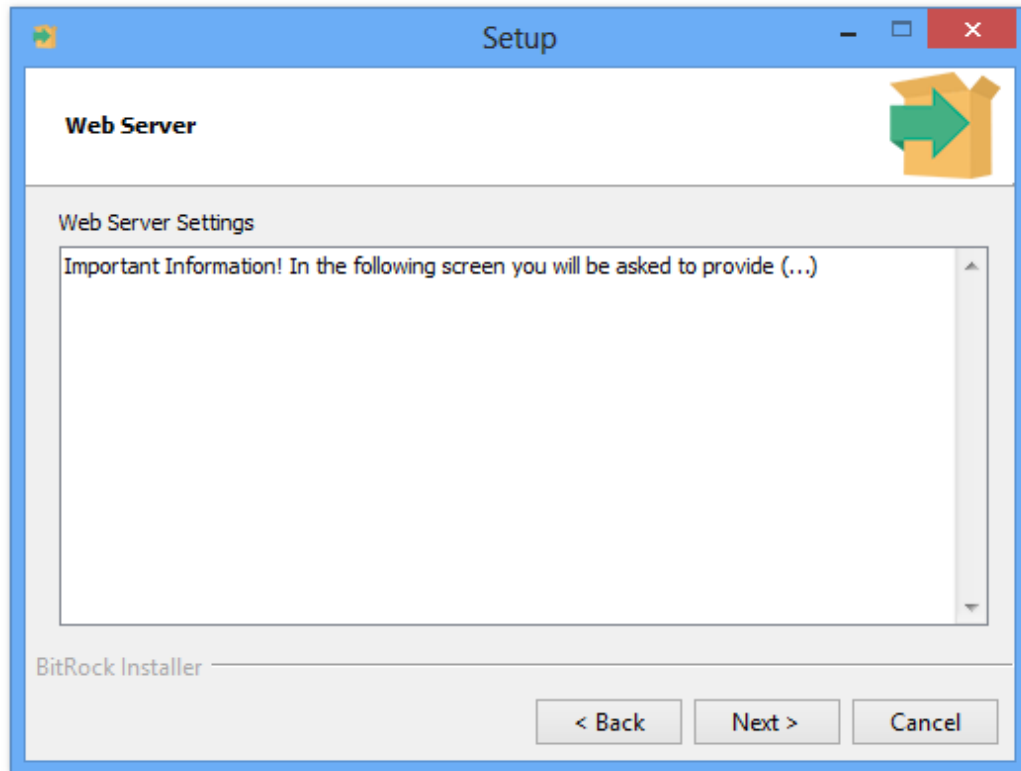


Figure 7.7: Info Parameter

In InstallBuilder for Qt, the `<infoParameter>` is also capable of displaying HTML text:

```
<infoParameter>
  <name>serverinfo</name>
  <title>Web Server</title>
  <explanation>Web Server Settings</explanation>
  <value>Important Information! In the following screen you will be asked to provide  ←
    (...)</value>
  <!-- CDATA is just used to avoid the need of escaping the HTML tags -->
  <htmlValue><![CDATA[
<H1><font color="red">Important Information! </font></H1><br/>
In the following screen you will be asked to provide (...)
]]></htmlValue>
</infoParameter>
```

Please note you still have to provide a plain text version in the `<value>` to be displayed in non-qt modes (text, gtk, win32, osx).

### Choice Parameter

A `<choiceParameter>` allows the user to select a value from a predefined list. In GUI mode, it will be represented by a combobox or a group of radio buttons (depending on the configured `<displayType>`). It takes an extra field, `<optionList>`, which contains a list of value/text pairs. The `<text>` will be the description presented to the user for that option and the `<value>` will be the value of the associated installer variable if the user selects that option. You can control how the choice parameter is displayed in GUI modes using the `<displayType>` tag with the values of `combobox` and `radiobuttons`.

```
<choiceParameter>
  <ask>1</ask>
  <default>http</default>
  <description>Which protocol?</description>
  <explanation>Default protocol to access the login page.</explanation>
```

```

<title>Protocol Selection</title>
<name>protocol</name>
<optionList>
  <option>
    <value>http</value>
    <text>HTTP (insecure)</text>
    <description>Hypertext Transfer Protocol</description>
    <image>http.png</image>
  </option>
  <option>
    <value>https</value>
    <text>HTTPS (secure)</text>
    <description>Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure</description>
    <image>https.png</image>
  </option>
</optionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

By default, the order in which the choices are displayed in the installer page is the same in which they are listed in the XML code. This behavior can be modified through the `<ordering>` tag which accepts the below values:

- `default`: List the choices in the same order used in the XML project.
- `alphabetical`: Sort the choices in alphabetical order.
- `alphabeticalreverse`: Sort the choices in reverse alphabetical order.

### Password Parameter

A `<passwordParameter>` allows the user to input a password and confirm it. The password will not be echoed back to the user in text mode installations and will be substituted by \* characters in GUI mode installations.

They also support additional fields:

- `<askForConfirmation>`: If set to 1 (the default value), a second entry field will be displayed, forcing the user to retype the password, receiving an error if both fields do not match
- `<descriptionRetype>`: Description used as the label for the password retype field displayed when enabling `<descriptionRetype>`.

```

<passwordParameter>
  <ask>yes</ask>
  <name>masterpassword</name>
  <description>Password</description>
  <askForConfirmation>1</askForConfirmation>
  <descriptionRetype>Retype password</descriptionRetype>
  <explanation>Please provide a password for the database user</explanation>
  <cliOptionName>password</cliOptionName>
  <default/>
  <value/>
</passwordParameter>

```

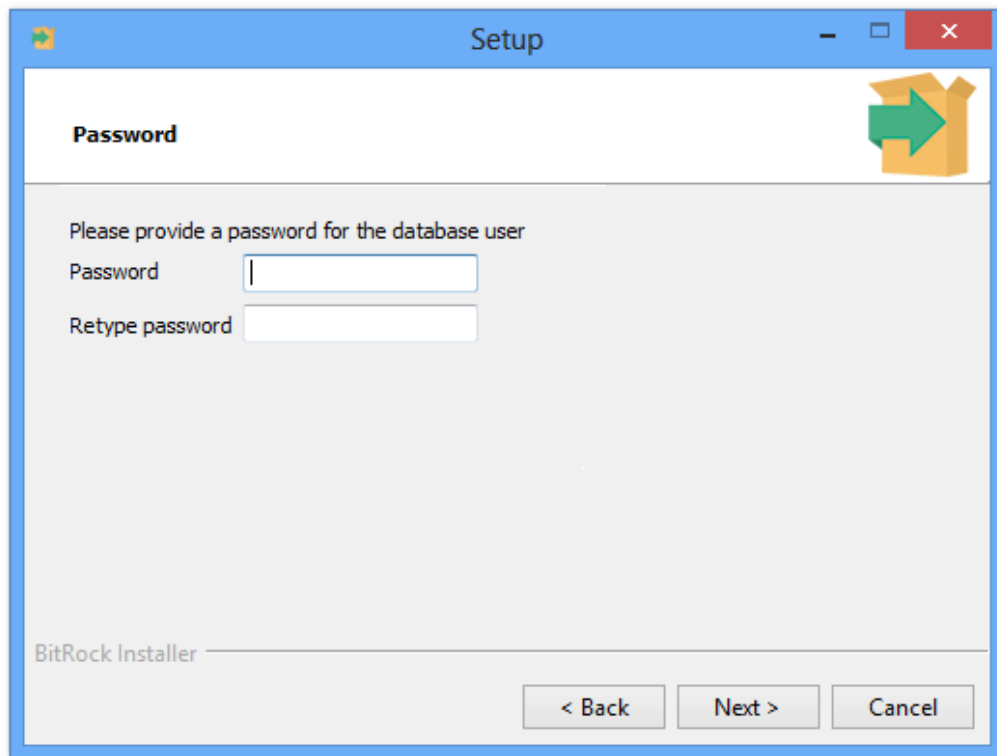


Figure 7.8: Password Parameter

### License Parameter

A `<licenseParameter>` presents a license screen to the user containing the text specified in the `<file>` field. An optional `<fileEncoding>` field allows you to specify the encoding and a `<wrapText>` field allows you to specify whether the license text should be wrapped to fit the screen. It does not support the `<cliOptionName>` field as it is a read-only parameter.

```
<licenseParameter>
  <name>javalicense</name>
  <fileEncoding>utf-8</fileEncoding>
  <file>/path/to/license.txt</file>
</licenseParameter>
```

In InstallBuilder for Qt, you can also provide an HTML license file using the `<htmlFile>` tag:

```
<licenseParameter>
  <name>javalicense</name>
  <fileEncoding>utf-8</fileEncoding>
  <file>/path/to/license.txt</file>
  <htmlFile>/path/to/license.html</htmlFile>
</licenseParameter>
```

A plain text license is still provided to be displayed in non-qt modes (text, gtk, win32, osx). On Unix, you can easily generate a plain text version of your HTML license using the `lynx` command:

```
$> lynx -dump license.html > license.txt
```

### 7.1.4 Populating Choice parameters at Runtime

In addition to hard-coding the options of a `<choiceParameter>` when writing your XML project, you can also modify them at runtime using the `<addChoiceOptions>`, `<removeChoiceOptions>` and `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>` actions.

The snippets below explain the simplest approach, using the `<addChoiceOptions>` action:

```
<addChoiceOptions>
  <name>language</name>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <value>en</value>
      <text>English</text>
    </option>
    <option>
      <value>es</value>
      <text>Spanish</text>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</addChoiceOptions>
```

The action takes the `<name>` of an existing `<choiceParameter>` and adds the specified options hardcoded in the `<optionList>`. It is useful when you need to modify the choices of a `<choiceParameter>` depending on some other configuration but you know the set of choices for each of them.

One of the limitations of the action is that the `<value>` must be a valid key identifier, that is, it can only contain alphanumeric characters and underscores so you cannot use variables when defining it.

A more powerful approach is to use the `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>` action, which allows you to provide the list of options in plain text:

```
<addChoiceOptionsFromText>
  <name>language</name>
  <text>
jp=Japanese
jp.description=Language spoken in Japan
de=German
de.description=Language spoken in Germany
it=Italian
it.description=Language spoken in Italy
pl=Polish
pl.description=Language spoken in Poland
ru=Russian
ru.description=Language spoken in Russia
</text>
</addChoiceOptionsFromText>
```

The keys in the text will be used to set the `<value>` property of option. The key value (the righthand side) will be used to set the `<text>` property. Optionally, if a key has a `.description` suffix and matches an existing `<value>`, the key value will be used to set the `<description>` property.

Contrary to the `<addChoiceOptions>` action, the `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>` action allows using variables in its `<text>`:

```
<addChoiceOptionsFromText>
  <name>choice</name>
  <text>
${value1}=${text1}
${value1}.description=${description1}
${value2}=${text2}
${value2}.description=${description2}
${value3}=${text3}
```

```

${value3}.description=${description3}
</text>
</addChoiceOptionsFromText>

```

The `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>` action is very useful when you have a long list of options to add or if you are going to generate the choices at runtime based on the output of some external program. For example, if you want to generate a language list based on the contents of your lang directory, you could use the below:

```

<!-- Get list of files -->
<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
  <name>languages</name>
  <exec>find</exec>
  <execArgs>*.lng</execArgs>
  <workingDirectory>${installdir}/lang</workingDirectory>
</setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>

<!-- Iterate over the files and create the choice text file -->
<setInstallerVariable name="choiceText" value=""/>
<foreach variables="file" values="${languages}">
  <actionList>
    <!-- Strip the extension to create the key -->
    <setInstallerVariableFromRegex name="key" pattern="([^\.])*" substitution="\1" text ←
      = "${file}" />
    <!-- Add a new choice option to the text &#xA; is the escaped sequence for \n -->
    <setInstallerVariable name="choiceText" value="${choiceText}&#xA;lang_${key}=${file} ←
      }"/>
  </actionList>
</foreach>

<addChoiceOptionsFromText>
  <name>language</name>
  <text>${choiceText}</text>
</addChoiceOptionsFromText>

```

It also allows using variables in the `<text>` of the choices

When creating the options at runtime, especially in the `<preShowPageActionList>` of the parameter, you may end up with duplicate options if the user displays the page more than once (each time the page is displayed, the `<preShowPageActionList>` will add the options again). In those scenarios you can use a `<removeChoiceOptions>` action:

```

<removeChoiceOptions>
  <name>language</name>
  <options>en,es,jp</options>
</removeChoiceOptions>

```

The format of the `<options>` tag is different from similar actions, since you are not interested in the `<text>` of the option to remove. It is defined as a comma separated list of options, each of them matching the `<value>` of an existing choice option. However, if you do not know which options were added, as in the `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>`, you can still delete all of the options of the parameter if you provide an empty value to the `<options>` tag:

```

<removeChoiceOptions name="language"/>

```

In a real world example:

```

<choiceParameter>
  <ask>1</ask>
  <default></default>
  <description></description>
  <explanation>Installation Language of the installer application.</explanation>
  <title>Installation Language</title>
  <name>language</name>
  <preShowPageActionList>

```

```

        <removeChoiceOptions name="language"/>
        <!-- Get the list of languages and create the choice options -->
        <setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput ... />
        ...
        <setInstallerVariable name="choiceText" value=""/>
        <foreach variables="file" values="{languages}">
            <actionList>
                ...
            </actionList>
        </foreach>
        <addChoiceOptionsFromText name="language" text="{choiceText}"/>
    </preShowPageActionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

For all of the above actions, if the specified parameter to be modified does not exist, the action will be skipped.

Another useful example would be displaying the list of your installed applications and letting the user select one to uninstall:

```

<choiceParameter>
    <name>applicationToDelete</name>
    <description>Select the Application to uninstall</description>
    <displayType>combobox</displayType>
    <ordering>default</ordering>
    <width>40</width>
    <postShowPageActionList>
        <foreach>
            <values>{installedApplications}</values>
            <variables>key name value</variables>
            <actionList>
                <md5 text="{key}" variable="md5"/>
                <actionGroup>
                    <actionList>
                        <registryGet>
                            <key>{key}</key>
                            <name>UninstallString</name>
                            <variable>uninstallCmd</variable>
                        </registryGet>
                        <showProgressDialog>
                            <title>Uninstalling {value}</title>
                            <actionList>
                                <runProgram>
                                    <program>{uninstallCmd}</program>
                                    <programArguments>--mode unattended</programArguments>
                                </runProgram>
                            </actionList>
                        </showProgressDialog>
                        <break/>
                    </actionList>
                </actionGroup>
                <ruleList>
                    <compareText>
                        <text>{md5}</text>
                        <logic>equals</logic>
                        <value>{applicationToDelete}</value>
                    </compareText>
                </ruleList>
            </actionGroup>
        </foreach>
    </postShowPageActionList>
    <preShowPageActionList>
        <removeChoiceOptions>
            <name>applicationToDelete</name>

```

```

    <options></options>
</removeChoiceOptions>
<registryFind>
    <findAll>1</findAll>
    <keyPattern>*</keyPattern>
    <namePattern>DisplayName</namePattern>
    <rootKey>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Uninstall</
        rootKey>
    <searchDepth>1</searchDepth>
    <variable>installedApplications</variable>
</registryFind>
<setInstallerVariable>
    <name>text</name>
    <value></value>
</setInstallerVariable>
<foreach>
    <values>${installedApplications}</values>
    <variables>key name value</variables>
    <actionList>
        <registryGet>
            <key>${key}</key>
            <name>Publisher</name>
            <variable>publisher</variable>
        </registryGet>
        <actionGroup>
            <actionList>
                <md5 text="${key}" variable="md5"/>
                <setInstallerVariable>
                    <name>text</name>
                    <value>${text}</value>
                </setInstallerVariable>
            </actionList>
        </actionGroup>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText>
                <logic>equals</logic>
                <text>${publisher}</text>
                <value>${project.vendor}</value>
            </compareText>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
</actionList>
</foreach>
<addChoiceOptionsFromText>
    <name>applicationToDelete</name>
    <text>${text}</text>
</addChoiceOptionsFromText>
</preShowPageActionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

Another example might be showing a list of drives for the user to pre-select on Microsoft Windows. The following actions will create and execute a Visual Basic script, whose output will be used to populate the choices of the parameter:

```

<project>
...
<initializationActionList>
    <writeFile>
        <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
        <path>${system_temp_directory}/drives.vbs</path>
        <text>Set objFSO = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
Set colDrives = objFSO.Drives
For Each objDrive in colDrives

```

```

If objDrive.DriveType = 2 Then
    Wscript.Echo objDrive.DriveLetter
End If
Next
</text>
</writeFile>
<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
    <exec>cscript.exe</exec>
    <execArgs>//NOLOGO "${system_temp_directory}/drives.vbs"</execArgs>
    <name>drives</name>
</setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
<foreach>
    <values>${drives}</values>
    <variables>drive</variables>
    <actionList>
        <addChoiceOptions>
            <name>targetdrive</name>
            <optionList>
                <option>
                    <value>${drive}</value>
                    <text>Drive ${drive}</text>
                </option>
            </optionList>
        </addChoiceOptions>
    </actionList>
</foreach>
</initializationActionList>
...
<parameterList>
    <choiceParameter>
        <name>targetdrive</name>
        <description>Which drive?</description>
        <explanation>Disk drive to install application to</explanation>
        <value></value>
        <default></default>
        <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
        <displayType>radiobuttons</displayType>
        <ordering>default</ordering>
        <width>40</width>
        <postShowPageActionList>
            <setInstallerVariable>
                <name>installdir</name>
                <value>${targetdrive}/${project.shortName}</value>
            </setInstallerVariable>
        </postShowPageActionList>
        <validationActionList>
            <!-- Do not allow selecting a drive without write access -->
            <throwError>
                <text>Selected drive cannot be written to</text>
                <ruleList>
                    <fileTest>
                        <condition>not_writable</condition>
                        <path>${targetdrive}:</path>
                    </fileTest>
                </ruleList>
            </throwError>
        </validationActionList>
    </choiceParameter>
    ...
    <directoryParameter>
        <name>installdir</name>
        <value></value>

```



```

    <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
    <ask>0</ask>
  </directoryParameter>
</parameterList>
</project>

```

Please note that the above code is hiding the regular `installdir` page and configuring it in the choice `<postShowPageActionList>` to the chosen disk drive.

### 7.1.5 Parameter Groups

**Group Parameter** A group parameter allows you to logically group other parameters. They will be presented in the same screen in GUI and text installers. You need to place the grouped parameters in a `parameterList` section, as shown in the example below. Please note that parameter groups also need to contain a `<name>` tag.

```

<parameterGroup>
  <name>userandpass</name>
  <explanation>Please enter the username and password for your database.</explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>username</name>
      <default>admin</default>
      <description>Username</description>
    </stringParameter>
    <passwordParameter>
      <ask>yes</ask>
      <name>masterpass</name>
      <description>Password</description>
      <descriptionRetype>Retype password</descriptionRetype>
      <explanation>Please provide a password for the database user</explanation>
      <cliOptionName>password</cliOptionName>
    </passwordParameter>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>

```

You can also implement more complex layouts, for example, a page to request a serial key:

```

<parameterGroup>
  <name>licensekey</name>
  <title>License Key</title>
  <explanation>Please enter your registration key</explanation>
  <value></value>
  <default></default>
  <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
  <parameterList>
    <!-- A stringParameter for each field. We include a "-" as description to simulate ↵
         the license-type format -->
    <stringParameter name="code1" description="" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
    <stringParameter name="code2" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
    <stringParameter name="code3" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
    <stringParameter name="code4" description="-" allowEmptyValue="0" width="4"/>
  </parameterList>
  <validationActionList>
    <foreach variables="field">
      <values>"${code1}" "${code2}" "${code3}" "${code4}"</values>
      <actionList>
        <throwError>
          <text>${field}: Field should be four digits length</text>
          <ruleList>
            <compareTextLength text="${field}" logic="equals" length="4" negate ↵
              ="1"/>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </actionList>
    </foreach>
  </validationActionList>

```

```

        </ruleList>
      </throwError>
      <throwError>
        <text>${field}: Should be a pure digit string</text>
        <ruleList>
          <stringTest text="${field}" type="digit" negate="1"/>
        </ruleList>
      </throwError>
    </actionList>
  </foreach>
</validationActionList>
<postShowPageActionList>
  <setInstallerVariable name="normalizedkey" value="${code1}${code2}${code3}${code4} ←
  }"/>
</postShowPageActionList>
<ruleList>
  <compareText text="${installer_ui}" logic="equals" value="gui"/>
</ruleList>
</parameterGroup>

```

Please note this layout won't be properly displayed in text mode so the example hides the page if the `${installer_ui}` built-in variable is not `gui` (see Installation Modes for additional details). If you plan to support text mode, you should then create an additional simplified page to be displayed instead:

```

<stringParameter>
  <name>licensekeytext</name>
  <title>License Key</title>
  <description>Please introduce your registration key:</description>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="${installer_ui}" logic="equals" value="text"/>
  </ruleList>
</stringParameter>

```

## 7.1.6 Dynamic Parameter Groups

### 7.1.6.1 Boolean Parameter Group

This parameter is a special `<parameterGroup>` that allows toggling its state through clicking a checkbox. In addition to grouping the contained parameters, the `<booleanParameterGroup>` also contains a `<value>`, like the `<booleanParameter>` does, that can be accessed like any other parameters. A basic example snippet would be:

```

<booleanParameterGroup>
  <name>advanced</name>
  <description>Advanced Mode</description>
  <validationType>always</validationType>
  <value>0</value>
  <parameterList>
    <choiceParameter>
      <name>emailNotifications</name>
      <value>always</value>
      <description>Email notifications</description>
      <optionList>
        <option description="Always send notifications" text="Always" value="always"/>
        <option description="Never send notifications" text="Never" value="never"/>
      </optionList>
    </choiceParameter>
    <stringParameter name="subject" description="Notifications Subject" value="[ ←
    NOTIFICATION] #"/>
    <directoryParameter description="Cache Dir" name="cacheDir" value="${ ←
    system_temp_directory}/cache"/>
  </parameterList>
</booleanParameterGroup>

```

```
</parameterList>  
</booleanParameterGroup>
```

The parameters in the `<parameterList>` will be surrounded by a frame, selectable by a checkbox. If the checkbox is deselected, the child parameters will be displayed as read only (or won't be displayed in text mode):

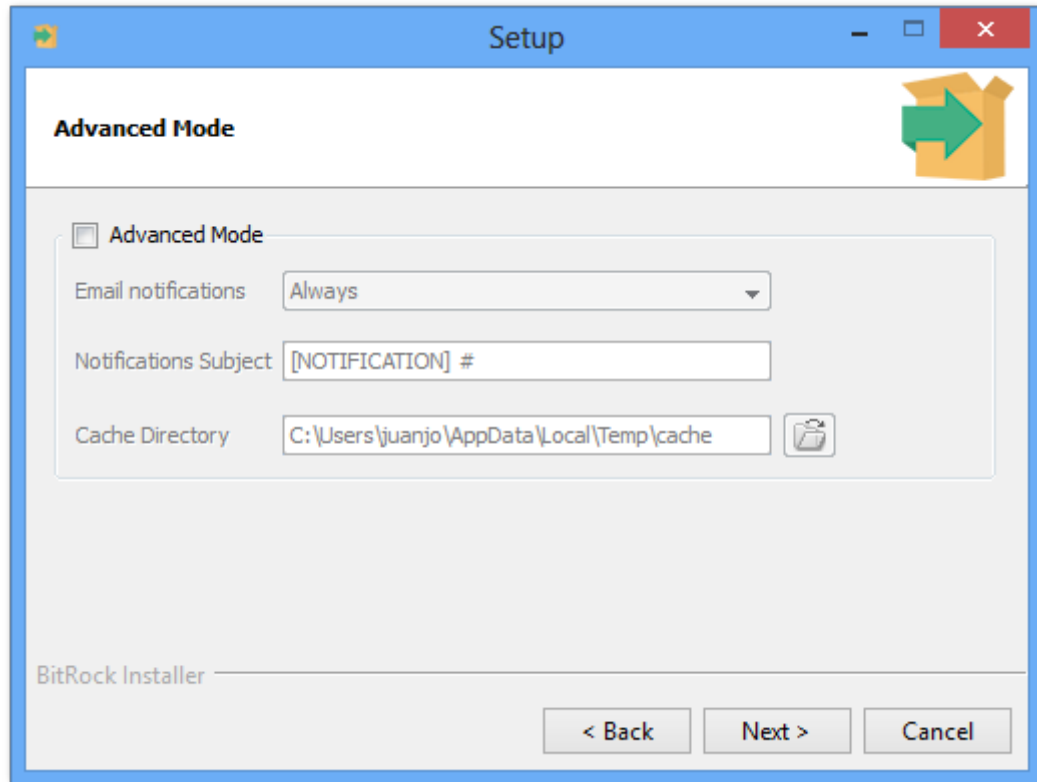


Figure 7.9: Boolean Parameter Group Deselected

Enabling the checkbox will then make the child parameters editable:

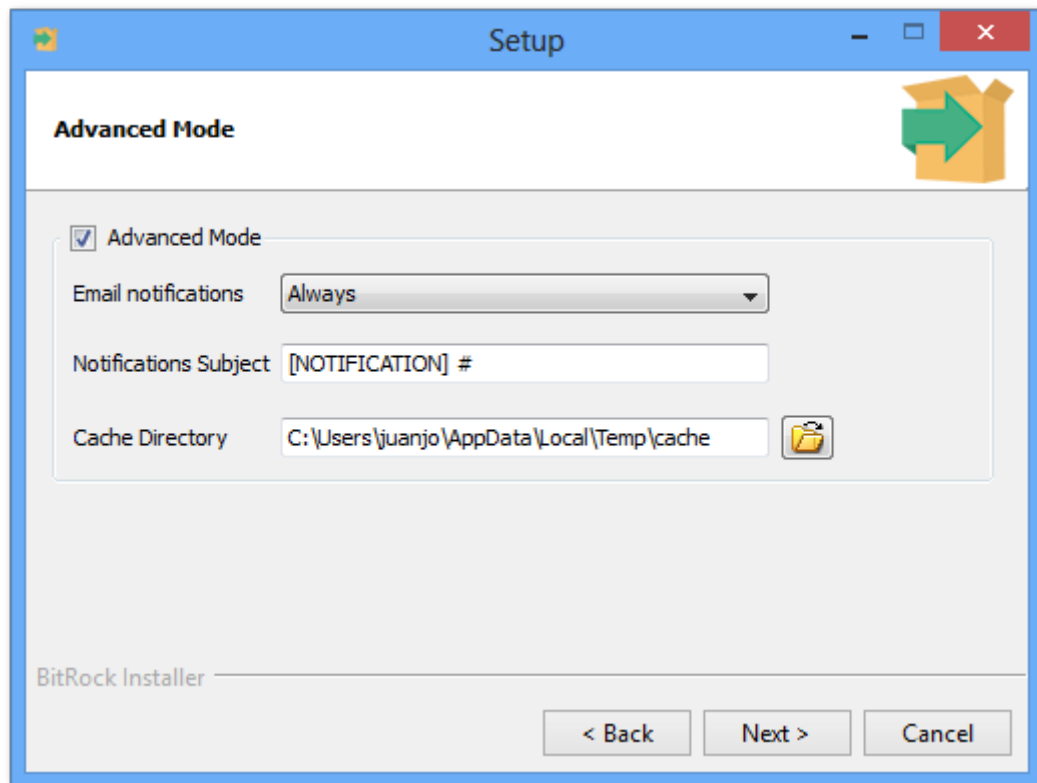


Figure 7.10: Boolean Parameter Group Selected

The `<booleanParameterGroup>` also allows specifying under which conditions their grouped parameters will execute their `<postShowPageActionList>` and `<validationActionList>` actions through the `<validationType>` setting. Its default value is `always`, which makes all of the visible child components to execute their `<postShowPageActionList>` and `<validationActionList>` actions like a regular parameter group would. This is the recommended setting when you just need the `<booleanParameterGroup>` to group a set of settings and allow them to be disabled so end users does not focus their attention on secondary configuration fields. For example, the example above showed a group containing some secondary settings, disabled by default. This way users will know that they do not require much attention or that they do not need to worry if they does not understand them.

In other circumstances, you won't need the `<booleanParameterGroup>` only for grouping, but also to perform some actions on the provided information only if the checkbox is selected. For example, you could ask your users if they want to register the installation. In the case of the user not checking the `<booleanParameterGroup>` checkbox, you won't be interested in the information contained in the child parameters or in reporting errors on its validation actions. In these cases you can set the `<validationType>` to `ifSelected`.

Take into account that, regardless of the state of the `<booleanParameterGroup>` or the setting configured in its `<validationType>`, its child will unconditionally execute its `<preShowPageActionList>`. The reason is that the `<preShowPageActionList>` is intended to be used to customize the values of the page prior to displaying it, not to perform operations on the values, which have not yet been introduced or acknowledged by the end user.

In addition, the `<booleanParameterGroup>` action lists are also not affected. As any other parameter, it will execute all of its actions.

The below snippet illustrates the behavior:

```
<booleanParameterGroup>
  <name>register</name>
  <description>Register Installation</description>
  <validationType>ifSelected</validationType>
  <value>0</value>
  <parameterList>
```

```

    <stringParameter name="username" description="User Name" allowEmptyValue="0" value ←
      =""/>
    <stringParameter name="email" description="Email" allowEmptyValue="0" value="">
      <validationActionList>
        <throwError text="The provided value does not seem an email address">
          <ruleList>
            <regExMatch>
              <logic>does_not_match</logic>
              <pattern>[a-zA-Z0-9\._-]+@[a-zA-Z0-9\._-]+</pattern>
              <text>${email}</text>
            </regExMatch>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </validationActionList>
    </stringParameter>
    <stringParameter description="License Key" name="key" value="" allowEmptyValue="0"/>
  </parameterList>
  <validationActionList>
    <httpPost>
      <url>http://example.com/register.php</url>
      <filename>${installdir}/result</filename>
      <queryParameterList>
        <queryParameter name="name" value="${username}"/>
        <queryParameter name="email" value="${email}"/>
        <queryParameter name="license" value="${key}"/>
      </queryParameterList>
      <ruleList>
        <isTrue value="${register}"/>
      </ruleList>
    </httpPost>
    ...
  </validationActionList>
</booleanParameterGroup>

```

If the user checks the checkbox, the parameters will execute their validations. Please note that the code adds the registration actions to the `<validationActionList>` of the `<booleanParameterGroup>`, which are always executed. That is why it includes a rule checking its state.

### 7.1.6.2 Choice Parameter Group

This parameter is a special `<parameterGroup>` that allows selecting a subset of widgets. In addition to grouping the contained parameters, the `<choiceParameterGroup>` also contains a `<value>`, like the `<choiceParameter>` does, that can be accessed like any other parameters. The value stored will represent the name of the selected child parameter. A basic example snippet would be:

```

<choiceParameterGroup>
  <name>usbLocation</name>
  <description>Select an USB Drive</description>
  <value>usbDetectedList</value>
  <parameterList>
    <choiceParameter>
      <name>usbDetectedList</name>
      <value></value>
      <description>Autodetected List</description>
      <optionList>
      </optionList>
      <preShowPageActionList>
        <addChoiceOptionsFromText>
          <name>usbDetectedList</name>
          <text>${driveInfo}</text>
        </addChoiceOptionsFromText>
      </preShowPageActionList>
    </choiceParameter>
  </parameterList>
</choiceParameterGroup>

```

```

        </addChoiceOptionsFromText>
    </preShowPageActionList>
</choiceParameter>
<directoryParameter name="customDir" description="Custom Location" value=""/>
</parameterList>
</choiceParameterGroup>

```

The parameters in the `<parameterList>` will be surrounded by a frame. The `<choiceParameterGroup>` will present a radiobutton for each of its first-level child parameters, labeled with the description of the child parameter:

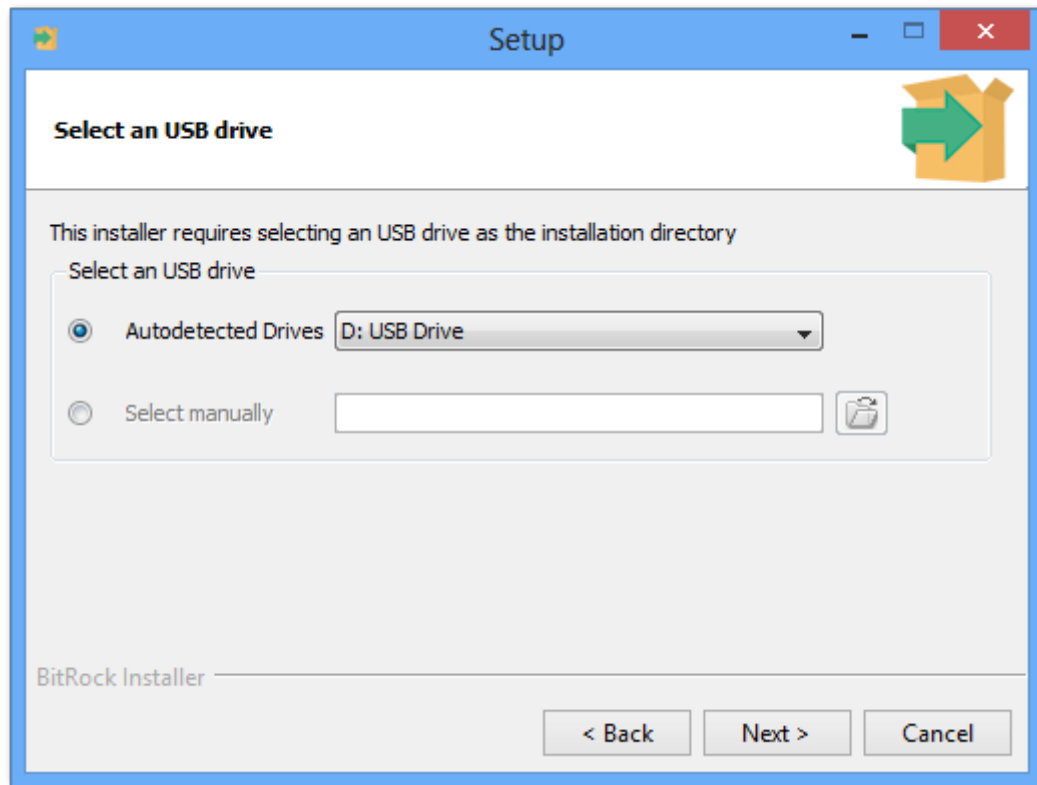


Figure 7.11: Choice Parameter Group

The `<choiceParameterGroup>` will execute all of its child parameters `<preShowpageActionList>` (to allow them to auto-reconfigure) but will only execute the `<validationActionList>` and `<postShowPageActionList>` of the selected parameter.

Similarly to the `<booleanParameterGroup>`, the `<choiceParameterGroup>` will always execute its action lists regardless of the selected child.

The default look and feel of the parameter is to show as disabled all the deselected parameters, preventing the user from editing their information until the corresponding radiobutton is selected. If you want to overwrite this behavior and make all the parameters editable regardless of the selected option, you just have to use the `<unselectedOptionsBehavior>` tag:

```

<choiceParameterGroup>
  <name>usbLocation</name>
  <description>Select an USB Drive</description>
  <unselectedOptionsBehavior>none</unselectedOptionsBehavior>
  <value>usbDetectedList</value>
  <parameterList>
    ...
  </parameterList>
</choiceParameterGroup>

```

### 7.1.6.3 Nesting

The `<booleanParameterGroup>` and `<choiceParameterGroup>` parameters, like any other parameter, can be grouped, either using a regular `<parameterGroup>` or another `<booleanParameterGroup>` or `<choiceParameterGroup>`.

Their only limitation is that they cannot configure their orientation as regular `parameterGroups` do.

An example of a complex layout using nesting could be the produced using the below code:

```
<booleanParameterGroup>
  <name>register</name>
  <description>Register Installation</description>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <value>1</value>
  <default></default>
  <validationType>ifSelected</validationType>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>username</name>
      <description>Username</description>
      <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
      <width>40</width>
    </stringParameter>
    <passwordParameter>
      <name>password</name>
      <description>Enter password</description>
      <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
      <descriptionRetype></descriptionRetype>
      <width>20</width>
    </passwordParameter>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>phone</name>
      <description>Phone</description>
      <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
      <width>40</width>
      <validationActionList>
        <throwError>
          <text>The provided phone '{phone}' does not seem a valid one</text>
          <ruleList>
            <regExMatch>
              <logic>does_not_match</logic>
              <pattern>^[0-9]*$</pattern>
              <text>{phone}</text>
            </regExMatch>
          </ruleList>
        </throwError>
      </validationActionList>
    </stringParameter>
    <choiceParameterGroup>
      <name>keyChoice</name>
      <description>Select how to provide your license key</description>
      <explanation></explanation>
      <value></value>
      <default></default>
      <parameterList>
        <fileParameter>
          <name>keyFile</name>
          <description>Load from file</description>
          <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
          <mustBeWritable>0</mustBeWritable>
          <mustExist>0</mustExist>
          <width>40</width>
        </fileParameter>
```

```

<stringParameter>
  <name>licenseText</name>
  <description>Enter license key</description>
  <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
  <width>40</width>
</stringParameter>
</parameterList>
</choiceParameterGroup>
</parameterList>
</booleanParameterGroup>

```

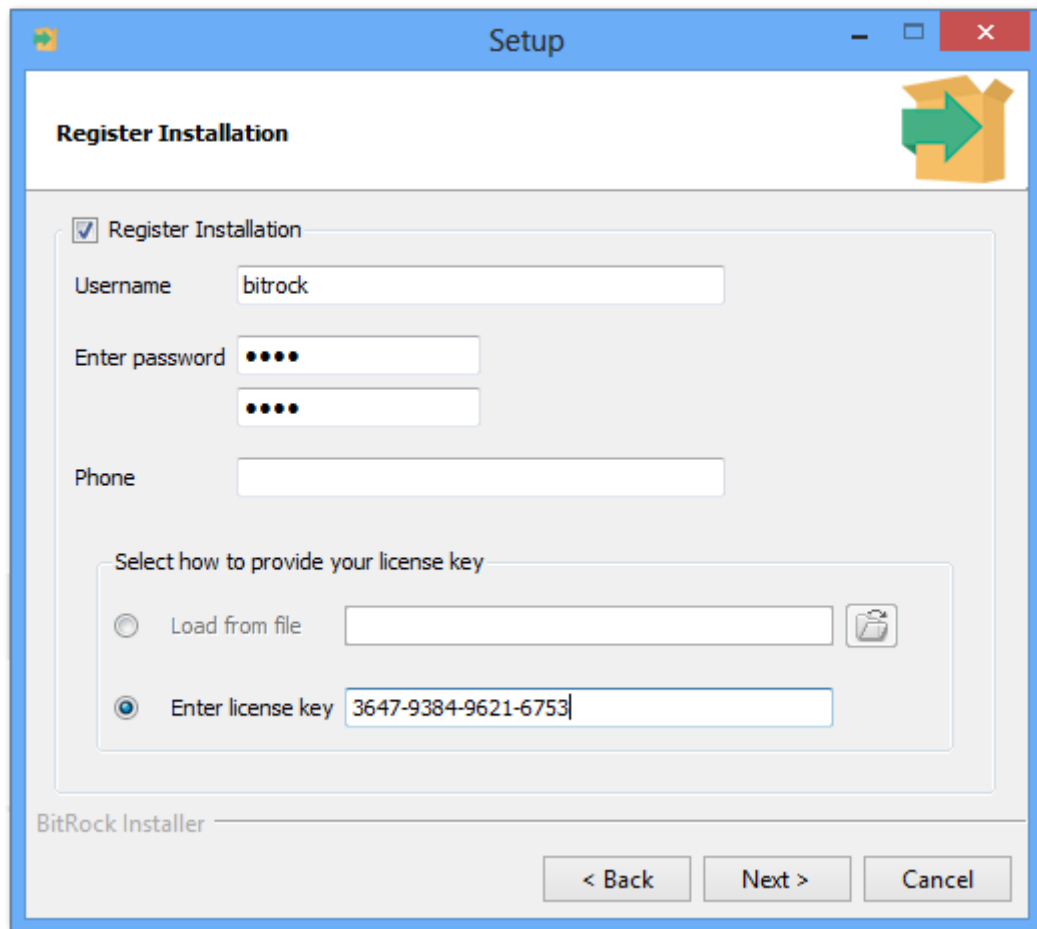


Figure 7.12: Complex Parameter Group Layout

### 7.1.7 Command Line Parameters

All of the parameters in a project are mapped to command line flags and, depending on the visibility of the parameter (configured by the `<ask>` property,) they will be displayed in the help menu.

The name of the command line flag will default to the parameter name but, if needed, it can be configured setting by a value for its `<cliOptionName>` property:

```

<parameterList>
  <directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <description>This is the description</description>

```



```

    <explanation>And here goes the explanation</explanation>
    <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</ ←
      default>
    <ask>yes</ask>
    <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
  </directoryParameter>
  <!-- Will Not be displayed in help menu -->
  <stringParameter name="secretFlg" value="" ask="0"/>
</parameterList>

```

Even if a parameter is configured as hidden by setting its `<ask>` property to 0, it will be accessible by the command line interface; it will just not be visible to the end user. Hidden parameters are very useful because they can be used as permanent variables that can be reconfigured when launching the installer. A good example would be to disable license validation when testing:

```

<parameterList>
  <stringParameter>
    <name>license</name>
    <description>License Registration Page</description>
    <explanation>Please introduce you license number</explanation>
    <ask>yes</ask>
    <ruleList>
      <isTrue value="${validateLicense}"/>
    </ruleList>
  </stringParameter>
  <!-- Will Not be displayed in help menu -->
  <booleanParameter name="validateLicense" value="1" ask="0"/>
</parameterList>

```

To avoid having to introduce the license number each time you launch the installer, you just have to disable the page when launching the installer:

```
$> myInstaller.run --validateLicense 0
```

Although the `<ask>` property allows us to configure whether or not a page is displayed through the installation process and in the help menu, there are some scenarios in which it is desirable to show the associated command line flag while permanently hiding the page at runtime. This can be achieved by attaching a rule to the page:

```

<parameterList>
  <stringParameter>
    <name>create_shortcuts</name>
    <description>Create shortcuts</description>
    <explanation>Whether to create or not shortcuts to the application</explanation>
    <ask>yes</ask>
    <ruleList>
      <isTrue value="0"/>
    </ruleList>
  </stringParameter>
</parameterList>

```

As you have set `ask="1"`, the command line flag is visible through the help menu but at runtime, when the rule attached is evaluated, it will not be displayed.

---

#### **If a page is not displayed, its associated actions are not executed**

Independently of whether the page is hidden through a rule or by setting `ask="0"`, the action lists associated with the page will not be executed. The same will happen in unattended mode, as the pages are never displayed.

---

### 7.1.8 Option Files

As explained in the previous section, the values of the installer parameters can be configured by passing command line options. However, when a large number of parameters must be configured, there is a more convenient way to do so using an option file.

An option file is just a `.properties` file containing all of the parameters to configure:

```
prefix=/tmp
validateLicense=0
installDocumentation=1
...
```

This file can be passed to the installer using the `--optionfile` command line flag:

```
$> myInstaller.run --optionfile path/to/configuration.options
```

Another way of providing the option file is to create a file in the same directory as the installer with the same name plus the `.options` suffix:

```
$> ls some/output/directory
$> myInstaller.run
$> myInstaller.run.options
```

In both cases, the installer will parse the file and will map all the entries to internal parameters. Lines starting with a first non-blank `#` character will be treated as comments.

## Chapter 8

# Actions

### 8.1 What are Actions?

There are a number of installation tasks that are common to many installers, such as changing file permissions, substituting a value in a file, and so on. BitRock InstallBuilder includes a large number of useful built-in actions for these purposes.

You can add new actions by manually editing the XML project file directly or in the *Advanced* section of the GUI building tool. Actions are either attached to a particular folder tag in the project file (`<actionList>`) that will be executed after the contents of the folder have been installed, or can be part of specific action lists that are executed at specific points during installation.

Actions usually take one or more arguments. If one of those arguments is a file matching expression (`<files>`) and the action was included in a `<folder>` action list, the matching will also occur against the contents of the folder:

```
<folder>
  <name>binaries</name>
  ...
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>/some/path/to/bin</origin>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
  <actionList>
    <changePermissions permissions="0755" files="*" />
  </actionList>
</folder>
```

In the example above, although the `<changePermissions>` action is not recursive, as it was executed inside a `<folder>` action list, the pattern will be recursively matched against all of the files contained in the `bin` directory. Alternatively, you could use the `<postInstallationActionList>` to change the permissions, but at that point the `<changePermissions>` action won't execute recursively and you will need to provide a more complex pattern:

```
<folder>
  <name>binaries</name>
  ...
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory>
      <origin>/some/path/to/bin</origin>
    </distributionDirectory>
  </distributionFileList>
</folder>
...
<postInstallationActionList>
```

```
<!-- Multi-level pattern so child files from sublevel 0 to 4 are considered -->
<changePermissions permissions="0755" files="${installdir}/bin/{*,*/,*/,*/,*/*/*/}"/>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

In addition, if the arguments contain references to installer variables, such as the installation directory, they will be properly expanded before the action is executed.

### 8.1.1 Showing the Progress Text in Builder GUI

Complex InstallBuilder projects often consist of multiple `<actionGroup>` items that contain actions, which may be difficult to manage.

The GUI building tool allows showing the `<actionGroup>`'s `<progressText>` in the GUI instead of the action type.

To do this, simply open the Preferences dialog and enable the Show Progress Text in GUI option, such as:

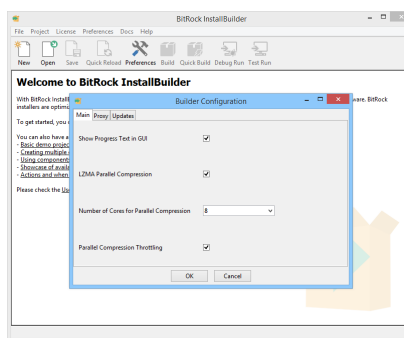


Figure 8.1: InstallBuilder Preferences Window

After enabling it, all `<actionGroup>` elements that have their `<progressText>` set will show it in the action list tree:

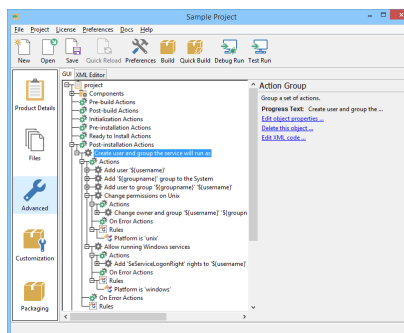


Figure 8.2: Action Lists Showing Progress Text

## 8.2 Action Lists

InstallBuilder actions are organized in what are called action lists, which are executed at specific points of the installation process. It is important to understand how and when each action must be performed, what differences exist between action lists inside components and within the primary installer, how the installer will behave when you run it in different installation modes (GUI, text, or unattended) and what happens when you generate rpm or deb packages.

You can place your action lists in the main installer project or in one of its components. Figure 8.3 shows all the available action lists in the GUI:

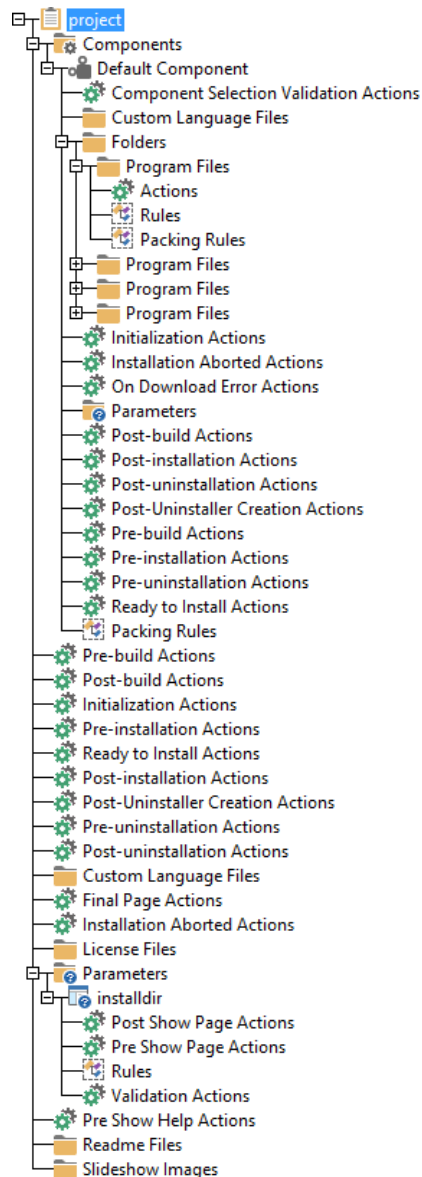


Figure 8.3: BitRock InstallBuilder Action Lists (in order of execution)

### 8.2.1 Building the Installer

- **Pre-build Actions - <preBuildActionList>**: Executes before generating the installer file. These actions usually include setting environment variables or performing some type of processing on the files that will go into the installer before they are packed into it. For multi-platform CDROM installers, the preBuildActionList is executed once at the beginning of the CDROM build, and then again for every one of the specific platform installers.
- **Post-build Actions - <postBuildActionList>**: Executes after generating the installer file. These actions are usually useful to reverse any changes made to the files during the preBuildActionList or to perform additional actions on the generated installer, such as signing it by invoking an external tool. For multi-platform CDROM installers, the postBuildActionList is executed once for every one of the specific platform installers and one final time for the whole CDROM build.

## 8.2.2 Help Menu

- **Pre Show Help Actions - <preShowHelpActionList>**: Executes before help information is displayed. The help is displayed when the `--help` command line option is passed to an installer. It can be useful for example for modifying the description of parameters based on the system the installer is running on.

### Help menu

Sample Project 1.0

Usage:

<code>--help</code>	Display the list of valid options
<code>--version</code>	Display product information
<code>--unattendedmodeui &lt;unattendedmodeui&gt;</code>	Unattended Mode UI Default: none Allowed: none minimal minimalWithDialogs
<code>--optionfile &lt;optionfile&gt;</code>	Installation option file Default:
<code>--debuglevel &lt;debuglevel&gt;</code>	Debug information level of verbosity Default: 2 Allowed: 0 1 2 3 4
<code>--mode &lt;mode&gt;</code>	Installation mode Default: gtk Allowed: gtk xwindow text unattended
<code>--debugtrace &lt;debugtrace&gt;</code>	Debug filename Default:
<code>--enable-components &lt;enable-components&gt;</code>	Comma-separated list of components Default: default Allowed: default
<code>--disable-components &lt;disable-components&gt;</code>	Comma-separated list of components Default: Allowed: default
<code>--installer-language &lt;installer-language&gt;</code>	Language selection Default: en Allowed: sq ar es_AR az eu pt_BR bg ca hr cs ↔ da nl en et fi fr de el he hu id it ja kk ↔ ko lv lt no fa pl pt ro ru sr zh_CN sk sl ↔ es sv th zh_TW tr tk va vi cy
<code>--prefix &lt;prefix&gt;</code>	Installation Directory Default: /home/bitrock/sample-1.0

## 8.2.3 Installation Process

- **Splash Screen**: After the installer internal initialization, the Splash Screen is displayed. The duration of this event is configured through the `<splashScreenDelay>` property or can be skipped if it was disabled setting `<disableSplashScreen>`



Figure 8.4: Splash Screen

- **Initialization Actions - `<initializationActionList>`:** Executes when the installer has started, just before the parsing of the command line options.
- **Language Selection:** If `<allowLanguageSelection>` is set to 1 and no language was provided through the command line, the language selection dialog will be displayed, allowing your users to select one of the allowed languages defined in the `<allowedLanguages>` tag.

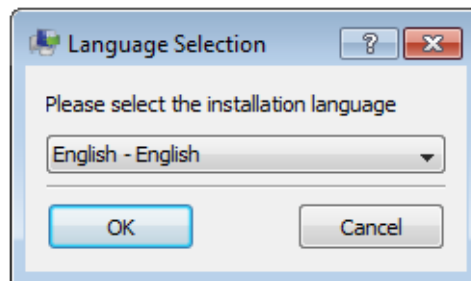


Figure 8.5: Language Selection dialog

- **Pre-installation Actions - `<preInstallationActionList>`:** Executes before the first page of the installer is displayed, right after the parsing of the command line options takes place. It is commonly used for detecting a Java (tm) Runtime Environment or for setting user-defined installer variables that will be used later on:

#### Redefine `${installdir}` based on the platform

```
<preInstallationActionList>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <value>${env (SYSTEMDRIVE)}/${project.shortName}</value>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows"/>
    </ruleList>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <value>/usr/local/${project.shortName}</value>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="linux"/>
    </ruleList>
  </setInstallerVariable>
</preInstallationActionList>
```

- **Component Selection**

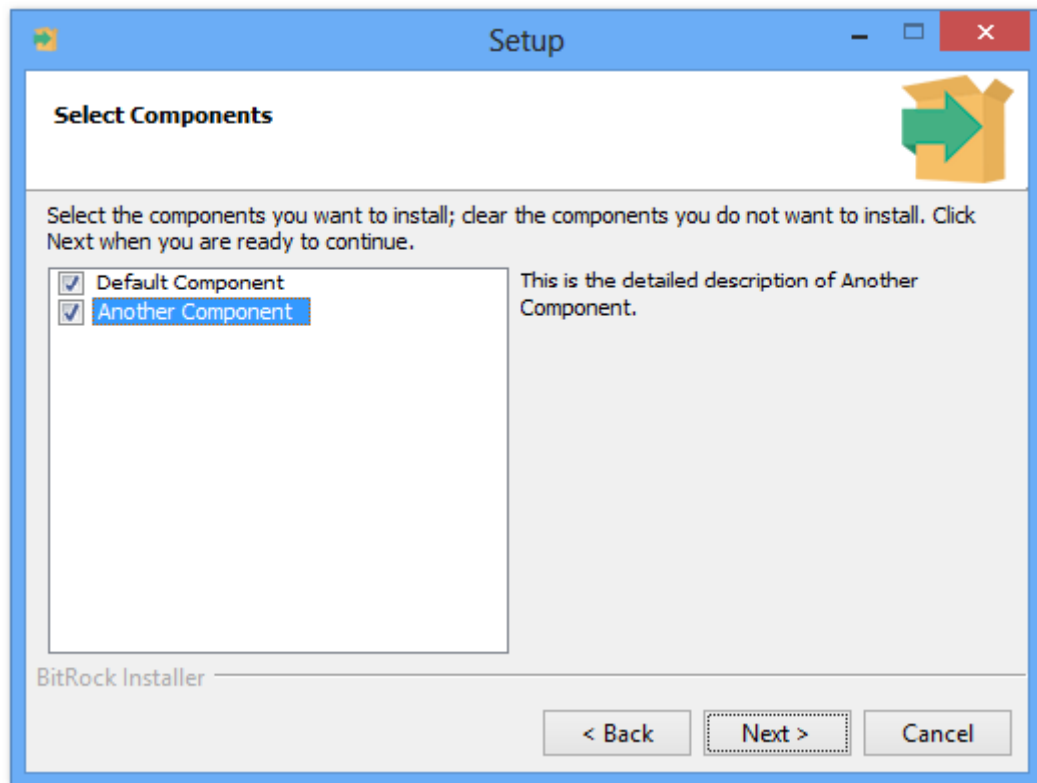


Figure 8.6: Component Selection Page

- **Component Selection Validation Actions** - `<componentSelectionValidationActionList>`: Executes after the component page is displayed to check that the selected components are a valid combination.

- **Parameter Pages**

Each parameter has three 3 different action lists: `validationActionList`, `preShowPageActionList` and `postShowPageActionList`. Note that those actions are not executed if the installer is executed in unattended mode.

- **Validation Actions** - `<validationActionList>`: Executes once the user has specified a value in the user interface page associated with the parameter and has pressed the Next button (or Enter in a text-based interface). The actions can be used to check that the value is valid (for example, that it specifies a path to a valid Perl interpreter). If any of the actions result in an error, an error message will be displayed to the user and the user will be prompted to enter a valid value.
- **Pre Show Page Actions** - `<preShowPageActionList>`: Executes before the corresponding parameter page is displayed. This can be useful for changing the value of the parameter before it is displayed.
- **Post Show Page Actions** - `<postShowPageActionList>`: Executes after the corresponding parameter page has been displayed. This can be useful for performing actions or setting environment variables based on the value of the parameter.
- **Ready to Install Actions** - `<readyToInstallActionList>`: Executes right before the file copying step starts. It is commonly used to execute actions that depend on user input.
- **Unpacking process**
- **Folder Actions** - `<actionList>`: Executes just after files defined in the particular folder are installed, the next folder files are copied and its `actionList` executed, etc.
- **Shortcuts Creation**
- **Post-installation Actions** - `<postInstallationActionList>`: Executes after the installation process has taken place but before the uninstaller is created and the final page is displayed.



- **Post-Uninstaller Creation Actions** - `<postUninstallerCreationActionList>`: Executes after the uninstaller has been created but before the final page has been displayed.
- **Final Page Actions** - `<finalPageActionList>`: Executes after the installation has completed and the final page has been displayed to the user. These actions usually include launching the program that has just been installed. For each one of the actions contained in this list, a checkbox will be displayed (or a question in text mode). If the checkbox is selected, then the action will be executed when the *Finish* button is pressed.

## 8.2.4 Uninstallation

- **Pre-uninstallation Actions** - `<preUninstallationActionList>`: Executes before the uninstallation process takes place, such as unsetting user-defined installer variables or deleting files created after installation occurred.
- **Post-uninstallation Actions** - `<postUninstallationActionList>`: Executes after the uninstallation process takes place.

## 8.2.5 Special action lists

- **Installation Aborted Actions** - `<installationAbortedActionList>`: Executes when the installation process is aborted.

## 8.2.6 Unattended mode, RPM and DEB packages

These are special cases. There is no interaction with the end-user and the following action lists are not executed:

- `<componentSelectionValidationActionList>`
- `<finalPageActionList>`
- `<validationActionList>`
- `<preShowPageActionList>`
- `<postShowPageActionList>`

As the file installation step is executed by the RPM / DEB package manager and not by InstallBuilder itself, there is no way to execute any action from the installer until the files have been installed on the system. To be precise, the `<preInstallationActionList>` will not be executed, and the `<initializationActionList>`, `<readyToInstallActionList>` and any folder's `actionList` will be executed **after** the files have been installed on the system.

As a final note, the `<installationAbortedActionList>` will only be executed if the error was generated by any of the actions performed directly by the installer. I.e., if the error is generated during the file installation step, which is performed by the RPM / DEB package manager, the BitRock installer application will not be notified and therefore the `<installationAbortedActionList>` will not be executed.

To summarize, the following list provides all of the differences regarding action lists when installing an RPM / DEB package:

- `<preBuildActionList>`: executed as usual
- `<postBuildActionList>`: executed as usual
- `<initializationActionList>`: executed after file installation
- `<preInstallationActionList>`: not executed
- `<componentSelectionValidationActionList>`: not executed
- parameter `<validationActionList>`: not executed
- parameter `<preShowPageActionList>`: not executed
- parameter `<postShowPageActionList>`: not executed

- `<readyToInstallActionList>`: executed after file installation
- `folder <actionList>`: executed after file installation
- `<postInstallationActionList>`: executed as usual
- `<finalPageActionList>`: not executed
- `<preUninstallationActionList>`: executed as usual
- `<postUninstallationActionList>`: executed as usual
- `<installationAbortedActionList>`: executed only if error comes from any of the tasks performed directly by the BitRock installer.

## 8.2.7 Main Project and Components Execution Order

Each action list may be included in the main project or inside the components. Let's take an `<initializationActionList>` as an example. You have one main `<initializationActionList>` and 4 others in the components A, B, C and D. The components are declared following the order A, B, C, D (A is the first entry and D is the last one). In this case, the main `<initializationActionList>` is executed first and then each component's action lists are executed (A, B, C, D - the order of component declaration is important).

You can divide all action lists into two groups based on what is executed first: main project or component action lists:

- Main project action lists first and then components:
  - `<preBuildActionList>`
  - `<initializationActionList>`
  - `<preInstallationActionList>`
  - `<readyToInstallActionList>`
  - `<preUninstallationActionList>`
- Component action lists first and then the main project:
  - `<postBuildActionList>`
  - `<postInstallationActionList>`
  - `<postUninstallationActionList>`

The installer executes action lists by group, which means that first, all `<initializationActionList>` actions take place and then all `<preInstallationActionList>` actions are executed:

### INITIALIZATION ACTION LIST

- Project Initialization Action List
- Component A Initialization Action List
- Component B Initialization Action List
- ...

### PREINSTALLATION ACTION LIST

- Project Preinstallation Action List
- Component A Preinstallation Action List
- Component B Preinstallation Action List ...

For example, for a project with two components:

```
<project>
  ...
  <initializationActionList>
    <showInfo>
      <text>I'm the project in the initialization</text>
    </showInfo>
  </initializationActionList>
  <preInstallationActionList>
    <showInfo>
      <text>I'm the project in the preInstallation</text>
    </showInfo>
  </preInstallationActionList>
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>componentA</name>
      <description>Component A</description>
      ...
      <initializationActionList>
        <showInfo>
          <text>I'm Component A in the initialization</text>
        </showInfo>
      </initializationActionList>
      <preInstallationActionList>
        <showInfo>
          <text>I'm Component A in the preInstallation</text>
        </showInfo>
      </preInstallationActionList>
    </component>
    <component>
      <name>componentB</name>
      <description>Component B</description>
      <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
      ...
      <initializationActionList>
        <showInfo>
          <text>I'm Component B in the initialization</text>
        </showInfo>
      </initializationActionList>
      <preInstallationActionList>
        <showInfo>
          <text>I'm Component B in the preInstallation</text>
        </showInfo>
      </preInstallationActionList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
</project>
```

If you build and execute the installer in, for example, unattended mode, you will see the following in the console:

```
I'm the project in the initialization
I'm Component A in the initialization
I'm Component B in the initialization
I'm the project in the preinstallation
I'm Component A in the preInstallation
I'm Component B in the preInstallation
```

The `<installationAbortedActionList>` will only be executed if the error was generated by any of the actions performed directly by the installer. If the error is generated during the file installation step, which is performed by the RPM / DEB package manager, the BitRock installer application will not be notified and therefore the `<installationAbortedActionList>` will not be executed.

## 8.3 Running External Programs

In addition to built-in actions, InstallBuilder allows external programs to be executed through the `<runProgram>` action:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>kill</program>
  <programArguments>-f myBin</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

After the external program ends, its standard streams are registered in the built-in variables `${program_stdout}`, `${program_stderr}` and `${program_exit_code}`:

- `${program_stdout}`: Program Standard Output
- `${program_stderr}`: Program Standard Error
- `${program_exit_code}`: Program Exit Code

For example, to get the path of the `gksudo` command on Linux you could use the snippet below:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>which</program>
  <programArguments>gksudo</programArguments>
  <!-- The gksudo program may not be
  installed so it is necessary to mask errors -->
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
</runProgram>
```

And get the path from the `${program_stdout}` variable. If the execution fails, the variable will be defined as empty.

You can also execute more complex commands such as pipes or include redirections. For example, the code below can be used to count the number of files in a directory:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>ls</program>
  <programArguments>-l ${installdir}/logs/*.log | wc -l</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

Although you can always check the created built-in variables, if you are explicitly calling the external program to use its output like in the `gksudo` example (as opposed to other cases, such as creating a MySQL database in which the important result is the database being created) it may be a better solution to use a `<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>` action:

```
<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
  <exec>which</exec>
  <execArgs>gksudo</execArgs>
  <name>gksudoPath</name>
  <!-- The gksudo program may not be
  installed so it is necessary to mask errors -->
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
</setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
```

The code above will create a new variable `gksudoPath` containing the `${program_stdout}` of the executed program.

On Windows, the `<runProgram>` action will by default launch programs by their 8.3 names (the same path type obtained through the `.dos` suffix) to avoid potential errors dealing with spaces and invalid characters in the path. However, as the 8.3 path may change depending on other files in the folder, sometimes this is not convenient. For example, when you need to check if the executable is running through the `<processTest>` rule. In these cases, you can prevent the automatic 8.3 conversion using the `<useMSDOSPath>` tag:

```

<project>
...
<finalPageActionList>
...
<runProgram>
  <progressText>Launch Application</progressText>
  <program>${installdir}/My Application with long filename.exe"</program>
  <programArguments>&amp;</programArguments>
  <!-- Use long filename -->
  <useMSDOSPath>0</useMSDOSPath>
</runProgram>
...
</finalPageActionList>
...
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <while>
    <actionList>
      <showWarning>
        <text>The application "My Application with long filename.exe" is still running, ←
          please close it and click ok</text>
      </showWarning>
    </actionList>
    <conditionRuleList>
      <processTest>
        <logic>is_running</logic>
        <name>My Application with long filename.exe</name>
      </processTest>
    </conditionRuleList>
  </while>
  ...
</preUninstallationActionList>
...
</project>

```

The `<runProgram>` action can also be used to call external interpreters, for example, to execute Visual Basic or AppleScripts. The example below explains how to take advantage of this to restart the computer after the installation on OS X, in which the `<rebootRequired>` tag is not allowed:

```

<finalPageActionList>
  <actionGroup progressText="Reboot Computer">
    <actionList>
      <runProgram>
        <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
        <program>osascript</program>
        <programArguments>-e "tell application \"Finder\" to restart"</programArguments>
        <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
      </runProgram>
      <!-- If using osascript failed, try using reboot -->
      <runProgram>
        <program>reboot</program>
        <programArguments></programArguments>
        <ruleList>
          <compareText>
            <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
            <text>${program_stderr}</text>
            <value></value>
          </compareText>
        </ruleList>
      </runProgram>
    </actionList>
  </actionGroup>

```

```
</finalPageActionList>
```

**When running shell scripts with subscripts in background**

On Unix, when calling shell scripts that also call subscripts in the background, even if the execution of the main shell script terminates, the installer keeps waiting for the launched child processes in background to close their standard streams. An example of this situation would be when manually starting a Unix service `backup-daemon`:

**backup-daemon script**

```
# chkconfig:          235 30 90
# ...
start()
{
    #...
    /opt/backups/bin/start-backup-daemon.sh &
    #...
}

# ...
exit 0
```

When calling this script from the installer, for example using the code below:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>/etc/init.d/backup-daemon</program>
  <programArguments>start</programArguments>
  <workingDirectory>/etc/init.d</workingDirectory>
</runProgram>
```

The child script `/opt/backups/bin/start-backup-daemon.sh` is executed in background and the main service script quickly reaches to the end and executes `exit 0`. However, as the child process is still running, the installer hangs until it finishes or its standard streams are closed. The solution for this issue would be to redirect the output of the child script to `/dev/null`:

**backup-daemon script reworked**

```
# chkconfig:          235 30 90
# ...
start()
{
    #...
    /opt/backups/bin/start-backup-daemon.sh > /dev/null 2> /dev/null &
    #...
}

# ...
exit 0
```

This way the installer won't hang waiting for output from `/opt/backups/bin/start-backup-daemon.sh` and the installation will continue after the script reaches the `exit 0`.

Another solution that does not require modifying the service script would be to redirect the output when calling it from the installer:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>/etc/init.d/backup-daemon</program>
  <programArguments>start &gt; /dev/null 2&gt; /dev/null</programArguments>
  <workingDirectory>/etc/init.d</workingDirectory>
</runProgram>
```



Or, if you are interested in the output, redirect it to files. The snippets below create a custom action to wrap the `<runProgram>` and make it return the redirected streams:

**Custom action wrapping the `<runProgram>` to redirect its streams to files and return the result**

```
<functionDefinitionList>
  <actionDefinition>
    <name>runProgramRedirected</name>
    <actionList>
      <!-- Create a timestamp to use unique filenames -->
      <createTimeStamp>
        <format>%Y%m%d%H%M%S</format>
        <variable>timestamp</variable>
      </createTimeStamp>
      <!-- Call the problematic script redirecting its output to files -->
      <runProgram>
```

### 8.3.1 Launching in the Background

The standard behavior of the `<runProgram>` action is to wait for the spawned process to end but it is also possible to launch the process in the background by appending an ampersand to the arguments. For example, to execute our application at the end of the installation without preventing the installer from finishing you could use the following snippet:

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>${installdir}/bin/myApplication.exe</program>
    <programArguments>--arg1 value1 --arg2 value 2 &lt;/programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</finalPageActionList>
```

### 8.3.2 Opening Programs in OS X

Application bundles are the most common way of distributing software packages on OS X. They are presented as a single file which is actually a directory containing all of the necessary resources (images, libraries...).

These bundles can be executed by double-clicking on them, as if they were regular files, so it is a common mistake to try to execute them using the command line as:

```
$> /Applications/BitRock\ InstallBuilder\ Professional\ 15.9.0/bin/Builder.app
```

Or alternatively, using InstallBuilder actions:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder Professional 15.9.0/bin/Builder.app</
  program>
</runProgram>
```

Which results in an error similar to: `"-bash:/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder Professional 15.9.0/bin/Builder.app/: is a directory"` or a more detailed error suggesting using `open` (see below) in recent InstallBuilder versions.

There are two ways of executing an application bundle:

- Using the `open` command: This command is the equivalent of a double-click over the bundle. It can be also used to open regular files, which will launch the associated application:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>open</program>
  <programArguments>"${installdir}/YourApplication.app"</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

The default behavior of the `open` command is to launch the process in background, so you don't need to add an `"&"` at the end of the arguments.

However, if you want to make InstallBuilder wait for the process to finish (launch the bundle in the foreground) you can use the `-W` command line flag:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>open</program>
  <programArguments>-W "${installdir}/YourApplication.app"</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```



A limitation of using `open` to launch the bundle is that it does not support passing arguments to the launched application in its early versions (it started supporting it from OS X 10.6.2). If you just support versions newer than OS X 10.6.2, you can use the `--args` command line flag:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>open</program>
  <programArguments>-W "${installdir}/YourApplication.app" --args --data-dir ${ ←
    installdir}/data --check-for-updates</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

All the arguments after `--args` are directly passed to the application, so you don't have to surround them by quotes.

- Calling the `CFBundleExecutable` specified in the `Info.plist` file: The application bundle contains an XML document describing multiple aspects of the bundle behavior (the binary to execute when double clicked, the icon to use in the dock...). One of the keys specified is `CFBundleExecutable`, which determines which of the contained files will be executed when opening the bundle. There are multiple ways of retrieving this key but the easiest way is by executing:

```
$> defaults read /Applications/BitRock\ InstallBuilder/bin/Builder.app/Contents/Info ←
    CFBundleExecutable
```

Which will return the file that will be executed relative to the directory `Builder.app/Contents/MacOS`. In the case of InstallBuilder application bundles, it will return `installbuilder.sh` (`Builder.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh`).

Another possibility would be to just open it with a text editor and look for the `CFBundleExecutable` key and its `<string>`:

```
$> emacs Builder.app/Contents/Info.plist
```

Or from Finder, in the "right-click" menu, clicking "Show Package Contents" and opening `Contents/Info.plist`.

Using this information, you can execute it using the `<runProgram>` action:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder/bin/Builder.app/Contents/MacOS/ ←
    installbuilder.sh</program>
  <programArguments>build ~/project.xml linux</programArguments>
</runProgram>
```

## 8.4 Displaying Progress While Executing Long Running Actions

When the actions executed require a long time to complete, such as waiting for a service to start or when uncompressing a zip file, it is advisable to provide some feedback to the end user. The first way of providing feedback is defining a `progressText` in your action. If the actions are executed during the `<postInstallationActionList>`, `<postUninstallerCreationActionList>` or in a `<folder>`'s action list, the main progress bar used to display the unpacking process will display the defined message:

```
<component>
  <name>myComponent</name>
  ...
  <folderList>
    <folder>
      <name>documents</name>
      ...
      <actionList>
        <runProgram progressText="Starting Apache Server...">
          <program>${installdir}/apache/apachectl</program>
          <programArguments>start &amp;</programArguments>
        </runProgram>
```

```

        <wait ms="3000" progressText="Waiting apache server to start..."/>
    </actionList>
</folder>
</folderList>
</component>

```

However, if the action is going to take a lot of time, it would be an even better idea to wrap the actions in a `<showProgressDialog>`. This dialog displays an indeterminate progress bar in a pop-up while executing the wrapped child actions. It will also take control of the execution so the user will not be able to interact with the main window until the actions complete. Canceling the pop-up will cancel the installation:

```

<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Extracting files</title>
  <width>400</width>
  <height>100</height>
  <actionList>
    <!-- The unzip action will provide a built-in progress text with
    the file being unpacked so you don't need to provide one -->
    <unzip>
      <destinationDirectory>${installdir}/content</destinationDirectory>
      <zipFile>${installdir}/content.zip</zipFile>
    </unzip>
    <deleteFile>
      <progressText>Removing original zip file</progressText>
      <path>${installdir}/content.zip</path>
    </deleteFile>
  </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>

```

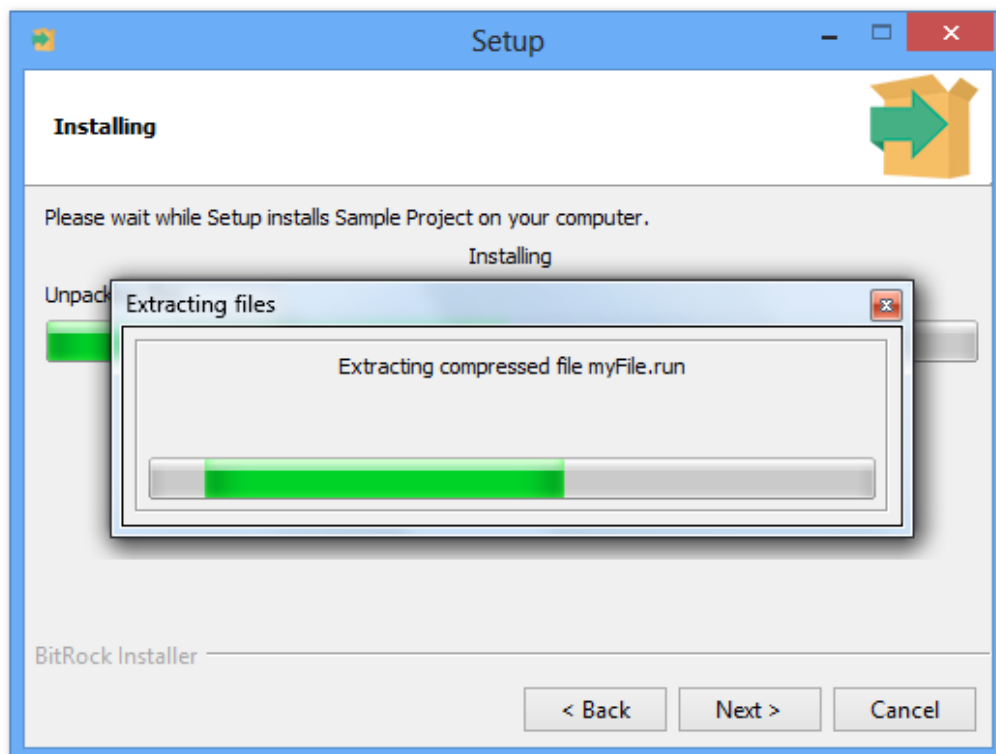


Figure 8.7: Show Progress Dialog

The `<showProgressDialog>` will behave differently when its only child is an `<httpGet>` action. In this case, instead of displaying an indeterminate progress pop-up, a continuous bar with the speed and the progress of the download will be displayed:

```
<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Downloading files</title>
  <actionList>
    <httpGet>
      <filename>/tmp/ib.run</filename>
      <url>http://installbuilder.bitrock.com/installbuilder-enterprise-15.9.0-linux- ←
        installer.run</url>
    </httpGet>
  </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>
```

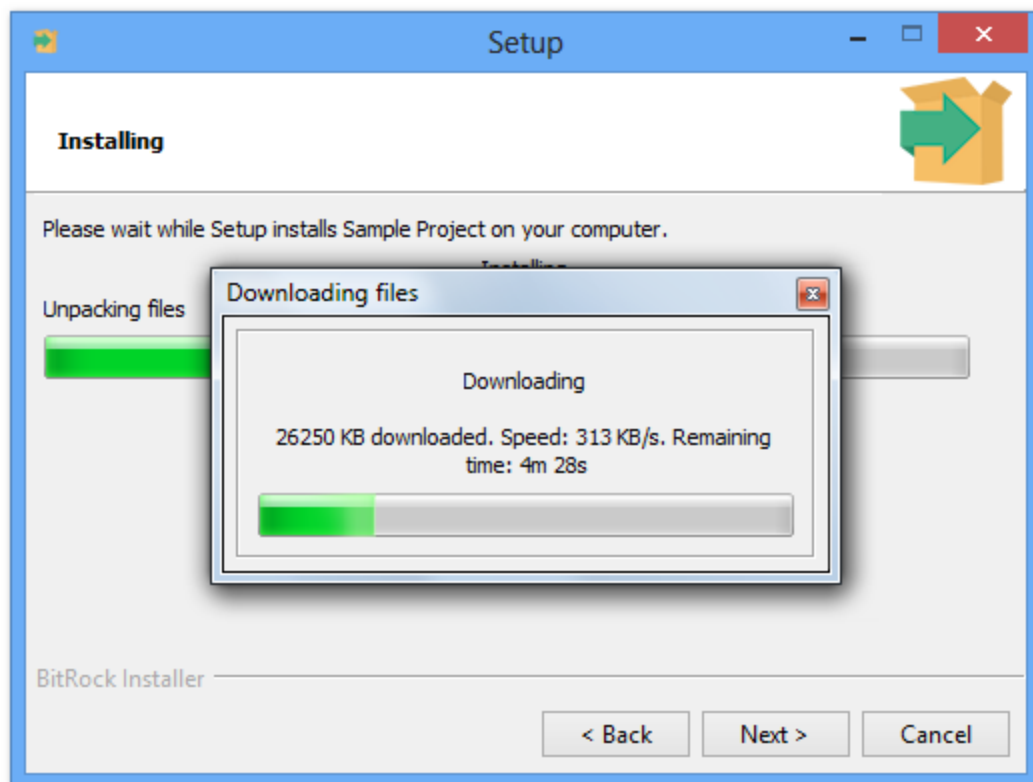


Figure 8.8: Continuous Progress Dialog

## 8.5 Creating Custom Actions

In addition to the built-in actions, InstallBuilder allows you to create new custom actions using a mix of base actions and rules. New actions are defined using the `<functionDefinitionList>`.

For example, let's suppose you have a lot of long running `<runProgram>` actions (for example installing sub installers in unattended mode) and you are enclosing all of them in a `<showProgressDialog>`:

```
<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Please wait ...</title>
  <actionList>
    <runProgram>
      <program>${yourProgram}</program>
      <programArguments>--mode unattended --prefix "${installdir}"</programArguments>
```

```

    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>

```

You could then create a new action called `<unattendedRunProgramWithProgress>` that will just accept the program to execute and some additional arguments:

```

<project>
  ...
  <functionDefinitionList>
    <!-- Define the action -->
    <actionDefinition>
      <name>unattendedRunProgramWithProgress</name>
      <actionList>
        <showProgressDialog>
          <title>Please wait ...</title>
          <actionList>
            <runProgram progressText="Installing ${program}">
              <program>${program}</program>
              <programArguments>--mode unattended ${programArguments}</ ←
                programArguments>
            </runProgram>
          </actionList>
        </showProgressDialog>
      </actionList>
    </parameterList>
      <stringParameter name="program" value="" default=""/>
      <stringParameter name="programArguments" value="" default=""/>
    </parameterList>
  </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
<initializationActionList>
  <!-- Use the new action -->
  <unattendedRunProgramWithProgress>
    <program>${yourProgram}</program>
    <programArguments>--prefix "${installdir}"</programArguments>
  </unattendedRunProgramWithProgress>
</initializationActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

This new action will take care of displaying the progress dialog and launching the program in unattended mode. The basics of how to define a new custom action are as follow:

- **<name>**: The new custom action will be available in other parts of the XML by its name. No other custom action can be defined with the same `<name>`.
- **<actionList>**: This `<actionList>` defines the set of actions to wrap. In addition to built-in actions, it also accepts other custom actions (if they were previously defined).
- **<parameterList>**: This `<parameterList>` defines the parameters of the new action. They are used to interface with the inner actions in the `<actionList>`. In addition to the settings defined in the `<parameterList>`, the new custom action will also support all the common action properties such as `<progressText>`, `<show>`, `<abortOnError>`, `<action.showMessageOnError>`...

For example, if you want to wrap the built-in `<unpackDirectory>` action to make it safer and previously backup the destination, you could use:

```

<functionDefinitionList>
  <actionDefinition>
    <name>unpackDirectoryWithBackup</name>

```

```

    <actionList>
      <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
          <createTimeStamp>
            <format>%s</format>
            <variable>timestamp</variable>
          </createTimeStamp>
          <logMessage>
            <text>File ${destination} already exists, renaming it to ${destination}.${ ←
              timestamp</text>
          </logMessage>
          <renameFile>
            <destination>${destination}.${timestamp}</destination>
            <origin>${destination}</origin>
          </renameFile>
        </actionList>
      </actionGroup>
      <ruleList>
        <fileExists path="${destination}"/>
      </ruleList>
    </actionList>
    <unpackDirectory>
      <component>${component}</component>
      <destination>${destination}</destination>
      <folder>${folder}</folder>
      <origin>${origin}</origin>
    </unpackDirectory>
  </actionList>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="component" value="" default=""/>
    <stringParameter name="folder" value="" default=""/>
    <stringParameter name="origin" value="" default=""/>
    <stringParameter name="destination" value="" default=""/>
  </parameterList>
</actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>

```

The new action will then be available at any point in the installation:

```

<project>
  ...
  <initializationActionList>
    <unpackDirectoryWithBackup>
      <component>binaries</component>
      <folder>bin</folder>
      <origin>checker/checker.bin</origin>
      <destination>${installdir}/temp</destination>
    </unpackDirectoryWithBackup>
  </initializationActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

In the example above, the `<parameterList>` was basically a map of the main properties accepted by the `<unpackDirectory>` action and the `<actionList>` included a couple of actions to do the backup and log some information before calling `<unpackDirectory>`.

Another useful example could be to manage your bundled Apache server:

```

<project>
  ...
  <functionDefinitionList>
    <actionDefinition>
      <name>apache</name>

```

```

    <actionList>
        <runProgram program="${apacheCtlPath}" programArguments="${action}"/>
    </actionList>
    <parameterList>
        <stringParameter name="action" value="" default="start"/>
        <stringParameter name="apacheCtlPath" value="" default="${installdir}/apache2/bin/ ←
            apachectl"/>
    </parameterList>
    </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
<initializationActionList>
    <apache action="start"/>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

### 8.5.1 Returning values from a custom action

In some cases, you may want to create custom actions that perform some operations and return the result in a variable. The obvious way of achieving this would be to implement something like the following:

```

<project>
...
<functionDefinitionList>
    <actionDefinition>
        <name>getPreviousInstallDir</name>
        <actionList>
            <setInstallerVariable name="dir" value=""/>
            <setInstallerVariable name="dir" value="${env(OLD_DIR)}" >
                <ruleList>
                    <platformTest type="unix"/>
                </ruleList>
            </setInstallerVariable>
            <registryGet>
                <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
                <name>Location</name>
                <variable>installdir</variable>
                <ruleList>
                    <platformTest type="windows"/>
                </ruleList>
            </registryGet>
            <!-- Set the return value. ${result} contains the name
                of the variable provided by the caller -->
            <setInstallerVariable name="${result}" value="${dir}"/>
        </actionList>
        <parameterList>
            <stringParameter name="result" value="" default=""/>
        </parameterList>
    </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
<initializationActionList>
    <getPreviousInstallDir result="previous_dir"/>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

However, if you try this, you will realize that the `previous_dir` variable will still be undefined after the execution of the custom action. The reason is that all the variables used in the custom action are just a local copy of the project level variables.

The same way, variables created inside the custom action are not available in the global scope. This way, you can safely use any variable inside the function without affecting other project level variables.

To solve this issue, you just need to mark the desired variables as global using the `<globalVariables>` action. This action accepts a space-separated list of variable names that will then be preserve their values outside the custom action. In our example:

```
<project>
...
<functionDefinitionList>
  <actionDefinition>
    <name>getPreviousInstallDir</name>
    <actionList>
      <!-- Define the variable configured as global -->
      <globalVariables names="${result}"/>
      <setInstallerVariable name="dir" value=""/>
      <setInstallerVariable name="dir" value="${env(OLD_DIR)}" >
        <ruleList>
          <platformTest type="unix"/>
        </ruleList>
      </setInstallerVariable>
      <registryGet>
        <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
        <name>Location</name>
        <variable>installdir</variable>
        <ruleList>
          <platformTest type="windows"/>
        </ruleList>
      </registryGet>
      <!-- Set the return value. ${result} contains the name
      of the variable provided by the caller -->
      <setInstallerVariable name="${result}" value="${dir}"/>
    </actionList>
    <parameterList>
      <stringParameter name="result" value="" default=""/>
    </parameterList>
  </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
<initializationActionList>
  <getPreviousInstallDir result="previous_dir"/>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>
```

Take into account that once a variable is defined as global, it will always be accessible from other custom actions, even if they did not declare it as global.

---

### Custom actions return values

To return values from a custom action you must create a parameter in which the result will be returned and mark it as global using the `<globalVariables>` action.

---

## 8.5.2 Current Limitations

The Custom Actions are still under development and although the functionality is fully usable, they have some known limitations:

**Order matters** To make the builder recognize a custom action as a valid XML element, it must be defined in the XML project before it is used. For example, the below will fail with "Unknown tag `<myShowInfo>`" error:

```
<project>
...
```

---

```

<initializationActionList>
  <myShowInfo/>
</initializationActionList>
...
<functionDefinitionList>
  <actionDefinition>
    <name>myShowInfo</name>
    <actionList>
      <showInfo text="This is a customized showInfo: ${text}"/>
    </actionList>
    <parameterList>
      <stringParameter name="text"/>
    </parameterList>
  </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
</project>

```

However, changing the order will fix the issue:

```

<project>
  ...
  <functionDefinitionList>
    <actionDefinition>
      <name>myShowInfo</name>
      <actionList>
        <showInfo text="This is a customized showInfo: ${text}"/>
      </actionList>
      <parameterList>
        <stringParameter name="text"/>
      </parameterList>
    </actionDefinition>
  </functionDefinitionList>
  ...
  <initializationActionList>
    <myShowInfo/>
  </initializationActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

Future versions will fix the issue by implementing a two-pass XML parser.

**Custom actions cannot be defined in the GUI tree** They cannot be defined in the tree, but actions defined using the integrated XML editor (or externally added) will be available as other regular actions in the action-selector dialog.

**Name conventions** The <name> must only contain ascii letters. The same applies to its parameters.

**Custom actions cannot overwrite built-in ones** If you define a new <showInfo>, and a built-in <showInfo> already exists, it will be ignored.

## 8.6 Error Handling

During the installation or uninstallation process, there are scenarios in which the installer encounters a non-recoverable error or simply is manually aborted. This section explains how these scenarios are handled by InstallBuilder and how to manually define actions in case of failure either to clean the installation or to try to recover.

### 8.6.1 Handling Action Errors

All actions include some error handling tags that make it very easy to specify the desired behavior when an error is found during its execution.



- **<abortOnError>**: This property configures whether or not to abort the execution of the current action list when one of its child actions fails. Its default value is 1.

For example, in the next snippet, the second action will never be executed:

```
<initializationActionList>
  <throwError text="This will abort the installation!"/>
  <showInfo text="This will never be executed"/>
</initializationActionList>
```

But if you set `abortOnError="0"`, even if a message is displayed, the execution will not be aborted:

```
<initializationActionList>
  <throwError text="This will not abort the installation!" abortOnError="0"/>
  <showInfo text="And this will be executed after the error pop-up"/>
</initializationActionList>
```

- **<showMessageOnError>**: This property configures whether or not to display a pop-up notifying the user of the error. Its default value is 1. If you set `showMessageOnError="0"` and an error occurs, if the action is not configured to ignore errors with `abortOnError="0"`, the rest of the actions in the action list will be skipped. However, although the actions will be skipped, no error will be propagated upward so the installation will not be aborted:

```
<initializationActionList>
  <throwError text="This will not abort the installation but no other action in the ↵
    initializationActionList will be executed!" showMessageOnError="0"/>
  <showInfo text="This will never be executed"/>
</initializationActionList>
```

To completely mask an error, you can use a combination of `showMessageOnError="0"` and `abortOnError="0"`. A real world example could be to determine if certain Linux command is available and getting its path:

```
<initializationActionList>
  <!-- The below will fail in some cases
  but we do not want to display any error or to abort -->
  <runProgram>
    <program>which</program>
    <programArguments>gksudo</programArguments>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  </runProgram>
  <showInfo text="gksudo is not available" >
    <ruleList>
      <compareText text="${program_stdout}" logic="equals" value=""/>
    </ruleList>
  </showInfo>
  <showInfo text="gksudo is available and its path is ${program_stdout}" >
    <ruleList>
      <compareText text="${program_stdout}" logic="does_not_equal" value=""/>
    </ruleList>
  </showInfo>
</initializationActionList>
```

- **<customErrorMessage>**: When an action fails, InstallBuilder generates a built-in error to be displayed if `showMessageOnError="1"`. This error message can be overwritten using the `customErrorMessage` property. For example, calling a nonexistent command `foo` would normally result in an error such as "foo not found" but you can customize it to: "foo must be installed, aborting...":

```
<runProgram>
  <program>foo</program>
  <customErrorMessage>foo must be installed, aborting...</customErrorMessage>
</runProgram>
```

The errors are also stored in the `${installer_error_message}` (containing the error message reported to the user, masked by the `<customErrorMessage>` if any) and `${installer_error_message_original}` (the original error message, unmasked by the `<customErrorMessage>`) built-in variables. The variables are accessible at the time the `<customErrorMessage>` is resolved so you could create a custom error message that also includes the original error as the details:

```
<runProgram>
  <program>foo</program>
  <customErrorMessage>foo must be installed: ${installer_error_message_original}</ ←
    customErrorMessage>
</runProgram>
```

- **<onErrorActionList>**: When an action reports an error during its execution, regardless of the values of `showMessageOnError` and `abortOnError`, its `onErrorActionList` will be executed. For example, you can use it to clean the effects of the failed action before continuing aborting:

```
<!-- Try to copy some images to the installation directory and then create a pdf
file but if the process fail, do not want to preserve the images and the malformed
pdf file. The action will take care of the cleaning itself -->
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <!-- ${installer_directory} is resolved to the
    directory of the installer -->
    <copyFile origin="${installer_directory}/images" destination="${installdir}"/>
    <runProgram>
      <program>convert</program>
      <programArguments>${installdir}/images/*.jpg ${installdir}/myImages.pdf</ ←
        programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
  <onErrorActionList>
    <deleteFile path="${installdir}/images"/>
    <deleteFile path="${installdir}/myImages.pdf"/>
  </onErrorActionList>
</actionGroup>
```

Using the `<onErrorActionList>` and the `${installer_error_message_original}` variable you could also throw a friendly error to your users while still providing the specific details in the log for debugging purposes:

```
<runProgram>
  <customErrorMessage>Error generating pdf file</customErrorMessage>
  <program>convert</program>
  <programArguments>${installdir}/images/*.jpg ${installdir}/myImages.pdf</ ←
    programArguments>
  <onErrorActionList>
    <logMessage>
      <text>Error generating pdf file: ${installer_error_message_original}</text>
    </logMessage>
  </onErrorActionList>
</runProgram>
```

## 8.6.2 Installation Aborted Action List

This action list gets executed when the project is aborted, either by the user or by an internal error. It provides a global way of dealing with the error in contra-position to the specific approach of the `<onErrorActionList>`. For example, it could be used to make sure the installation directory is deleted after the installation is being canceled:

```
<project>
...
<installationAbortedActionList>
  <deleteFile path="${installdir}"/>
</installationAbortedActionList>
...
</project>
```

You can also differentiate between an installation aborted by the user or an error checking the built-in variable `${installation_aborted_by_user}`.

## 8.6.3 When Does an Error Not Abort the Installation?

In most cases, when an error is thrown and it is not caught at any point using `abortOnError="0"` (the error is completely ignored) or `showMessageOnError="0"` (the error aborts the current action list but is not propagated upwards), it aborts the installation. However, there are some special cases in which the error is treated as a warning or is ignored:

- **Parameter's Validation Actions (`<validationActionList>`):** If an unmasked error occurs inside a parameter action list, the rest of actions in the `<validationActionList>` are skipped and the error is reported to the user but instead of aborting the installation, the page is redrawn. For example, if you unconditionally throw an error in a `<validationActionList>`, the installer will never continue after this page:

```
<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="This page will be displayed again and again !"/>
  </validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>
```

- **Component's Validation Actions (`<componentSelectionValidationActionList>`):** If an unmasked error occurs inside this action list, the same way it happens with the `<validationActionList>`, the error is reported to the user but instead of aborting the installation, the component selection page is redrawn:

```
<component>
  <name>C</name>
  <description>Component C</description>
  <detailedDescription>This component depends on 'A' and 'B'</detailedDescription>
  ...
  <componentSelectionValidationActionList>
    <throwError>
      <text>Component 'C' cannot be installed if you have not selected both 'A' and ' ←
        B'.</text>
    <ruleList>
      <isFalse value="${component(A).selected}"/>
      <isFalse value="${component(B).selected}" />
    </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </componentSelectionValidationActionList>
  ...
</component>
```

- **Post Installation Actions and following** (<postInstallationActionList>): At this point of the installation, all of the files have already been copied. If an error happens, instead of aborting the installation, it just prevents the execution of the remaining actions in that list and it is reported. This also applies to the <postUninstallerCreationActionList> and <finalPageActionList> lists.
- **Pre and Post Uninstallation Actions** (<preUninstallationActionList>,<postUninstallationActionList>): If an error occurs in these action lists, it aborts the rest of the actions in the list but it is not reported, just logged in the uninstallation log.
- **Pre Show Help Actions** (<preShowHelpActionList>): Any error in this action list will just skip the rest of actions in the list and will be silently ignored

## 8.6.4 Cleaning and Rollback Directory Restoration

When an installation is aborted during the installation of files, all of the unpacked files will be automatically deleted, and if the rollback functionality was enabled using <enableRollback>1</enableRollback>, the old files overwritten by the process will be restored.

Take into account that files manually deleted, copied or moved will not be automatically handled so the <installationAbortedActionList> must be used for this purpose.

## 8.7 List of Available Actions

### HTTP Actions

#### HTTP GET Request

Access a URL and save the result into a file. The allowed properties in the <httpGet> action are:

- <filename>: Filename to which to save the result to
- <password>: Password for URLs that require authentication
- <url>: URL to launch
- <username>: Username for URLs that require authentication
- <httpHeadersList>: List of headers for the request

#### Examples:

##### Download a readme file

```
<httpGet>
  <filename>${installdir}/README.txt</filename>
  <url>http://www.example.com/docs/readme.txt</url>
  <username>foo</username>
  <password>bar</password>
</httpGet>
```

##### Display a progress bar while downloading a big file

```
<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Downloading files</title>
  <actionList>
    <httpGet>
      <filename>${system_temp_directory}/ib.run</filename>
      <url>http://installbuilder.bitrock.com/installbuilder-enterprise-15.9.0-linux- ↵
        installer.run</url>
```

```

        </httpGet>
    </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>

```

### Checking the HTTP status code of a httpGet request

```

<httpGet>
    <filename>${installdir}/README.txt</filename>
    <url>http://www.example.com/docs/readme.txt</url>
</httpGet>
<throwError>
    <text>Failed to retrieve remote file</text>
    <ruleList>
        <compareText text="${installer_http_code}" logic="does_not_equal" value="200"/>
    </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

### Adding custom headers to the HTTP request

```

<httpGet>
    <filename>${installdir}/welcome.txt</filename>
    <url>http://www.example.com/index.php</url>
    <httpHeadersList>
        <httpHeader>
            <name>Accept-Language</name>
            <value>en-US,en;q=0.8,es;q=0.6</value>
        </httpHeader>
    </httpHeadersList>
</httpGet>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## HTTP POST Request

Access a URL using HTTP POST and save the result into a file. The allowed properties in the `<httpPost>` action are:

- `<filename>`: Filename to which to save the result to
- `<password>`: Password for URLs that require authentication
- `<url>`: URL to launch
- `<username>`: Username for URLs that require authentication
- `<httpHeadersList>`: List of headers for the request
- `<queryParameterList>`: List of variables that will be included in the POST query.

### Examples:

#### Query your server to validate user provided input

```

<parameterGroup>
    <name>credentials</name>
    <title>Account Credentials</title>
    <explanation>Introduce Your account credentials</explanation>
    <parameterList>
        <stringParameter name="username" description="Username:"/>
        <passwordParameter name="password" description="Password:"/>
        <stringParameter name="key" description="License key:"/>
    </parameterList>

```

```

<validationActionList>
  <httpPost>
    <url>http://www.example.com/register.php</url>
    <filename>${installdir}/result</filename>
    <queryParameterList>
      <queryParameter name="name" value="${username}"/>
      <queryParameter name="pass" value="${password}"/>
      <queryParameter name="license" value="${key}"/>
    </queryParameterList>
  </httpPost>
  <readFile path="${installdir}/result" name="result"/>
  <deleteFile path="${installdir}/result"/>
  <throwError>
    <text>The provided credentials are not valid</text>
    <ruleList>
      <compareText>
        <text>${result}</text>
        <logic>does_not_contain</logic>
        <value>OK</value>
      </compareText>
    </ruleList>
  </throwError>
</validationActionList>
</parameterGroup>

```

### Checking the HTTP status code of a httpPost request

```

<httpPost>
  <url>http://www.example.com/register.php</url>
  <filename>${installdir}/result</filename>
  <queryParameterList>
    <queryParameter name="name" value="${username}"/>
    <queryParameter name="pass" value="${password}"/>
    <queryParameter name="license" value="${key}"/>
  </queryParameterList>
</httpPost>
<throwError>
  <text>Could not register installation</text>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="${installer_http_code}" logic="does_not_equal" value="200"/>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Configure proxy

Configure a proxy to be used by the http actions (<httpGet> and <httpPost>).

The allowed properties in the <httpProxyInit> action are:

- <exclude>: Space separated list of patters for urls that will be excluded from the proxy configuration
- <password>: Proxy server password
- <port>: Proxy server port
- <server>: Proxy server url
- <username>: Proxy server username

If no properties are defined, the action will try to autodetect the proxy configured in the system.

### Examples:

#### Ask the user to configure the proxy

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>proxyConfiguration</name>
  <title>Configuration</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="username" description="Username:"/>
    <passwordParameter name="password" description="Password:"/>
    <parameterGroup>
      <name>proxyServer</name>
      <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
      <parameterList>
        <stringParameter name="server" description="Server:      "/>
        <stringParameter name="port" description="Port:" width="5"/>
      </parameterList>
    </parameterGroup>
  </parameterList>
  <postShowPageActionList>
    <httpProxyInit>
      <username>${username}</username>
      <password>${password}</password>
      <server>${server}</server>
      <port>${port}</port>
    </httpProxyInit>
  </postShowPageActionList>
</parameterGroup>
```

#### Use system proxy configuration

```
<httpProxyInit/>
```

### Encode URL

Encode a given text using URL formatting specifications and place the result in a variable. The allowed properties in the `<urlEncode>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to encode
- `<variable>`: Variable to store the result in

### Examples:

#### Encode text

```
<urlEncode>
  <text>Some long text to
send to your server containg a lot of
forbiden characters such as ? [ and @</text>
  <variable>encodedText</variable>
</urlEncode>
```

In the example above, the encoded text would be `Some+long+text+to%0d%0asend+to+your+server+containg+a+lot+of%0d%0aforbiden+characters+such+as+%3f+%5b+and+%40`, ready to send to our server using an `<httpPost>` action.

## Decode URL

Decode a given text using URL formatting specifications and place the result in a variable. The allowed properties in the `<urlDecode>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to decode
- `<variable>`: Variable to store the result in

### Examples:

#### Decode url

```
<urlDecode>
  <text>Some+long+text+to%0d%0asend+to+your+server+containg+a+lot+of%0d%0aforbiden+ ↵
    characters+such+as+%3f+%5b+and+%40</text>
  <variable>decodedText</variable>
</urlDecode>
```

The action will store the below text in the variable `${decodedText}`:

```
Some long text to
send to your server containg a lot of
forbiden characters such as ? [ and @
```

## Launch Browser

Launch the default web browser with a given URL. The allowed properties in the `<launchBrowser>` action are:

- `<url>`: URL of the page to be shown.

### Examples:

#### Visit your website at the end of the installation

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <launchBrowser>
    <url>www.downloads.com/optional</url>
    <progressText>Would you like to visit our website to download
      additional modules?</progressText>
  </launchBrowser>
</finalPageActionList>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## File Manipulation Actions

### DOS to Unix File Conversion

Convert plain text files in DOS/Mac format to Unix format. It is specially useful to fix Unix shell scripts modified on Windows. The allowed properties in the `<dos2unix>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files



**Examples:****Convert all shell scripts to Unix line endings**

```
<dos2unix>
  <files>${installdir}/scripts/*.sh</files>
</dos2unix>
```

**Unix to DOS File Conversion**

Convert plain text files in Unix format to DOS format. It is specially useful to fix Windows bat files modified on Unix.

The allowed properties in the `<unix2dos>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

**Examples:****Convert all batch scripts to Unix line endings**

```
<unix2dos>
  <files>${installdir}/scripts/*.bat</files>
</unix2dos>
```

**Read value from XML file**

Read value of element or attribute from an XML file The allowed properties in the `<xmlFileGet>` action are:

- `<attribute>`: If present, the action will refer to the attribute instead of the element
- `<element>`: XPath expression pointing to the selected element
- `<file>`: Path to XML file
- `<variable>`: Variable where to start the result

**Examples:****Extract a property from an Info.plist file** If you have an Info.plist file with contents:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE plist PUBLIC "-//Apple Computer//DTD PLIST 1.0//EN" "http://www.apple.com/DTDs/PropertyList-1.0.dtd">
<plist version="1.0">
  <dict>
    <key>CFBundleDevelopmentRegion</key>
    <string>English</string>
    <key>CFBundleExecutable</key>
    <string>installbuilder.sh</string>
    <key>CFBundleIdentifier</key>
    <string>com.bitrock.installbuilder</string>
    <key>CFBundleInfoDictionaryVersion</key>
    <string>6.0</string>
    ...
  </dict>
</plist>
```

You can access the `CFBundleExecutable` associated string using:

```
<xmlFileGet>
  <attribute></attribute>
  <element>/plist/dict[1]/string[preceding-sibling::key[1]/text()="CFBundleExecutable"]</ ←
    element>
  <file>${installdir}/some.app/Contents/Info.plist</file>
  <variable>CFBundleExecutable</variable>
</xmlFileGet>
```

**Extract an attribute from an XML** If instead of working with XML elements you need to read an attribute, like the `<progressText>` in the below InstallBuider action:

```
<actionList>
  <runProgram progressText="Launch ${project.fullName}" >
    <program>${installdir}/bin/app.exe</program>
    <programArguments>& </programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</actionList>
```

You can use:

```
<xmlFileGet>
  <!-- Specify the XML element containing the attribute -->
  <element>/actionList/runProgram</element>
  <!-- Specify the attribute -->
  <attribute>progressText</attribute>
  <file>${build_project_directory}/actionList.xml</file>
  <variable>progressText</variable>
</xmlFileGet>
```

## Set value in XML file

Set the value of an element or attribute in an XML file The allowed properties in the `<xmlFileSet>` action are:

- `<attribute>`: If present, the action will refer to the attribute instead of the element
- `<element>`: XPath expression pointing to the selected element
- `<file>`: Path to XML file
- `<value>`: Value to store in element or attribute

## Examples:

**Modify an item in a XML list** To modify an entry in a XML address book:

```
<addressBook>
  <addressList>
    <address name="Jhon" email="jhon@myemail.com"/>
    <address name="joseph" email="joseph@myemail.com"/>
  </addressList>
</addressBook>
```

You can use:

```
<xmlFileSet>
  <attribute>email</attribute>
  <element>/addressBook/addressList/address[@name="Jhon"]</element>
  <file>${installdir}/config/address.xml</file>
  <value>jhonhome@otheremail.com</value>
</xmlFileSet>
```

## Comment subtree of XML file

Comment entire subtree of an XML file The allowed properties in the `<xmlFileCommentElement>` action are:

- `<element>`: XPath expression pointing to the selected element
- `<file>`: Path to XML file

### Examples:

**Comment an entry in an XML list** To remove (commenting it) one of the entries in the XML address book from our previous example:

```
<xmlFileCommentElement>
  <element>/addressBook/addressList/address[@name="joseph"]</element>
  <file>${installdir}/config/address.xml</file>
</xmlFileCommentElement>
```

## Read File Contents

Read the contents of a file and save it in a variable. The allowed properties in the `<readFile>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the text file
- `<endOfLineConversion>`: End Of Line Conversion
- `<name>`: Variable to which to save the file contents
- `<path>`: Path to the file you wish to read the contents from
- `<removeBOM>`: Whether or not to remove or not Byte Order Mark on Unicode files

### Examples:

**Read a packed .txt file and display it in the `<finalPageActionList>`**

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <actionGroup progressText="View readme file">
    <actionList>
      <readFile>
        <name>text</name>
        <path>${installdir}/readmes/README-1.txt</path>
      </readFile>
      <showText>
        <text>${text}</text>
        <title>README</title>
      </showText>
    </actionList>
  </actionGroup>
</finalPageActionList>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Write Text to File

Create or replace a file with a certain text content. The allowed properties in the `<writeFile>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the text file
- `<endOfLineConversion>`: End Of Line Conversion
- `<path>`: Path of the file to be created or replaced
- `<text>`: Text to write

### Examples:

#### Write a summary of the installation

```
<writeFile>
  <path>${installdir}/summary.txt</path>
  <!-- &#xA; is the XML escape sequence for
  the line break -->
  <text>Username: ${username}
Password: *****
Installation Type: ${project.installationType}
IP: ${ip}
Port: ${port}</text>
</writeFile>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Append Text to File

Append text to a file. If the file does not exist, it will be created. The allowed properties in the `<addTextToFile>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the text file
- `<endOfLineConversion>`: End Of Line Conversion
- `<file>`: Path to the file
- `<insertAt>`: Whether to insert the text at the beginning or at the end of the file
- `<text>`: Text to append

### Examples:

#### Append information to a file in an upgrade installation:

```
<addTextToFile>
  <file>${installdir}/ChangeLog</file>
  <text>* Fixed application failing to start from directory with spaces.
* Added new plugins
* Removed unnecessary libraries
* Reworked UI
</text>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="${project.installationType}" logic="equals" value="upgrade"/>
    <fileExists path="${installdir}/ChangeLog"/>
  </ruleList>
</addTextToFile>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Set INI File Property

Set property values of a INI file. If the file does not exists it will be created.

The allowed properties in the `<iniFileSet>` action are:

- `<file>`: Path to INI file
- `<key>`: Property Key
- `<section>`: INI section
- `<value>`: Property Value

### Examples:

#### Configure MySQL

```
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/mysql/my.cnf</file>
  <section>mysqld</section>
  <key>port</key>
  <value>${port}</value>
</iniFileSet>
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/mysql/my.cnf</file>
  <section>mysqld</section>
  <key>socket</key>
  <value>/tmp/mysql.sock</value>
</iniFileSet>
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/mysql/my.cnf</file>
  <section>client</section>
  <key>password</key>
  <value>somePassWord!</value>
</iniFileSet>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

## Get INI File Property

Extract property values out of a INI file. If the key does not exists, the variable will be set to empty.

The allowed properties in the `<iniFileGet>` action are:

- `<file>`: Path to INI file
- `<key>`: Property Key
- `<section>`: INI section
- `<variable>`: Variable name to save property to

### Examples:

#### Read PHP configuration

```
<iniFileGet>
  <file>${installdir}/php/etc/php.ini</file>
  <key>include_path</key>
  <section>PHP</section>
  <variable>php_include_path</variable>
</iniFileGet>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

---

## Write Property File Value

Writes out property values to a properties file, creating a new file if it does not exist. The allowed properties in the `<propertiesFileSet>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the text file
- `<endOfLineConversion>`: End Of Line Conversion
- `<file>`: Path to the property file
- `<key>`: Property key
- `<value>`: Value to set the key to.

### Examples:

#### Update the version of the installed application in an upgrade

```
<propertiesFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/installation.properties</file>
  <key>version</key>
  <value>${project.version}</value>
</propertiesFileSet>
```

## Get Property File Value

Extract property values out of a properties file. The allowed properties in the `<propertiesFileGet>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the text file
- `<endOfLineConversion>`: End Of Line Conversion
- `<file>`: Path to the property file
- `<key>`: Property key
- `<variable>`: Variable name to save property to

### Examples:

#### Check the version of an existing installation to upgrade and abort if greater than the current

```
<propertiesFileGet>
  <file>${installdir}/installation.properties</file>
  <key>version</key>
  <variable>installedVersion</variable>
</propertiesFileGet>
<throwError text="The installed application is up to date. Aborting">
  <ruleList>
    <compareVersions>
      <version1>${installedVersion}</version1>
      <logic>greater_or_equal</logic>
      <version2>${project.version}</version2>
    </compareVersions>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

## Read value from YAML file

Read value of element from a YAML file The allowed properties in the `<yamlFileGet>` action are:

- `<element>`: Path expression pointing to the selected element
- `<file>`: Path to YAML file
- `<variable>`: Variable where to start the result

### Examples:

**Retrieve path to database file from a YAML file** To retrieve path to production database in the following YAML file to `application_database_path` variable:

```
production:
  adapter: sqlite3
  database: db/production.sqlite3
  pool: 5
  timeout: 5000
```

You can use:

```
<yamlFileGet>
  <element>/production/database</element>
  <file>${installdir}/config/database.yml</file>
  <variable>application_database_path</variable>
</yamlFileGet>
```

## Set value in YAML file

Set the value of an element in a YAML file The allowed properties in the `<yamlFileSet>` action are:

- `<element>`: Path expression pointing to the selected element
- `<file>`: Path to YAML file
- `<value>`: Value to store in element

### Examples:

**Modify an item in a YAML file** To modify path to database in a YAML file:

```
production:
  adapter: sqlite3
  database: db/production.sqlite3
  pool: 5
  timeout: 5000
```

You can use:

```
<yamlFileSet>
  <element>/production/database</element>
  <file>${installdir}/config/database.yml</file>
  <value>db/otherpath.sqlite3</value>
</yamlFileSet>
```

## Substitute Text in File

Substitute a value in a file. The allowed properties in the `<substitute>` action are:

- `<encoding>`: Encoding of the files to substitute
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<type>`: Type of substitution, regular expression or exact
- `<substitutionList>`: List of patterns/values for a substitution

### Examples:

#### Replace well known placeholders

```
<substitute>
  <files>${installdir}/conf/*</files>
  <type>exact</type>
  <substitutionList>
    <substitution pattern="PATH_PLACEHOLDER" value="${installdir.unix}" />
    <substitution pattern="PORT_PLACEHOLDER" value="${server_port}" />
  </substitutionList>
</substitute>
```

As the text to match is known, the code uses the `exact` `<type>`, which makes the action work faster.

#### Replace an unknown port in httpd.conf

```
<substitute>
  <files>${installdir}/apache2/conf/httpd.conf</files>
  <type>regexp</type>
  <substitutionList>
    <substitution pattern="\s*Listen\s+[0-9]+" value="${apache_port}" />
  </substitutionList>
</substitute>
```

As the port is unknown, we use the `regexp` `<type>`.

## Add Directories to the Uninstaller

This action allows you to add new directories to the uninstaller, so they will be removed during the uninstallation process. The uninstaller just takes care of deleting those files unpacked in the installation step. If your installer generates new files at runtime or copies unpacked files to other locations you can use the `<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>` (and `<addFilesToUninstaller>`) to make the uninstaller also delete them in the uninstallation stage. The directories to add must exist at the time the action is executed or it will just skip.

The allowed properties in the `<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>` action are:

- `<addContents>`: Whether or not to add directory contents to the uninstaller
  - `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
  - `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
  - `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
-



**Examples:****Add directory without its contents.**

```
<createDirectory>
  <path>${installdir}/config</path>
</createDirectory>
<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
  <files>${installdir}/config</files>
</addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
```

As just the directory and not its contents were added, the uninstaller will just delete the directory if it is empty. This way your user can preserve the configuration files stored in that directory.

**Add directory and its contents to the uninstaller.**

```
<copyFile>
  <origin>${installdir}/data</origin>
  <destination>${installdir}/backup</destination>
</copyFile>

<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
  <files>${installdir}/data</files>
  <addContents>1</addContents>
  <matchHiddenFiles>1</matchHiddenFiles>
</addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
```

If new files are added to the `${installdir}/data` folder, the uninstaller won't delete them, just those files registered will be removed. This is how the uninstaller works for the unpacked files. Take into account that adding a directory with a big number of files and nested directories could take some time to finish as the action must locate all the files to add.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

**Add Files to Uninstaller**

This action allows you to add new files to the uninstaller, so they will be removed during the uninstallation process. This action behaves the same way the `<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>` does but is intended to files. If the action is used with directories, the uninstaller will delete them regardless of the changes in its contents.

The allowed properties in the `<addFilesToUninstaller>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

**Examples:****Adds the temporary files created at runtime**

```
<addFilesToUninstaller>
  <files>${installdir}/*~
  ${installdir}/*/*~
  ${installdir}/*/*/*~
  ${installdir}/*/*/*/*~</files>
</addFilesToUninstaller>
```

**Delete a directory regardless of its contents**

```
<addFilesToUninstaller>
  <files>${installdir}/someDirectory</files>
</addFilesToUninstaller>
```

The action will make the uninstaller delete the `${installdir}/someDirectory/` directory even if new files are added. In addition, as the action does not care about the contents of the directory, it is much more faster.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

### Remove Files from Uninstaller

This action allows you to remove files or directories from the uninstaller, so they will not be removed during the uninstallation process. This action is used when some files unpacked by the installer (so they are automatically marked to be uninstalled) must be preserved after uninstalling.

The allowed properties in the `<removeFilesFromUninstaller>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

#### Examples:

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <removeFilesFromUninstaller>
    <files>${installdir}/licenses</files>
  </removeFilesFromUninstaller>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Flow Control Actions

#### Foreach

Iterate over a set of values and execute a given set of actions The allowed properties in the `<foreach>` action are:

- `<values>`: Space-separated values to iterate over
- `<variables>`: Space-separated list of variables that will be assigned a value with each iteration
- `<actionList>`: List of actions

#### Examples:

##### Create a summary page with the installed components

```
<labelParameter>
  <name>summary</name>
  <title>Summary</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <preShowPageActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>text</name>
      <value>You are about to install ${project.fullName}.
Please review the below information:
```

```
Installation Directory: ${installdir}
```

```
Username: ${username}
```

```

License File: ${license_file}

Installed Componets:
</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <foreach>
        <variables>component</variables>
        <values>component1 component2 component3</values>
        <actionList>
            <!-- Just include selected Components -->
            <continue>
                <ruleList>
                    <isFalse>
                        <value>${component (${component})}.selected</value>
                    </isFalse>
                </ruleList>
            </continue>
            <setInstallerVariable>
                <name>text</name>
                <value>${text}

${component (${component})}.description</value>
            </setInstallerVariable>
        </actionList>
    </foreach>
</preShowPageActionList>
</labelParameter>

```

### Iterate to define variables from the registry using multiple variables

```

<foreach>
    <variables>name variable</variables>
    <values>Version oldVersion Location ondInstalldir Language installationLanguage</values>
    <actionList>
        <registryGet>
            <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
            <name>${name}</name>
            <variable>${variable}</variable>
        </registryGet>
    </actionList>
</foreach>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## While

Execute a group of actions as long as conditions are met The allowed properties in the `<while>` action are:

- `<conditionRuleEvaluationLogic>`: Condition rule evaluation logic
- `<actionList>`: List of actions
- `<conditionRuleList>`: List of conditions

### Examples:

#### Wait for the user to close a running application

```

<while>
    <actionList>
        <showWarning>

```

```

        <text>The application "myapp.exe" is still running, please close it and click ok</
        text>
    </showWarning>
</actionList>
<conditionRuleList>
    <processTest>
        <logic>is_running</logic>
        <name>My Application with long filename.exe</name>
    </processTest>
</conditionRuleList>
</while>

```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2

## If / Else

Conditionally execute a group of actions The allowed properties in the `<if>` action are:

- `<conditionRuleEvaluationLogic>`: Condition rule evaluation logic
- `<actionList>`: List of actions to execute if condition is true
- `<conditionRuleList>`: List of conditions
- `<elseActionList>`: List of actions to execute if condition is false

## Examples:

### Execute the installed application depending on the platform

```

<if>
    <conditionRuleEvaluationLogic>or</conditionRuleEvaluationLogic>
    <conditionRuleList>
        <platformTest type="linux"/>
        <platformTest type="osx"/>
    </conditionRuleList>
    <actionList>
        <runProgram>
            <program>${installdir}/scripts/launch.sh</program>
        </runProgram>
    </actionList>
    <elseActionList>
        <runProgram>
            <program>${installdir}/scripts/launch.bat</program>
        </runProgram>
    </elseActionList>
</if>

```

## Continue

Continue current loop. If the `<continue>` action it is executed outside a loop (a `<while>` or a `<foreach>`) it will throw an error.

## Examples:

### Backup a list of folders if they are not empty

```

<foreach>
  <variables>dir</variables>
  <values>${installdir}/data ${installdir}/conf ${installdir}/samples</values>
  <actionList>
    <continue>
      <ruleList>
        <fileTest path="${dir}" condition="is_empty"/>
      </ruleList>
    </continue>
    <copyFile>
      <origin>${dir}</origin>
      <destination>${installdir}/backup</destination>
    </copyFile>
  </actionList>
</foreach>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Break

Break current loop. If the `<continue>` action it is executed outside a loop (a `<while>` or a `<foreach>`) it will throw an error.

### Examples:

#### Wait until a service is started or a timeout is reached

```

<startWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <displayName>myservice</displayName>
  <serviceName>My Service</serviceName>
</startWindowsService>
<setInstallerVariable name="time" value="0"/>
<while>
  <actionList>
    <!-- Break the loop if port is freed -->
    <break>
    <ruleList>
      <windowsServiceTest service="myService" condition="is_running"/>
    </ruleList>
  </break>
  <!-- Wait a second to avoid using too much cpu -->
  <wait ms="1000"/>
  <mathExpression>
    <text>${time}+1000</text>
    <variable>time</variable>
  </mathExpression>
</actionList>
<conditionRuleList>
  <!-- Iterate until the timeout reach 30 sec (30000msec) -->
  <compareValues>
    <value1>${time}</value1>
    <logic>less_or_equal</logic>
    <value2>30000</value2>
  </compareValues>
</conditionRuleList>
</while>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## OSX-specific actions

### Change OSX file attributes

Change OSX attributes of a file or directory. Trying to set an attribute on a read only file will result in a failure. Make sure the file is writable before attempting to change any attribute other than, of course, readOnly The allowed properties in the `<changeOSXAttributes>` action are:

- `<creator>`: Creator to set to file or directory
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<hidden>`: Whether the file is visible or not
- `<readOnly>`: Whether the file is read only or writable
- `<type>`: Type to set to file or directory

The `<hidden>` and `<readOnly>` tags allow specifying a boolean value (*0* or *1*) or *unchanged*, to preserve the current value of the attribute. You can check the result of the action using the OS X command `/Developer/Tools/GetFileInfo`:

```
$> /Developer/Tools/GetFileInfo path/to/someFile
```

### Examples:

#### Hide a set of files and define their creator and type

```
<changeOSXAttributes>
  <creator>doug</creator>
  <files>${installdir}/conf/*</files>
  <type>TEXT</type>
  <hidden>1</hidden>
  <readOnly>unchanged</readOnly>
</changeOSXAttributes>
```

#### Change attributes of a readOnly file

```
<!-- The file must be first to be writable -->
<changeOSXAttributes>
  <files>${installdir}/some/file</files>
  <readOnly>0</readOnly>
</changeOSXAttributes>

<!-- Then we change the attributes -->
<changeOSXAttributes>
  <files>${installdir}/some/file</files>
  <creator>jhon</creator>
  <readOnly>unchanged</readOnly>
</changeOSXAttributes>

<!-- Then we revert the readOnly attribute -->
<changeOSXAttributes>
  <files>${installdir}/some/file</files>
  <readOnly>1</readOnly>
</changeOSXAttributes>
```

## Java Actions

### Autodetect Java

Autodetects an existing Java (tm) installation in the system and creates corresponding installer variables: `java_executable` `java_vendor` `java_version` `java_version_major` `java_version_full` `java_bitness`. If a valid java version was found, the variable `java_autodetected` will be set to 1 The allowed properties in the `<autodetectJava>` action are:

- `<promptUser>`: Prompt user to choose appropriate version
- `<selectionOrder>`: Order of the Java versions detected
- `<validVersionList>`: List of supported Java versions

You can find additional information in the Java section.

### Examples:

#### Detect a Java version between 1.4 and 1.5

```
<autodetectJava>
  <promptUser>0</promptUser>
  <validVersionList>
    <validVersion>
      <vendor>sun</vendor>
      <minVersion>1.4</minVersion>
      <maxVersion>1.5</maxVersion>
    </validVersion>
  </validVersionList>
</autodetectJava>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Create Launchers

Creates one or more Java launchers in specified location. The allowed properties in the `<createJavaLaunchers>` action are:

- `<destination>`: Path to the location where you want to create the launchers.
- `<javaLauncherList>`: List of launchers to create.

You can find additional information in the Java Launchers section. **Examples:**

#### Create a launcher for a bundled JAR file.

```
<createJavaLaunchers>
  <destination>${installdir}/launchers</destination>
  <javaLauncherList>
    <javaLauncher>
      <binaryName>myLauncher</binaryName>
      <jarFile>testapplication.jar</jarFile>
    </javaLauncher>
  </javaLauncherList>
</createJavaLaunchers>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Installer Actions

### Encode base64

Encode a string using base64. The allowed properties in the `<encodeBase64>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to process
- `<variable>`: Variable to save the final result to.

#### Examples:

##### Encode a message in Base64

```
<encodeBase64>
  <text>This is some secret text to encode</text>
  <variable>${secretEncodedText}</variable>
</encodeBase64>
```

### Decode base64

Decode a string using base64. The allowed properties in the `<decodeBase64>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to process
- `<variable>`: Variable to save the final result to.

#### Examples:

##### Decode a message encoded in Base64

```
<decodeBase64>
  <text>${secretEncodedText}</text>
  <variable>${result}</variable>
</decodeBase64>
```

### MD4

Generate a MD4 from a given text. The allowed properties in the `<md4>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to calculate the MD4 on.
- `<useNTLMFormat>`: Whether or not to create an NTLM compliant hash
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the MD4 to.

#### Examples:

##### Calculate the MD4 has of a password

```
<md4>
  <text>${password}</text>
  <variable>result</variable>
</md4>
```



## MD5

Generate a MD5 from a given text. The allowed properties in the `<md5>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to calculate the MD5 on.
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the MD5 to.

### Examples:

#### Check the integrity of a file

```
<readFile>
  <path>${installdir}/keys.txt</path>
  <name>data</name>
</readFile>
<md5>
  <text>${data}</text>
  <variable>result</variable>
</md5>
<throwError>
  <text>The file has been corrupted!</text>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText>
      <text>${result}</text>
      <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
      <value>3f62e6df4607c4be16f4946dc9fa16ca</value>
    </compareText>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## SHA-1

Generate a SHA-1 from a given text. The allowed properties in the `<sha1>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to calculate the SHA-1 on.
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the SHA-1 to.

### Examples:

#### Encode some secret data with a secret key to send using `<httpPost>`

```
<sha1>
  <text>${user}+thisIsAsecretKey+${password}</text>
  <variable>encodedText</variable>
</sha1>
<httpPost url="http://www.example.com/checkdata.php">
  <filename>${installdir}/activationUrl</filename>
  <queryParameterList>
    <queryParameter name="data" value="${encodedText}" />
  </queryParameterList>
</httpPost>
```

## SHA-256

Generate a SHA-256 from a given text. The allowed properties in the `<sha256>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to calculate the SHA-256 on.
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the SHA-256 to.

### Examples:

#### Encode some secret data with a secret key to send using `<httpPost>`

```
<sha256>
  <text>${user}+thisIsAsecretKey+${password}</text>
  <variable>encodedText</variable>
</sha256>
<httpPost url="http://www.example.com/checkdata.php">
  <filename>${installdir}/activationUrl</filename>
  <queryParameterList>
    <queryParameter name="data" value="${encodedText}" />
  </queryParameterList>
</httpPost>
```

## Math

Calculate math expression The allowed properties in the `<mathExpression>` action are:

- `<text>`:
- `<variable>`: Variable to save the final result to.

### Examples:

#### Calculate the square root of a number

```
<mathExpression>
  <text>sqrt (${number})</text>
  <variable>result</variable>
</mathExpression>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Add Choice Options

Add options to an existing choice parameter The allowed properties in the `<addChoiceOptions>` action are:

- `<name>`: Name of an existing choice parameter.
- `<optionList>`: List of options to give to a choice parameter

### Examples:

Add options for English and Spanish for an existing choice parameter language.

---

```
<addChoiceOptions>
  <name>language</name>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <value>en</value>
      <text>English</text>
    </option>
    <option>
      <value>es</value>
      <text>Spanish</text>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</addChoiceOptions>
```

Each `<option>` specifies an additional option to be added to a `<choiceParameter>`.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Add Choice Options from Text

Add options to an existing choice parameter from a given text. The allowed properties in the `<addChoiceOptionsFromText>` action are:

- `<name>`: Name of an existing choice parameter.
- `<text>`: Text with the options to give to a choice parameter

#### Examples:

**Add options parsing text format existing choice parameter language.**

```
<addChoiceOptionsFromText>
  <name>language</name>
  <text>
jp=Japanese
jp.description=Language spoken in Japan
de=German
de.description=Language spoken in Germany
it=Italian
it.description=Language spoken in Italy
pl=Polish
pl.description=Language spoken in Poland
ru=Russian
ru.description=Language spoken in Russia
  </text>
</addChoiceOptionsFromText>
```

The keys in the text will be used to set the `<value>` property of option. The key value (the righthand side) will be used to set the `<text>` property. Optionally, if a key has a `.description` suffix and matches an existing `<value>`, the key value will be used to set the `<description>` property.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Remove Choice Options

Clear choice values for a parameter. The allowed properties in the `<removeChoiceOptions>` action are:

- `<name>`: Name of an existing choice parameter.

- `<options>`: Options to remove

### Examples:

#### Remove options for English and Spanish from existing choice parameter `language`.

```
<removeChoiceOptions>
  <name>language</name>
  <options>es,en</options>
</removeChoiceOptions>
```

This action can take a single option to remove or multiple options, which are separated using comma.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

### Generate Random Value

Generate a random value. The allowed properties in the `<generateRandomValue>` action are:

- `<length>`: Character length for the generated value.
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the generated value.

### Examples:

#### Create an unique filename

```
<generateRandomValue>
  <length>5</length>
  <variable>suffix</variable>
</generateRandomValue>
<setInstallerVariable name="$${installdir}/.tmp${suffix}" />
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Action Group

Group a set of actions. The allowed properties in the `<actionGroup>` action are:

- `<actionList>`: List of actions to be grouped

### Examples:

#### Read a file and show its contents

```
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <readFile>
      <path>${installdir}/notes.txt</path>
      <name>text</name>
    </readFile>
    <showText>
      <title>InstallBuilder Notes</title>
      <width>500</width>
      <height>600</height>
      <text>${text}</text>
    </showText>
  </actionList>
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="$${viewNotes}" />
  </ruleList>
</actionGroup>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

## Log Message

Write a message to the installation log. Useful for debugging purposes. The allowed properties in the `<logMessage>` action are:

- `<enableTimeStamp>`: Whether to enable timestamp in the message or not.
- `<text>`: Message to include in log
- `<timeStampFormat>`: Format string for the optional timestamp. The string allows a number of field descriptors.

### Examples:

#### Add additional details to the log

```
<logMessage>
  <text>Starting MySQL...</text>
</logMessage>
<runProgram>
  <program>${installdir}/ctlscrip.sh</program>
  <programArguments>start mysql</programArguments>
</runProgram>
<logMessage>
  <text>MySQL started!</text>
</logMessage>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Component Selection

Select or deselect components for installation. The allowed properties in the `<componentSelection>` action are:

- `<deselect>`: Comma separated list of components you wish to deselect for installation.
- `<select>`: Comma separated list of components you wish to select for installation.

### Examples:

#### Configure the selected components based on the installation type

```
<componentSelection>
  <deselect>minimumDoc</deselect>
  <select>fullDocs,core,images</select>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="${installationMode}" logic="equals" value="full"/>
  </ruleList>
</componentSelection>
<componentSelection>
  <deselect>fullDocs,images</deselect>
  <select>minimumDoc,core</select>
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="${installationMode}" logic="equals" value="minimal"/>
  </ruleList>
</componentSelection>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Mark variables as global

Mark a list of variables as global. Global variables defined or modified inside custom actions preserve their values after the execution while regular variables are not visible outside. The allowed properties in the `<globalVariables>` action are:

- `<names>`: Variable names

### Examples:

#### Create a function that generates an unique name and stores its path in a variable

```
<project>
...
<functionDefinitionList>
  <actionDefinition>
    <name>getUniquePath</name>
    <actionList>
      <globalVariables names="{variable}" />
      <if>
        <conditionRuleList>
          <fileExists path="{root}" negate="1" />
        </conditionRuleList>
        <actionList>
          <setInstallerVariable name="{variable}" value="{root}" />
        </actionList>
        <elseActionList>
          <setInstallerVariable name="suffix" value="0" />
          <setInstallerVariable name="candidate" value="{root}.{suffix}" />
          <while>
            <actionList>
              <mathExpression>
                <text>{suffix}+1</text>
                <variable>time</variable>
              </mathExpression>
              <setInstallerVariable name="candidate" value="{root}.{suffix}" />
            </actionList>
            <conditionRuleList>
              <fileExists path="{root}" />
            </conditionRuleList>
          </while>
          <setInstallerVariable name="{variable}" value="{candidate}" />
        </elseActionList>
      </if>
    </actionList>
    <parameterList>
      <stringParameter name="variable" value="" default="" />
      <stringParameter name="root" value="" default="" />
    </parameterList>
  </actionDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
<initializationActionList>
  <getUniquePath root="{installdir}/.conf" variable="uniquepath" />
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>
```

You can find additional information in the Global Variables section.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Set Variable from Program

Set an installer variable to the output of a script. If the name of the variable matches a parameter name, the value of the parameter will be updated. The allowed properties in the `<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>` action are:

- `<exec>`: Path to the script to run
- `<execArgs>`: Arguments to pass to the script
- `<name>`: Name of the variable to set
- `<workingDirectory>`: Working directory. This is important for scripts that expect to be run from a specific location

### Examples:

#### Get the list of .txt files in a directory

```
<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
  <exec>find</exec>
  <execArgs>${directory} -name '*.txt'</execArgs>
  <name>files</name>
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="linux"/>
  </ruleList>
</setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Wait

Pause the installation for given time. The allowed properties in the `<wait>` action are:

- `<ms>`: Number of milliseconds to wait

### Examples:

#### Wait 30 seconds for a service to start

```
<startWindowsService>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
</startWindowsService>
<wait>
  <ms>30000</ms>
</wait>
<showWarning>
  <text>The service 'My Service' could not be started</text>
  <ruleList>
    <windowsServiceTest service="myService" condition="is_not_running"/>
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

---

## Exit Installer

Exit the installer/uninstaller. The allowed properties in the `<exit>` action are:

- `<exitCode>`: exit code returned by the installer/uninstaller

### Examples:

#### Exit the uninstallation if the installed application is still running

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <showWarning>
        <text>You must close the application ${project.fullName}
        before launching the uninstaller</text>
      </showWarning>
      <exit exitCode="1" />
    </actionList>
  </ruleList>
  <processTest name="${project.fullName}.exe" logic="is_running" />
</preUninstallationActionList>>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Modify a String

This action allows you to transform a given text using one of the allowed string manipulation methods. The allowed properties in the `<stringModify>` action are:

- `<logic>`: Transformation to perform.
- `<text>`: Text which will be transformed.
- `<variable>`: Variable name which will store the result.

### Examples:

#### Normalize a value provided by the user

```
<stringModify>
  <text>${identifier}</text>
  <logic>tolower</logic>
  <variable>identifier</variable>
</stringModify>
<stringModify>
  <text>${identifier}</text>
  <logic>trim</logic>
  <variable>identifier</variable>
</stringModify>
```

## Set Installer Variable

Set a installer variable. If the name of the variable matches a parameter name, the value of the parameter will be updated. The allowed properties in the `<setInstallerVariable>` action are:



- **<name>:** Variable name
- **<persist>:** Whether the variable will be available in the uninstaller as well.
- **<value>:** Value to set the variable to

**Examples:**

```
<setInstallerVariable>
  <name>dataDir</name>
  <value>${installdir.dos}/data</value>
</setInstallerVariable>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**Set Variable from Regular Expression**

Set a installer variable to the result of a regular expression. If the name of the variable matches a parameter name, the value of the parameter will be updated. The allowed properties in the `<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>` action are:

- **<name>:** Name of the variable to set
- **<pattern>:** Pattern to match
- **<substitution>:** Value to replace matched text with
- **<text>:** Text to match

**Examples:****Get the extension of a file**

```
<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
  <name>extension</name>
  <pattern>.*\.([^\.]*)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\1</substitution>
  <text>${filename}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**Specify encryption password**

Specifies and verifies password to use for copying files from installer The allowed properties in the `<setEncryptionPassword>` action are:

- **<password>:** Password to use; action will throw error if password specified does not match password from build time

**Examples:****Set MYAPP\_HOME environment variable to directory where application is installed.**

```
<setEncryptionPassword>
  <password>...</password>
</setEncryptionPassword>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Dialog Actions

### Show Password Question

This action allows you to ask the user to provide a password in a popup window. The allowed properties in the `<showPasswordQuestion>` action are:

- `<text>`: Question message that will be shown.
- `<title>`: Dialog window title.
- `<variable>`: Variable name where the password will be stored.

The password will not be echoed back to the user in text mode installations and will be substituted by \* characters in GUI mode installations.

#### Examples:

##### Ask for a password and use it to execute a program

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <showPasswordQuestion>
    <title>Password Required</title>
    <text>Please provide you MySQL password</text>
    <variable>pass</variable>
  </showPasswordQuestion>
  <runProgram>
    <program>mysqldump</program>
    <programArguments>--opt --user=${username} --password=${pass.password} ${ ←
      databaseName} > ${backupFolder}/dump.sql</programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</preUninstallationActionList>
```

### Show Info Dialog

Prompt an info dialog to the user. The allowed properties in the `<showInfo>` action are:

- `<text>`: Information message that will be shown
- `<title>`: Title of the dialog window

#### Examples:

##### Thanks message after installation

```
<showInfo>
  <text>Thank you for installing ${project.fullName}!</text>
  <title>Installation Finished!</title>
</showInfo>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Show Text Dialog

Display a read-only text dialog to the user. The allowed properties in the `<showText>` action are:

- `<height>`: Text window height

- `<htmlText>`: HTML text that will be shown in Qt mode. Note that regular text still needs to be provided in case the installer is run in another mode
- `<text>`: Text that will be shown.
- `<title>`: Dialog title.
- `<width>`: Text window width

### Examples:

#### Display an introduction text at the end of the installation

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <showText>
    <progressText>View Notes</progressText>
    <title>InstallBuilder Notes</title>
    <width>500</width>
    <height>600</height>
    <text>BitRock InstallBuilder is a development tool for
building crossplatform installers for desktop and server software.
  With InstallBuilder, you can quickly create professional installers
for Linux, Windows, Mac OS X, Solaris and other platforms from a single
project file and build environment. In addition to installers,
InstallBuilder will generate RPM and Debian packages and multiplatform
CDs/DVDs. Its new automatic update functionality makes it easy to deliver
updates directly to your users once they have your software installed.
...</text>
  </showText>
</finalPageActionList>
```

If you are using InstallBuilder for Qt, the `<showText>` will be also able to display HTML text when executing in qt mode. Please note you should still provide a plain text to display in other modes:

#### Display an HTML document

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <showText>
    <progressText>View Notes</progressText>
    <title>InstallBuilder Notes</title>
    <width>500</width>
    <height>600</height>
    <htmlText>&lt;h1&gt;This is HTML text&lt;/h1&gt;

&lt;p&gt;The supported platforms are:
&lt;ul&gt;
&lt;li&gt;&lt;b&gt;Linux&lt;/b&gt;&lt;/li&gt;
&lt;li&gt;&lt;b&gt;Windows&lt;/b&gt;&lt;/li&gt;
&lt;li&gt;&lt;b&gt;OS X&lt;/b&gt;&lt;/li&gt;
&lt;li&gt;&lt;b&gt;...&lt;/b&gt;&lt;/li&gt;
&lt;/ul&gt;
&lt;/p&gt;
    <text>Some long plain text...</text>
  </showText>
</finalPageActionList>
```

If the HTML text is read from a file at runtime, you don't have to escape it:

#### Display a packed HTML file

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <actionGroup progressText="View Notes">
```

```

<actionList>
  <readFile>
    <path>${installdir}/notes.html</path>
    <name>htmlText</name>
  </readFile>
  <showText>
    <title>InstallBuilder Notes</title>
    <width>500</width>
    <height>600</height>
    <htmlText>${htmlText}</htmlText>
    <text>Some long plain text...</text>
  </showText>
</actionList>
</actionGroup>
</finalPageActionList>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Show Question Dialog

Prompt a question to the user. The result is stored as *yes* or *no* in the given variable name. The allowed properties in the `<showQuestion>` action are:

- `<default>`: Default answer, it can be yes or no.
- `<text>`: Question message that will be shown.
- `<title>`: Title of the dialog window
- `<variable>`: Variable name where the result will be stored

The best way of checking the value is using the `<isFalse>` and `<isTrue>` rules.

The text in the `<showQuestion>` buttons can be localized modifying the language keys:

```

Installer.Button.Yes=Yes
Installer.Button.No=No

```

## Examples:

### Ask a Yes/No question

```

<showQuestion>
  <title>Delete Configuration</title>
  <text>Are you sure you want to delete the
configuration files?</text>
  <variable>answer</variable>
  <default>yes</default>
</showQuestion>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Show Progress Dialog

Launch a popup dialog window which displays an indeterminate progress bar to process a list of actions. In text mode frontend, it will display a character-based animation. The allowed properties in the `<showProgressDialog>` action are:

- `<height>`: Popup window height

- `<title>`: Title of the progress dialog window
- `<width>`: Popup window width
- `<actionList>`: Actions to Execute

**Examples:****Show dialog while database silent installation is in progress**

```
<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Please wait while database is installed</title>
  <actionList>
    <runProgram>
      <program>${installdir}/db/setup-database</program>
      <programArguments>--silent</programArguments>
      <workingDirectory>${installdir}/db</workingDirectory>
    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**Show Warning**

This action allows you to display a message in a warning dialog. The allowed properties in the `<showWarning>` action are:

- `<text>`: Warning message that will be shown.
- `<title>`: Title of the dialog window

**Examples:****Warn if the installation directory is not empty**

```
<showWarning>
  <text>The selected installation directory is not empty!</text>
  <title>Directory not empty</title>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest path="${installdir}" condition="is_not_empty"/>
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

**Show Choice Dialog**

Prompt a choice question dialog to the user. The allowed properties in the `<showChoiceQuestion>` action are:

- `<defaultValue>`: Default value
- `<text>`: Information message that will be shown
- `<title>`: Dialog title
- `<variable>`: Variable to store choice
- `<optionList>`: Predefined list of options that allows the user to select a value

The text in the `<showChoiceQuestion>` buttons can be localized modifying the language keys:

```
Installer.Button.OK=OK
Installer.Button.Cancel=Cancel
```

## Examples:

### Ask the user to select the uninstallation type

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
...
<showChoiceQuestion>
  <defaultValue>keep</defaultValue>
  <text>Do you want to keep your configuration files?</text>
  <variable>answer</variable>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <description>Does not delete the configuration files</description>
      <text>Keep configuration files</text>
      <value>keep</value>
    </option>
    <option>
      <description>Deletes the configuration files</description>
      <text>Delete configuration files</text>
      <value>delete</value>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</showChoiceQuestion>
<deleteFile path="{installdir}/configuration" >
  <ruleList>
    <compareText text="{answer}" logic="equals" value="delete"/>
  </ruleList>
</deleteFile>
...
</preUninstallationActionList>
```

If the user cancels the dialog, either clicking `Cancel` or closing the popup, the result variable will be set to empty. If the user clicks `Ok`, the result variable will be set to the selected choice item. This behavior can be used to validate the user input:

### Force the user to select a choice

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
...
<while>
  <actionList>
    <showChoiceQuestion>
      <defaultValue>keep</defaultValue>
      <text>Do you want to keep your configuration files?</text>
      <variable>answer</variable>
      <optionList>
        <option>
          <description>Does not delete the configuration files</description>
          <image></image>
          <text>Keep configuration files</text>
          <value>keep</value>
        </option>
        <option>
          <description>Deletes the configuration files</description>
          <image></image>
          <text>Delete configuration files</text>
          <value>delete</value>
        </option>
      </optionList>
    </showChoiceQuestion>
```

```

        <break>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="\${answer}" logic="does_not_equal" value="" />
        </ruleList>
    </break>
    <showWarning>
        <text>You must select an Option!</text>
    </showWarning>
</actionList>
</while>
...
</preUninstallationActionList>

```

## Throw Error

Generate an error inside the installer so the installer will exit. The only exception to this is when `abortOnError` equals zero or the action is inside a `validationActionList`, in which case it will prompt an error dialog to the user, but will not exit the installer. The allowed properties in the `<throwError>` action are:

- `<text>`: Error message

### Examples:

#### Abort if the installer is not launched as Administrator

```

<initializationActionList>
    <throwError>
        <text>The installer requires Admin privileges. Aborting...</text>
        <ruleList>
            <isFalse value="\${installer_is_root_install}" />
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</initializationActionList>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Show String Question

This action allows you to ask the user a question in a popup window. The allowed properties in the `<showStringQuestion>` action are:

- `<text>`: Question message that will be shown.
- `<title>`: Dialog window title.
- `<variable>`: Variable name where the answer will be stored.

### Examples:

#### Ask for an username

```

<showStringQuestion>
    <title>Username</title>
    <text>Please introduce your username:</text>
    <variable>username</variable>
</showStringQuestion>

```

## Write text to console

Write text to console The allowed properties in the `<consoleWrite>` action are:

- `<text>`: Text to write

### Examples:

#### Write error message to standard output

```
<consoleWrite>
  <text>Unable to install database in directory ${installdir}</text>
</consoleWrite>
```

## Registry Actions

### Registry Find Key

Retrieve the first registry hive and content matching a certain expression and store it as a list in an installer variable. If no match is found the variable will be created empty. The allowed properties in the `<registryFind>` action are:

- `<dataPattern>`: Pattern to match in the value
- `<findAll>`: Whether to look for the first occurrence or for all
- `<keyPattern>`: Pattern to match key name with
- `<namePattern>`: Pattern to match entry name with
- `<rootKey>`: Root key from which start the search
- `<searchDepth>`: Maximum depth of the search. 0 will look just in the Root Key
- `<variable>`: Variable name to store the results
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

### Examples:

#### List all applications from same vendor as current installer

```
<registryFind>
  <findAll>1</findAll>
  <keyPattern>*</keyPattern>
  <namePattern>DisplayName</namePattern>
  <rootKey>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Uninstall</ ↵
    rootKey>
  <searchDepth>1</searchDepth>
  <variable>installedApplications</variable>
</registryFind>
<setInstallerVariable>
  <name>text</name>
  <value></value>
</setInstallerVariable>
<foreach>
  <values>${installedApplications}</values>
  <variables>key name value</variables>
  <actionList>
    <registryGet>
      <key>${key}</key>
      <name>Publisher</name>
```



```

        <variable>publisher</variable>
    </registryGet>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <md5 text="{key}" variable="md5"/>
            <setInstallerVariable>
                <name>text</name>
                <value>${text}</value>
            </setInstallerVariable>
        </actionList>
    </ruleList>
    <compareText>
        <logic>equals</logic>
        <text>${publisher}</text>
        <value>${project.vendor}</value>
    </compareText>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
</actionList>
</foreach>

```

Action `<registryFind>` returns all keys from specified subtree matching specified pattern for key.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

### Registry Get Matching Key Value

Store the value of the first match of a registry key matching a certain expression in an installer variable. If the key or name does not exist, then the variable will be created empty. The name can contain a wildcard expression (using `*`) The allowed properties in the `<registryGetMatch>` action are:

- `<key>`: Registry key
- `<name>`: Entry name to read value from
- `<variable>`: Variable name to store registry value to
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

#### Examples:

##### Get the data of the first value in our application key

```

<registryGetMatch>
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
    <name>Loc*</name>
    <variable>location</variable>
</registryGetMatch>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

### Delete Registry Key

Delete a registry entry. If the entry to delete is only a registry key and it does not exist, the action will be ignored. Deleting a registry value (key + name combination) that does not exist will trigger a regular error. The allowed properties in the `<registryDelete>` action are:

- `<key>`: Registry key

- `<name>`: Entry name to delete
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

**Examples:****Delete application's build timestamp**

```
<registryDelete>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name>Timestamp</name>
</registryDelete>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2

**Set Registry Key Value**

Create a new registry key or modify the value of an existing registry key. The allowed properties in the `<registrySet>` action are:

- `<key>`: Registry key
- `<name>`: Entry name to set or modify value to
- `<type>`: Type of key to add
- `<value>`: Value to set to the registry key
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

**Examples:****Store application's build timestamp**

```
<registrySet>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name>Timestamp</name>
  <value>${installer_builder_timestamp}</value>
</registrySet>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

**Get Registry Key Name**

Store in *variable* the first registry key that matches the given pattern, or set the variable to empty otherwise. The search is case-sensitive for the whole key provided. The allowed properties in the `<registryGetKey>` action are:

- `<key>`: Registry key
- `<variable>`: Variable to store result
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

**Examples:****Get the first key referencing one of the applications under \${project.vendor}**

```
<registryGetKey>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\*</key>
  <variable>application</variable>
</registryGetKey>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Get Registry Key Value

Store the value of a registry key in an installer variable. If the key or name does not exist, then the variable will be created empty. The allowed properties in the `<registryGet>` action are:

- `<key>`: Registry key
- `<name>`: Entry name to read value from
- `<variable>`: Variable name to store registry value to
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

### Examples:

#### Find Google Chrome installation directory

```
<registryGet>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\App Paths\chrome.exe ←
  </key>
  <name>Path</name>
  <variable>chrome_home</variable>
</registryGet>
```

The `<registryGet>` actions reads App Paths for chrome.exe from Microsoft Windows registry. If chrome.exe is not installed or properly registered, chrome\_home variable will be set to empty string.

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Windows-specific actions

### Change Resource Information

Change resource information of a Windows executable The allowed properties in the `<changeExecutableResources>` action are:

- `<path>`: Path to the Windows executable to modify
- `<windowsResourceComments>`: Comments for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceCompanyName>`: Company Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceFileDescription>`: File Description for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceFileVersion>`: File version for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceInternalName>`: Internal Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceLegalCopyright>`: Legal Copyright for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceLegalTrademarks>`: Legal Trademarks for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceOriginalFilename>`: Original Filename for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceProductName>`: Product Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceProductVersion>`: Product Version for resources embedded in Windows executable

### Examples:

#### Change Java launcher's product name to evaluation if license not specified

```

<changeExecutableResources>
  <path>${installdir}/mylauncher.exe</path>
  <windowsResourceProductName>My Application (evaluation copy)</ ↵
    windowsResourceProductName>
  <ruleList>
    <stringTest>
      <text>${licenseinfo}</text>
      <type>empty</type>
    </stringTest>
  </ruleList>
</changeExecutableResources>

```

## Autodetect .NET Framework

Autodetects an existing .NET (tm) installation in the system and creates corresponding installer variables: dotnet\_version. If a valid .NET framework version was found, the variable dotnet\_autodetected, will be set to 1 The allowed properties in the <autodetectDotNetFramework> action are:

- <validDotNetVersionList>: List of supported .NET versions

### Examples:

#### Detect .NET version between 2.0 and 3.5

```

<autodetectDotNetFramework>
  <validDotNetVersionList>
    <validDotNetVersion>
      <maxVersion>3.5</maxVersion>
      <minVersion>2.0</minVersion>
    </validDotNetVersion>
  </validDotNetVersionList>
</autodetectDotNetFramework>

```

## Bundle and install .NET Framework if it is not present in the user machine

```

<project>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <!-- This component takes care of autodetecting an existing
    installation of .NET and unpack and install the bundled one
    if it is not found -->
    <component>
      <name>dotnet</name>
      <description>ServiceEx</description>
      <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
      <selected>1</selected>
      <show>0</show>
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <description>.NET installer</description>
          <destination>${installdir}</destination>
          <name>dotnet</name>
          <platforms>windows</platforms>
          <distributionFileList>
            <distributionFile>
              <origin>path/to/dotnetfx.exe</origin>
            </distributionFile>
          </distributionFileList>
        </ruleList>
      </folderList>
    </component>
  </componentList>

```

```

        <!-- The .NET installer will be unpacked on demand
        so we attach a rule that will be never passed to
        prevent the automatic unpack process -->
        <isTrue value="0"/>
    </ruleList>
</folder>
</folderList>
...
<readyToInstallActionList>
    <!-- check .NET >= 2.0 is installed -->
    <autodetectDotNetFramework>
        <validDotNetVersionList>
            <validDotNetVersion>
                <maxVersion></maxVersion>
                <minVersion>2.0</minVersion>
            </validDotNetVersion>
        </validDotNetVersionList>
    </autodetectDotNetFramework>
    <!-- install .NET if not found -->
    <actionGroup>
        <progressText>Installing .NET framework</progressText>
        <actionList>
            <unpackFile>
                <component>dotnet</component>
                <destination>${system_temp_directory}/dotnetfx.exe</destination>
                <folder>dotnet</folder>
                <origin>dotnetfx.exe</origin>
            </unpackFile>
            <runProgram>
                <program>${system_temp_directory}/dotnetfx.exe</program>
                <programArguments>/q:a "/c:install.exe /qb"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <!-- Delete the .NET installer -->
            <deleteFile>
                <path>${system_temp_directory}/dotnetfx.exe</path>
            </deleteFile>
        </actionList>
    </actionGroup>
    <ruleList>
        <isFalse>
            <value>${dotnet_autodetected}</value>
        </isFalse>
    </ruleList>
</readyToInstallActionList>
</component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

## Add Shared DLL

This action allows you to increment the reference count for a shared DLL. The allowed properties in the <addSharedDLL> action are:

- <path>: Path to the shared DLL

### Examples:

**Add shared.dll that is located in Common Files\MyApp folder.**

```
<addSharedDLL>
  <path>${windows_folder_program_files_common}/MyApp/shared.dll</path>
</addSharedDLL>
```

## Remove Shared DLL

This action allows you to decrement the reference count for a shared DLL. If it reaches zero, the file will be removed. The allowed properties in the `<removeSharedDLL>` action are:

- `<path>`: Path to the shared DLL

### Examples:

**Remove shared.dll that is located in Common Files\MyApp folder.**

```
<removeSharedDLL>
  <path>${windows_folder_program_files_common}/MyApp/shared.dll</path>
</removeSharedDLL>
```

## Change Windows file attributes

Change Windows attributes for a file or directory. The allowed properties in the `<changeWindowsAttributes>` action are:

- `<archive>`: Whether the file has or has not changed since the last backup.
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<hidden>`: Whether the file is visible or not
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<readOnly>`: Whether the file is read only or writable
- `<system>`: Whether the file is a System file or a regular one

### Examples:

**Set \*.ini files as read only and hidden**

```
<changeWindowsAttributes>
  <files>${installdir}/*.ini</files>
  <hidden>1</hidden>
  <readOnly>1</readOnly>
</changeWindowsAttributes>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Create Windows File Associations

This action allows you to create file associations for Windows, defining commands such as "open" for a given file extension. The allowed properties in the `<associateWindowsFileExtension>` action are:

- `<extensions>`: Space-separated list of extensions for which the given commands will be available.
- `<friendlyName>`: Friendly Name for the progID.
- `<icon>`: Path to the icon file that contains the icon to display.
- `<mimeType>`: MIME type associated to all the file extensions.
- `<progID>`: Programmatic Identifier to which the extensions are attached, contains the available commands to be invoked on each file type.
- `<scope>`: Choose between system or user scope when installing the association
- `<commandList>`: List of commands that can be invoked on each given file type.

### Examples:

```
<associateWindowsFileExtension>
  <extensions>.myextension</extensions>
  <progID>mycompany.package</progID>
  <icon>${installdir}\images\myicon.ico</icon>
  <mimeType>example/mycompany-package-myextension</mimeType>
  <commandList>
    <!-- Defining the 'Open' command -->
    <command>
      <verb>Open</verb>
      <runProgram>${installdir}\yourprogram.exe</runProgram>
      <runProgramArguments>"%1"</runProgramArguments>
    </command>
  </commandList>
</associateWindowsFileExtension>
```

You can get additional information in the Windows File Associations section.

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Remove Windows File Associations

This action allows you to remove file associations for Windows, unregistering commands such as "open" for a given file extension. The allowed properties in the `<removeWindowsFileAssociation>` action are:

- `<extensions>`: Space-separated list of extensions to remove.
- `<mimeType>`: MIME type to remove, associated to all the file extensions. It must be specified if you want to delete MIME associations added previously with `associateWindowsFileExtension` action.
- `<progID>`: Programmatic Identifier to remove, to which the extensions are attached.
- `<scope>`: Choose between system or user scope when installing the association

### Examples:

**Removing association of .myextension extension.**

```
<removeWindowsFileAssociation>
  <extensions>.myextension</extensions>
  <progID>mycompany.package</progID>
  <mimeType>example/mycompany-package-myextension</mimeType>
</removeWindowsFileAssociation>
```

You can get additional information in the Windows File Associations section.

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Wow64 File System Redirection

Modifies the Windows x64 File System Redirection behavior. It mainly redirects %Windir%System32 to %Windir%SysWOW64 for 32-bit processes running on Windows x64 systems. A similar effect is also applied to *Program Files*. The allowed properties in the <wow64FsRedirection> action are:

- <action>: Whether to enable or disable the File System Redirection

#### Examples:

##### Remove a file in %windir%\system32 disabling redirection temporarily

```
<wow64FsRedirection>
  <action>disable</action>
</wow64FsRedirection>
<deleteFile>
  <path>${windows_folder_system}/myApp.exe</path>
</deleteFile>
<wow64FsRedirection>
  <action>enable</action>
</wow64FsRedirection>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Get Windows file version info

Get file information. The allowed properties in the <getWindowsFileVersionInfo> action are:

- <path>: Path to the file
- <type>: Type of the file info.
- <variable>: Variable to save the file info to

The <type> tag accepts the following values:

- codepage: Returns the code page resource (language and country combination). e.g.: 0409
- flags: Returns a bit mask specifying the boolean attributes of the file. You can get additional information [here](#), in the dwFileFlags table. e.g.: debug, prerelease, patched, privatebuild, infoinferred or specialbuild
- os: The operating system for what the file was built. e.g.: nt\_windows32, dos
- productversion: ProductVersion from resources; e.g.: 6.1.7600.16385
- signature: signature for the fixed part of the version resource; e.g.: 0xfeef04bd
- structversion: version of the version resource format; e.g.: 1.0



- **type**:e.g.: file type; e.g.: application, dll, driver.display, font.trueType
- **version**:e.g.: Returns file version as from resources; e.g. 6.1.7600.16385

### Examples:

#### Retrieve version of Microsoft Word

```
<registryGet>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\App Paths\Winword.exe <-
    </key>
  <name></name>
  <variable>mword_binary</variable>
</registryGet>
<getWindowsFileVersionInfo>
  <path>${mword_binary}</path>
  <type>version</type>
  <variable>mword_version</variable>
</getWindowsFileVersionInfo>
```

Please note that this example will fail if Microsoft Office is not installed. Proper `<stringTest>` with `<type> not_empty` can be used to check `mword_binary`.

#### Clear ACL Permissions

Clear Windows ACL permissions of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<clearWindowsACL>` action are:

- **<excludeFiles>**: Patterns to exclude files
- **<files>**: File patterns to apply action to
- **<matchHiddenFiles>**: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

You can get additional information in the ACL section.

### Examples:

#### Remove all the ACL from a set of files

```
<clearWindowsACL>
  <files>${installdir}/doscs/*</files>
</clearWindowsACL>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

#### Change ACL Permissions

Change Windows ACL permissions of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<setWindowsACL>` action are:

- **<action>**: Whether to allow or deny permissions
- **<excludeFiles>**: Patterns to exclude files
- **<files>**: File patterns to apply action to
- **<matchHiddenFiles>**: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- **<permissions>**: Permissions for matching files or directories
- **<recurseContainers>**: Whether to apply recursively or not to container descendant

- `<recurseObjects>`: Whether to apply recursively or not to object descendant
- `<recurseOneLevelOnly>`: Just one level recursion if applicable
- `<self>`: Whether to apply or not to the specified file
- `<users>`: Comma separated list of users to modify access permissions for

You can get additional information in the ACL section.

#### Examples:

##### Remove write permissions to all users but Administrators

```
<clearWindowsACL>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
</clearWindowsACL>
<setWindowsACL>
  <action>allow</action>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
  <permissions>file_all_access</permissions>
  <users>S-1-5-32-544</users>
</setWindowsACL>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

#### Get ACL Permissions

Get Windows ACL permissions of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<getWindowsACL>` action are:

- `<deniedPermissions>`: Variable name to save denied permissions
- `<file>`: File to retrieve ACL
- `<grantedPermissions>`: Variable name to save granted permissions
- `<username>`: User to retrieve ACL

You can get additional information in the ACL section.

#### Examples:

```
<getWindowsACL>
  <deniedPermissions>denied</deniedPermissions>
  <file>${installdir}/admin</file>
  <grantedPermissions>granted</grantedPermissions>
  <username>S-1-1-0</username>
</getWindowsACL>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

#### Add Windows Scheduled Task

Create a new task or modify the value of an existing one. The allowed properties in the `<addScheduledTask>` action are:

- `<dayOfMonth>`: This parameter is used only for Task of MONTHLY type. It specifies the day of the month the task will be executed.
- `<disallowStartIfOnBatteries>`: Don't start the task if the system is running on batteries
- `<duration>`: (minutes) How long the Task is active.

- `<endDate>`: (year-month-day) Specify the date on which the task becomes inactive.
- `<executionTimeLimit>`: Maximum execution time in hours
- `<interval>`: (minutes) How often do you want to execute the given Task in specified duration time.
- `<name>`: Name of the Task
- `<password>`: The user password associated with the account specified in `runAs` parameter.
- `<period>`: This parameter is used only for Task of DAILY/WEEKLY type. It specifies how often (every PERIOD days for type DAILY / every PERIOD weeks for type WEEKLY) the task will be executed.
- `<program>`: Path to program or script to run.
- `<programArguments>`: Program arguments.
- `<runAs>`: Run the Task as the specified user.
- `<runAsAdmin>`: Run with highest privileges.
- `<runOnlyIfLoggedIn>`: Run task only if the user specified by `runAs` parameter is logged on.
- `<startDate>`: (year-month-day) Specify the date on which the task becomes activated.
- `<startTime>`: (hours:minutes) The time the Task becomes activated.
- `<type>`: Type of the Task.
- `<weekDays>`: Specifies days to run the task on (MON, TUE, ... SUN) or \* for all days of week
- `<workingDirectory>`: Working directory. This is important for scripts that expect to be run from a specific location. By default, it will be the directory where the script or program is located.

### Examples:

#### Schedule monthly task to be run on each 3rd day of month

```
<addScheduledTask>
  <dayOfMonth>3</dayOfMonth>
  <duration>120</duration>
  <endDate>2037-12-31</endDate>
  <interval></interval>
  <name>myappDailyMaintenance</name>
  <password></password>
  <period></period>
  <program>${installdir}/maintenance.exe</program>
  <programArguments>--monthly</programArguments>
  <runOnlyIfLoggedIn>0</runOnlyIfLoggedIn>
  <startDate>2011-01-01</startDate>
  <startTime>03:00</startTime>
  <type>MONTHLY</type>
</addScheduledTask>
```

#### Create a scheduled tasks if it does not already exist

```
<!-- Check the existence of the task -->
<setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
  <exec>schtasks</exec>
  <execArgs>/query /fo list</execArgs>
  <name>output</name>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
</setInstallerVariableFromScriptOutput>
<setInstallerVariable name="taskName" value="Check For Updates"/>
```

```

<setInstallerVariable name="taskExists" value="0"/>
<setInstallerVariable>
  <name>taskExists</name>
  <value>1</value>
  <ruleList>
    <regExMatch>
      <logic>matches</logic>
      <pattern>TaskName:\s* (${taskName}) \n</pattern>
      <text>${output}</text>
    </regExMatch>
  </ruleList>
</setInstallerVariable>
<addScheduledTask>
  <program>${installdir}/autoupdate.exe</program>
  <programArguments>--mode unattended --unattendedmodebehavior download</programArguments>
  <startTime>09:00</startTime>
  <type>DAILY</type>
  <ruleList>
    <isFalse value="${taskExists}" />
  </ruleList>
</addScheduledTask>

```

### Delete Windows Scheduled Task

Delete Windows Scheduled Task The allowed properties in the <deleteScheduledTask> action are:

- <name>: Name of the Task

#### Examples:

##### Delete previously scheduled task

```

<deleteScheduledTask>
  <name>myappDailyMaintenance</name>
</deleteScheduledTask>

```

### Shutdown

Shut down the machine (Windows only) The allowed properties in the <shutdown> action are:

- <delay>: Delay in seconds before shut down.

#### Examples:

##### Shutdown the machine at the end of the installation

```

<finalPageActionList>
  <shutdown progressText="Shutdown the machine" delay="10"/>
</finalPageActionList>

```

### Services Actions

#### Delete Mac OS X service

This action allows you to delete a Mac OS X service. Requires Mac OS X version 10.4 or later. The allowed properties in the <deleteOSXService> action are:

- `<scope>`: Scope of service
- `<serviceName>`: Identifier for the service name

**Examples:****Delete service com.bitrock.sample**

```
<deleteOSXService>
  <serviceName>com.bitrock.sample</serviceName>
  <scope>system</scope>
</deleteOSXService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

**Start Windows Service**

This action allows you to start a specified Windows service. The allowed properties in the `<startWindowsService>` action are:

- `<delay>`: Amount of milliseconds to wait for the service to start.
- `<displayName>`: Name displayed in the Windows service control panel
- `<serviceName>`: Internal service name

**Examples:****Start Sample Service service**

```
<startWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <delay>15000</delay>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
</startWindowsService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

**Create Windows Service**

This action allows you to create a new Windows service. The allowed properties in the `<createWindowsService>` action are:

- `<account>`: User account under which the service should run. It takes the form `domain\username`. If the account is a local account, it may be specified as `.username` or `username`. If this option is not specified, the service will run under the `LocalSystem` account.
  - `<dependencies>`: Comma separated list of services that the created service depends on
  - `<description>`: Program description
  - `<displayName>`: Name displayed in the Windows service control panel
  - `<password>`: Password for the user account if one is specified.
  - `<program>`: Path to program
  - `<programArguments>`: Arguments to pass to the program
-

- `<serviceName>`: Internal service name
- `<startType>`: Specify how the service should be started

**Examples:****Create Sample Service**

```
<createWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <program>${installdir}/sampleservice.exe</program>
  <programArguments>--service</programArguments>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
  <startType>auto</startType>
</createWindowsService>
```

Created service will start automatically and run `sampleservice.exe` from application directory. After a service is created, it should be started using `<startWindowsService>` - otherwise it will be started after computer restart.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

**Stop Windows Service**

This action allows you to stop a specified Windows service. The allowed properties in the `<stopWindowsService>` action are:

- `<delay>`: Amount of milliseconds to wait for the service to stop.
- `<displayName>`: Name displayed in the Windows service control panel
- `<serviceName>`: Internal service name

**Examples:****Stop Sample Service service**

```
<stopWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <delay>15000</delay>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
</stopWindowsService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

**Remove Unix Service**

This action allows you to remove a service in a Linux based system. Note that you will need to run the installer as root to be able to remove services. The allowed properties in the `<removeUnixService>` action are:

- `<name>`: Service Name

**Examples:****Remove Unix service with name based on project's shortName**

```
<removeUnixService>
  <name>${project.shortName}</name>
</removeUnixService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Add Unix Service

This action allows you to create a new service in a Linux based system. Note that you will need to run the installer as root to be able to create new services. The allowed properties in the `<addUnixService>` action are:

- `<description>`: Product description
- `<name>`: Service Name
- `<program>`: Path to the program

### Examples:

#### Create Unix service with name based on project's shortName

```
<addUnixService>
  <description>Sample service</description>
  <name>${project.shortName}</name>
  <program>${installdir}/sampleservice</program>
</addUnixService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Start Mac OS X service

This action allows you to start a Mac OS X service. Requires Mac OS X version 10.4 or later. The allowed properties in the `<startOSXService>` action are:

- `<serviceName>`: Identifier for the service name

### Examples:

#### Start service com.bitrock.sample

```
<startOSXService>
  <serviceName>com.bitrock.sample</serviceName>
</startOSXService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Get Unique Windows Service Name

This action allows you to get a unique Windows service name. The allowed properties in the `<getUniqueWindowsServiceName>` action are:

- `<displayName>`: Initial display name for the service
- `<selectedDisplayNameVariable>`: Variable to store the service display name
- `<selectedServiceNameVariable>`: Variable to store the Service name
- `<serviceName>`: Initial name for the service

### Examples:

#### Create Sample Service with unique service name

```
<getUniqueWindowsServiceName>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <selectedDisplayNameVariable>service_display_name</selectedDisplayNameVariable>
  <selectedServiceNameVariable>service_name</selectedServiceNameVariable>
  <separator>-</separator>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
</getUniqueWindowsServiceName>
<createWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <displayName>${service_display_name}</displayName>
  <program>${installdir}/sampleservice.exe</program>
  <programArguments>--service</programArguments>
  <serviceName>${service_name}</serviceName>
  <startType>auto</startType>
</createWindowsService>
```

This will allow multiple services of same base name to be created - for example if multiple applications base on same framework that runs as a service.

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Stop Mac OS X service

This action allows you to stop a Mac OS X service. Requires Mac OS X version 10.4 or later. The allowed properties in the <stopOSXService> action are:

- <serviceName>: Identifier for the service name

#### Examples:

##### Stop service com.bitrock.sample

```
<stopOSXService>
  <serviceName>com.bitrock.sample</serviceName>
</stopOSXService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2

### Delete Windows Service

This action allows you to remove a specified Windows service. The allowed properties in the <deleteWindowsService> action are:

- <displayName>: Name displayed in the Windows service control panel
- <serviceName>: Internal service name

#### Examples:

##### Delete Sample Service service

```
<deleteWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
</deleteWindowsService>
```

Before deletion, service is always stopped so <stopWindowsService> does not have to be called prior to <deleteWindowsService>.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2



## Create Mac OS X service

This action allows you to create a Mac OS X service. Requires Mac OS X version 10.4 or later. System Wide scope requires running the installer as an administrator. The allowed properties in the `<createOSXService>` action are:

- `<abandonProcessGroup>`: Don't kill the remaining processes with the same group ID.
- `<groupname>`: Groupname
- `<keepAlive>`: Keep process alive by launchctl
- `<program>`: Path to program
- `<programArguments>`: Arguments to pass to the program
- `<scope>`: Scope of service
- `<serviceName>`: Identifier for the service name
- `<username>`: Username

### Examples:

#### Create new service com.bitrock.sample

```
<createOSXService>
  <keepAlive>1</keepAlive>
  <program>${installdir}/Sample.app/Contents/MacOS/sample</program>
  <programArguments>--service</programArguments>
  <serviceName>com.bitrock.sample</serviceName>
  <scope>system</scope>
  <username>daemon</username>
  <groupname>wheel</groupname>
</createOSXService>
```

New service will start automatically and run `sample` from application bundle.

After a service is created, it should be started using `<startOSXService>` - otherwise it will be started after computer restart.

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Restart Windows Service

This action allows you to restart a specified Windows service. The allowed properties in the `<restartWindowsService>` action are:

- `<delay>`: Amount of milliseconds to wait for the service to start / stop.
- `<displayName>`: Name displayed in the Windows service control panel
- `<serviceName>`: Internal service name

### Examples:

#### Restart Sample Service service

```
<restartWindowsService>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <delay>15000</delay>
  <displayName>Sample Service</displayName>
  <serviceName>SampleService</serviceName>
</restartWindowsService>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Environment Actions

### Remove Directory from PATH

This action allows you to remove a directory from the system PATH. For Windows, you can choose to modify the system path or the user path using the <scope> property. The allowed properties in the <removeDirectoryFromPath> action are:

- <path>: Path to the directory
- <scope>: Select user path or system path.

#### Examples:

```
<removeDirectoryFromPath>
  <path>${installdir}/bin</path>
</removeDirectoryFromPath>
```

### Set Environment Variable

Set the value of a system environment variable. If it does not exist yet, a new one will be created. The variable will not exist once the installer has finished. The allowed properties in the <setEnvironmentVariable> action are:

- <name>: Variable name
- <value>: Variable value

#### Examples:

**Set MYAPP\_HOME environment variable to directory where application is installed.**

```
<setEnvironmentVariable>
  <name>MYAPP_HOME</name>
  <value>${installdir}</value>
</setEnvironmentVariable>
```

Action <setEnvironmentVariable> only sets environment variable for this and child processes. Actions <addEnvironmentVariable> and <deleteEnvironmentVariable> can be used to set a variable for current user or entire system.

### Add Directory to Path

Add a directory to the system path. This will modify the registry on windows and the appropriate shell initialization files on Unix systems. The allowed properties in the <addDirectoryToPath> action are:

- <insertAt>: Where to insert the new directory in the PATH (currently Unix only)
- <path>: Path to the directory
- <scope>: Select user path or system path.

#### Examples:

```
<addDirectoryToPath>
  <insertAt>end</insertAt>
  <path>${installdir}/bin</path>
</addDirectoryToPath>
```

## Add Environment Variable

Add a system environment variable. This will modify the registry on windows and the appropriate shell initialization files on Unix systems. The allowed properties in the `<addEnvironmentVariable>` action are:

- `<name>`: Environment variable name.
- `<scope>`: Scope.
- `<username>`: User to modify the environment for. If empty, the current user will be used
- `<value>`: Variable name

### Examples:

**Set MYAPP\_HOME environment variable to directory where application is installed.**

```
<addEnvironmentVariable>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <name>MYAPP_HOME</name>
  <scope>system</scope>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
  <value>${installdir}</value>
  <onErrorActionList>
    <addEnvironmentVariable>
      <name>MYAPP_HOME</name>
      <scope>user</scope>
      <value>${installdir}</value>
    </addEnvironmentVariable>
  </onErrorActionList>
</addEnvironmentVariable>
```

If setting variable as system `<scope>` fails, user scope is tried. If both fail, an error is thrown in the `<addEnvironmentVariable>` action for user `<scope>`.

Please note that this sets environment variable for operating system. It does not automatically set variable for current installer and its child processes. Action `<setEnvironmentVariable>` should be used in addition to `<addEnvironmentVariable>` to set the variable for current process, if it is needed.

## Add Fonts

This action allows you to install fonts in Windows systems. The allowed properties in the `<addFonts>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

### Examples:

**Install a set of bundled fonts**

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <addFonts>
    <files>${installdir}/fonts/*.ttf</files>
  </addFonts>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

## Remove Fonts

This action allows you to remove fonts on Windows. The action accepts only file names or patterns (as opposed to file paths, either relative or absolute), matching them inside the system fonts folder. The allowed properties in the `<removeFonts>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files

### Examples:

#### Remove the installed fonts on uninstallation

```
<removeFonts>
  <files>my_old_font.ttf;some_other_font.ttf;${project.shortName}*.ttf</files>
</removeFonts>
```

## Delete Environment Variable

Delete an environment variable from the system. The allowed properties in the `<deleteEnvironmentVariable>` action are:

- `<name>`: Environment variable name.
- `<scope>`: Scope.
- `<username>`: User to modify the environment for. If empty, the current user will be used

### Examples:

#### Unset MYAPP\_HOME from both user and system `<scope>`.

```
<deleteEnvironmentVariable>
  <name>MYAPP_HOME</name>
  <scope>system</scope>
</deleteEnvironmentVariable>
<deleteEnvironmentVariable>
  <name>MYAPP_HOME</name>
  <scope>user</scope>
</deleteEnvironmentVariable>
```

## Add Library to Path

Add a path in which the system will search for shared libraries on Linux. The allowed properties in the `<addLibraryToPath>` action are:

- `<path>`: Path to add to the system search for dynamic libraries on Linux

### Examples:

#### Add your packed libraries to the system path

```
<addLibraryToPath>
  <path>${installdir}/libs</path>
</addLibraryToPath>
```

### Get the current working directory

This action allows you to get the current working directory. The allowed properties in the `<pwd>` action are:

- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the current working directory.

#### Examples:

##### Get the current working directory

```
<pwd>
  <variable>current_working_directory</variable>
</pwd>
```

## File System Actions

### Copy File

Create a copy of a file. The destination file will be overwritten if it already exists. The allowed properties in the `<copyFile>` action are:

- `<destination>`: Path to where the file will be copied.
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<origin>`: Path to the original file.

#### Examples:

##### Copy a shortcut to the Desktop

```
<copyFile>
  <destination>~/Desktop</destination>
  <origin>${installdir}/Launch Application.desktop</origin>
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="unix"/>
  </ruleList>
</copyFile>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Unpack Directory

This action allows you to unpack a directory before files are unpacked during the installation phase. This can be helpful to extract a full directory to a temporary folder such as `${env(TEMP)}`. If you need to unpack single files, you may want to try using `<unpackFile>` action instead. The allowed properties in the `<unpackDirectory>` action are:

- `<component>`: Project component where the directory you want to extract is located.
  - `<destination>`: Path to the location where you want to extract the directory.
  - `<folder>`: Project folder name where the directory you want to extract is located.
  - `<origin>`: Directory name you want to extract.
-

**Examples:****Unpack initial data if it does not exist (i.e. for initial installation)**

```
<unpackDirectory>
  <component>initialdata</component>
  <destination>${installdir}/data</destination>
  <folder>data</folder>
  <origin>data</origin>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest>
      <condition>not_exists</condition>
      <path>${installdir}/data</path>
    </fileTest>
  </ruleList>
</unpackDirectory>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**Delete File**

Delete a file or directory (including its contents). The action does not throw an error if deleting a file or directory failed. The allowed properties in the <deleteFile> action are:

- <excludeFiles>: Patterns to exclude files
- <matchHiddenFiles>: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- <path>: Path to the file or directory to delete. It accepts patterns

**Examples:****Delete a directory if it is empty**

```
<deleteFile>
  <path>${installer_directory}</path>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest condition="is_empty" path="${installer_directory}"/>
  </ruleList>
</deleteFile>
<throwError>
  <text>Unable to delete installer directory</text>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest condition="exists" path="${installer_directory}"/>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**Create Backup File**

Create a backup of a file or directory. The backup will be named with a .bak extension if no destination is specified. If a backup file already exists, new backups will be named .bak1, .bak2 and so on. The allowed properties in the <createBackupFile> action are:

- <destination>: Path to the destination backup folder.
- <path>: Path to original file you wish to backup.

**Examples:****Backup the backup of a file before making changes**

```
<createBackupFile>
  <destination></destination>
  <path>${installdir}/apache2/conf/httpd.conf</path>
</createBackupFile>
```

The action does not specifies a `<destination>` so the destination filename will be autogenerated.

Additional Examples: Example 1

**Create Directory**

This action allows you to create a new directory. The allowed properties in the `<createDirectory>` action are:

- `<path>`: Path to the new directory

**Examples:****Create a directory**

```
<createDirectory>
  <path>/opt/src</path>
</createDirectory>
```

If the directory already exists the action won't have any effect so it is not needed to attach a rule checking the existence.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

**Unzip**

This action allows you to uncompress the whole content of a zip file to a given destination folder. The file to unzip must be already present on the file system, i.e., it doesn't support unzipping files that are shipped by the installer but which have not been already unpacked (you may want to use the `<unpackFile>` action in that case). The allowed properties in the `<unzip>` action are:

- `<destinationDirectory>`: Path to the folder where you want the file content to be extracted. The folder must exist and must be writable
- `<zipFile>`: ZIP file that will be uncompressed

**Examples:****Extract a compressed application bundle**

```
<unzip>
  <destinationDirectory>${installdir}/applications</destinationDirectory>
  <zipFile>${installdir}/myApplication.app.zip</zipFile>
</unzip>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

---

## Touch File

Update the access and modification times of a file or directory. If the file does not exist, it can be specified whether to create an empty file or not. It is equivalent to the *touch* Unix command. The allowed properties in the `<touchFile>` action are:

- `<createIfNotExists>`: Whether or not to create the file in case it does not exist
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<path>`: Path to the file/directory to be touched

### Examples:

#### Create a file to mark a component as installed

```
<touchFile>
  <createIfNotExists>1</createIfNotExists>
  <path>${installdir}/components/documentationComponent</path>
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${project.component(documentationComponent).selected}" />
  </ruleList>
</touchFile>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Get Symbolic Link target

Get the destination path referenced by the given symbolic link. Returns an empty value if the file doesn't exist or is not a symbolic link. The allowed properties in the `<getSymLinkTarget>` action are:

- `<link>`: Symbolic link path
- `<variable>`: Variable to store result

### Examples:

#### Read symbolic link libsample.so in application directory

```
<getSymLinkTarget>
  <link>${installdir}/libsample.so</link>
  <variable>lib_path</variable>
</getSymLinkTarget>
```

This will store target path in `lib_path` variable. Note that if the path is not absolute, it is relative to directory where `<link>` is located.

## Rename File

Change the name of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<renameFile>` action are:

- `<destination>`: New name of the file.
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<origin>`: Original name of the file.



**Examples:****Rename file as .bak, deleting previous file if it exists**

```
<deleteFile>
  <path>${installdir}/config.ini.bak</path>
</deleteFile>
<renameFile>
  <destination>${installdir}/config.ini.bak</destination>
  <origin>${installdir}/config.ini</origin>
</renameFile>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

**Create Symbolic Link**

Create a symbolic link to a file. It is the equivalent to the Unix *ln* command. The allowed properties in the `<createSymLink>` action are:

- `<linkName>`: Symbolic link name.
- `<target>`: Path to the file to which you want to create a symbolic link.

**Examples:****Create symbolic link libsample.so pointing to libsample.so.1 in application directory**

```
<createSymLink>
  <linkName>${installdir}/libsample.so</linkName>
  <target>libsample.so.1</target>
</createSymLink>
```

This will create a symbolic link in application's directory. Note that `<target>` is relative to directory where `<linkName>` will be created.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2

**Zip**

Pack one or more files to a zip file, relative to base directory. The allowed properties in the `<zip>` action are:

- `<baseDirectory>`: Directory that all files will be packed relatively to
- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<matchHiddenFiles>`: Whether or not to attempt to match Windows hidden files
- `<zipFile>`: ZIP file that will be created

**Examples:****Zip all the files in a directory excluding .DS\_Store directories**

```
<zip>
  <baseDirectory>${installdir}</baseDirectory>
  <files>${installdir}/backup</files>
  <excludeFiles>*/*.DS_Store</excludeFiles>
  <zipFile>${installdir}/backup.zip</zipFile>
</zip>
```

As the `<baseDirectory>` is set to `${installdir}`, the packed files will be relative to it. For example, the file `/home/bitrock/sample-1.0/backup/README.txt` will be stored in the zip file as `backup/README.txt`.

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Create Shortcuts

Creates one or more shortcuts in specified location. The allowed properties in the `<createShortcuts>` action are:

- `<destination>`: Path to the location where you want to create the shortcuts.
- `<shortcutList>`: List of shortcuts to create.

### Examples:

#### Create additional shortcuts that run as administrator if UAC is enabled

```
<createShortcuts>
  <destination>${windows_folder_common_programs}/${project.startMenuGroupName}</ ←
  destination>
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${windows_os_uac_enabled}"/>
  </ruleList>
  <shortcutList>
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Text that will appear on Tooltip</comment>
      <name>Run administrative panel</name>
      <runAsAdmin>1</runAsAdmin>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/admin.exe</windowsExec>
      <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
      <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
    </shortcut>
  </shortcutList>
</createShortcuts>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Unpack File

This action allows you to unpack a file before files are unpacked during the installation phase. This can be helpful to extract files to a temporary folder such as `${env(TEMP)}` if you need to run a pre-installation check script or program. If you need to unpack a directory, you may want to try using `<unpackDirectory>` action instead. The allowed properties in the `<unpackFile>` action are:

- `<component>`: Project component where the file you want to extract is located
- `<destination>`: Path to the location where you want to extract the file
- `<folder>`: Project folder name where the file you want to extract is located
- `<origin>`: File name you want to extract

### Examples:

#### Unpack initial configuration if it does not exist

```
<unpackFile>
  <component>initialdata</component>
  <destination>${installdir}/config.ini</destination>
  <folder>data</folder>
  <origin>config.ini</origin>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest>
      <condition>not_exists</condition>
      <path>${installdir}/config.ini</path>
    </fileTest>
  </ruleList>
</unpackFile>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Get File Or Directory Information

Gets Information About File Or Directory The allowed properties in the `<getFileInfo>` action are:

- `<followSymLinks>`: Whether or not to follow or not symbolic links
- `<path>`: Path
- `<type>`: Type of information to retrieve
- `<variable>`: Variable to store result in

### Examples:

#### Get size of database.db in installation directory

```
<getFileInfo>
  <path>${installdir}/database.db</path>
  <type>size</type>
  <variable>size</variable>
</getFileInfo>
```

This will store size of `database.db` file in installation directory to variable `size`.

## System Actions

### Kill Process

This action allows you to kill a running process that matches one or several conditions. Windows support only. The allowed properties in the `<kill>` action are:

- `<name>`: Name of the process, usually the executable filename.
- `<path>`: Path to the executable of the process.
- `<pid>`: ID of the process to be killed.

### Examples:

#### Kill a process by its name

```
<kill>
  <name>SampleBinary.exe</name>
</kill>
```

#### Kill a process by its path

```
<kill>
  <path>${filePath.dos}</path>
</kill>
```

#### Kill that the processes matching any of the provided criteria

```
<kill>
  <name>SampleBinary.exe</name>
  <path>${filePath.dos}</path>
  <pid>35025</pid>
</kill>
```

## Locate Binary

Based on command given, locates binary and creates command that needs to be run. The allowed properties in the `<locate>` action are:

- `<command>`: Command to locate
- `<variable>`: Variable to store the result in

### Examples:

#### Locate python binary and find Python's installation directory.

```
<locate>
  <command>python</command>
  <variable>python_bin</variable>
</locate>
<!-- get directory name for binary (i.e. /opt/ActivePython-2.5/bin) -->
<dirName>
  <variable>python_parentdir</variable>
  <path>${python_binary}</path>
</dirName>
<!-- get Python home (i.e. /opt/ActivePython-2.5) -->
<dirName>
  <variable>python_home</variable>
  <path>${python_parentdir}</path>
</dirName>
```

First `python` binary is located using `PATH` environment variable and registry on Windows, next binary name as well as parent directory name is stripped - so that `/opt/ActivePython-2.5/bin/python` is mapped to `/opt/ActivePython-2.5`.

## Directory Name

Returns a name comprised of all of the path components in name excluding the last element. If name is a relative file name and only contains one path element, then returns `"."`. If name refers to a root directory, then the root directory is returned. The allowed properties in the `<dirName>` action are:

- `<path>`: The path from which the base directory will be retrieved.
- `<variable>`: Variable that will store the directory path.

### Examples:

#### Retrieve parent directory for installation - i.e. /opt or C:\Program Files

```
<dirName>
  <variable>installation_parent</variable>
  <path>${installdir}</path>
</dirName>
```

## Create Timestamp

This action allows you to create a timestamp using a custom format, storing the result in an installer variable. The allowed properties in the `<createTimeStamp>` action are:

- `<format>`: Format string for the generated timestamp. The string allows a number of field descriptors.

- `<variable>`: Variable that will store the resulting timestamp.

The `<format>` tag should contain one or more following fields, which will be replaced using current date and time:

- `%a`: short name of the day of the week. e.g.: Thu
- `%A`: full name of the day of the week. e.g.: Thursday
- `%b`: short name of the month. e.g.: Apr
- `%B`: full name of the month. e.g.: April
- `%c`: localized representation of date and time of day. e.g.: Thu Apr 07 17:23:00 2011
- `%d`: number of the day of the month, as two decimal digits. e.g.: 07
- `%e`: number of the day of the month, as one or two decimal digits. e.g.: 7
- `%h`: same as `%b`
- `%H`: number giving the hour of the day in 24-hour clock format, as two decimal digits. e.g.: 17
- `%I`: number giving the hour of the day in 12-hour clock format, as two decimal digits. e.g.: 05
- `%k`: number giving the hour of the day in 24-hour clock format, as one or two decimal digits. e.g.: 17
- `%l`: number giving the hour of the day in 12-hour clock format, as one or two decimal digits. e.g.: 5
- `%m`: number of the month, as two decimal digits. e.g.: 04
- `%M`: number of the minute of the hour (00-59), as two decimal digits. e.g.: 23
- `%N`: number of the month, as one (preceded with a space) or two decimal digits. e.g.: 4
- `%p`: AM/PM indicator. e.g.: PM
- `%R`: same as `%H:%M`
- `%s`: count of seconds since the epoch, expressed as decimal integer. e.g.: 1302189780
- `%S`: number of the seconds in the minute (00-59), as two decimal digits. e.g.: 00
- `%T`: same as `%H:%M:%S`
- `%u`: weekday number (Monday = 1, Sunday = 7). e.g.: 4
- `%U`: week of the year (00-52), Sunday is the first day of the week. e.g.: 14
- `%V`: week of the year according to ISO-8601 rules. Week 1 is week containing January 4th. e.g. 14
- `%w`: weekday number (Sunday = 0, Saturday = 6). e.g.: 4
- `%W`: week of the year (00-52), Monday is the first day of the week. e.g.: 14
- `%Y`: year without century (00-99). e.g. 11
- `%Y`: year with century. e.g. 2011

#### Examples:

**Get current timestamp and store it in an INI file**

```
<createTimeStamp>
  <format>%Y%m%d%H%M%S</format>
  <variable>timestamp</variable>
</createTimeStamp>
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/version.ini</file>
  <key>timestamp</key>
  <section>Version</section>
  <value>${timestamp}</value>
</iniFileSet>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Find File

This action allows you to define a file name or pattern (eg. "\*.txt") to be searched inside a given directory and all its subdirectories. It will save in the specified installer variable the full path to the first file that matches the provided file name or pattern. The allowed properties in the `<findFile>` action are:

- `<baseDirectory>`: Path to the directory in which to search for the file. It will search inside the directory and all of its subdirectories.
- `<followSymLinks>`: Whether or not to follow or not symbolic links
- `<pattern>`: Pattern for the file that will be searched. The pattern can contain wildcards (\*,?).
- `<variable>`: Variable where the full path to the first matching file will be stored

## Examples:

### Locate a previous installation by finding a well known file

```
<findFile>
  <baseDirectory>/Applications</baseDirectory>
  <pattern>myapp-info.ini</pattern>
  <variable>installationInfo</variable>
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="osx"/>
  </ruleList>
</findFile>
```

## Get Free Disk Space

Calculate the free disk (KiloBytes) space and save the value in the given variable. Returns -1 if free space cannot be determined. The allowed properties in the `<getFreeDiskSpace>` action are:

- `<path>`: Path to the folder or disk
- `<units>`: Size units for the returned value.
- `<variable>`: Variable to which to save the result of the calculation

## Examples:

### Validate the disk space in the installation directory

```

<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <validationActionList>
    <getFreeDiskSpace path="{installdir}" units="KB" variable="diskSpace"/>
    <throwError>
      <text>You don't have enough disk space to install
        ${project.component(bigComponent).description}</text>
      <ruleList>
        <compareValues>
          <value1>${required_diskspace}</value1>
          <logic>greater</logic>
          <value2>${diskSpace}</value2>
        </compareValues>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>

```

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Get Total Disk Space

Get the total disk (KiloBytes) space and save the value in the given variable. Returns -1 if total space cannot be determined. The allowed properties in the <getTotalDiskSpace> action are:

- <path>: Path to the folder or disk
- <units>: Size units for the returned value.
- <variable>: Variable to which to save the result of the calculation

### Examples:

#### Check if installation disk has enough disk space

```

<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  <validationActionList>
    <getTotalDiskSpace path="{installdir}" units="MB" variable="diskSpace"/>
    <showWarning>
      <text>The application should be installed on disk larger than 1TB for optimal
        performance</text>
      <ruleList>
        <compareValues>
          <value1>1024</value1>
          <logic>greater</logic>
          <value2>${diskSpace}</value2>
        </compareValues>
      </ruleList>
    </showWarning>
  </validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>

```

### Get Available Port

Returns the number of the first available port in a range of port numbers specified by initialPort and finalPort (both inclusive). The allowed properties in the <getFreePort> action are:

- `<finalPort>`: The final port number on the range (inclusive).
- `<initialPort>`: The initial port number on the range (inclusive).
- `<variable>`: Variable that will store the free port number.

### Examples:

#### Find unused port and write it into web server's configuration file

```
<getFreePort>
  <finalPort>8999</finalPort>
  <initialPort>8080</initialPort>
  <variable>http_port</variable>
</getFreePort>
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/www.ini</file>
  <key>Port</key>
  <section>Listen</section>
  <value>${http_port}</value>
</iniFileSet>
```

#### Get Name Of Process Using Port

Gets Name Of Process Using Specified Port The allowed properties in the `<getProcessUsingPort>` action are:

- `<pidVariable>`: Variable to use for storing id of the process using the port
- `<port>`: TCP port to check
- `<variable>`: Variable to use for storing name of the process using the port

### Examples:

Validate port parameter and show appropriate message if it is in use, using the process name if it can be retrieved.

```
<validationActionList>
  <if>
    <actionList>
      <getProcessUsingPort>
        <port>${port}</port>
        <variable>port_process_name</variable>
      </getProcessUsingPort>
      <if>
        <actionList>
          <throwError>
            <text>Port ${port} is in use by ${port_process_name}</text>
          </throwError>
        </actionList>
        <conditionRuleList>
          <compareTextLength>
            <length>0</length>
            <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
            <text>${port_process_name}</text>
          </compareTextLength>
        </conditionRuleList>
        <elseActionList>
          <throwError>
            <text>Port ${port} is in use</text>
          </throwError>
        </elseActionList>
      </if>
    </actionList>
  </if>
```



```

        </if>
    </actionList>
    <conditionRuleList>
        <portTest>
            <condition>cannot_bind</condition>
            <port>${port}</port>
        </portTest>
    </conditionRuleList>
</if>
</validationActionList>

```

## Desktop Session Startup

Adds a program to be executed whenever a window manager session starts (only Linux KDE/Gnome supported). The allowed properties in the `<addUnixDesktopStartupItem>` action are:

- `<description>`: The description of the program.
- `<name>`: The name of this startup item.
- `<program>`: Path to the program to be executed when the session starts.
- `<programArguments>`: Arguments to be considered when running the program (only available for GNOME).
- `<username>`: User to add the Startup item for. If empty, the current user will be used

### Examples:

#### Create a startup item to run a myapp-client application

```

<addUnixDesktopStartupItem>
    <description>Client for managing myapp</description>
    <name>myapp-client</name>
    <program>${installdir}/myapp-client</program>
    <programArguments>--dock</programArguments>
</addUnixDesktopStartupItem>

```

To get a similar behavior on Windows you just need to write a shortcut to the desired application to launch in the folder `${windows_folder_startup}`:

```

<createShortcuts>
    <destination>${windows_folder_startup}</destination>
    <shortcutList>
        <shortcut>
            <comment>Client for managing myapp</comment>
            <name>Launch myapp client</name>
            <runAsAdmin>1</runAsAdmin>
            <windowsExec>${installdir}/myapp-client.exe</windowsExec>
            <windowsExecArgs>--dock</windowsExecArgs>
            <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
        </shortcut>
    </shortcutList>
</createShortcuts>

```

## Run Program

Run a program or script The allowed properties in the `<runProgram>` action are:

- `<program>`: Path to program or script to run
- `<programArguments>`: Program arguments
- `<runAs>`: Run the program or script as a specific user id. It will only take effect on Unix system and when running the installer as root
- `<stdin>`: Text to send to program's standard input.
- `<useMSDOSPath>`: Whether or not to use or not MSDOS program name path on Windows
- `<workingDirectory>`: Working directory. This is important for scripts that expect to be run from a specific location. By default, it will be the directory where the script or program is located

### Examples:

#### Launch the installed application in background

```
<runProgram>
  <program>${installdir}/bin/${project.shortName}.run</program>
  <programArguments>--showWelcome 1 & </programArguments>
  <workingDirectory>${installdir}/bin</workingDirectory>
</runProgram>
```

By default, programs executed are launched by their 8.3 names. InstallBuilder does that to avoid issues handling special characters like spaces. If you need your installer to be launched using the full name, for example to have an exact path to look when checking if the process is running, you can disable it setting `<useMSDOSPath>` to 0. This setting is ignored when executing commands in platforms other than Windows.

#### Use the long pathname when launching a program on Windows

```
<runProgram>
  <program>${installdir}/bin/myApp.exe</program>
  <useMSDOSPath>0</useMSDOSPath>
</runProgram>
```

In Unix platforms, when running the installer as root, it is also possible to specify the user that will be used to execute the command:

#### Use the long pathname when launching a program on Windows

```
<runProgram>
  <program>${installdir}/bin/mysql</program>
  <runAs>mysql</runAs>
</runProgram>
```

If the installer is executed as a regular user in GUI mode, and `gksu` (Gnome command) or `kdesu` (KDE command) are in the path, they will be used to graphically require a password to raise privileges. Please note that this won't work on OS X.

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2, Example 3

### Wait For Port

Pause the installation for a maximum timeout until a server process is listening in the specified port. The allowed properties in the `<waitForPort>` action are:

- `<port>`: TCP port to check
- `<state>`: Wait for port to be free or in use.
- `<timeout>`: Maximum amount of time to wait (in milliseconds)

**Examples:****Wait until a port is free**

```
<runProgram>
  <program>${installdir}/ctlscript.sh</program>
  <programArguments>stop mysql &lt;/programArguments>
</runProgram>
<waitForPort>
  <port>${mysql_port}</port>
  <state>free</state>
  <timeout>30</timeout>
</waitForPort>
<logMessage text="MySQL Stopped"/>
```

**Path manipulation**

Performs change on the path and returns it in variable The allowed properties in the `<pathManipulation>` action are:

- `<action>`: Action to perform on the path
- `<path>`: The path to manipulate
- `<variable>`: Variable that will store the new path.

**Examples:**

```
<pathManipulation>
  <action>absolutize</action>
  <path>${datadir}</path>
  <variable>datadir</variable>
</pathManipulation>
```

**User and Group Actions****Change File Permissions**

Change permissions of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<changePermissions>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<permissions>`: Permissions to set to file or directory

**Examples:****Set readonly permissions in a directory**

```
<changePermissions>
  <files>${installdir}/documentation</files>
  <permissions>555</permissions>
</changePermissions>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Get File Permissions

Get permissions of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<getPermissions>` action are:

- `<file>`: File or directory to retrieve permissions
- `<variable>`: Variable name to save permissions

### Examples:

#### Preserve permissions of a system file when installing as root

```
<getPermissions>
  <file>~${user}/.MacOSX/environment.plist</file>
  <variable>permissions</variable>
</getPermissions>
<runProgram>
  <program>defaults</program>
  <programArguments>write ~${user}/.MacOSX/environment foo -string bar</programArguments>
</runProgram>
<changePermissions>
  <files>~${user}/.MacOSX/environment.plist</files>
  <permissions>${permissions}</permissions>
</changePermissions>
```

## Add User

Add a user to the system. The allowed properties in the `<addUser>` action are:

- `<homedir>`: Path to the users homedir
- `<password>`: Password for the user account.
- `<username>`: Username to add to the system

### Examples:

#### Add mysql user

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <addUser>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
    <username>mysql</username>
  </addUser>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Delete User

Delete a user from the system. Equivalent to the Unix *userdel* command The allowed properties in the `<deleteUser>` action are:

- `<username>`: Username

### Examples:

#### Delete mysql user

```
<postUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteUser>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
    <username>mysql</username>
  </deleteUser>
</postUninstallationActionList>
```

## Add Group

Add a group to the system. Equal to the Unix *groupadd* command The allowed properties in the <addGroup> action are:

- <groupname>: Group to add to the system

### Examples:

#### Add mysql group

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <addGroup>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <groupname>mysql</groupname>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
  </addGroup>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1

## Delete Group

This action allows you to remove a group from the system. The allowed properties in the <deleteGroup> action are:

- <groupname>: Group name to delete.

### Examples:

#### Delete mysql group

```
<postUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteGroup>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <groupname>mysql</groupname>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
  </deleteGroup>
</postUninstallationActionList>
```

## Add Group To User

Add a supplementary group to a user. This way, the user is also member of that group. Make sure that the group already exists. If no username is given, then the current logged on user is selected. The allowed properties in the <addGroupToUser> action are:

- <groupname>: Groupname
- <username>: Username

**Examples:****Add mysql group to mysql user**

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <addGroupToUser>
    <groupname>mysql</groupname>
    <username>mysql</username>
  </addGroupToUser>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

**Delete Group from User**

Delete a supplementary group from a user. The allowed properties in the `<deleteGroupFromUser>` action are:

- `<groupname>`: Groupname
- `<username>`: Username

**Examples:****Remove user from myappusers group**

```
<postUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteGroupFromUser>
    <groupname>myappusers</groupname>
    <username>${system_username}</username>
  </deleteGroupFromUser>
</postUninstallationActionList>
```

**Change Owner And Group**

Change the owner and group of a file or directory The allowed properties in the `<changeOwnerAndGroup>` action are:

- `<excludeFiles>`: Patterns to exclude files
- `<files>`: File patterns to apply action to
- `<group>`: Group to set to file or directory
- `<owner>`: Owner to set to file or directory

**Examples:****Change user and group to PostgreSQL data folder**

```
<changeOwnerAndGroup>
  <files>${installdir}/postgresql/data</files>
  <group>postgres</group>
  <owner>postgres</owner>
</changeOwnerAndGroup>
```

## Add Rights to Account

Add rights to user or group on Windows The allowed properties in the `<addWindowsAccountRights>` action are:

- `<account>`: User or group name
- `<rights>`: Account rights, separated by spaces; Example value: `SeServiceLogonRight`. A complete list can be obtained from [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728\(v=VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728(v=VS.85).aspx)

### Examples:

#### Grant postgres account with SeServiceLogonRight if it does not have it already

```
<addWindowsAccountRights>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
  <account>${postgres_account}</account>
  <rights>SeServiceLogonRight</rights>
  <ruleList>
    <windowsAccountTest>
      <account>${postgres_account}</account>
      <rights>SeServiceLogonPrivilege</rights>
      <negate>1</negate>
    </windowsAccountTest>
  </ruleList>
</addWindowsAccountRights>
```

## Remove Rights from Account

Remove rights from user or group on Windows The allowed properties in the `<removeWindowsAccountRights>` action are:

- `<account>`: User or group name
- `<rights>`: Account rights, separated by spaces; Example value: `SeServiceLogonRight`. A complete list can be obtained from [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728\(v=VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728(v=VS.85).aspx)

### Examples:

#### Remove SeBatchLogonRight and SeInteractiveLogonRight rights from an account

```
<removeWindowsAccountRights>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
  <account>${account}</account>
  <rights>SeBatchLogonRight SeInteractiveLogonRight</rights>
</removeWindowsAccountRights>
```

## Chapter 9

# Rules

### 9.1 What is a Rule?

BitRock InstallBuilder allows you to control whether or not certain actions take place, pages are shown or files are installed. You just have to attach rules to the `<ruleList>` section of the desired element (an action, parameter, component, folder or shortcut).

Examples of rules include checking if ports are in use, if a file exists, if a process is running or comparing texts.

```
<ruleList>
  <windowsServiceTest service="myservice" condition="not_exists"/>
</ruleList>
```

```
<ruleList>
  <processTest>
    <logic>is_running</logic>
    <name>${project.shortName}.exe</name>
  </processTest>
</ruleList>
```

A complete list of supported rules can be found in the rules appendix.

All rules can be also negated using the `<negate>` tag. For example, the following rule will resolve to "true":

```
<ruleList>
  <isTrue value="1"/>
</ruleList>
```

While this will resolve to "false":

```
<ruleList>
  <isTrue value="1" negate="1" />
</ruleList>
```

This is very convenient when you want to execute an action in all supported platforms but one:

```
<!-- It will resolve to true in all platforms supported but Windows 7 -->
<ruleList>
  <platformTest type="windows-7" negate="1" />
</ruleList>
```



## 9.2 Rule List

The `<ruleList>` is the most common way of attaching rules. It is supported by actions, folders, parameters and shortcuts and is evaluated at runtime.

When the set of rules contained in the rule list is evaluated, depending on the result and the element it is attached to, the following will occur:

- **Action:** The action is executed, otherwise it is ignored.

```
<!-- The error is just thrown if the rule evaluates to
      true (it is running in Windows XP) -->
<throwError text="This installer is not supported in Windows XP">
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="windows-xp"/>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

- **Parameter:** The associated page is displayed, otherwise it is hidden.

```
<booleanParameter>
  <name>enableAdvanced</name>
  <description>Do you want to enable the advanced configuration?</description>
</booleanParameter>

<!-- The page will be displayed only if the user selected 'Yes'
      in the 'enableAdvanced' page -->
<parameterGroup>
  <name>configuration</name>
  <title>Configuration</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="username" description="Username"/>
    <passwordParameter name="password" description="Password"/>
  </parameterList>
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue value="{enableAdvanced}"/>
  </ruleList>
</parameterGroup>
```

- **Folder:** If true, files belonging to that folder (files, directories and shortcuts) are installed and the associated `<actionList>` is executed.

```
<folder>
  <name>fileswindowsx64</name>
  <platforms>windows</platforms>
  <destination>${installdir}</destination>
  <distributionFileList>
    <distributionDirectory origin="windows-x64/bin"/>
  </distributionFileList>
  <shortcutList>
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Uninstall</comment>
      <exec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}</exec>
      ...
    </shortcut>
  </shortcutList>
```

```

<actionList>
  <setWindowsACL>
    <action>allow</action>
    <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
    <permissions>generic_all</permissions>
    <users>S-1-1-0</users>
  </setWindowsACL>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
  <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
</ruleList>
</folder>

```

The rules will decide if the folder is unpacked at runtime but the installer will always bundle it (they are not considered when building the installer).

- **Shortcut:** If true, the shortcut will be created.

```

<folder>
  <name>files</name>
  ...
  <shortcutList>
    ...
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Uninstall</comment>
      <exec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}</exec>
      ...
      <ruleList>
        <!-- This can be configured through a boolean
              parameter page -->
        <isTrue value="${createShortcuts}"/>
      </ruleList>
    </shortcut>
    ...
  </shortcutList>
  ...
</folder>

```

In addition to the `<ruleList>` tag, the mentioned elements can also configure the logic used to evaluate the rules through the `<ruleEvaluationLogic>` setting. Its allowed values are:

- **and:** The set of rules will evaluate to true only if all of the rules are true. This is the default value if the `<ruleEvaluationLogic>` is not provided.

```

<!-- The backup will be just executed if the folder exists and
      is not empty -->
<createBackupFile>
  <path>${installdir}/data</path>
  <destination>${installdir}/backup</destination>
  <ruleEvaluationLogic>and</ruleEvaluationLogic>
  <ruleList>
    <fileTest path="${installdir}/data" condition="exists"/>
    <fileTest path="${installdir}/data" condition="is_not_empty"/>
  </ruleList>
</createBackupFile>

```

When sequentially executing the rules using `and` evaluation logic, if any of the rules is not true, the rest are skipped and the full set evaluates to false.

You can apply this, for example, when checking whether a directory exists. You can first check if the target exists, and if so, check if it is a directory:

```
<deleteFile path="some/directory" ruleEvaluationLogic="and">
  <ruleList>
    <fileExists path="some/directory"/>
    <!-- If the file does not exists, InstallBuilder will not check
    if it is a directory -->
    <fileTest path="some/directory" condition="is_directory"/>
  </ruleList>
</deleteFile>
```

- **or:** The set of rules will evaluate to true if any of the rules is true.

```
<!-- Just create the link if the platform is OS X or Linux -->
<createSymLink>
  <target>${installdir}/bin/checker</target>
  <linkName>/usr/bin</linkName>
  <ruleEvaluationLogic>or</ruleEvaluationLogic>
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="osx"/>
    <platformTest type="linux"/>
  </ruleList>
</createSymLink>
```

When sequentially executing the rules using **or** evaluation logic, if any of the rules is true, the rest are skipped and the full set evaluates to true.

## 9.3 Should Pack Rule List

The `<shouldPackRuleList>` is a special kind of `<ruleList>` only supported by components and folders.

It supports the same rules but instead of being executed at runtime, the rules are evaluated when building the installer. If they do not match, the element containing them won't be packed at all in the installer:

- **Component:** The component, including all the contained folders, shortcuts, pages and actions won't be included in the installer, as if the project were not defining them.
- **Folder:** The folder won't be packed.

```
<!-- The component will be packed only if the BUILD_TYPE environment
     variable defined at build-time is not set to 'demo' -->
<component>
  <name>files</name>
  <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
  <selected>1</selected>
  <show>1</show>
  ...
  <shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>and</shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>
  <shouldPackRuleList>
    <compareText>
      <text>${env(BUILD_TYPE)}</text>
      <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
      <value>demo</value>
    </compareText>
  </shouldPackRuleList>
</component>
```

You can find a more complex example in the Custom Build Targets section.

The evaluation logic of the rules in the `<shouldPackRuleList>` is configured through the `<shouldPackRuleEvaluationLogic>`, which behaves as the `<ruleEvaluationLogic>` setting explained in the previous section.

## 9.4 Rule Groups

A `<ruleGroup>` is a special type of rule that can contain other rules and therefore perform more complex tests. For example, if you want to execute an action only on Windows 64bit and only if it is neither XP nor Vista:

```
<runProgram program="myExec.exe" programArguments="--mode unattended">
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
    <ruleGroup ruleEvaluationLogic="or" negate="1">
      <ruleList>
        <platformTest type="windows-xp"/>
        <platformTest type="windows-vista"/>
      </ruleList>
    </ruleGroup>
  </ruleList>
</runProgram>
```

In the above example, you have created a new rule "Windows 64 bit that is neither XP nor Windows Vista". Please note the `<ruleGroup>` also accepts the `<ruleEvaluationLogic>` and `<negate>` tags.

Using it, you can perform any kind of logic test like if (A and !(B or ((C or !D) and !E)))

```
<ruleList>
  <isTrue value="{A}"/>
  <ruleGroup negate="1" ruleEvaluationLogic="or">
    <ruleList>
      <isTrue value="{B}"/>
      <ruleGroup>
        <ruleList>
          <isTrue value="{E}" negate="1"/>
          <ruleGroup ruleEvaluationLogic="or">
            <ruleList>
              <isTrue value="{C}"/>
              <isTrue value="{D}" negate="1"/>
            </ruleList>
          </ruleGroup>
        </ruleList>
      </ruleGroup>
    </ruleList>
  </ruleGroup>
</ruleList>
```

## 9.5 Creating Custom Rules

In addition to the built-in rules, InstallBuilder allows you to create new custom rules using a mix of base actions and rules. New rules are defined using the `<functionDefinitionList>`.

For example, let's suppose you to decide whether certain component is enabled or not based on the contents of a file on Unix platforms and a registry key on Windows. To solve this you could simply create a couple of `<actionGroup>`s for the different platforms with the appropriate actions, which will in turn define a variable:

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <setInstallerVariable name="component_foo_exists" value="0"/>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <foreach>
        <variables>key</variables>
        <values>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix} ←
          }\components HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project. ←
            windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}\installed_components</values>
```

```

        <actionList>
            <continue>
                <ruleList>
                    <registryTest>
                        <key>${key}</key>
                        <logic>exists</logic>
                        <name>foo</name>
                    </registryTest>
                </ruleList>
            </continue>
            <registryGet>
                <key>${key}</key>
                <name>foo</name>
                <variable>foo_text</variable>
            </registryGet>
            <setInstallerVariable name="component_foo_exists" value="1">
                <ruleList>
                    <compareText>
                        <logic>contains</logic>
                        <text>${foo_text}</text>
                        <value>installed=1</value>
                    </compareText>
                </ruleList>
            </setInstallerVariable>
        </actionList>
    </foreach>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
    <platformTest type="windows"/>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
<actionGroup>
    <actionList>
        <foreach>
            <variables>file</variables>
            <values>${installdir}/components.txt ~/.components</values>
            <actionList>
                <continue>
                    <ruleList>
                        <fileTest>
                            <condition>not_exists</condition>
                            <path>${file}</path>
                        </fileTest>
                    </ruleList>
                </continue>
                <setInstallerVariable name="component_foo_exists" value="1">
                    <ruleList>
                        <fileContentTest>
                            <path>${file}</path>
                            <logic>contains</logic>
                            <text>foo_component</text>
                        </fileContentTest>
                    </ruleList>
                </setInstallerVariable>
            </actionList>
        </foreach>
    </actionList>
    <ruleList>
        <platformTest type="unix"/>
    </ruleList>
</actionGroup>
<showInfo text="foo components is installed!">

```

```

        <ruleList>
            <isTrue value="{component_foo_exists}" />
        </ruleList>
    </showInfo>
</postInstallationActionList>

```

Although the above code works properly, it is messy, hard to read and to reuse. It would be a much better approach to move all that verbose code to a different place, to avoid distracting from the real point of the code, which is notifying the user a certain component was installed. Using custom rules, that can be rewritten into a new rule definition:

```

<functionDefinitionList>
    <ruleDefinition name="customComponentIsInstalled">
        <parameterList>
            <stringParameter name="name" default="" />
        </parameterList>
        <actionList>
            <setInstallerVariable name="component_exists" value="0"/>
            <actionGroup>
                <actionList>
                    <foreach>
                        <variables>key</variables>
                        <values>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project. ↵
                            windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}\components HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\ ↵
                            SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}\ ↵
                            installed_components</values>
                        <actionList>
                            <continue>
                                <ruleList>
                                    <registryTest>
                                        <key>${key}</key>
                                        <logic>exists</logic>
                                        <name>${name}</name>
                                    </registryTest>
                                </ruleList>
                            </continue>
                            <registryGet>
                                <key>${key}</key>
                                <name>${name}</name>
                                <variable>text</variable>
                            </registryGet>
                            <setInstallerVariable name="component_exists" value="1">
                                <ruleList>
                                    <compareText>
                                        <logic>contains</logic>
                                        <text>${text}</text>
                                        <value>installed=1</value>
                                    </compareText>
                                </ruleList>
                            </setInstallerVariable>
                        </actionList>
                    </foreach>
                </actionList>
            </ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <foreach>
                <variables>file</variables>
                <values>${installdir}/components.txt ~/.components</values>
                <actionList>

```

```

        <continue>
        <ruleList>
            <fileTest>
                <condition>not_exists</condition>
                <path>${file}</path>
            </fileTest>
        </ruleList>
    </continue>
    <setInstallerVariable name="component_exists" value="1">
        <ruleList>
            <fileContentTest>
                <path>${file}</path>
                <logic>contains</logic>
                <text>${name}_component</text>
            </fileContentTest>
        </ruleList>
    </setInstallerVariable>
</actionList>
</foreach>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
    <platformTest type="unix"/>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
    <isTrue value="${component_exists}"/>
</ruleList>
</ruleDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>

```

And its application:

```

<postInstallationActionList>
    <showInfo text="foo components is installed!">
        <ruleList>
            <customComponentIsInstalled name="foo"/>
        </ruleList>
    </showInfo>
    <showInfo text="bar components is installed!">
        <ruleList>
            <customComponentIsInstalled name="bar"/>
        </ruleList>
    </showInfo>
</postInstallationActionList>

```

The basics of how to define a new custom rule are as follow:

- **<name>**: The new custom rule will be available in other parts of the XML by its name. No other custom rule can be defined with the same <name>.
- **<actionList>**: This <actionList> defines the set of actions to wrap needed to obtain the results to be evaluated. In the simplest cases, you could omit this and simply use the ``<ruleList>`` of the custom rule. In these cases, you will be simply creating a named alias to a set of rules (a named <ruleGroup>). For example, if you want to create a rule that verifies if it is OS X or Windows, you could omit the <actionList> and create the above-mentioned named <ruleGroup>:

```

<project>
    ...
    <functionDefinitionList>
        <ruleDefinition>
            <name>isOsxOrWindows</name>

```

```

    <ruleEvaluationLogic>or</ruleEvaluationLogic>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows"/>
      <platformTest type="osx"/>
    </ruleList>
  </ruleDefinition>
</functionDefinitionList>
...
</project>

```

- **<parameterList>**: This `<parameterList>` defines the parameters of the new rule. They are used to interface with the inner actions in the `<ruleList>` and the inner `<<ruleList>>`. The new custom rule will also support all the common action properties such as `<negate>`.

## 9.6 Additional Rule Lists

In addition to the previously mentioned `<ruleList>` and `<shouldPackRuleList>`, there are flow-control actions, such as `<while>` and `<if>` that allow specifying a `<conditionRuleList>` that controls the condition of the flow-control construct. They will behave like the regular `<ruleList>` but its evaluation logic is controlled by the `<conditionRuleEvaluationLogic>` setting.

## 9.7 List of Available Rules

### Component Test

Perform check on a given component. The allowed properties in the `<componentTest>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<name>`: Name of the component

#### Examples:

##### Deselect a component if it depends on another one that was deselected

```

<componentSelection>
  <deselect>subComponentA1</deselect>
  <ruleList>
    <componentTest>
      <logic>not_selected</logic>
      <name>componentA</name>
    </componentTest>
  </ruleList>
</componentSelection>

```

Additional Examples: Example 1

### Windows Firewall Test

Check whether or not a firewall is set up and running. Only available on Windows platform The allowed properties in the `<firewallTest>` rule are:

- `<type>`: Type of test



**Examples:****Warn your users that a running firewall may interfere in the installation**

```
<showWarning>
  <text>An Antivirus Software is running. You could get errors during the installation ↵
    process. Please disable it before continuing.</text>
  <ruleList>
    <firewallTest type="enabled" />
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>
```

**Compare Text Length**

Compare the length of a text. The allowed properties in the `<compareTextLength>` rule are:

- `<length>`: Length to compare with
- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<text>`: Text to compare the length of

**Examples:****Check the length of a provided password**

```
<passwordParameter>
  <name>password</name>
  <description>Password</description>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="The password provided is too short.
      A minimum length of 8 characters is required">
      <ruleList>
        <compareTextLength>
          <text>${password}</text>
          <logic>less</logic>
          <length>8</length>
        </compareTextLength>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</passwordParameter>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

**String Test**

Check the string type The allowed properties in the `<stringTest>` rule are:

- `<text>`: Text
- `<type>`: Type of string

**Examples:****Check if a given username is alphanumeric only**

```
<throwError text="The username can only contain alphanumeric characters!">
  <ruleList>
    <stringTest>
      <text>${username}</text>
      <type>not_alphanumeric</type>
    </stringTest>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: Example 1, Example 2

## Windows Account Test

Check whether or not a specified account has proper rights The allowed properties in the <windowsAccountTest> rule are:

- <account>: User or group name to check; if account does not exist, rule always returns false
- <rights>: Account rights to test for, separated by spaces; Example value: SeServiceLogonRight. A complete list can be obtained from [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728\(v=VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa375728(v=VS.85).aspx)

### Examples:

#### Throw error if user cannot be used for running Windows services

```
<throwError>
  <text>Account ${service_account} cannot be used as a Windows service</text>
  <ruleList>
    <windowsAccountTest>
      <account>${service_account}</account>
      <rights>SeServiceLogonPrivilege</rights>
      <negate>1</negate>
    </windowsAccountTest>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

## Host Validation

Validates whether or not a given hostname or IP address meets the given condition The allowed properties in the <hostValidation> rule are:

- <condition>: A valid host is one that can be resolved to an IP address and a valid IP is one that is syntactically correct
- <host>: Hostname or IP address to be checked
- <type>: Type of host specification

### Examples:

#### Check if a provided IP is valid

```
<stringParameter>
  <name>machineIP</name>
  <description>Server IP</description>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="The provided IP is malformed" >
      <ruleList>
        <hostValidation>
          <host>${machineIP}</host>
```

```

        <type>ip</type>
        <condition>is_not_valid</condition>
    </hostValidation>
</ruleList>
</throwError>
</validationActionList>
</stringParameter>

```

## Regular Expression Match

Compare a text with a regular expression. The allowed properties in the `<regExMatch>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Whether or not the rule will apply if the regular expression matches.
- `<pattern>`: Regular expression
- `<text>`: Text

### Examples:

#### Get installation dir based on other path if it in form of (prefix)/common/...

```

<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <pattern>^(.*)/common/(.*)$</pattern>
    <substitution>$1</substitution>
    <text>${path_retrieved_from_registry.unix}</text>
    <ruleList>
        <regExMatch>
            <logic>matches</logic>
            <pattern>^(.*)/common/(.*)$</pattern>
            <text>${path_retrieved_from_registry.unix}</text>
        </regExMatch>
    </ruleList>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Compare Text

Compare a text with a value. The allowed properties in the `<compareText>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<nocase>`: Case insensitive comparison
- `<text>`: Text
- `<value>`: Value

### Examples:

#### Check if a given text contains a substring

```

<compareText>
    <logic>contains</logic>
    <text>${serverResponse}</text>
    <value>OK</value>
</compareText>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Port Test

Allows you to test whether a port is free in the local machine. The allowed properties in the `<portTest>` rule are:

- `<condition>`: Condition to test for
- `<port>`: A port number

### Examples:

#### Do not allow proceeding if specified port cannot be bound to

```
<stringParameter>
  <name>portNumber</name>
  <default>8080</default>
  <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
  <width>40</width>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError>
      <text>Port already taken</text>
      <ruleList>
        <portTest>
          <condition>cannot_bind</condition>
          <port>${portNumber}</port>
        </portTest>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</stringParameter>
```

## Single Instance Check

Check if there is another instance of the installer being executed. The allowed properties in the `<singleInstanceCheck>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Condition to check.

### Examples:

#### Check if any other instance of the installer is running

```
<throwError>
  <text>Another instance is running. This instance will abort</text>
  <ruleList>
    <singleInstanceCheck logic="is_running" />
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## File Is Locked

Check if file is locked. The allowed properties in the `<fileIsLocked>` rule are:

- `<path>`: File or directory path to check

### Examples:

#### Check if your application is running before trying to uninstall

```

<preUninstallationActionList>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <showWarning>
        <text>It seems the application is in use, please close
          it and relaunch the uninstaller.</text>
      </showWarning>
      <exit/>
    </actionList>
    <ruleList>
      <fileIsLocked>
        <path>${installdir}/bin/yourApp.exe</path>
      </fileIsLocked>
    </ruleList>
  </actionGroup>
</preUninstallationActionList>

```

### Program Test

Check whether or not a program can be found in the system path. The allowed properties in the <programTest> rule are:

- <condition>: Condition to test for
- <name>: Program name

### Examples:

**Check if package is installed using rpm or dpkg, depending if dpkg command is available**

```

<if>
  <actionList>
    <runProgram>
      <program>dpkg</program>
      <programArguments>-W ${native_packagename}</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
  <conditionRuleList>
    <programTest>
      <condition>is_in_path</condition>
      <name>dpkg</name>
    </programTest>
  </conditionRuleList>
  <elseActionList>
    <runProgram>
      <program>rpm</program>
      <programArguments>-q ${native_packagename}</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </elseActionList>
</if>
<showWarning>
  <text>Package ${native_packagename} not found</text>
  <ruleList>
    <compareValues>
      <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
      <value1>${program_exit_code}</value1>
      <value2>0</value2>
    </compareValues>
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>

```

## Platform Test

Compare the system platform with a given platform name. The allowed properties in the `<platformTest>` rule are:

- `<type>`: Type of platform to test for

### Examples:

#### Set executable permissions to your application on Unix

```
<changePermissions>
  <permissions>0755</permissions>
  <files>${installdir}/executables/*</files>
  <ruleList>
    <platformTest>
      <type>unix</type>
    </platformTest>
  </ruleList>
</changePermissions>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Is True

The rule returns true if *value* is one of 1, yes or true. Otherwise it evaluates to false. The allowed properties in the `<isTrue>` rule are:

- `<value>`: String to test if it is true

### Examples:

#### Create a shortcut if based on a parameter value

```
<createShortcuts>
  <destination>${windows_folder_startmenu}/${project.fullName}</destination>
  <shortcutList>
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Launches ${project.fullName}</comment>
      <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
      <windowsIcon>%SystemRoot%\system32\cmd.exe</windowsIcon>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/script/wrapped-shell.bat</windowsExec>
    </shortcut>
  </shortcutList>
  <ruleList>
    <isTrue>
      <value>${createShortcuts}</value>
    </isTrue>
  </ruleList>
</createShortcuts>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Compare Values

Compare two values with each other. The allowed properties in the `<compareValues>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Comparison type

- <value1>: First comparison operand
- <value2>: Second comparison operand

### Examples:

#### Check if a given port is in the valid range

```
<stringParameter>
  <name>port</name>
  <description>Port:</description>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="The provided port is out of range (1 to 65535)">
      <ruleEvaluationLogic>and</ruleEvaluationLogic>
      <ruleList>
        <compareValues value1="{port}" logic="less" value2="1"/>
        <compareValues value1="{port}" logic="greater" value2="65535"/>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</stringParameter>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### File Test

Perform test on a given directory or file. The allowed properties in the <fileTest> rule are:

- <condition>: Specifies the requirement to test over the given file
- <path>: File or directory path for the test

### Examples:

#### Check if a directory is empty before trying to delete

```
<postUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteFile path="{installdir}">
    <ruleList>
      <fileTest>
        <path>{installdir}</path>
        <condition>is_empty</condition>
      </fileTest>
    </ruleList>
  </deleteFile>
</postUninstallationActionList>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### File Content Test

Check whether a file contains or does not contain a text. The allowed properties in the <fileContentTest> rule are:

- <encoding>: Encoding of the text file
- <logic>: Test type
- <path>: Path to file that contains text for comparison
- <text>: Text to compare with

**Examples:****Add some text to a file if it does not already contain it**

```
<addTextToFile>
  <file>${installdir}/report.txt</file>
  <text>${summaryText}</text>
  <ruleList>
    <fileContentTest>
      <path>${installdir}/report.txt</path>
      <logic>does_not_contain</logic>
      <text>${summaryText}</text>
    </fileContentTest>
  </ruleList>
</addTextToFile>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

**Rule Group**

Group a set of rules. The allowed properties in the `<ruleGroup>` rule are:

- `<ruleEvaluationLogic>`: Rule evaluation logic
- `<ruleList>`: List of rules to be grouped

**Examples:****Show warning if operating system is Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2008, but not Windows Server 2008 R2.**

```
<showWarning>
  <text>Windows Server 2008 (not R2) and Windows Server 2003 is not supported</text>
  <ruleEvaluationLogic>or</ruleEvaluationLogic>
  <ruleList>
    <ruleGroup>
      <ruleEvaluationLogic>and</ruleEvaluationLogic>
      <ruleList>
        <platformTest>
          <negate>1</negate>
          <type>windows-2008-r2</type>
        </platformTest>
        <platformTest>
          <type>windows-2008</type>
        </platformTest>
      </ruleList>
    </ruleGroup>
    <platformTest>
      <type>windows-2003</type>
    </platformTest>
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

**Compare Versions**

Compare two versions. The allowed properties in the `<compareVersions>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Test type



- `<version1>`: First comparison operand
- `<version2>`: Second comparison operand

**Examples:****Check if the current application is newer than the installed in the machine**

```
<registryGet>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
  <name>Version</name>
  <variable>oldVersion</variable>
</registryGet>

<throwError text="The installed version is the same or newer than
the current. Aborting">
  <ruleList>
    <compareVersions>
      <version1>${oldVersion}</version1>
      <logic>greater_or_equal</logic>
      <version2>${project.version}</version2>
    </compareVersions>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

**User Test**

Check if a particular user exists in the system or has a valid password. The allowed properties in the `<userTest>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Specifies the requirement to test over the given username.
- `<password>`: If test logic is set to verify the password, the password to be checked. Currently only available on the Windows platform
- `<username>`: User name that will be checked. In the case of using Windows domains, it needs to be specified in the form `username@DOMAIN`

**Examples:****Check if a given user and password pair is valid**

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>userandpass</name>
  <explanation>Please enter the username and password of your account</explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter>
      <name>username</name>
      <description>Username</description>
    </stringParameter>
    <passwordParameter>
      <ask>yes</ask>
      <name>password</name>
      <description>Password</description>
    </passwordParameter>
  </parameterList>
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError text="The provided credentials are not valid">
      <ruleList>
        <userTest>
```

```

        <logic>is_windows_admin_account</logic>
        <username>${username}</username>
        <password>${password}</password>
    </userTest>
</ruleList>
</throwError>
</validationActionList>
</parameterGroup>

```

### Is False

The rule returns false if *value* is one of 1, yes or true. Otherwise it evaluates to true. The allowed properties in the `<isFalse>` rule are:

- `<value>`: String to test if it is false

### Examples:

#### Require to install Java if it is not installed

```

<autodetectJava>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <promptUser>0</promptUser>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
</autodetectJava>
<throwError text="Java is required but was not found.
Please install it and relaunch this installer">
    <ruleList>
        <isFalse>
            <value>${java_autodetected}</value>
        </isFalse>
    </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

### Mac OS X Service Test

Check whether or not a service exists and whether or not it is running. Checking if service exists requires Mac OS X version 10.4 or later. Checking if service is running requires Mac OS X 10.5 or later. The allowed properties in the `<osxServiceTest>` rule are:

- `<condition>`: Condition to test for
- `<service>`: Name of service

### Examples:

#### Stop OSX service yourservice if it is currently running

```

<stopOSXService>
    <serviceName>yourservice</serviceName>
    <ruleList>
        <osxServiceTest>
            <condition>is_running</condition>
            <service>yourservice</service>
        </osxServiceTest>
    </ruleList>
</stopOSXService>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#)

## Windows Antivirus Test

Check whether or not antivirus is set up and running. Only available on Windows platform The allowed properties in the `<antivirusTest>` rule are:

- `<product>`: Product to test, or any product
- `<type>`: Type of test

### Examples:

#### Warn your users that a running antivirus may interfere in the installation

```
<showWarning>
  <text>An Antivirus Software is running. You could get errors during the installation ↵
    process. Please disable it before continuing.</text>
  <ruleList>
    <antivirusTest type="enabled" />
  </ruleList>
</showWarning>
```

## Resource Limit Test

Check if resource limit matches requirements. The allowed properties in the `<resourceLimitTest>` rule are:

- `<limitType>`: Limit type
- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<type>`: Resource Type To Check
- `<value>`: Value

### Examples:

#### Throw an error if less than 1024 open files can be opened at once

```
<throwError>
  <text>Port already taken</text>
  <ruleList>
    <resourceLimitTest>
      <type>open_files</type>
      <logic>less</logic>
      <value>1024</value>
    </resourceLimitTest>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

## File Exists

Check for the existence of a given directory or file. The allowed properties in the `<fileExists>` rule are:

- `<path>`: File or directory path for the test, accepts wildcards.

### Examples:

#### Check if the selected directory already contains an installation

```
<throwError text="It seems the selected installation directory
  contains an old installation. Please, choose another one.">
  <ruleList>
    <fileExists>
      <path>${installdir}/uninstall</path>
    </fileExists>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Check Free Disk Space

Check whether or not enough free disk space is available. The allowed properties in the `<checkFreeDiskSpace>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<path>`: Path to the folder or disk
- `<size>`: Size of free disk space to check for
- `<units>`: Size units for the checked value.

### Examples:

#### Check if the selected installation directory has enough disk space

```
<directoryParameter>
  <name>installdir</name>
  ...
  <validationActionList>
    <throwError>
      <text>You don't have enough disk space to install the application,
        please select another installation directory</text>
      <ruleList>
        <checkFreeDiskSpace>
          <logic>less</logic>
          <path>${installdir}</path>
          <size>${required_diskspace}</size>
        </checkFreeDiskSpace>
      </ruleList>
    </throwError>
  </validationActionList>
</directoryParameter>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Process Test

Check if a particular process exists in the system. Currently only supported in Windows, Linux, OS X. The allowed properties in the `<processTest>` rule are:

- `<logic>`: Check whether or not the process is running.
- `<name>`: Exact process name that will be checked.

### Examples:

#### Wait for myapp.exe program to exit before continuing

```

<showProgressDialog>
  <title>Waiting for myapp.exe to exit</title>
  <actionList>
    <while>
      <actionList>
        <wait>
          <ms>1000</ms>
        </wait>
      </actionList>
      <conditionRuleList>
        <processTest>
          <logic>is_running</logic>
          <name>myapp.exe</name>
        </processTest>
      </conditionRuleList>
    </while>
  </actionList>
</showProgressDialog>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Registry Test

Perform tests over a registry entry. You can provide either a key or a key and a name. The allowed properties in the `<registryTest>` rule are:

- `<key>`: Registry key
- `<logic>`: Comparison type
- `<name>`: Entry name to test for existence
- `<type>`: Type of the key to check with the `is_type` or `is_not_type` logic
- `<wowMode>`: Determines whether we want to access a 32-bit or 64-bit view of the Registry

## Examples:

### Read previous installation location from registry if it was already installed

```

<registryGet>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
  <name>Location</name>
  <variable>installdir</variable>
  <ruleList>
    <registryTest>
      <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
      <logic>exists</logic>
      <name>Location</name>
    </registryTest>
  </ruleList>
</registryGet>

```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#), [Example 3](#)

## Windows Service Test

Check whether a service exists and whether is running The allowed properties in the `<windowsServiceTest>` rule are:

- `<condition>`: Condition to test for
- `<service>`: Name of service

### Examples:

#### Stop your service if it is running

```
<stopWindowsService>
  <serviceName>yourservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>Your Service</displayName>
  <delay>15000</delay>
  <ruleList>
    <windowsServiceTest>
      <condition>is_running</condition>
      <service>yourservice</service>
    </windowsServiceTest>
  </ruleList>
</stopWindowsService>
```

Additional Examples: [Example 1](#), [Example 2](#)

## Chapter 10

# User Interface

### 10.1 Installation Modes

This sections covers the different installation modes that a BitRock Installer can run in and how they can be selected both at runtime and build time.

#### 10.1.1 Full Graphic Modes

These modes allow full interactivity through a point-and-click GUI interface. Depending on the version of InstallBuilder and the platform of execution, the allowed modes can be:

- **Gtk mode (`gtk`):** Regular IB default execution mode on Linux, and Linux x64. The installer presents a Gtk look and feel. It requires the Gtk libraries to be present in the system.
- **X-Window mode (`xwindow`):** Lightweight graphic execution mode on Linux / Unix systems.
- **OS X mode (`osx`):** Regular IB default execution mode on OS X systems. Provides the native OS X application look and feel.
- **Windows mode (`win32`):** Regular IB execution mode on Windows. Provides native Windows application look and feel
- **Qt mode (`qt`):** InstallBuilder for Qt bundles an additional `qt` mode which uses a common graphic library for all platforms. The look and feel on Linux is Qt and it has a native look and feel on OS X and Windows. This mode allow extended text formatting among other tweaks in the installers.

All modes are functionally equivalent and which one to use is mostly a matter of personal preference. For example, a Qt application developer may want to distribute their application with the InstallBuilder for Qt version.

#### 10.1.2 Text Mode:

This mode provides full interactivity with users in the command line. It is equivalent to any GUI mode but the pages are displayed in text mode in a console. This installation mode is not available on Windows because GUI applications are not attached to a console and the text would not be visible.

This mode is especially convenient when no X-Window server is detected. In these cases, this mode is automatically selected by default if no other valid mode is forced (such as unattended).

### 10.1.3 Unattended mode:

This execution mode is especially useful for automating the installation processes. It can be configured to present different levels of user interaction through the `--unattendedmodeui` command line flag or the `<unattendedModeUI>` project property. The allowed values are:

- `none`: No user interaction is required and no output shown. This is the default if no unattended mode UI option is provided.
- `minimal`: No user interaction is required and a progress pop-up is displayed showing the installation progress.

```
$> .\installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-windows-installer.exe --mode unattended -- ↵  
unattendedmodeui minimal
```

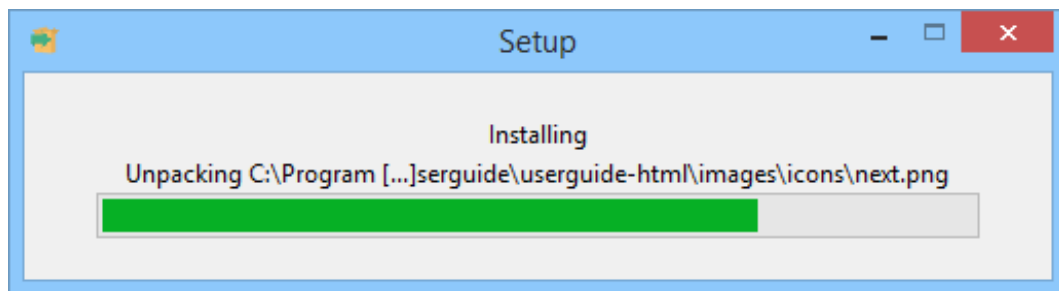


Figure 10.1: Minimal Unattended Mode

- `minimalWithDialogs`: In addition to the installation progress shown in the minimal mode, pop-ups are also displayed. This mode may require some user interaction, depending on the specific installer logic.

```
$> .\sample-1.0-windows-installer.exe --mode unattended --unattendedmodeui ↵  
minimalWithDialogs
```

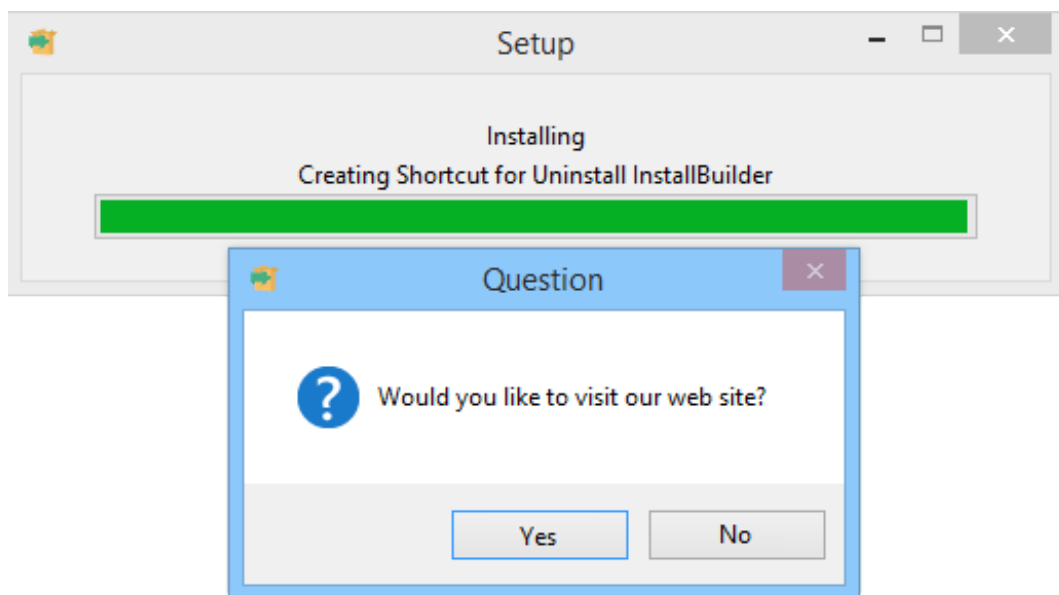


Figure 10.2: Minimal With Dialogs Unattended Mode



### 10.1.4 Selecting the Execution Mode

The execution mode can be configured using command line flags or setting it in the XML project. Using the command line is as easy as typing in a console:

```
$> ./nameOfInstaller --mode executionMode
```

where `executionMode` has to be replaced with the appropriate one: `text`, `unattended`, `gtk`, `qt`...

Be sure to take into account that not all of the installation modes are available on all platforms. The table below describes the possibilities:

Table 10.1: Installation Modes

Allowed installation modes by platform and flavor					
InstallBuilder Flavor	windows	Linux	OS X	Other Unix	Text mode only systems
Regular	unattended, win32	unattended, xwindow, gtk, text	unattended, osx, text	unattended, xwindow, text	text, unattended
Qt	unattended, win32, qt	unattended, xwindow, gtk, text, qt	unattended, osx, text, qt	unattended, xwindow, text	text, unattended

You may have noticed from the above table that `text` mode is not allowed on Windows. This is due to the fact that Windows BitRock installers are compiled as GUI applications and thus, when executed, will not provide output in the console. This is a limitation of Windows itself, since an application cannot be compiled at the same time as a console and GUI application.

Using `--mode` in the command line to select the installation mode is usually not required, as installers have a default installation mode. If for whatever reason the default mode cannot be initialized, then the installer will automatically and gracefully keep trying different UI modes. For example, if a Desktop environment is not available, it will default to text mode (useful for remote Unix installations).

The default mode can also be configured inside the XML project using:

```
<project>
...
  <defaultInstallationMode>xwindow</defaultInstallationMode>
  <unattendedModeUI>minimal</unattendedModeUI>
...
</project>
```

This will set `xwindow` as the default. As not all of the modes are allowed in all platforms, you can configure the `<defaultInstallationMode>` tag using the `<platformOptionsList>`:

```
<project>
...
  <platformOptionsList>
    <platformOptions>
      <platform>linux</platform>
      <defaultInstallationMode>text</defaultInstallationMode>
    </platformOptions>
    <platformOptions>
      <platform>osx</platform>
      <defaultInstallationMode>qt</defaultInstallationMode>
    </platformOptions>
    <platformOptions>
      <platform>win32</platform>
```

```

        <defaultInstallationMode>windows</defaultInstallationMode>
    </platformOptions>
</platformOptionsList>
...
</project>

```

Or reconfiguring the setting in the `preBuildActionList` based on the platform you are building:

```

<preBuildActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
        <name>project.defaultInstallationMode</name>
        <value>text</value>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="{platform_name}" logic="equals" value="linux"/>
        </ruleList>
    </setInstallerVariable>
</preBuildActionList>

```

### 10.1.5 Detecting the Execution Mode

Sometimes it is useful to know which mode the installer is running under, for example to skip certain checks or actions if the installer is running in unattended mode. This information can be obtained through built-in variables:

Table 10.2: Installation Modes

Installation Modes				
mode	unattendedModeUI	installer_ui	installer_ui_detail	installer_interactivity
unattended	none	unattended	unattended	none
unattended	minimal	unattended	unattended	minimal
unattended	minimalWithDialogs	gui	xwindow, win32, osx...	minimalWithDialogs
text	N/A	text	text	normal
qt, gtk...	N/A	gui	qt, gtk...	normal

## 10.2 Pages

Pages are the most common way of interacting with the end user. Some of the pages are built-in, but it is also possible to create parameters, which will be displayed as custom installer pages at runtime. Pages are only configurable in the installer. Currently, neither the uninstaller nor the AutoUpdate can contain custom pages. However, it is possible to have dialogs as part of the uninstallation process.

### 10.2.1 Custom Pages

Projects and components can contain a `<parameterList>`. For each first level parameter contained, a corresponding page will be displayed at runtime. You can control which of these pages will be displayed attaching rules or configuring the `<ask>` property of the parameter.

Depending on the type of the parameter defined, it will be rendered differently. For example, in graphical mode:

- `<booleanParameter>`: A checkbox or a pair of radiobuttons depending on its `<displayStyle>`.
- `<stringParameter>`: A text entry.

- `<directoryParameter>` and `<fileParameter>`: A text entry with an associated browse button.
- `<linkParameter>`: An hyperlink-type text.
- `<passwordParameter>`: A text entry which will display characters entered as \*
- `<labelParameter>`: A simple text label.
- `<choiceParameter>`: A combobox or a set of radiobuttons, depending on its `<displayStyle>`
- `<licenseParameter>`: A license page with Yes/No buttons

You can find a detailed explanation of all the available parameters as well as how they are represented in the Available Parameters section.

To create complex page layouts you can use the special parameter `<parameterGroup>` which allows grouping multiple parameters, including other `<parameterGroup>` elements:

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>configuration</name>
  <title>Configuration</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="username" description="Username"/>
    <passwordParameter name="password" description="Password"/>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
```

The sample code above will group two simple parameters to create a user-password form. By default the alignment is vertical but it can be modified using the `<orientation>` tag:

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>configuration</name>
  <title>Configuration</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
  <parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="username" description="Username"/>
    <passwordParameter name="password" description="Password"/>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
```

The below code will generate a complex page layout using multiple parameter combinations. You can view the result in Figure 10.3:

```
<parameterGroup>
  <name>configuration</name>
  <title>Configuration</title>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <parameterList>
    <parameterGroup>
      <name>adminaccount</name>
      <title></title>
      <explanation>Admin Account</explanation>
      <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
      <parameterList>
        <stringParameter>
          <name>username</name>
          <description>Username</description>
          <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
          <width>20</width>
        </stringParameter>
        <passwordParameter>
```

```

        <name>password</name>
        <description>Password</description>
        <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
        <width>20</width>
    </passwordParameter>
</parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
<parameterGroup>
    <name>serveraddress</name>
    <explanation>Server Address</explanation>
    <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
    <parameterList>
        <stringParameter>
            <name>ipaddress</name>
            <description>IP and Port</description>
            <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
            <width>30</width>
        </stringParameter>
        <stringParameter>
            <name>port</name>
            <description>:</description>
            <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
            <width>5</width>
        </stringParameter>
    </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
<booleanParameter>
    <name>advancedconfig</name>
    <description>Enable advance</description>
    <explanation>Would you like to perform an advanced installation?</explanation>
    <displayStyle>checkbox-left</displayStyle>
</booleanParameter>
<choiceParameter>
    <name>dbmsserver</name>
    <description>DBMS</description>
    <explanation>Database server</explanation>
    <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
    <displayType>combobox</displayType>
    <width>30</width>
    <optionList>
        <option>
            <description>MySQL server</description>
            <text>MySQL</text>
            <value>mysql</value>
        </option>
        <option>
            <description>PostgreSQL server</description>
            <text>PostgreSQL</text>
            <value>postgres</value>
        </option>
    </optionList>
</choiceParameter>
</parameterList>
</parameterGroup>

```

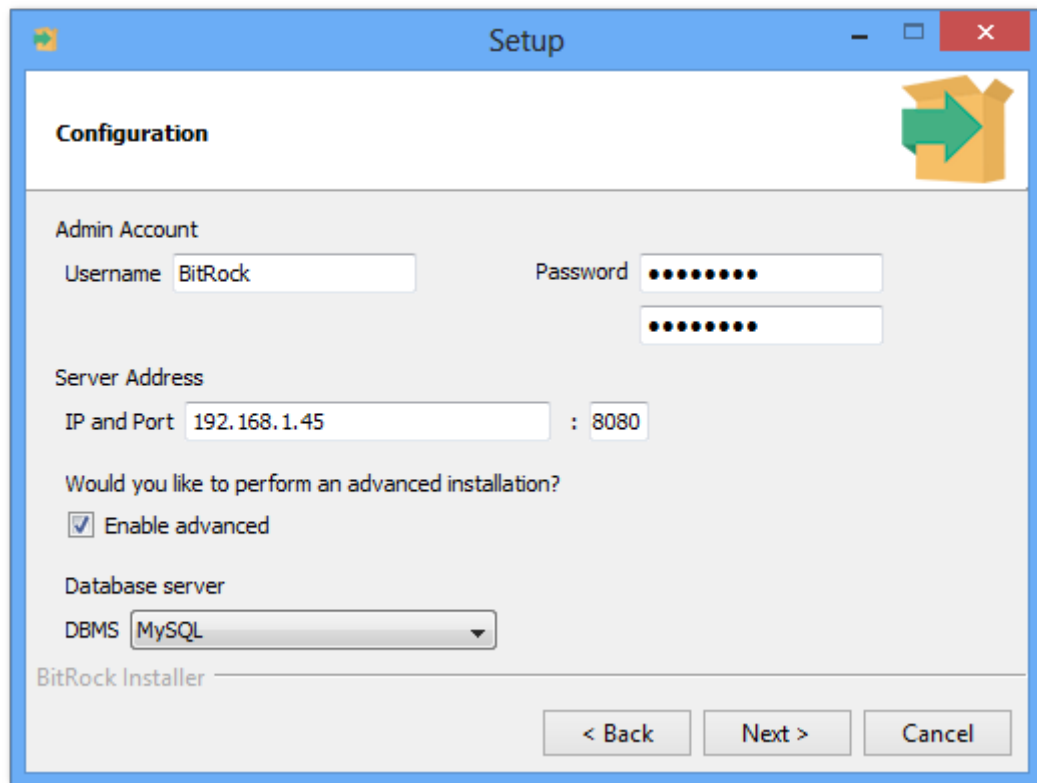


Figure 10.3: Custom Parameter Group Page

The example above will be displayed as follows in text mode:

```
Admin Account

Username []: user

Password :
:
Server Address

IP and Port []: 127.0.0.1

: []: 80

Would you like to perform an advanced installation?

Enable advance [y/N]: y

Database server

DBMS

[1] MySQL: MySQL server
[2] PostgreSQL: PostgreSQL server
Please choose an option [1] : 1
```

### 10.2.2 Built-in Pages

In addition to the user pages registered for each parameter, a set of built-in pages is also added to the installer. These pages, along with their appearance order, are detailed below:

- **Welcome page** (`welcome`): This is the first page displayed. It displays a welcome message to the installation wizard. The text in this page can be configured by modifying the following strings (please refer to the customization section for a detailed explanation of the process):

- `Installer.Welcome.Title=Setup -%1$s`
- `Installer.Welcome.Text=Welcome to the %1$s Setup Wizard.`

The field specifier `%1$s` will be internally replaced by the project full name.

In addition to the above text, if the installer was created with an unregistered version of InstallBuilder, the text "Created with an evaluation version of BitRock InstallBuilder" will be appended.

- **Component Selection page** (`components`): This page will be displayed only if the setting `<allowComponentSelection>` is enabled. By default, it will be displayed right after the `installdir` page or after the `welcome` page if the `installdir` page is hidden.
- **Ready To Install page** (`readytoinstall`): This page is displayed after all of the custom pages and before starting the unpacking stage of the installer. It displays the following configurable messages:

- `Installer.Ready.Title=Ready to Install`
- `Installer.Ready.Text1=Setup is now ready to begin installing %1$s on your computer.`

- **Installation page** (`installation`): After the `readytoinstall` page is acknowledged, the unpacking process begins. The process takes place on the `installation` page while displaying a progress bar. The progress bar also shows a progress text with the path of the files being unpacked but this can be disabled through the project property `<showFileUnpackingProgress>`:

```
<project>
...
  <showFileUnpackingProgress>0</showFileUnpackingProgress>
...
</project>
```

While displaying the `installation` page, the back and next buttons are disabled although the installation can still be aborted by closing the installer window or pressing cancel.

- **Installation Finished page** (`installationFinished`): This is the last page displayed in the installer. The back button is disabled so the user cannot go back. This page displays the below built-in messages:

- `Installer.Installation.Finished.Title=Completing the %1$s Setup Wizard`
- `Installer.Installation.Finished.Text=Setup has finished installing %1$s on your computer.`

#### 10.2.2.1 Final Page options

If a `<readmeFile>` is defined in the project, a checkbox will be added to the final page with the following text:

```
`Installer.ReadmeFile.View=View Readme File`
```

If the checkbox is checked, then the contents of the readme file will be displayed.

If a `<finalPageActionList>` has been defined in the XML project, a checkbox and a description will be displayed for all of the first level actions (an `<actionGroup>` will display just one checkbox even if it contains multiple actions in its `<actionList>`). The behavior and appearance of the page depends on the properties of the actions:

- The state of the checkbox when pressing `Finish` will decide if the action will be executed or not. The default value of the checkbox is the `<run>` property of the action.
- The action `<progressText>` property provides the default text description.
- If the `<show>` property of the action is set to `'0'`, the action will be hidden but still executed if its `<run>` property is enabled.
- An additional explanation text is displayed if the action includes a configured `<explanation>`.

If any of the actions in the final page include rules and they do not evaluate to true, the action is not displayed and won't be executed.

The following is an example `<finalPageActionList>` showcasing the options outlined above.

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <!-- This will launch the application in background -->
  <runProgram progressText="Launch ${project.fullName}" >
    <program>${installdir}/bin/app.exe</program>
    <programArguments>& </programArguments>
  </runProgram>

  <!-- This is disabled by default -->
  <showText progressText="View log" run="0" text="${myLog}"/>

  <!-- This will be displayed as single checkbox -->
  <actionGroup progressText="Register the installation">
    <explanation>Registering the installation will grant you access to extended
      features and support.</explanation>
    <actionList>
      <readFile path="${installdir}/installationid.txt" name="id"/>
      <httpPost url="http://www.example.com/register.php" filename="${installdir}/
        activationUrl">
        <queryParameterList>
          <queryParameter name="userid" value="${id}"/>
          <queryParameter name="username" value="${username}"/>
          <queryParameter name="pass" value="${password}"/>
        </queryParameterList>
      </httpPost>
      <readFile path="${installdir}/activationUrl" name="url"/>
      <launchBrowser url="${url}"/>
    </actionList>
  </actionGroup>

  <!-- This will be always executed but will not be displayed -->
  <launchBrowser url="http://www.example.com/welcome" run="1" show="0"/>
</finalPageActionList>
```

Another common scenario is asking the end user if he or she wants to start the installed application:

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <progressText>Do you want to launch ${project.fullName} now?</progressText>
    <program>${installdir}/bin/myprogram</program>
    <!-- Append & to the arguments so the program is executed in the
      background and the parent process, the installer, can successfully
      end. If you do not launch it in background, the installer will remain
      running until the launched application is closed -->
```

```
<programArguments>&amp;</programArguments>
</runProgram>
</finalPageActionList>
```

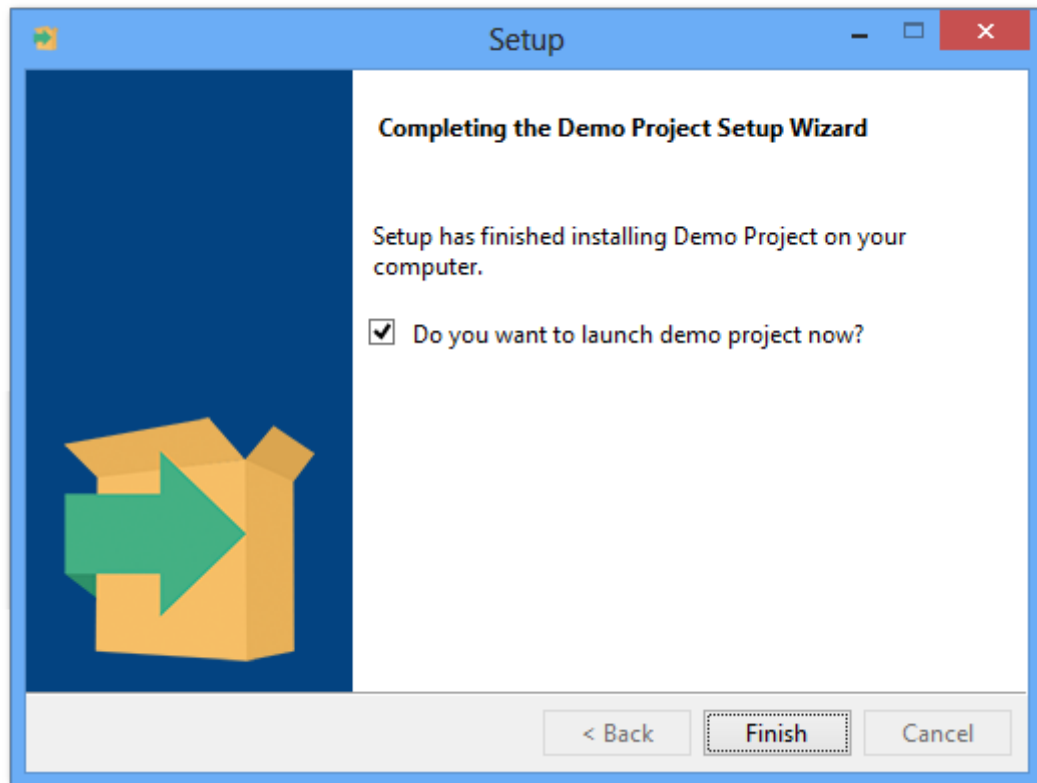


Figure 10.4: Launch your application in the final page

### 10.2.3 Controlling the Flow of the Pages

The default flow of the pages is determined by the position in which they appear in the XML project but this flow can also be controlled through the `<insertAfter>` and `<insertBefore>` tags:

```
<parameterList>
  <directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
    <explanation>Installer.Parameter.installdir.explanation</explanation>
    <value></value>
    <default>${platform_install_prefix}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</ ← ↵
      default>
    ...
  </directoryParameter>
  <licenseParameter>
    <name>myLicense</name>
    <title>License Agreement</title>
    <insertBefore>installdir</insertBefore>
    <description>Please read the following License Agreement. You must accept the ← ↵
      terms of this agreement before continuing with the installation.</ ← ↵
      description>
    <explanation></explanation>
    ...
```



```
</licenseParameter>
</parameterList>
```

In the example above, even if the `<licenseParameter>` is placed after the `<directoryParameter>`, it will be displayed before because you have explicitly declared it with `<insertBefore>installdir</insertBefore>`.

This can also be used to refer to built-in pages. The list below summarizes the key names for all of the built-in pages:

- `welcome` : The welcome page
- `components` : The component selection page
- `readytoinstall` : The ready to install page
- `installation` : Main installation page
- `installationFinished` : The final page

However, sometimes you need to control this flow dynamically at runtime base on certain conditions. For this purpose, InstallBuilder defines two built-in variables: `next_page` and `back_page`. Modifying their values changes the pages displayed when pressing the Next and Back buttons.

For example:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="next_page" value="installdir" />
```

Would make the installer show the `installdir` page after pressing Next regardless of how they were ordered.

Another useful application of this method is to replace the `readytoinstall` page with your own custom page:

```
<parameterList>
...
<!-- Our last parameter -->
<labelParameter>
  <name>summary</name>
  <title>Summary</title>
  <explanation>You are about to install ${project.fullName}.

Please review the below information:

Installation Directory: ${installdir}

Username: ${username}

License File: ${license_file}

Apache Port: ${apache_port}

MySQL Port: ${mysql_port}

Click next if the information is correct
</explanation>
  <postShowPageActionList>
    <!-- This will skip the readytoinstall page -->
    <setInstallerVariable name="next_page" value="installation" />
  </postShowPageActionList>
</labelParameter>
</parameterList>
```

In addition to custom page names and built-in pages, a new value is included for convenience: `same`. When setting `next_page` or `back_page` to `same`, the installer will remain on the current page, no matter its name.

One typical place to set the `next_page` variable is in the `<postShowPageActionList>` and `<validationActionList>`

## 10.3 Dialogs

Another useful way of interacting with the end user is using pop-ups. Pop-ups are especially convenient in the `<preUninstallationActionList>` and `<postUninstallationActionList>` because the uninstaller does not allow custom pages.

- `<showInfo>`: Prompt an info dialog to the user.
- `<showWarning>`: Shows a warning dialog with the given text.
- `<throwError>`: Generate an error inside the installer so the installer will exit. The only exception to this is when `abortOnError` equals zero or the action is inside a `validationActionList`, in which case it will prompt an error dialog to the user, but will not exit the installer.
- `<showText>`: Display a read-only text dialog to the user.
- `<showQuestion>`: Prompt a question to the user. The result is stored as *yes* or *no* in the given variable name.
- `<showPasswordQuestion>`: Ask the user to enter a password.
- `<showChoiceQuestion>`: Prompt a choice question dialog to the user.
- `<showInfo>`: Prompt an info dialog to the user.
- `<showProgressDialog>`: Display an indeterminate progressmeter in a popup window to execute a list of actions.
- `<showStringQuestion>`: Ask the user a question.

You can find a detailed explanation and examples of usage of all of these dialogs in the Dialog Actions section.

## Chapter 11

# Menus and Shortcuts

### 11.1 Defining Shortcuts at Build Time

If you are distributing a GUI program that runs on Windows, KDE or Gnome, you can place a shortcut for your executable on the Desktop or in a folder and the associated icon will be displayed. When the user clicks on the icon, the associated program, document or URL will be launched. Figure 11.1 shows the prompt you get when adding an Application shortcut to your product installer. It has the following fields:

#### Common

- **Shortcut text:** Shortcut text
- **Tooltip:** Tooltip text for the shortcut
- **Platforms:** Platforms in which the shortcut will be created

#### Unix settings

- **Unix Icon:** GIF or PNG Image to use for the shortcut
- **Program to execute:** Program to execute, including command line arguments
- **Working directory:** Working directory for the program being executed

#### Windows settings

- **Windows Icon:** File containing .ico image
- **Program to execute:** Program to execute
- **Working directory:** Working directory for the program being executed

Note that the target program to execute must have been installed with your product, so the value for **Program to execute** should include a reference to the installation directory and look similar to: `${installdir}/foo/bar/program` where `foo/bar/program` is the path to your program relative to the installation directory. At installation time, `${installdir}` will be substituted by the appropriate value. This also applies to Icons referenced by the shortcut.

It is also possible to create shortcuts that point to directories, documents or URLs. Select the "Document" or "URL" option when creating a shortcut.

On Windows, Start Menu and Desktop shortcuts are by default created for all users, or for the current user in case there are not sufficient privileges. InstallBuilder allows modifying this behavior via the project property `<installationScope>`, which can be set to "auto" (default), "user" or "allusers".

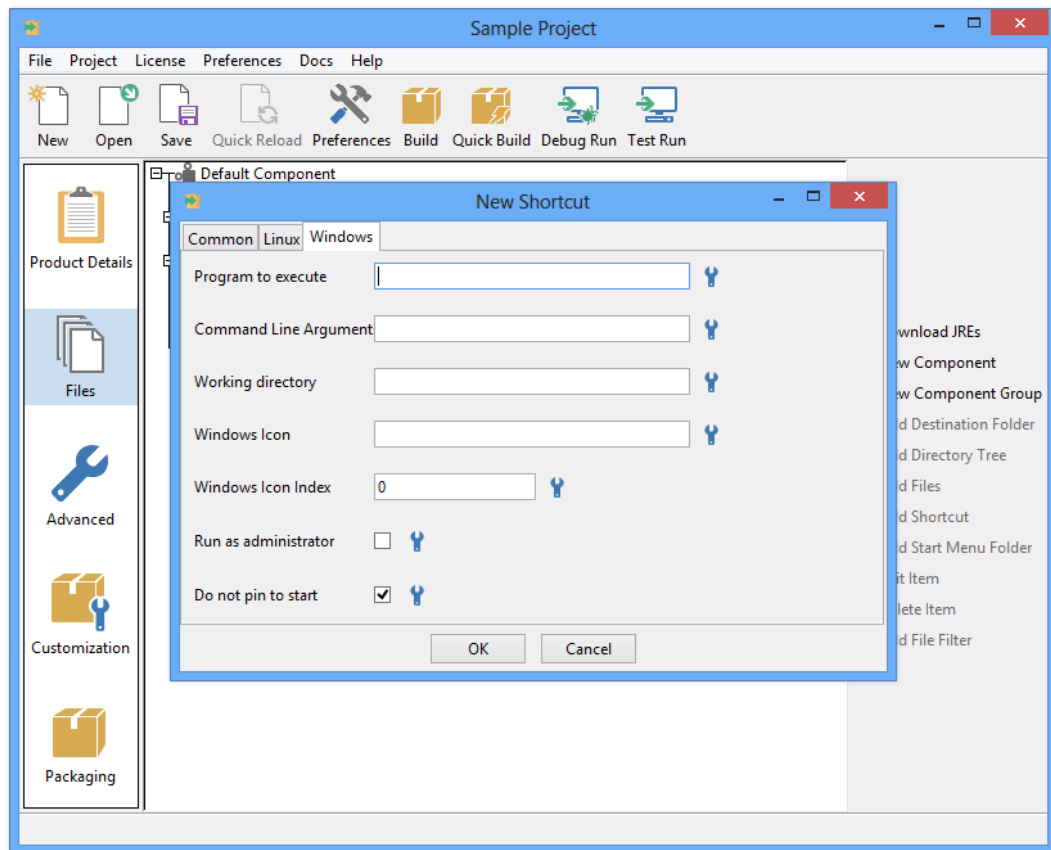


Figure 11.1: Adding a shortcut

Alternatively, you can also add shortcuts by manually editing the XML project, as in the following example:

```
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>default</name>
    <startMenuShortcutList>
      <startMenuShortcut>
        <comment>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</name>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
        <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
      </startMenuShortcut>
    </startMenuShortcutList>
    <desktopShortcutList>
      <shortcut>
        <comment>Launch ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/myApplication.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
      </shortcut>
    </desktopShortcutList>
  </component>
</componentList>
<folderList>
  <folder>
    <name>programfiles</name>
```

```

    <platforms>all</platforms>
    <destination>${installdir}</destination>
    <shortcutList>
      <shortcut>
        <comment>Uninstall</comment>
        <exec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}</exec>
        <name>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</name>
        <path>${installdir}</path>
        <platforms>all</platforms>
        <runInTerminal>0</runInTerminal>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
        <windowsIcon></windowsIcon>
        <windowsPath>${installdir}</windowsPath>
      </shortcut>
    </shortcutList>
  </folder>
</folderList>
</component>
</componentList>

```

You can control where these shortcuts will be created by placing them in one `shortcutList` or another. For example, shortcuts inside the folders `<shortcutList>` will be created in the defined `<destination>`. If instead of the folder `<shortcutList>`, you use the `<startMenuShortcutList>` or the `<desktopShortcutList>`, they will be created in the Start Menu (Windows only) or the Desktop respectively.

---

#### The start menu entry is always created by default

Even if no shortcuts are created, an entry will be automatically added. To disable this behavior, you just have to set the `<startMenuGroupName>` to empty:

```

<project>
  <startMenuGroupName></startMenuGroupName>
</project>

```

---

**The paths in the shortcut tags refer to paths at installation time**

Contrary to other resource paths such as the `<licenseFile>` or the `<readmeFile>`, which refers to paths in the build machine, the paths in the shortcut tags refer to the installation machine:

```
<project>
...
<!-- ${build_project_directory} resolves to the XML project parent directory -->
<readmeFile>${build_project_directory}/readme.txt</readmeFile>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>default</name>
    ...
    <startMenuShortcutList>
      <startMenuShortcut>
        <comment>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Uninstall ${project.fullName}</name>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/${project.uninstallerName}.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs></windowsExecArgs>
        <windowsIcon>${installdir}/icons/uninstallerShortcutIcon.ico</windowsIcon <
          >
        </startMenuShortcut>
      </startMenuShortcutList>
    ...
  </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>
```

## 11.2 Shortcut Folder Structure

Start Menu Shortcuts can be grouped using the `<startMenuFolder>` special shortcut:

```
<project>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>default</name>
    ...
    <startMenuShortcutList>
      <startMenuFolder>
        <name>Application Management</name>
        <platforms>windows</platforms>
        <startMenuShortcutList>
          <startMenuShortcut>
            <comment>Start ${project.fullName}</comment>
            <name>Start ${project.fullName}</name>
            <windowsExec>${installdir}/bin/server.exe</windowsExec>
            <windowsExecArgs>start</windowsExecArgs>
            <windowsIcon>${installdir}/icons/start.ico</windowsIcon>
          </startMenuShortcut>
          <startMenuShortcut>
            <comment>Stop ${project.fullName}</comment>
            <name>Stop ${project.fullName}</name>
            <windowsExec>${installdir}/bin/server.exe</windowsExec>
            <windowsExecArgs>stop</windowsExecArgs>
            <windowsIcon>${installdir}/icons/stop.ico</windowsIcon>
          </startMenuShortcut>
        </startMenuShortcutList>
      </startMenuFolder>
    </startMenuShortcutList>
  </component>
</componentList>
...
</project>
```

```

        </startMenuShortcutList>
    </startMenuFolder>
</startMenuShortcutList>
</component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

It is also possible to create a deeper hierarchy of shortcuts in the Windows Start Menu by using nested `<startMenuFolder>` entries:

```

<project>
...
<componentList>
    <component>
        <name>default</name>
        ...
        <startMenuShortcutList>
            <startMenuFolder>
                <name>Demo Application</name>
                <platforms>windows</platforms>
                <startMenuShortcutList>
                    <startMenuFolder>
                        <name>Documentation</name>
                        <platforms>windows</platforms>
                        <startMenuShortcutList>
                            <startMenuFolder>
                                <name>Videos</name>
                                <platforms>windows</platforms>
                                <startMenuShortcutList>
                                    ...
                                </startMenuShortcutList>
                            </startMenuFolder>
                        </startMenuFolder>
                    </startMenuFolder>
                        <name>PDFs</name>
                        <platforms>windows</platforms>
                        <startMenuShortcutList>
                            ...
                        </startMenuShortcutList>
                    </startMenuFolder>
                </startMenuShortcutList>
            </startMenuFolder>
        </startMenuShortcutList>
    </startMenuFolder>
    <startMenuFolder>
        <name>Management</name>
        <platforms>windows</platforms>
        <startMenuShortcutList>
            ...
        </startMenuShortcutList>
    </startMenuFolder>
</startMenuShortcutList>
</component>
</componentList>
...
</project>

```

## 11.3 Creating Shortcuts on Demand at Runtime

There are scenarios in which it is more convenient to imperatively create shortcuts at runtime rather than declaratively define them as resources inside `<folder>` elements, possibly based on user input. To do so, you can use the `<createShortcuts>` action.

For example, you can ask your users whether or not to create shortcuts to your application in the final page of the installer:

```
<finalPageActionList>
  <createShortcuts>
    <progressText>Do you want to create a shortcut in the Desktop?</progressText>
    <destination>${windows_folder_desktopdirectory}</destination>
    <shortcutList>
      <shortcut>
        <comment>Launches ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
        <runAsAdmin>0</runAsAdmin>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/myApp.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs>--log ${installdir}/debug.log</windowsExecArgs>
      </shortcut>
    </shortcutList>
  </createShortcuts>
  <createShortcuts>
    <progressText>Do you want to create a quick launch toolbar?</progressText>
    <destination>${windows_folder_appdata}/Microsoft/Internet Explorer/Quick Launch</ ←
      destination>
    <shortcutList>
      <shortcut>
        <comment>Launches ${project.fullName}</comment>
        <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
        <runAsAdmin>0</runAsAdmin>
        <windowsExec>${installdir}/myApp.exe</windowsExec>
        <windowsExecArgs>--log ${installdir}/debug.log</windowsExecArgs>
      </shortcut>
    </shortcutList>
  </createShortcuts>
</finalPageActionList>
```

Please note you can add as many shortcuts as you want inside the `<shortcutList>` but they will share the same `<destination>`.

## 11.4 Shortcuts/Aliases on OS X

An Alias is the OS X equivalent of a Windows shortcut. Aliases are typically created by users through the Finder interface and Apple discourages any other methods to create them programatically. However, you can achieve the same result creating a symbolic link to your application bundle (.app file), as shown below:

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <createSymLink target="${installdir}/MyApplication.app" linkName="${~}/Desktop/ ←
    MyShortcutName"/>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

## 11.5 Shortcuts on Linux

InstallBuilder follows the Desktop Entry Specification from [freedesktop.org](http://freedesktop.org) to create shortcuts on Linux. This specification is compatible with most graphical desktop environments currently in use such as KDE, Gnome and XFCE.



In this specification, shortcuts are plain text files with a special syntax and `.desktop` extensions. They contain information about how to display the shortcut and which actions to execute when it is double-clicked. The text below is an example of a `.desktop` file created using any of the methods supported by InstallBuilder:

```
[Desktop Entry]
Type=Application
Version=0.9.4
Name=BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt
Comment=BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt
Icon=/home/bitrock/installbuilder-6.5.4/bin/logo.png
Exec=/home/bitrock/installbuilder-6.5.4/bin/builder
Terminal=false
```

Because it uses an INI-style syntax, if you need to further customize a shortcut at runtime, you can modify it using an `<iniFileSet>` action:

```
<iniFileSet>
  <file>${installdir}/BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt.desktop</file>
  <section>Desktop Entry</section>
  <key>Name</key>
  <value>New Name To Display</value>
</iniFileSet>
```

You can find additional information at [freedesktop.org](http://freedesktop.org)

## Chapter 12

# Installer Customization

Installers created with InstallBuilder can be customized in a variety of ways, including language, size and other aspects which are described in the following sections.

### 12.1 Languages

InstallBuilder supports installations in multiple languages. The following table lists all of the available languages and their codes:

Supported Languages	
code	language name
sq	Albanian
ar	Arabic
es_AR	Argentine Spanish
az	Azerbaijani
eu	Basque
pt_BR	Brazilian Portuguese
bg	Bulgarian
ca	Catalan
hr	Croatian
cs	Czech
da	Danish
nl	Dutch
en	English
et	Estonian
fi	Finnish
fr	French
de	German
el	Greek
he	Hebrew
hu	Hungarian
id	Indonesian
it	Italian
ja	Japanese
kk	Kazakh
ko	Korean
lv	Latvian
lt	Lithuanian

Supported Languages	
no	Norwegian
fa	Persian
pl	Polish
pt	Portuguese
ro	Romanian
ru	Russian
sr	Serbian
zh_CN	Simplified Chinese
sk	Slovak
sl	Slovenian
es	Spanish
sv	Swedish
th	Thai
zh_TW	Traditional Chinese
tr	Turkish
tk	Turkmen
va	Valencian
vi	Vietnamese
cy	Welsh

**Note**

Right to left languages such as Arabic and Hebrew are currently only supported in InstallBuilder for Qt

By default, the language selection dialog is not displayed but it can be enabled just by modifying the `<allowLanguageSelection>` tag:

```
<project>
...
  <allowLanguageSelection>1</allowLanguageSelection>
...
</project>
```

By default, it will display both the English and the native version of the languages, as displayed in Figure 12.1. However it can also be configured to show just the English or the native version using the `<languageSelectionStyle>` project property, which allows: `default` (for both the English and the native version, Figure 12.1), `onlyNativeNames` (for the native representation of the language , Figure 12.2) and `onlyEnglishNames` (for just the English name, Figure 12.3)

```
<project>
...
  <languageSelectionStyle>default</languageSelectionStyle>
...
</project>
```

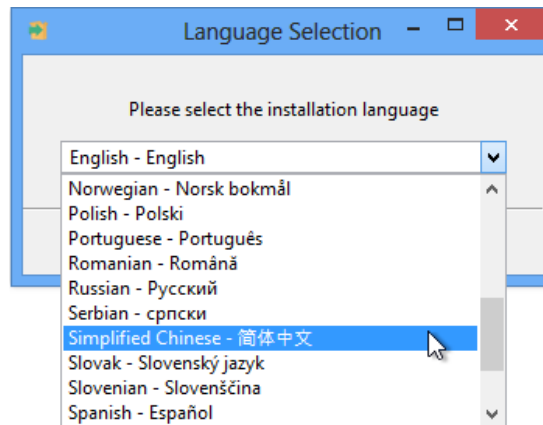


Figure 12.1: Default Language Selection

```
<project>
...
  <languageSelectionStyle>onlyNativeNames</languageSelectionStyle>
...
</project>
```

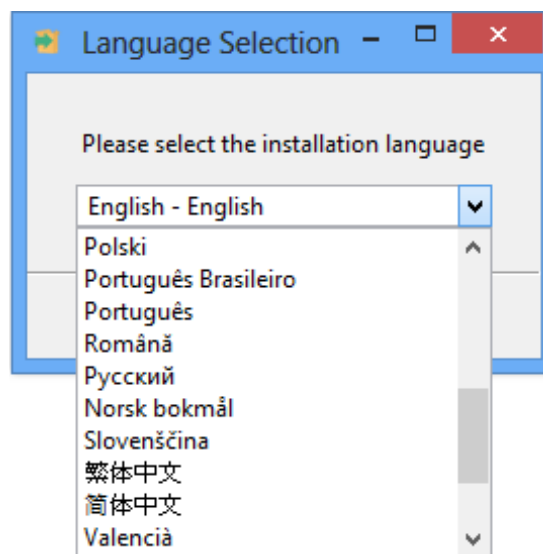


Figure 12.2: Native Only Language Selection

```
<project>
...
  <languageSelectionStyle>onlyEnglishNames</languageSelectionStyle>
...
</project>
```

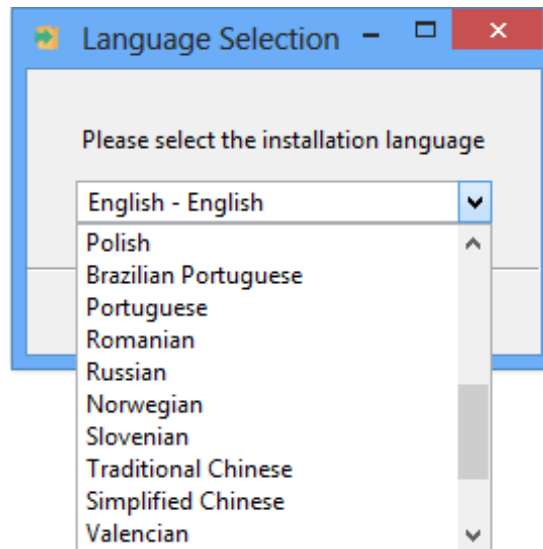


Figure 12.3: English Only Language Selection

Out of all of the languages supported by InstallBuilder, you can configure which of them will be available in your installer using the `<allowedLanguages>` tag:

```
<project>
...
<allowedLanguages>en es ja</allowedLanguages>
<defaultLanguage>es</defaultLanguage>
...
</project>
```

The snippet above also uses the `<defaultLanguage>` tag to specify the default language to use. When enabling the language selection, this will be the selected item in the dialog and when the language selection is disabled, it will be automatically configured as the installation language.

Take into account that the `<defaultLanguage>` must be one of the allowed languages or it will be ignored, using the first allowed language instead.

You can also use the `installer-language` command line flag to overwrite the `<defaultLanguage>` setting. The allowed values will be those configured in `<allowedLanguages>`:

```
$> sample-1.0-linux-installer.run --installer-language ja
```

### 12.1.1 Autodetecting the System Language

The `<defaultLanguage>` tag also allows a special code, `auto`, that will make the installer autodetect the system language and use it as the default language:

```
<project>
...
<defaultLanguage>auto</defaultLanguage>
<allowedLanguages>de en es ja</allowedLanguages>
...
</project>
```

If the autodetected language does not match any of the allowed languages configured using `<allowedLanguages>` (in case any was provided), the first language in the list will be used, `de` in the above example. If the `<allowedLanguages>` value was

not specified or was set to empty, it will be ignored. In the event that the autodetected language is not supported by InstallBuilder, en will be used as the language.

You can also check which language was selected at runtime by accessing the built-in variable `${installation_language_code}`.

## 12.2 Changing Built-in Installer Text Strings

InstallBuilder allows customizing most of its built-in language strings using custom language files. These files are basically plain text files with an INI-style format. The keys are language string identifiers that will be shared among all languages (`database.title`, `database.explanation`, `database.description`). The values contain the corresponding text strings for each language (Database Selection, Default database, Which database?). For example, to modify the Welcome Page, you can create a new language file `custom-en.lng` with the strings to override the default ones:

### Built-in strings in en.lng

```
...
Installer.Welcome.Title=Setup - %1$s
Installer.Welcome.Text=Welcome to the %1$s Setup Wizard.
...
```

### New custom-en.lng strings

```
Installer.Welcome.Title=Installation of %1$s
Installer.Welcome.Text=This is the installer of %1$s.
```

You can then load the new file in your project:

```
<customLanguageFileList>
  <language>
    <code>en</code>
    <file>path/to/custom-en.lng</file>
  </language>
</customLanguageFileList>
```

You can download [the complete list of tags](#) or request the latest version by writing to us at [support@bitrock.com](mailto:support@bitrock.com). A copy of the language file is also included in all InstallBuilder installations inside the `docs` directory:

```
$> /home/user/installbuilder-15.9.0/docs/userguide/en.lng
```

Please note that although the original file contains many other strings, you only need to specify those that need to be modified in your language file.

Some of the built-in strings contain special identifiers with names like `%1$s`. This refers to a value that will be automatically substituted at runtime by the installer (in most cases the full product name). Other common fields inserted in messages are filenames when the string is related to file manipulation actions or error information:

```
...
Installer.Welcome.Text=This is the installer of %1$s.
...
Installer.Error.Installation.CreatingDirectory=Error creating directory %1$s
...
Installer.Error.PostInstallScript=Error executing post installation script\n%1$s\n%2$s
...
```

The internally provided values for the identifiers cannot be modified but if you need to display different settings, you can just use regular InstallBuilder variables. For example, to include the short name and version instead of the full name in the previous string, you could rewrite your translation as:

```
...
Installer.Welcome.Text=This is the installer of ${project.shortName}-${project.version}.
...
```

Or mix both:

```
...
Installer.Welcome.Text=This is the installer of %1$s (${project.shortName}-${project. ↵
    version}).
...
```

Where the above string will be resolved as: This is the installer of Sample Installer (sample-1.0).

## 12.2.1 Adding New Localized Strings

InstallBuilder includes complete language translations for all its built-in messages, but if you customize the installer with new screens or dialogs, you will need to add the strings to your custom language files. You will need to provide a custom language file for each of the languages supported by your installer:

custom-en.lng:

```
database.title=Database Selection
database.explanation=Default database
database.description=Which database?
```

custom-es.lng:

```
database.title=Selección de base de datos
database.explanation=Base de datos por defecto
database.description=Qué base de datos?
```

Once you have created a language file for each of your supported languages, you will need to load them from your XML project:

```
<project>
...
  <customLanguageFileList>
    <language>
      <code>en</code>
      <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
      <file>path/to/custom-en.lng</file>
    </language>
    <language>
      <code>de</code>
      <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
      <file>path/to/custom-de.lng</file>
    </language>
    <language>
      <code>fr</code>
      <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
      <file>path/to/custom-fr.lng</file>
    </language>
  </customLanguageFileList>
...
</project>
```

Please note that the language files are mapped to the desired language using the `<code>`. It is also very important to configure the `<encoding>` accordingly to your language files or you could end up with an unreadable translation.

Those language files will then be included in the installer at build time and the translated strings will be available at runtime using the `${msg ( ) }` notation. The following example shows how the strings above can be used to localize a choice parameter:

```

<choiceParameter>
  <ask>1</ask>
  <default>oracle</default>
  <description>${msg(database.description)}</description>
  <explanation>${msg(database.explanation)}</explanation>
  <title>${msg(database.title)}</title>
  <name>database</name>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <value>oracle</value>
      <text>Oracle</text>
    </option>
    <option>
      <value>mysql</value>
      <text>Mysql</text>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</choiceParameter>

```

## 12.2.2 Component-Level Translations

Components can also provide their own `<customLanguageFileList>`. The component-level language files will be processed after the main one (project level) and the keys there will overwrite the project-level ones. This feature allows you to share translations among multiple projects.

When a specific language is needed for a particular installer, you can add a translation component that will take care of redefining some of the language strings:

```

<project>
  ...
  <customLanguageFileList>
    <language>
      <code>en</code>
      <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
      <file>path/to/custom-en.lng</file>
    </language>
  </customLanguageFileList>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>translations</name>
      <show>0</show>
      <customLanguageFileList>
        <language>
          <code>en</code>
          <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
          <file>path/to/alternative-custom-en.lng</file>
        </language>
      </customLanguageFileList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
  ...
</project>

```

## 12.2.3 Displaying a Localized License and Readme

You can specify multiple localized versions for your `<licenseFile>` using the `<licenseFileList>` tag. Take into account that you still need to provide a value for the `<licenseFile>` tag to make the installer show the license page. This `<licenseFile>` will be also used as the default license file in case there's no localized license file for the current language.



Inside this tag, you can add as many `<licenseFile>` elements as localized licenses you provide. For each `<licenseFile>` element, you'll need to provide the license file path, its language identifier and the file encoding.

Here's an example of how it works:

```
<licenseFileList>
  <licenseFile>
    <code>en</code>
    <file>/home/user/license-english.txt</file>
    <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
  </licenseFile>
  <licenseFile>
    <code>ja</code>
    <file>/home/user/license-japanese.txt</file>
    <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
  </licenseFile>
</licenseFileList>
```

The installer will pick the right license file depending on the current selected language for the installer.

If you need to display more than one license page, or simply to make them display conditionally, you can use a `<licenseParameter>`:

```
<licenseParameter>
  <name>myLicense</name>
  <title>License Agreement</title>
  <description>Please read the following License Agreement. You must accept
the terms of this agreement before continuing with the installation.</description>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <file>some/default/license.txt</file>
  <htmlFile>some/default/license.html</htmlFile>
  <licenseFileList>
    <licenseFile>
      <code>en</code>
      <file>/home/user/license-english.txt</file>
      <htmlFile>/home/user/license-english.html</htmlFile>
      <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
    </licenseFile>
    <licenseFile>
      <code>ja</code>
      <htmlFile>/home/user/license-japanese.html</htmlFile>
      <file>/home/user/license-japanese.txt</file>
      <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
    </licenseFile>
  </licenseFileList>
</licenseParameter>
```

You can do a similar arrangement with readme files and the `<readmeFileList>` tag:

```
<readmeFileList>
  <readmeFile>
    <code>en</code>
    <file>/home/user/readme-english.txt</file>
    <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
  </readmeFile>
  <readmeFile>
    <code>ja</code>
    <file>/home/user/readme-japanese.txt</file>
    <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
  </readmeFile>
</readmeFileList>
```

Providing a main `<readmeFile>` at the `<project>` level is required to enable the readme file. This `<readmeFile>` will be used as the default readme file in case there's no localized readme file for the current language.

---

**Note**

Even if the installer provides a project level `<licenseFileList>`, the license page won't be displayed if a value is not provided to the `<licenseFile>`, the default license file will display if the localized license for the current language was not provided.

The `<readmeFile>` follows the same rule. If a value is not provided for the default readme file, no readme will be displayed, despite of the value of the `<readmeFileList>`. The `<readmeFile>` will also be used if a localized readme was not provided for the current language.

---

**HTML license and readme files in Qt mode**

Both the main license file (using the `<htmlLicenseFile>`) and the `<licenseParameter>` are capable of displaying html files in qt mode. As they are only allowed in qt mode, you still have to provide a regular `<file>`:

```
<project>
  <shortName>sample</shortName>
  <fullName>Sample Project</fullName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <installerFilename></installerFilename>
  <licenseFile>some/default-license.txt</licenseFile>
  <htmlLicenseFile>some/default-license.html</htmlLicenseFile>
  ...
  <licenseFileList>
    <licenseFile code="de" file="main-license_de.txt" htmlFile="main-license_de.html"/>
    <licenseFile code="en" file="main-license_en.txt" htmlFile="main-license_en.html"/>
    <licenseFile code="es" file="main-license_es.txt" htmlFile="main-license_es.html"/>
  </licenseFileList>
  ...
  <parameterList>
    <licenseParameter>
      <name>otherLicense</name>
      <title>Other License Agreement</title>
      <file>some/default/other-license.txt</file>
      <htmlFile>some/default/other-license.html</htmlFile>
      <licenseFileList>
        <licenseFile code="de" file="other-license_de.txt" htmlFile="other-license_de. ↵
          html"/>
        <licenseFile code="en" file="other-license_en.txt" htmlFile="other-license_en. ↵
          html"/>
        <licenseFile code="es" file="other-license_es.txt" htmlFile="other-license_es. ↵
          html"/>
      </licenseFileList>
    </licenseParameter>
  </parameterList>
  ...
</project>
```

Although the `<readmeFile>` cannot display HTML text, you could use an `<infoParameter>` instead:

```
<infoParameter>
  <name>readme</name>
  <title>Readme</title>
  <explanation>Readme</explanation>
  <value>${textValue}</value>
  <htmlValue>${htmlValue}</htmlValue>
  <preShowPageActionList>
    <readFile>
      <path>${installdir}/readme.html</path>
      <name>htmlValue</name>
    </readFile>
    <readFile>
      <path>${installdir}/readme.txt</path>
      <name>textValue</name>
    </readFile>
  </preShowPageActionList>
</infoParameter>
```

## 12.3 Images

InstallBuilder provide default images for all the generated installers but you can also configure them. All images need to be provided in PNG format except for:

- Windows installer and uninstaller icons (which must be provided in ICO format)
- OS X installer and uninstaller icons (which must be provided in ICNS format)

### 12.3.1 Splash Screen

It is possible to configure the splash screen image and the time while it will be displayed:

```
<project>
...
<splashImage>path/to/mySplash.png</splashImage>
<!-- Additional delay in milliseconds -->
<splashScreenDelay>3000</splashScreenDelay>
...
</project>
```

The splash image will be displayed for an additional 3 seconds (in addition to the built-in delay of 1 second).

The splash screen can be also disabled using the `<disableSplashScreen>` setting:

```
<project>
...
<disableSplashScreen>1</disableSplashScreen>
...
</project>
```

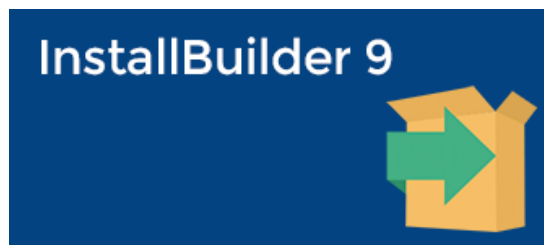


Figure 12.4: Splash Screen

### 12.3.2 Left and Top Images

It is possible to configure the images that will appear on the left side and the top right corner of the wizard UI, as shown below:

```
<project>
...
<style>standard</style>
<logoImage>path/to/topImage.png</logoImage>
<leftImage>path/to/leftImage.png</leftImage>
...
</project>
```

The layout of the installer pages and when the left and top images are displayed depends on the `<style>` configured in the project.

InstallBuilder supports two display styles:

- Standard Style:

In the standard style, the left image is displayed in the welcome and the final page and the top image is displayed in all the parameter pages and the *readytoinstall* page. The *installation* page will also display the top image if no slideshow images were configured or the slideshow if they were.

```
<project>
...
  <style>standard</style>
...
</project>
```

- Custom Style:

When using the `custom` style, no top right image is displayed and all of the pages will show the left image. Parameter pages can configure the left image displayed through their `<leftImage>` property:

```
<project>
...
  <style>custom</style>
...
  <parameterList>
    <directoryParameter>
      <name>installdir</name>
      <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
      ...
      <leftImage>path/to/installdir_image.png</leftImage>
      ...
    </directoryParameter>
  </parameterList>
...
</project>
```

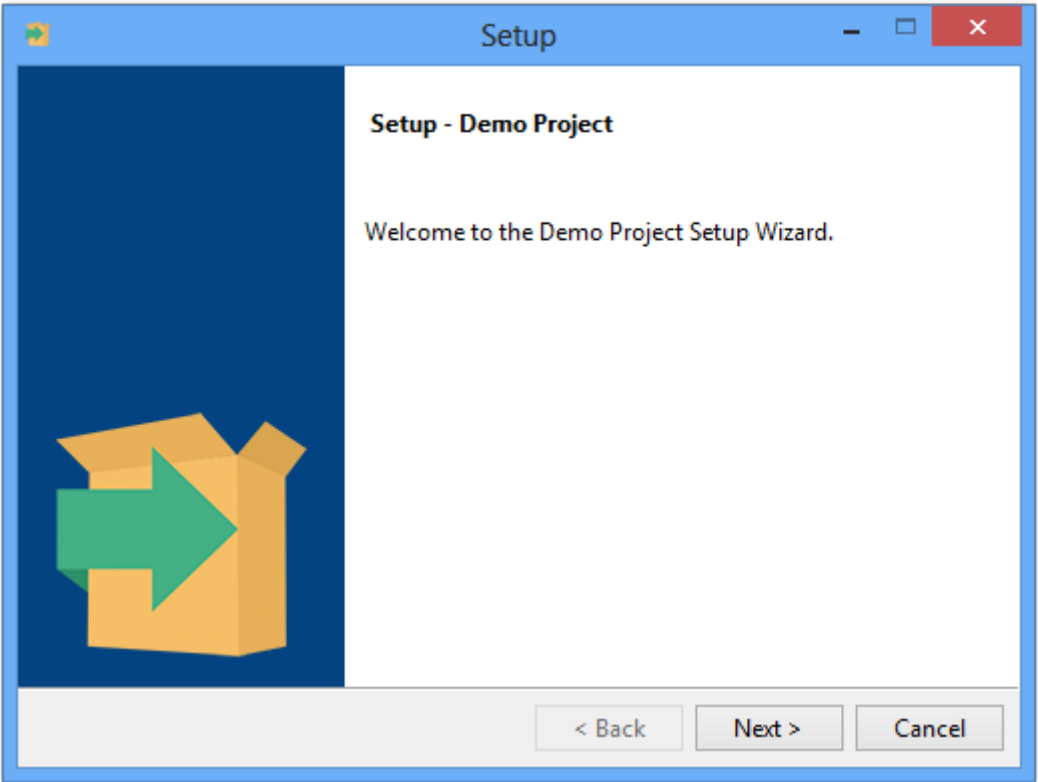


Figure 12.5: Custom Style Welcome

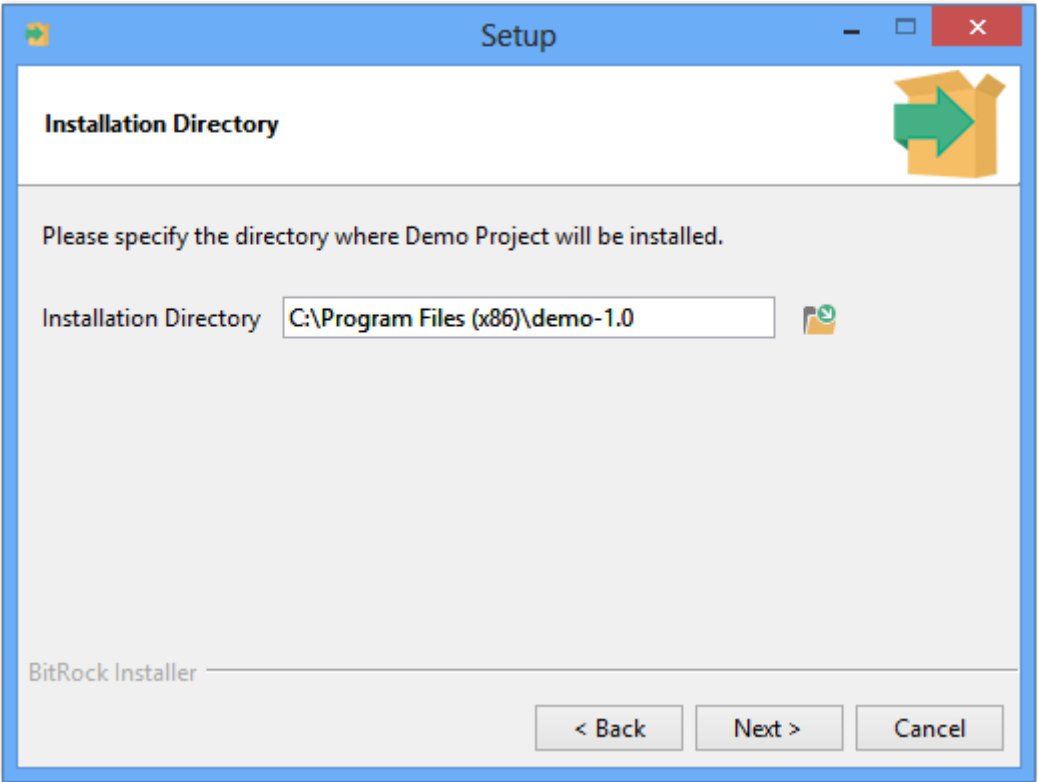


Figure 12.6: Custom Style Parameter Page

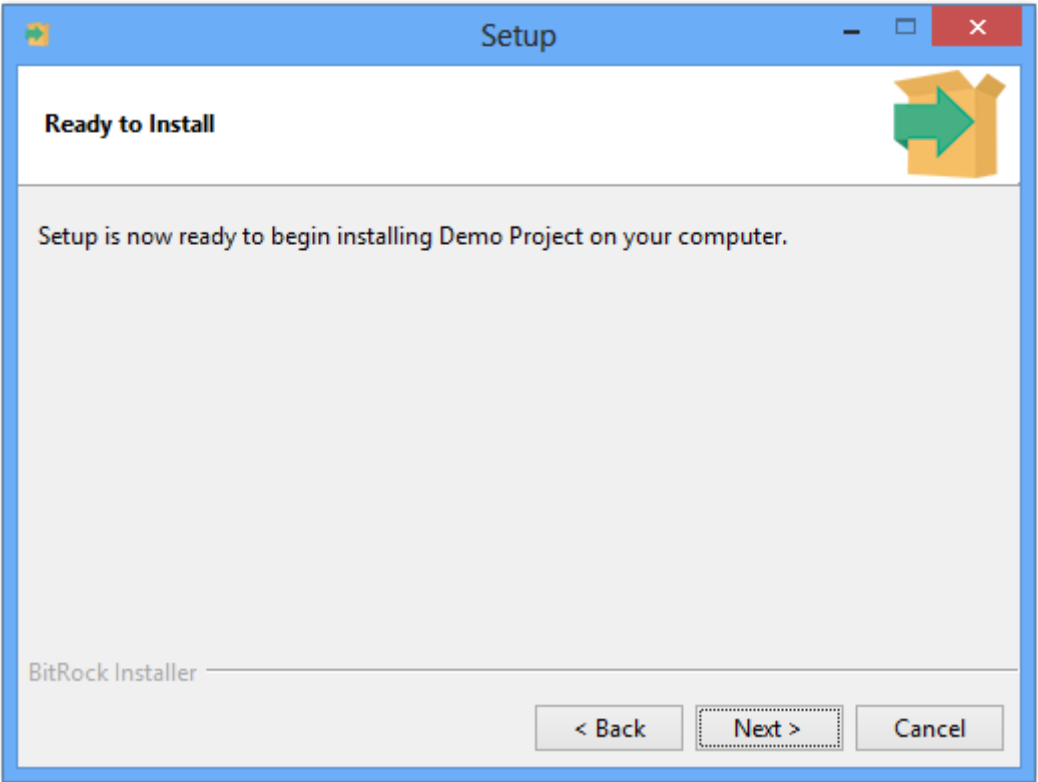


Figure 12.7: Custom Style Ready to Install



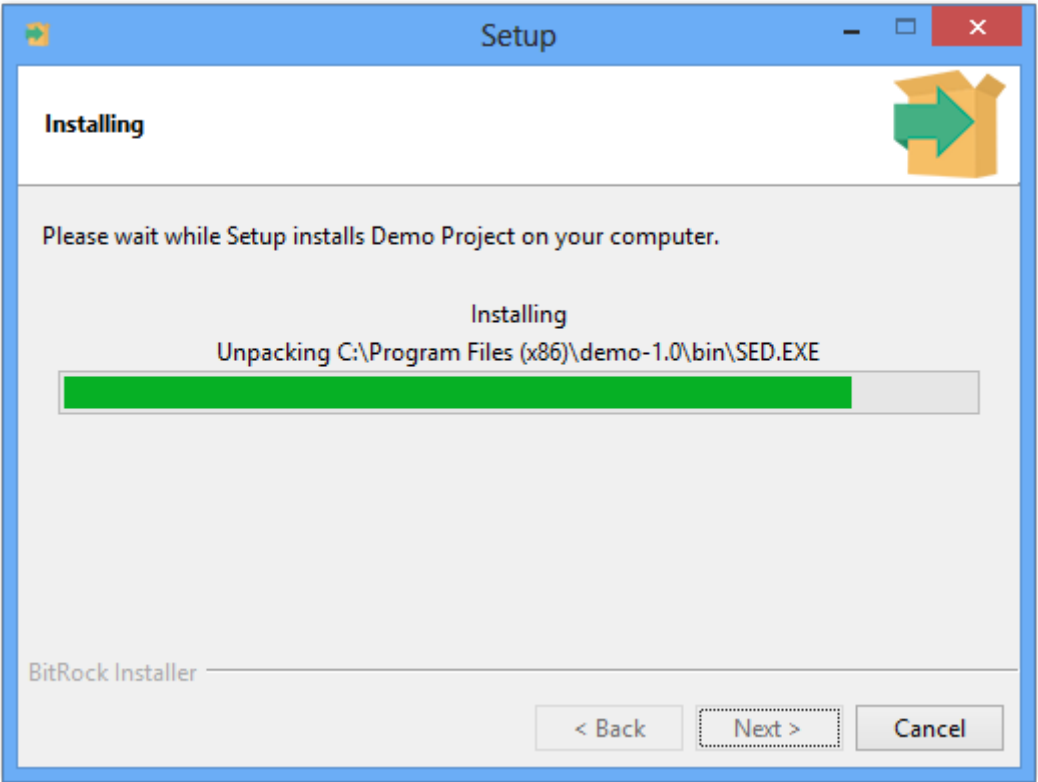


Figure 12.8: Custom Style Installation Page

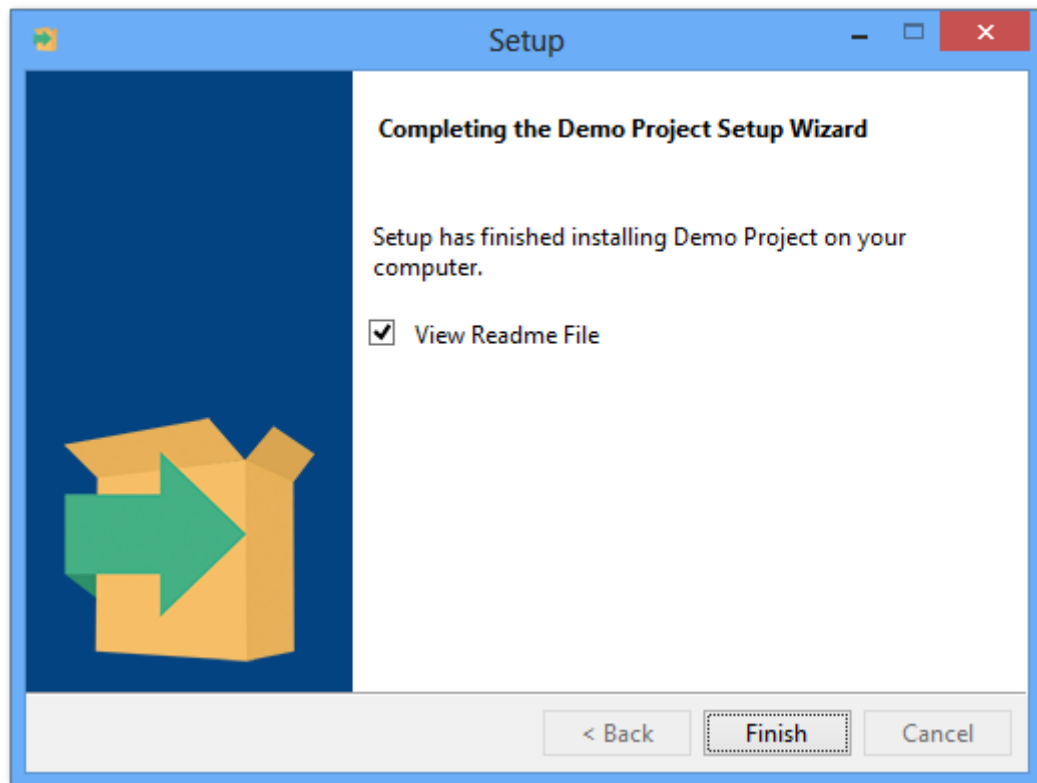


Figure 12.9: Custom Style Installation Finished

The *installation* page will also display the project level left image if no slideshow images were configured or the slideshow if they were.

```
<project>
...
  <style>custom</style>
...
</project>
```

### 12.3.3 Windows specific images

#### 12.3.3.1 Windows Icons

Windows icons are also customizable for both the installer and the uninstaller. InstallBuilder expects an ICO file containing the below images:

- 64 x 64 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors)
- 48 x 48 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors)
- 32 x 32 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors)
- 24 x 24 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors)
- 16 x 16 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors)
- 48 x 48 pixels, 8bpp (256 Colors)
- 32 x 32 pixels, 8bpp (256 Colors)

- 16 x 16 pixels, 8bpp (256 Colors)

Although some of them can be skipped, you must at least provide the following sizes:

- 48 x 48 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors) or 8bpp (256 Colors)
- 32 x 32 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors) or 8bpp (256 Colors)
- 16 x 16 pixels, 32bpp (16.7 million Colors) or 8bpp (256 Colors)

If your icon file contains any additional images (such as a 256x256 image), they will just be ignored.

Those icons must then be configured in your project:

```
<project>
...
<windowsExecutableIcon>path/to/installer.ico</windowsExecutableIcon>
<windowsUninstallerExecutableIcon>path/to/uninstaller.ico</ ↵
    windowsUninstallerExecutableIcon>
...
</project>
```

If the uninstaller icon is not configured explicitly, the installer icon will be used instead. Similarly, if no installer icon is specified, the default InstallBuilder icon will be used.

The locations specified in the `<windowsExecutableIcon>` and `<windowsUninstallerExecutableIcon>` refer to files in the build machine.

### 12.3.3.2 Other Windows images

Apart from the installer and uninstaller icons, you can also provide images for other settings:

- **Add/Remove Programs Menu Icon:** This icon is configured through the `<productDisplayIcon>` tag and will be displayed in the ARP menu in addition to your application details. The icon is configured at runtime so the provided location must point to a file in the target machine, in most of the cases, installed by your application:

```
<project>
...
<!-- Path in the target machine -->
<productDisplayIcon>${installdir}/icons/arp.ico</productDisplayIcon>
...
<componentList>
  <component>
    <name>windowsComponent</name>
    <folderList>
      <folder>
        <name>icons</name>
        <destination>${installdir}</destination>
        <distributionFileList>
          <!-- Directory containing arp.ico icon -->
          <distributionDirectory origin="/path/to/icons"/>
        </distributionFileList>
      </folder>
    </folderList>
  </component>
</componentList>
</project>
```

- **Shortcuts icons:** When creating shortcuts to executables on Windows, the icon of the application will be used. If the shortcut points to a different file-type such as a .txt or .bat file, the icon of the associated program will be displayed. Of course, you can also provide your own custom icon:

```
<createShortcuts>
  <destination>${windows_folder_startmenu}/${project.fullName}</destination>
  <shortcutList>
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Launches ${project.fullName}</comment>
      <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
      <windowsIcon>${installdir}/icons/custom.ico</windowsIcon>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/myApp.exe</windowsExec>
    </shortcut>
  </shortcutList>
</createShortcuts>
```

The `<windowsIcon>` tag can also point to an executable. In that case, the icon of the referenced binary will be used. For example, to configure you .bat files to look like a cmd prompt:

```
<createShortcuts>
  <destination>${windows_folder_startmenu}/${project.fullName}</destination>
  <shortcutList>
    <shortcut>
      <comment>Launches ${project.fullName}</comment>
      <name>Launch ${project.fullName}</name>
      <windowsIcon>%SystemRoot%\system32\cmd.exe</windowsIcon>
      <windowsExec>${installdir}/script/wrapped-shell.bat</windowsExec>
    </shortcut>
  </shortcutList>
</createShortcuts>
```

### 12.3.4 OS X Icons

Similarly to Windows, OS X installer and uninstaller application bundles can also include custom icons, provided using the `<osxApplicationBundleIcon>` and `<osxUninstallerApplicationBundleIcon>` project properties:

```
<project>
  ...
  <osxApplicationBundleIcon>path/to/Bundle.icns</osxApplicationBundleIcon>
  <osxUninstallerApplicationBundleIcon>path/to/UninstallerBundle.icns</ ↵
    osxUninstallerApplicationBundleIcon>
  ...
</project>
```

InstallBuilder will check if the provided icons are valid .icns files and will throw an error if the check fails. In addition, you must take into account the required icons in your .icns file as described in the [Apple guidelines](#). At a minimum, the icon bundle must contain the following sizes:

- 512 x 512 pixels (For finder icons in OS X 10.5 and later)
- 128 x 128 pixels
- 32 x 32 pixels
- 16 x 16 pixels

## 12.3.5 Other images

### 12.3.5.1 Window Manager Image

The `<wmImage>` tag expects a 48x48 GIF or PNG logo image that will be shown in the window manager task bar. On Windows and OS X, when running in Qt mode, it will also be used as the window icon (displayed in the window title bar). On Windows, in modes other than Qt, the window icon will be obtained from the 16pixel image included in the executable.

If a `<wmImage>` is not provided, a default image is displayed.

```
<project>
...
<wmImage>path/in/the/build/machine/logo.png</wmImage>
...
</project>
```

### 12.3.5.2 Slide Show Images

InstallBuilder allows displaying a slide show while the files are being copied. This is really useful to show your application features or promote other products or services from your company. Each slide is represented by a 500x222 GIF or PNG image configured using a `<slideShowImage>` element:

```
<project>
...
<slideShowImageList>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/image1.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/image2.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/image3.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
</slideShowImageList>
...
</project>
```

Where the paths to the images correspond to where they are located at build time.

The behavior of the slide show can be configured to continuously loop during the installation (through the `<slideShowLoop>` tag) or not. The number of seconds that each image will be displayed can be also defined (specified in the `<slideShowTiming>` tag). For example, if you want to display 5 slides without repeating them with 10 seconds for each of them, you can use:

```
<project>
...
<slideShowLoop>0</slideShowLoop>
<slideShowTiming>10</slideShowTiming>
<slideShowImageList>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/feature1.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/feature2.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/feature3.png</path>
  </slideShowImage>
  <slideShowImage>
    <path>path/to/feature4.png</path>
```

```
        </slideShowImage>
        <slideShowImage>
            <path>path/to/feature5.png</path>
        </slideShowImage>
    </slideShowImageList>
    ...
</project>
```

### 12.3.5.3 Label Parameter Images

It is also possible to display images in custom parameter pages using a `<labelParameter>`, which allows providing an image in its `<image>` tag:

```
<parameterGroup>
    <name>autoupdate</name>
    <title>AutoUpdate</title>
    <orientation>horizontal</orientation>
    <parameterList>
        <labelParameter>
            <name>autoUpdateImage</name>
            <image>/path/to/autoupdate.png</image>
        </labelParameter>
        <booleanParameter>
            <name>includeAutoUpdate</name>
            <description>Install AutoUpdate</description>
            <default>1</default>
            <displayStyle>radiobuttons</displayStyle>
        </booleanParameter>
    </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
```

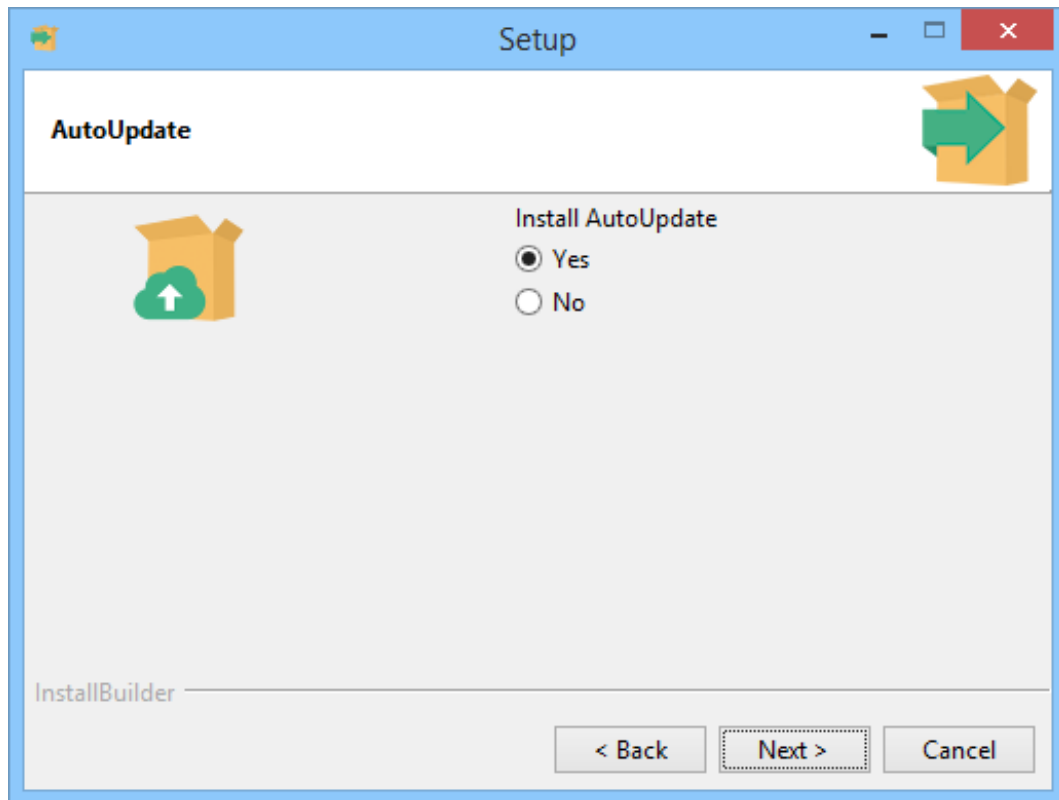


Figure 12.10: Image in a Label Parameter

#### 12.3.5.4 Option Images

It is also possible to add images to the `<option>` elements used in a `<choiceParameter>`:

```
<choiceParameter>
  <name>dbmsserver</name>
  <description>DBMS</description>
  <explanation>Database server</explanation>
  <allowEmptyValue>1</allowEmptyValue>
  <displayType>combobox</displayType>
  <optionList>
    <option>
      <description>MySQL server</description>
      <text>MySQL</text>
      <value>mysql</value>
      <image>${build_project_directory}/img/mysql-logo.png</image>
    </option>
    <option>
      <description>PostgreSQL server</description>
      <text>PostgreSQL</text>
      <value>postgres</value>
      <image>${build_project_directory}/img/postgresql-logo.png</image>
    </option>
  </optionList>
</choiceParameter>
```

### 12.3.6 Recommended Image Sizes

Although InstallBuilder will try to accommodate the layout of the pages to any image size, there are recommended sizes for some of them. The table below summarizes those sizes:

Table 12.1: Recommended image sizes

Image	Width	Height
Left panel image (<leftImage>)	163 pixels	314 pixels
Top right image (<logoImage>)	48 pixels	48 pixels
SlideShow image (<slideShowImage>)	500 pixels	222 pixels
Splash screen (<splashImage>)	300-350 pixels	100-150 pixels



## Chapter 13

# Running the Installer

You can run an installer either by invoking it from the command line or double-clicking it from your desktop environment. On Linux and other Unix environments, the only requirement is that the file must have executable permissions, which it has by default when it is created. Sometimes those permissions can be lost, such as when downloading an installer from a website. In that case you can restore the executable permissions with:

```
chmod u+x installbuilder-professional-15.9.0-linux-installer.run
```

Because the generated OS X installers are regular .app applications, they contain a directory structure and you will need to add them to a zip file or disk image for distribution over the web. On OS X, when a user downloads a zip file containing an application, it will automatically be unpacked and the user will be prompted to launch it.

On Windows, the installer runs graphically with a native look and feel or it can be invoked in unattended mode (see below). On Mac OS X, the installer runs with the native Aqua look and feel and can also be run in text and unattended modes. On Linux and other supported Unix systems, there are multiple installation modes:

- **GTK:** This is a native installation mode based on the GTK 2.0 toolkit. The GTK libraries must be present on the system (they are installed by default in most Linux distributions). This is the default installation mode. If the GTK libraries are not available, the X-Window installation mode will automatically be used instead. The GTK mode is available on Linux and Linux x64 only.
- **Qt:** This is a native installation mode based on Qt. The Qt libraries are compiled into the installer, so it is not necessary for them to be present on the end-user system. This mode is only available on Linux, Windows and Mac OS X when using the InstallBuilder for Qt product.
- **X-Window:** This is a self-contained installation mode that has no external dependencies. It will be started when neither the GTK nor the Qt mode is available. It can also be explicitly requested with the `--mode xwindow` command line switch.
- **Command line:** Designed for remote installations or installation on servers without a GUI environment. This installation mode is started by default when a GUI is not available or by passing the `--mode text` command line option to the installer.
- **Unattended Installation:** It is possible to perform unattended or silent installations using the `--mode unattended` command line option. This is useful for automating installations or for inclusion in shell scripts, as part of larger installation processes.

### 13.1 Requiring Administrator Privileges

You can require administrator privileges in your installer by using the `<requireInstallationByRootUser>` tag:

```
<project>
...
  <requireInstallationByRootUser>1</requireInstallationByRootUser>
...
</project>
```

This will require the end user to have root privileges on Unix platforms (possibly using *sudo* to invoke the installer) or Administrator privileges on Windows. If the user does not have the appropriate privileges, an error will be displayed and the installer will exit. In the case of OS X, the user will be prompted with an Admin password dialog to raise its privileges.

Once running, you can check whether the installer is running as administrator by checking the `${installer_is_root_install}` built-in variable:

```
<showText text="You are not administrator!">
  <ruleList>
    <isFalse value="${installer_is_root_install}"/>
  </ruleList>
</showText>
```

When running on the latest Windows versions (Vista and newer), if the UAC is enabled, the installer will be forced to be executed as Administrator by default, regardless of the value of the `<requireInstallationByRootUser>` tag. This behavior is forced by the OS but can be also configured in the project using the `<requestedExecutionLevel>` tag:

```
<project>
  ...
  <requestedExecutionLevel>requireAdministrator</requestedExecutionLevel>
  ...
</project>
```

The allowed values for this setting are:

- **requireAdministrator** - Require administrator: This is the default value and forces the installer to be executed as an administrator user. All users are forced to introduce valid administrator credentials.
- **asInvoker** - As invoker: This setting allows the installer to execute with the current privileges level. Any user can run the installer without the UAC requesting his credentials.
- **highestAvailable** - Highest available: This setting makes the application to run with the highest privileges the user executing it can obtain. A regular user won't be prompted for credentials (as it cannot raise its privileges) but a member of the Administrators group will be prompted.

Under these circumstances, if you want your installer to do not require administrator privileges, you should configure the settings below in your project:

```
<project>
  ...
  <requireInstallationByRootUser>0</requireInstallationByRootUser>
  <requestedExecutionLevel>asInvoker</requestedExecutionLevel>
  ...
</project>
```

## 13.2 Multiple Instances of the Installer

Sometimes users accidentally launch multiple instances of the installer. In most cases this is not an issue, but if this is an issue for you, you can prevent users from launching the installer multiple times by enabling the `<singleInstanceCheck>` project property:

```
<project>
  ...
  <singleInstanceCheck>1</singleInstanceCheck>
  ...
</project>
```

If the installer is launched a second time while it is still running, it will display a pop-up dialog asking whether or not to continue with the installation.

If you want to prevent more than one instance of the installer from running without giving the choice to the user, you could use the `<singleInstanceCheck>` rule and throw an error:

```
<preInstallationActionList>
  <throwError>
    <text>Another instance is running. This instance will abort</text>
    <ruleList>
      <singleInstanceCheck logic="is_running" />
    </ruleList>
  </throwError>
</preInstallationActionList>
```

## Chapter 14

# Uninstaller

As part of the installation process, an uninstaller executable is created. In fact, two files are created, an executable runtime, the one that the user should invoke to uninstall the application and a data file (usually named `uninstall.dat`), containing information data about the installation (installed files, component selected, value of the variables...). Both files must exist to ensure a correct uninstallation.

By default, the uninstaller will remove all files created by the installer, as well as shortcuts and entries in Start Menu and the Add/Remove Programs menu. The default behavior for the uninstaller is to not remove any files that it did not create. This is intended to prevent accidental removal of user-generated content.

Please also note that actions performed during installation such as `<addDirectoryToPath>` or `<registrySet>` won't be automatically reverted by the uninstaller. They must be manually included in the `<preInstallationActionList>` or `<postInstallationActionList>`. An exception to this rule is the `<createShortcuts>` action, which will register the new shortcuts created in the uninstaller.

It is also possible to allow the uninstallation of individual components as explained in the Adding or removing components to existing installations section.

The uninstaller name and location can be also configured:

```
<project>
...
<uninstallerDirectory>${installdir}/internals/uninstall</uninstallerDirectory>
<uninstallerName>UninstallApplication</uninstallerName>
...
</project>
```

On Windows and OS X, a prefix will be automatically appended to the uninstaller name (.app on OS X and .exe on Windows).

You can even prevent an uninstaller from being created:

```
<project>
...
<createUninstaller>0</createUninstaller>
...
</project>
```

### 14.1 Uninstaller Action Lists

A number of actions can be run as part of the uninstallation process. They are typically used to revert changes performed at installation time: deleting newly created users, removing environment variables, uninstalling services and so on.

- `<preUninstallationActionList>`: Executed when the uninstaller is started. It can be used for example to prompt the end-user to collect information to be used during the uninstall process, stop any running services and so on.

- `<postUninstallationActionList>`: Executed after the main uninstallation process has taken place. It is typically used to delete files and directories not covered by the uninstaller or perform any last-minute cleanups.

If an error is found during uninstallation, it is silently ignored and the uninstallation continues, although the rest of actions are not executed. This behavior is necessary because there is nothing more frustrating to end users than having an uninstaller fail for some minor issue and thus, for example, remain in the Add/Remove Program menu.

In case you need to display an error message and abort the uninstaller, one possible workaround is to combine `<showWarning>` and `<exit>` actions inside an `<actionGroup>`, as shown below:

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <showWarning>
        <text>Program 'foo' is running, aborting uninstallation.</text>
      </showWarning>
      <exit/>
    </actionList>
    <ruleList>
      <processTest name="foo" logic="is_running" />
    </ruleList>
  </actionGroup>
</preUninstallationActionList>
```

Uninstallers only allow minimal configuration and no customization with parameters, though it is possible to use actions to display dialogs. In any case, it is recommended that you do not include complex logic that could break the uninstallation flow and leave the target machine in an inconsistent state.

## 14.2 Marking Additional Files for Deletion

The uninstaller automatically removes all of the files unpacked as part of the installation process.

Only files bundled and unpacked directly by InstallBuilder in the installation step will be uninstalled. For example, if during the installation process your installer uncompresses a zip file, or if the user creates new files by hand, those files will not be removed. However, it is possible to address this in different ways, such as adding `<deleteFile>` actions to the `<preUninstallationActionList>`:

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteFile path="${installdir}/zipContentsDir"/>
</preUninstallationActionList>
```

In general, you should not use `<postUninstallationActionList>` to delete files because at this point, the uninstaller has already tried to delete the installed files. If it found some unexpected files in one of the directories to delete, it will skip deleting that directory, so even after specifically deleting the `${installdir}/zipContentsDir` an empty `${installdir}` will remain.

---

### Note

Sometimes it may be tempting to add something like `<deleteFile path="${installdir}"/>` to the installer logic, to ensure that all files are removed. This is not recommended. If the user accidentally enters "/" or c: as the installation directory, the installer will basically attempt to delete the entire contents of the filesystem.

---

As an alternative, InstallBuilder includes a couple of actions, `<addFilesToUninstaller>` and `<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>` to specifically register external files in the uninstaller so they will be handled as if they were *regularly* unpacked files:

```
<addFilesToUninstaller files="/some/path/to/a/file.txt"/>
```

---

The file will now automatically be removed during the uninstallation process. This action can also be used to register directories, but they will be handled as a single file. For example, if you register a directory `foo` and after the installation the user stores some information there, as the installer just registered the path to delete and not its contents, it will remove the whole directory, independently of the contents.

In some cases, this functionality makes it easier to clean up a directory, without worrying about its contents changing. In other cases a more conservative approach is required, to make sure files are not accidentally removed. In these scenarios you can use the `<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>` action:

```
<addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
  <addContents>1</addContents>
  <files>${installdir}/zipContentsDir</files>
  <matchHiddenFiles>1</matchHiddenFiles>
</addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
```

The above will register all of the contents of the `${installdir}/zipContentsDir` directory with the uninstaller at the time the action was run. If a new file is created afterwards, it will not be removed.

---

#### Note

Files need to exist before they can be added to the uninstaller. If you need to add a file to the uninstaller that does not yet exist, you can work around that by first creating an empty placeholder, as shown below.

```
<touchFile path="/some/path/to/a/file.txt"/>
<addFilesToUninstaller files="/some/path/to/a/file.txt"/>
```

---

## 14.3 Preventing Files from Being Deleted

Conversely there are times when you want to prevent certain files, such as configuration files, from being uninstalled. You can use the `<removeFilesFromUninstaller>` action for this. The following example will prevent any files under the `conf/` directory that exists at the time the action is run from being removed:

```
<removeFilesFromUninstaller files="${installdir}/conf/*" />
```

---

#### Note

The uninstaller is created right after the `<postInstallationActionList>` so this is the last point in the installation lifecycle at which the files to be uninstalled can be modified.

---

## 14.4 Interacting with the End User

An uninstaller cannot contain custom parameters. If you need to request information from the end user, you can use any of the dialogs detailed in the dialogs section. For example, if you need to ask whether certain database data should be deleted as part of the uninstallation, you can do the following:

```
<preUninstallationActionList>
  <showQuestion text="Do you want the uninstallation to also remove the database data?" ↵
    variable="remove_mysql" />
  <deleteFile>
    <path>${installdir}/mysql/data</path>
    <ruleList>
      <compareText text="${remove_mysql}" value="yes" logic="equals" />
    </ruleList>
  </deleteFile>
</preUninstallationActionList>
```

---

## Chapter 15

# Services

Services are long-running applications designed to run in the background without user intervention and that are started automatically when the OS boots. InstallBuilder includes some actions to manage Windows and Linux services.

### 15.1 Linux Services

- `<addUnixService>`: This action allow users to add services to the system:

```
<addUnixService>
  <program>/path/to/script</program>
  <name>myservice</name>
</addUnixService>
```

The provided `<program>` must be a valid init script. As a basic example of code you could use is:

```
#!/sbin/sh

start () {
    # Put here the command to start your application
}

stop () {
    # Put here the command to stop your application
}

case "$1" in
start)
    start
    ;;
stop)
    stop
    ;;
restart)
    stop
    sleep 1
    start
    ;;
*)
    echo "Usage: $0 { start | stop | restart }"
    exit 1
    ;;
esac
```

```
exit 0
```

You can find other examples under `/etc/init.d/` in a Linux installation.

- `<removeUnixService>`: This action allows you remove an existing service:

```
<removeUnixService>
  <name>myservice</name>
</removeUnixService>
```

## 15.2 Windows Services

- `<createWindowsService>`: This action allows users to add services to the system:

```
<createWindowsService>
  <program>${installdir}/myapp.exe</program>
  <programArguments></programArguments>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
  <startType>auto</startType>
  <description>My Sample Service</description>
  <dependencies></dependencies>
  <account></account>
  <password></password>
</createWindowsService>
```

This will cause a service identified by `<serviceName>` and with display name `<displayName>` to be created. When starting, `myapp.exe` will be run from the application installation directory.

`<startType>` specifies that the service should be started along with operating system. It takes one of the following values:

- **auto** - automatically start the service when the operating system is restarted.
- **manual** - service does not start with the operating system, but can be manually started from the control panel and using the API
- **disabled** - service does not start with the operating system and it cannot be manually started from the control panel or using the API.

By default, the service will be run as the system user. In order to run the service under a specific account, the `<account>` and `<password>` fields need to contain a valid user and password.

- `<deleteWindowsService>`: This action removes an existing service.

```
<deleteWindowsService>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
</deleteWindowsService>
```

Deletes the service identified by `<serviceName>` and with the display name `<displayName>`. Both fields are used for identification of services on Microsoft Windows.

A service is stopped before deletion if it is currently running.

- `<startWindowsService>`: This action allows starting an existing service.
-



```
<startWindowsService>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
  <delay>15000</delay>
</startWindowsService>
```

Starts the service identified by `<serviceName>` and with the display name `<displayName>`. Both fields are used for identification of services on Microsoft Windows.

`<delay>` specifies the number of milliseconds to wait for the service to start.

- `<stopWindowsService>`: This action allows stopping an existing service:

```
<stopWindowsService>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
  <delay>15000</delay>
</stopWindowsService>
```

`<delay>` specifies amount of milliseconds to wait for the service to stop.

- `<restartWindowsService>`: This action allows restarting an existing service:

```
<restartWindowsService>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
  <delay>15000</delay>
</restartWindowsService>
```

Stops service identified by `<serviceName>` and with display name `<displayName>`. Both fields are used for identification of services on Microsoft Windows.

`<delay>` specifies amount of milliseconds to wait for the service to stop and start.

InstallBuilder also provides a rule to check the status/existence of Windows services, `<windowsServiceTest>`. This can be used for example to create a service, but only if it does not already exist:

```
<createWindowsService>
  <program>${installdir}/myService.exe</program>
  <programArguments></programArguments>
  <serviceName>myservice</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Service</displayName>
  <startType>auto</startType>
  <description>My Service</description>
  <dependencies></dependencies>
  <account>bitrock</account>
  <password>mySecRetPassword!!</password>
  <ruleList>
    <windowsServiceTest service="myservice" condition="not_exists"/>
  </ruleList>
</createWindowsService>
```

InstallBuilder also provides an automatic way of generating unique Windows service names following a specified pattern. This is useful for situations in which you need to install multiple services.

```
<getUniqueWindowsServiceName>
  <serviceName>foo</serviceName>
  <displayName>My Foo service</displayName>
  <selectedDisplayNameVariable>newDisplayName</selectedDisplayNameVariable>
  <selectedServiceNameVariable>newServiceName</selectedServiceNameVariable>
```

```

</getUniqueWindowsServiceName>

<createWindowsService>
  <program>${installdir}/myService.exe</program>
  <programArguments></programArguments>
  <serviceName>${newServiceName}</serviceName>
  <displayName>${newDisplayName}</displayName>
  <startType>auto</startType>
  <description>My Service</description>
  <dependencies></dependencies>
  <account>bitrock</account>
  <password>mySecRetPassword!!</password>
</createWindowsService>

```

If the service `foo` already exists, InstallBuilder will pick a new service name, `foo-1`, if that is taken as well, `foo-2`, `foo-3` and so on... until a valid unique name is found, storing the new names in the provided `<selectedDisplayNameVariable>` and `<selectedServiceNameVariable>`.

### 15.2.1 Using regular binaries as Windows services

Services in Microsoft Windows require binaries created especially for running as a service and need to properly support being stopped, started, paused and resumed.

In some cases it is necessary to run binaries that were not created for running as a service. It is possible to use third party tools to run applications as services. This way any application or script can be used as a Windows service. There are multiple solutions for running any application as a script. Microsoft provides `srvany.exe` tool that can be used for creating services from any application. It is described on Microsoft's website: <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/137890>. The binary simply runs itself as a service and starts application as child process. However, `srvany` cannot be easily redistributed due to licensing issues.

Another tool is `ServiceEx.exe`. It is a single file application that can be redistributed with your installer. The binary can be downloaded from <http://serviceex.com/>.

The first step is to add `ServiceEx.exe` to the installer's payload. It can be done as part of existing component or as new component:

```

<component>
  <name>serviceex</name>
  <description>ServiceEx</description>
  <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
  <selected>1</selected>
  <show>0</show>
  <folderList>
    <folder>
      <description>ServiceEx</description>
      <destination>${installdir}</destination>
      <name>serviceex</name>
      <platforms>windows</platforms>
      <distributionFileList>
        <distributionFile>
          <origin>/path/to/ServiceEx.exe</origin>
        </distributionFile>
      </distributionFileList>
    </folder>
  </folderList>
</component>

```

The next step is to add actions to the post-installation step that creates a service. The service name is set to the `servicename` variable. The `${servicename}.ini` file is written to as well. It defines how a service should be run. Finally, the `ServiceEx.exe install ${servicename}` command creates and runs the service. The `${servicename}.ini` file is also added for uninstallation.

```

<postInstallationActionList>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>servicename</name>
    <persist>1</persist>
    <value>IBSampleService</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <writeFile>
    <encoding>iso8859-1</encoding>
    <path>${installdir}/${servicename}.ini</path>
    <text>[ServiceEx]
ServiceExeFullPath = "${installdir}\myapp.exe"
options = "--silent"
desktop = false
Start=Auto
StartNow=true</text>
  </writeFile>
  <runProgram>
    <program>${installdir}/ServiceEx.exe</program>
    <programArguments>install "${servicename}"</programArguments>
    <workingDirectory>${installdir}</workingDirectory>
  </runProgram>
  <addFilesToUninstaller>
    <files>${installdir}/${servicename}.ini</files>
  </addFilesToUninstaller>
</postInstallationActionList>

```

When the application is uninstalled, <deleteWindowsService> needs to be called to delete the service.

```

<preUninstallationActionList>
  <deleteWindowsService>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <displayName></displayName>
    <serviceName>${servicename}</serviceName>
  </deleteWindowsService>
</preUninstallationActionList>

```

## 15.3 OS X Services

- <createOSXService>: This action allows users to add services to the system:

```

<createOSXService>
  <groupname>wheel</groupname>
  <username>daemon</username>
  <program>${installdir}/myService.run</program>
  <programArguments></programArguments>
  <scope>user</scope>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
</createOSXService>

```

- <deleteOSXService>: This action allows removing an existing service:

```

<deleteOSXService>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
</deleteOSXService>

```

Deletes a service on Mac OS X identified by <serviceName>, which contains the unique identifier of services for Mac OS X. The service is stopped before deletion if it is currently running.

- `<stopOSXService>`: This action allows stopping an existing service:

```
<stopOSXService>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
</stopOSXService>
```

This stops service on Mac OS X identified as `serviceName`. It is the unique identifier of services for Mac OS X.

- `<startOSXService>`: This action allows starting an existing service:

```
<startOSXService>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
</startOSXService>
```

This starts service on Mac OS X identified as `serviceName`. It is the unique identifier of services for Mac OS X.

---

#### Note

OS X service management actions are only supported from OS X 10.4 and newer

---



---

#### Note

As a prerequisite, the program to be registered as a service must be compiled to run as a daemon

---

InstallBuilder also provides a rule to check the status of OS X services, `<osxServiceTest>`:

```
<stopOSXService>
  <serviceName>myService</serviceName>
  <ruleList>
    <osxServiceTest service="myService" condition="is_running"/>
  </ruleList>
</stopOSXService>
```

### 15.3.1 Adding an Application to the System Startup

There are multiple ways of launching an application at startup on OS X, and it can vary from version to version of the operating system. This section describes the most general/compatible ones:

- **Changing the user Preferences files:** This is the approach followed when manually adding an application to the Startup items. To do this, add a new entry to the `~/Library/Preferences/loginwindow.plist` file with the below format:

```
<plist version="1.0">
  <dict>
    <key>Label</key>
    <string>nameOfTheEntry</string>
    <key>ProgramArguments</key>
    <array>
      <string>/some/path/to/the/program.run</string>
      <string>/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt 7.2.5/autoupdate/runtimes/ ↔
        autoupdate-osx.a\
pp</string>
    </array>
    <key>KeepAlive</key>
    <true/>
    <key>Hide</key>
    <true/>
```

---

```
<key>RunAtLoad</key>
<true/>
</dict>
</plist>
```

- **Creating a launchd daemon:** This approach is the preferred one when you do not have to support OS X versions below 10.4. Using this method you still need to create a .plist file in the same format as the one described in the previous method. Once you have it created, you just have to move it to `/Library/LaunchDaemons/`:

```
$> sudo cp startup.plist /Library/LaunchDaemons/com.yourCompany.yourProgram.plist
```

Following the same naming in the target file is important to avoid conflicts in the future.

After restarting the machine, the new process should be running.

The code to automate this method in InstallBuilder would be:

```
<writeFile>
  <path>${system_temp_directory}/your.plist</path>
  <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
  <text><![CDATA[
<plist version="1.0">
  <dict>
    <key>Label</key>
    <string>nameOfTheEntry</string>
    <key>ProgramArguments</key>
    <array>
      <string>/some/path/to/the/program.run</string>
      <string>/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt 7.2.5/autoupdate/runtimes/ ↵
        autoupdate-osx.app</string>
    </array>
    <key>KeepAlive</key>
    <true/>
    <key>Hide</key>
    <true/>
    <key>RunAtLoad</key>
    <true/>
  </dict>
</plist>
]]></text>
</writeFile>
<copyFile>
  <origin>${system_temp_directory}/your.plist</origin>
  <destination>/Library/LaunchDaemons/com.yourCompany.yourProgram.plist</destination>
</copyFile>
```

- **Creating a Startup Item:** If your application requires compatibility with OS X 10.3 and earlier, this is the only available approach. The steps to follow are:

Create a directory under `/Library/StartupItems` with the name of the startup item:

```
$> sudo mkdir /Library/StartupItems/yourItem
```

Create an executable with the same name of the directory. This executable can be just a bash script wrapping the your binary:

```
$> sudo touch /Library/StartupItems/yourItem/yourItem
```

The `yourItem` script should implement the below functions (you can leave the body blank if they are not applicable to your startup item):

```
#!/bin/sh
. /etc/rc.common

StartService ()
{
    /Applications/yourApplication-1.0/ctl.sh start
}

StopService ()
{
    /Applications/yourApplication-1.0/ctl.sh stop
}

RestartService ()
{
    /Applications/yourApplication-1.0/ctl.sh graceful
}

RunService "$1"
```

Create a .plist file named `StartupParameters.plist` with some information about your item:

```
<plist version="1.0">
<dict>
    <key>Description</key>
    <string>My Application v1.0</string>
    <key>OrderPreference</key>
    <string>None</string>
    <key>Provides</key>
    <array>
        <string>yourItem</string>
    </array>
</dict>
</plist>
```

It can be tested by executing:

```
$> sudo /sbin/SystemStarter start "yourItem"
```

## Chapter 16

# Code Signing

### 16.1 OS X

Starting with OS X 10.8, Apple has tightened its security policies through the inclusion of "Gatekeeper". This new feature is intended to protect users from malicious software by only allowing applications from the Apple Store or signed by a registered Apple Developer to be installed. This security policy (the default one) can be relaxed to allow any application to be installed but the process is not straightforward and most users will not be willing to do that.

This milestone in the story of OS X makes it mandatory for you to sign your installers and InstallBuilder makes this process easy.

The first step in the process is for you to become a registered Apple Developer and request a signing certificate. You can follow the steps to request and install your certificates in the Apple Documentation: [developer.apple.com/library/mac/](https://developer.apple.com/library/mac/). After installing your certificate, you can proceed to integrate it into the build process.

InstallBuilder supports two modes of signing OS X installers. When building on OS X, if you provide the `<osxSigningIdentity>` setting, the builder will try to use the installed `codesign` tool in the system. If you are building on a different platform, or the builder fails to validate the provided signing identity, it will check if `<osxSigningPkcs12File>` is provided, and use the built in signing mechanism, not dependant on installed tools, if it is.

As a summary, on OS X, `<osxSigningIdentity>` takes precedence over `<osxSigningPkcs12File>`, and is completely ignored in other supported platforms (Windows and Linux).

#### 16.1.1 Built-in signing code

When providing the `<osxSigningPkcs12File>` setting, InstallBuilder will use its multiplatform built-in signing mechanism. The advantage of this mode of operation is that it allows building and signing your OS X installers in any of the supported platforms: Linux, OS X and Windows. You could even combine it with the Native codesign Mode so the builder will use it on OS X and fallback to the built-in mode on the rest of platforms.

To enable it, you just need to provide the path to the PKCS#12 file containing your signing certificate (check How to export your signing certificate as a PKCS#12 file for a detailed explanation about how to get it from your Keychain):

```
<project>
...
<osxSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/osx-signing.p12</osxSigningPkcs12File>
...
</project>
```

When building, the builder will prompt you to enter the password to unlock the PKCS#12 file, and sign the installer. You could also provide the password through the `<osxSigningPkcs12Password>` tag.

```
<project>
...
```

```

    <osxSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/osx-signing.p12</osxSigningPkcs12File>
    <osxSigningPkcs12Password>somEPa55woRd!</osxSigningPkcs12Password>
    ...
</project>

```

However, providing the hardcoded password is discouraged. This method is intended to ease the automation of the process, for example, providing the password as an environment variable. For example, if you define an environment variable `OSX_SIGNING_PASSWORD` with the value of your password, you could then use the below code:

```

<project>
    ...
    <osxSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/osx-signing.p12</osxSigningPkcs12File>
    <osxSigningPkcs12Password>${env(OSX_SIGNING_PASSWORD)}</osxSigningPkcs12Password>
    ...
</project>

```

The builder will then use the value instead of asking you to enter the password interactively. If then you try to build without defining the variable, the builder will simply ask for it.

Finally, you can also configure whether to timestamp or not the signature and which server to use using the `<osxSigningTimestampServer>` tag. OS X signatures are timestamped by default so its default value is set to `http://timestamp.apple.com/ts01` even if no value is provided but you could set it any other server supporting RFC 3161 standard:

```

<project>
    ...
    <osxSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/osx-signing.p12</osxSigningPkcs12File>
    <osxSigningPkcs12Password>${env(OSX_SIGNING_PASSWORD)}</osxSigningPkcs12Password>
    <osxSigningTimestampServer>http://timestamp.example.org/req</osxSigningTimestampServer>
    ...
</project>

```

Or even disable it by emptying it:

```

<project>
    ...
    <osxSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/osx-signing.p12</osxSigningPkcs12File>
    <osxSigningPkcs12Password>${env(OSX_SIGNING_PASSWORD)}</osxSigningPkcs12Password>
    <osxSigningTimestampServer></osxSigningTimestampServer>
    ...
</project>

```

#### 16.1.1.1 How to export your signing certificate as a PKCS#12 file

The first step will be to locate your signing certificate on the Keychain Access application. If you did not create a separated keychain for it, it will be typically located in your login keychain. The certificate to export should be named similar to Developer ID Application:Your Company (XXXXXXXXXX), where the string between the parentheses will be your Team ID. You may also have another certificate named Developer ID Installer:Your Company (XXXXXXXXXX) but we are not interested in that one.



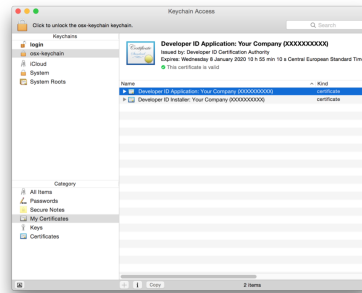


Figure 16.1: Export Keychain 1

Right-click on the Developer ID Application certificate and select Export from the contextual menu:

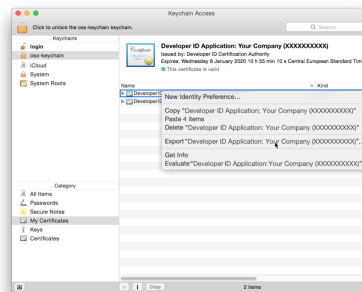


Figure 16.2: Export Keychain 2

In the new popup, make sure you select "Personal Information Exchange (.p12)" as the file format, select a path to save it, and click save:

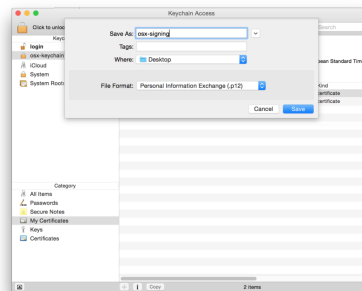


Figure 16.3: Export Keychain 3

You will now be prompted to enter a new password for the exported PKCS#12 file. This password will protect your signing certificate and private key so you should select an strong password:

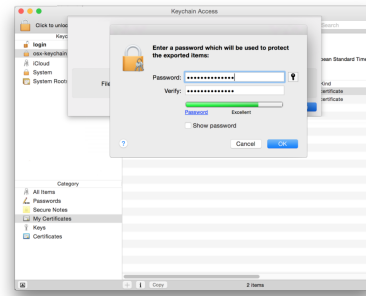


Figure 16.4: Export Keychain 4

The new PKCS#12 file is now ready to be used in InstallBuilder

### 16.1.2 Native codesign mode

This mode of signing is only supported on OS X and requires a working `codesign` installation (with usually requires a modern Xcode plus the command line tools add-on). As this method calls `codesign` internally, it has the advantage of being able to adapt to future changes in the signature format by Apple (if those changes do not affect how the tool should be called). This is the recommended method if you are building on OS X.

InstallBuilder defines a set of properties to configure for the signing process. The minimum set of properties you should configure in your project is:

- `<osxSigningIdentity>`: This is the "Common Name" of your Apple Developer certificate. It is usually called `Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company`. The signing process is enabled by completing this field and is the only one truly mandatory.
- `<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>`: The unique identifier of the application, formatted in reverse-DNS format. It is not required to be customized to allow the signing of your application but InstallBuilder uses the same one for all generated installers (`com.bitrock.appinstaller`) so you should provide one that matches your company name and application. For example, if your company domain name is `example.com`, and your application is named "Foo Bar Editor", you should use `com.example.foo-bar-editor`. This identifier can be also registered using the Developer Certificate Utility.

```
<project>
...
<osxSigningIdentity>Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company</osxSigningIdentity>
<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>com.example.foo-bar-editor</ ←
  osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>
...
</project>
```

You can now launch the build process and the builder will try to sign the installer (please note that this process is only allowed on OS X). If your keychain requires a password to access your keys, you will get a dialog requesting it. After introducing it, the build process will continue.

The builder will attempt to sign all of the InstallBuilder binaries under `sample.app/Contents/MacOS` and the full application bundle after the `<postBuildActionList>`. This gives you the opportunity to modify the generated installer before the application is signed and sealed. For example, you could add a README file:

```
<project>
...
<osxSigningIdentity>Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company</osxSigningIdentity>
<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>com.example.foo-bar-editor</ ←
  osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>
```

```

...
<postBuildActionList>
  <copyFile origin="{build_project_directory}/README" destination="{
    installbuilder_install_root}/output/{project.installerFilename}/Contents/
    Resources/" />
</postBuildActionList>
</project>

```

The signing of the bundle will be performed after copying the file so that the signature won't be broken.

### 16.1.2.1 Configuring the resource rules

With the default settings, only files under `sample.app/Contents/Resources/` and the bundle executable (`Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh`) are sealed so files under `sample.app/Contents/MacOS/` can be modified, added or deleted and the signature will still be valid. You can view which files were sealed by checking the `CodeResources` file:

```

$ cat sample.app/Contents/_CodeSignature/CodeResources
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE plist PUBLIC "-//Apple//DTD PLIST 1.0//EN" "http://www.apple.com/DTDs/
  PropertyList-1.0.dtd">
<plist version="1.0">
<dict>
  <key>files</key>
  <dict>
    <key>Resources/installbuilder.icns</key>
    <data>
      kn13x4a9iiwHbg2lZg9vrUK9Hus=
    </data>
  </dict>
  <key>rules</key>
  <dict>
    <key>^Resources/</key>
    <true/>
    ...
  </dict>
</dict>
</plist>

```

To resolve this, you must provide your own resource rules when signing using the `<osxSigningResourceRulesFile>`:

```

<project>
...
<osxSigningIdentity>Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company</osxSigningIdentity>
<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>com.example.foo-bar-editor</
  osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>
<osxSigningResourceRulesFile>{build_project_directory}/resource-rules.plist</
  osxSigningResourceRulesFile>
...
</project>

```

To also seal the runtimes, you may use the following:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE plist PUBLIC "-//Apple//DTD PLIST 1.0//EN" "http://www.apple.com/DTDs/
  PropertyList-1.0.dtd">
<plist version="1.0">
<dict>
  <key>rules</key>
  <dict>
    <key>^MacOS/</key>
    <true/>

```

```

<key>^Resources/</key>
<true/>
<key>^Resources/.*\..lproj/</key>
<dict>
  <key>optional</key>
  <true/>
  <key>weight</key>
  <real>1000</real>
</dict>
<key>^Resources/.*\..lproj/locversion.plist$</key>
<dict>
  <key>omit</key>
  <true/>
  <key>weight</key>
  <real>1100</real>
</dict>
<key>^version.plist$</key>
<true/>
</dict>
</dict>
</plist>

```

By using these new rules you ensure that no one can modify your application. For example, just adding a new file will invalidate the signature:

```

$ codesign -vvv sample-1.0-osx-installer.app
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: satisfies its Designated Requirement
$ echo foo >> sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/bar
$ codesign -vvv sample-1.0-osx-installer.app
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: a sealed resource is missing or invalid
resource added: sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/bar

```

### 16.1.2.2 Configuring the Keychain

By default, InstallBuilder will try to locate your keys under the system keychain paths but you can also configure your project to use a custom one. This is very useful when, for example, you don't want to install your keys on any machine and instead keep them in a safe location, such as a USB drive. To do that, use `<osxSigningKeychainFile>`:

```

<project>
...
<osxSigningIdentity>Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company</osxSigningIdentity>
<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>com.example.foo-bar-editor</ ←
  osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>
<osxSigningResourceRulesFile>${build_project_directory}/resource-rules.plist</ ←
  osxSigningResourceRulesFile>
<osxSigningKeychainFile>/Volumes/secure/secure.keychain</osxSigningKeychainFile>
...
</project>

```

It is also recommended that you password-protect the keychain with a strong password. Note that if you are using a headless server, OS X won't be able to show the password dialog and the process will fail:

```

Builder.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh build ~/sample.xml

Building Sample Project osx
0% _____ 50% _____ 100%
#####
Warning: Error signing installer: sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: User interaction is not ←
allowed.

```

To resolve this, you can unlock the keychain from the command line in the `<preBuildActionList>`:

```
<project>
...
<osxSigningIdentity>Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company</osxSigningIdentity>
<osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>com.example.foo-bar-editor</ ←
  osxApplicationBundleIdentifier>
<osxSigningResourceRulesFile>${build_project_directory}/resource-rules.plist</ ←
  osxSigningResourceRulesFile>
<osxSigningKeychainFile>/Volumes/secure/secure.keychain</osxSigningKeychainFile>
...
<preBuildActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>security</program>
    <programArguments>unlock-keychain -p '${password.password}' "${project. ←
      osxSigningKeychainFile}"</programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</preBuildActionList>
...
</project>
```

And then launch the process as:

```
Builder.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh build ~/sample.xml --setvars password=' ←
  This1sav3ry&5ecur3pa55w0rd!'

Building Sample Project osx
0% _____ 50% _____ 100%
#####
```

### 16.1.3 Validating the signature

You can validate that the application was properly signed by executing the following command:

```
$ codesign -vvv sample-1.0-osx-installer.app
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: satisfies its Designated Requirement
```

You can also check that all of the runtimes have been signed:

```
$ codesign -vvv sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/*
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder: satisfies its Designated ←
  Requirement
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/installbuilder.sh: satisfies its Designated ←
  Requirement
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-10.2: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-10.2: satisfies its Designated Requirement
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-intel: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-intel: satisfies its Designated Requirement
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-ppc: valid on disk
sample-1.0-osx-installer.app/Contents/MacOS/osx-ppc: satisfies its Designated Requirement
```

You can also make sure the signed bundle is valid using the `spctl` tool on OS X:

```
$ spctl -a -t exec -vvvv sample-1.0-osx-installer.app
/Users/bitrock/sample-1.0-osx-installer.app: accepted
source=Developer ID
origin=Developer ID Application: Name of Your Company
```

**object file format unrecognized, invalid, or unsuitable**

If you get this error while signing your installer you will need to upgrade your Xcode version to 4.4 and install the "Command Line Tools" add-on

**The signing process is just allowed on OS X**

The OS X `codesign` tool is required for the signing so the signing process is only allowed on OS X.

**16.1.4 Signing an already-built installer**

InstallBuilder also includes a command line tool to simplify the process of signing already-built installers. You can find it under the `tools` folder in the installation directory. Executing it without arguments will display the help menu:

```
$ tools/code-signing/osx/osxsigner

Usage:

/Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt 8.5.0/tools/code-signing/osx/osxsigner [options ↵
] /path/to/application.app

--help                                Display the list of valid options

--identity <identity>                 Identity used to sign the application bundle
                                     Default:

--identifier <identifier>             Identifier used to sign the installer. If empty, the ↵
                                     CFBundleIdentifier of the bundle will be used
                                     Default:

--keychain <keychain>                 External keychain used to look for the identity
                                     Default:

--keychain-password <keychain-password> Password to unlock the specified keychain
                                     Default:

--output <output>                     Directory in which to write the signed application. If ↵
                                     empty, the application will be written in the same directory as the original with the ↵
                                     '-signed' suffix appended
                                     Default:

--skip-runtimes                        Just sign the Application Bundle and not the runtimes under ↵
                                     Contents/MacOS

--debuglevel <debuglevel>             Debug information level of verbosity
                                     Default: 2
                                     Allowed: 0 1 2 3 4

--resource-rules <resource-rules>     Path to a .plist file containing custom resource rules
```

You can replicate the same settings used in the previous section project by executing:

```
$ tools/code-signing/osx/osxsigner --identity "Developer ID Application: Name of Your ↵
Company" --identifier "com.example.foo-bar-editor" \
--keychain "/Volumes/secure/secure.keychain" --keychain-password 'Thls1sav3ry&5 ↵
ecur3pa55w0rd!' --output /tmp/signed \
--resource-rules "resource-rules.plist" sample-1.0-installer.app
Signing app bundle /Applications/BitRock InstallBuilder for Qt 8.3.0/output/sample-1.0-osx- ↵
installer-signed.app
```

Done!

## 16.2 Microsoft Windows

InstallBuilder is also able to sign Windows installers provided with a PKCS#12 or PFX file containing your signing certificate and keys. Windows, Linux and OS X build platforms are currently supported so you are not longer forced to use Windows to integrate the build and signing of your installers.

To use it, you just need to add the `<windowsSigningPkcs12File>` tag:

```
<project>
...
  <windowsSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/windows-signing.p12</ ↵
    windowsSigningPkcs12File>
...
</project>
```

When building, the builder will ask you to enter the password to unlock the certificate. Similarly to the built-in OS X signing, you can also provide it using the `<windowsSigningPkcs12Password>` tag, either by hardcoding it (NOT RECOMMENDED!) or by setting an environment variable to look for the password when building:

```
<project>
...
  <windowsSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/windows-signing.p12</ ↵
    windowsSigningPkcs12File>
  <windowsSigningPkcs12Password>${env (WINDOWS_SIGNING_PASSWORD)}</ ↵
    windowsSigningPkcs12Password>
...
</project>
```

You can also specify a timestamp server supporting RFC 3161 standard. For example, you could try [tsa.safecreative.org](http://tsa.safecreative.org), which allows a limited usage of 5 timestamps per day and IP:

```
<project>
...
  <windowsSigningPkcs12File>${build_project_directory}/windows-signing.p12</ ↵
    windowsSigningPkcs12File>
  <windowsSigningPkcs12Password>${env (WINDOWS_SIGNING_PASSWORD)}</ ↵
    windowsSigningPkcs12Password>
  <windowsSigningTimestampServer>http://tsa.safecreative.org</ ↵
    windowsSigningTimestampServer>
...
</project>
```

---

### InstallBuilder and OSSLSigncode

InstallBuilder uses [OSSLSigncode](#) tool to sign Windows installers. The tool can be found in the installation directory, in the tools folder.

---

### 16.2.1 Manually signing Windows Installers

If you want to further customize the signing settings, you could also call either `osslsigncode` tool or Microsoft `signtool` command-line utility (part of the Visual Studio and Windows SDK packages) in the `<postBuildActionList>`:

---

```
<postBuildActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>${installbuilder_install_root}/tools/osslsigncode/bin/osslsigncode.exe</
      program>
    <programArguments>-in "${installbuilder_install_root}/${project.installerFilename}"
      -out "${installbuilder_install_root}/signed/${project.installerFilename}" -
      pkcs12 certfile.pfx -readpass /path/to/passwordfile</programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</postBuildActionList>
```

You can find a detailed explanation about its usage in its README: <http://sourceforge.net/projects/osslsigncode/files/osslsigncode/>

The following example shows how `signtool` can be used to digitally sign an installer as part of the `<postBuildActionList>`:

```
<postBuildActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>/path/to/signtool</program>
    <programArguments>sign /d "${project.fullName}" /f certfile.pfx "${
      installbuilder_install_root}/${project.installerFilename}"</programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</postBuildActionList>
```

The detailed syntax of the `signtool` command can be found on MSDN:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/8s9b9yaz.aspx>

A limitation of this tool is that it does not allow re-signing an installer. Therefore, performing multiple quick builds would fail, as the tool would try to sign the same installer multiple times. For testing purposes, it may be convenient to only sign the output binary if certain flag is set - such as:

```
<postBuildActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>/path/to/signtool</program>
    <programArguments>sign /d "${project.fullName}" /f certfile.pfx "${
      installbuilder_install_root}/${project.installerFilename}"</programArguments>
    <ruleList>
      <isTrue value="${runSignTool}" />
    </ruleList>
  </runProgram>
</postBuildActionList>
```

This will only sign the binary if the `runSignTool` variable is set. A final build could be then run in the following way:

```
C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder\bin\builder-cli.exe build /path/to/project
.xml windows --setvars runSignTool=1
```

While regular use of the builder GUI and CLI modes will not cause the target binary to be signed.



## Chapter 17

# File associations

In some scenarios is necessary to register a new file extension to be opened with the installed application or to modify an existing one. This section explains how to achieve this in the most common platforms.

### 17.1 Windows file associations

On Windows, InstallBuilder includes a built-in action to register new file extensions, `<associateWindowsFileExtension>`.

The code below creates a new extension named `.myextension` and associates it to the `yourprogram.exe` application:

```
<associateWindowsFileExtension>
  <extensions>.myextension</extensions>
  <progID>mycompany.package.4</progID>
  <icon>${installdir}\images\myicon.ico</icon>
  <mimeType>example/mycompany-package-myextension</mimeType>
  <commandList>
    <!-- Defining the 'Open' command -->
    <command>
      <verb>Open</verb>
      <runProgram>${installdir}\yourprogram.exe</runProgram>
      <runProgramArguments>"%1"</runProgramArguments>
    </command>
  </commandList>
</associateWindowsFileExtension>
```

Where its tags are:

- `<icon>`: Path to the icon file that contains the icon to display.
- `<friendlyName>`: Friendly Name for the progID.
- `<commandList>`: List of commands that can be invoked on each given file type.
- `<extensions>`: Space-separated list of extensions for which the given commands will be available.
- `<progID>`: Programmatic Identifier to which the extensions are attached, contains the available commands to be invoked on each file type. The proper format of a `<progID>` key name is `[Vendor or Application].[Component].[Version]`, separated by periods and with no spaces, as in `Word.Document.6`. The Version portion is optional but strongly recommended.
- `<mimeType>`: MIME type associated to all the file extensions.

For each list of extensions defined, you can add multiple commands to execute. The example creates a new command with verb "Open" (it will be displayed in the right-click contextual menu) that will call the `${installdir}\yourprogram.exe` passing the file to open as an argument.

The `<runProgramArguments>` tag allow some specifiers, like the `%1` in the example:

- `%1` : is replaced by the short name of the file being executed
- `%L` : is replaced by the long name
- `%*` : is replaced by the name of any arguments to the file

InstallBuilder also includes an action to remove the association in the uninstaller:

```
<removeWindowsFileAssociation>
  <extensions>.myextension</extensions>
  <progID>mycompany.package.4</progID>
  <mimeType>example/mycompany-package-myextension</mimeType>
</removeWindowsFileAssociation>
```

## 17.2 Linux file associations

Linux systems use the XDG standard. This way you can abstract from the Desktop environment your customer is running if it supports the standard.

The process to create a new file association is more verbose than the Windows process but it is still pretty straight forward.

- Create a new mime-type: This is only necessary if you are creating a new extension. If you are assigning an existing extension, you can skip this part. The first step is to create an XML file describing the new mime type:

```
<!-- bitock-x-my-mime.xml file -->
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<mime-info xmlns='http://www.freedesktop.org/standards/shared-mime-info'>
  <mime-type type="application/x-my-mime">
    <comment>My new file type</comment>
    <glob pattern="*.mymime"/>
  </mime-type>
</mime-info>
```

The above file describes your new mime type, `application/x-my-mime`, associated with the extension `.mymime`.

Once you have the file ready, it must be registered using the XDG tools:

```
$> xdg-mime install /path/to/bitock-x-my-mime.xml
```

The filename must start with the vendor, followed by a dash. This information is used to prevent conflicts. It could also be skipped adding the `--novendor` flag.

The process can be also automated with InstallBuilder:

```
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <writeFile>
      <path>${installdir}/${project.vendor}-x-my-mime.xml</path>
      <!-- The CDATA notation allow escaping a
           block of XML characters -->
      <text><![CDATA[
<!-- bitock-x-my-mime.xml file -->
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<mime-info xmlns='http://www.freedesktop.org/standards/shared-mime-info'>
```

```

<mime-type type="application/x-my-mime">
  <comment>My new file type</comment>
  <glob pattern="*.mymime"/>
</mime-type>
</mime-info>
  ]]></text>
  </writeFile>
  <runProgram>
    <program>xdg-mime</program>
    <programArguments>install ${installdir}/${project.vendor}-x-my-mime.xml</ ←
      programArguments>
  </runProgram>
</actionList>
</actionGroup>

```

- **Create a .desktop file for your application:** The file can be created under ~/.local/share/applications/ (for one user) or /usr/share/applications (for all users):

```

<writeFile>
  <path>~/.local/share/applications/yourApplication.desktop</path>
  <encoding>utf-8</encoding>
  <text>
[Desktop Entry]
Version=1.0
Encoding=UTF-8
Name=Your App
GenericName=Your App
Comment=Your Registered Application
Exec=${installdir}/yourApplication.bin
Terminal=false
Type=Application
Categories=Application;Utility;TextEditor;
MimeType=application/x-my-mime
  </text>
</writeFile>

```

The new application must specify support for your mime type in the MimeType key.

- **Make the new registered application the default for your extension:**

```

<runProgram>
  <program>xdg-mime</program>
  <programArguments>default yourApplication.desktop application/x-my-mime</ ←
    programArguments>
</runProgram>

```

To reverse the new register association in the uninstaller, add the code below to your project:

```

<preUninstallationActionList>
  <runProgram>
    <program>xdg-mime</program>
    <programArguments>uninstall ${installdir}/${project.vendor}-x-my-mime.xml</ ←
      programArguments>
  </runProgram>
  <deleteFile path=~/.local/share/applications/yourApplication.desktop"/>
</preUninstallationActionList>

```

## 17.3 OS X file associations

On OS X, associating an extension with an installed application is as easy as executing:

```
$> defaults write com.apple.LaunchServices.LSHandlers -array-add "<dict><key> ↵
    LSHandlerContentTag</key>
<string>myextension</string><key>LSHandlerContentTagClass</key>
<string>public.filename-extension</string><key>LSHandlerRoleAll</key>
<string>com.yourVendor.yourApplication</string></dict>"

$> /System/Library/Frameworks/CoreServices.framework/Versions/A/Frameworks/LaunchServices. ↵
framework/Versions/A/Support/lsregister -kill -domain local -domain system -domain user
```

Where the extension (myextension) must be provided without any leading dot and com.yourVendor.yourApplication is the CFBundleIdentifier key of your application (configured in its Info.plist file).

The below code performs the same process using InstallBuilder:

```
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <runProgram>
      <program>defaults</program>
      <!-- The CDATA notation allow escaping a
           block of XML characters -->
      <programArguments>write com.apple.LaunchServices.LSHandlers -array-add <![CDATA ↵
        ["<dict><key>LSHandlerContentTag</key>
<string>myextension</string><key>LSHandlerContentTagClass</key>
<string>public.filename-extension</string><key>LSHandlerRoleAll</key>
<string>com.yourVendor.yourApplication</string></dict>"
        ]]></programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <!-- Restart the launch services to reload the configuration -->
    <runProgram>
      <program>/System/Library/Frameworks/CoreServices.framework/Versions/A/ ↵
        Frameworks/LaunchServices.framework/Versions/A/Support/lsregister</program>
      <programArguments>-kill -domain local -domain system -domain user</ ↵
        programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
</actionGroup>
```

## Chapter 18

# Java

### 18.1 Java Specific Actions

**Java (tm) Autodetection** The `<autodetectJava>` action attempts to automatically locate an existing Java (tm) installation in the system. If found, it creates a set of installer variables that contain the location and version of the executable.

The action is usually placed in the `<preInstallationActionList>` and if no valid JRE is found, the installer will abort with an error listing the supported JREs.

The `<autodetectJava>` properties are:

- `<promptUser>`: Prompt user to choose appropriate version
- `<selectionOrder>`: Order of the Java versions detected
- `<validVersionList>`: List of supported Java versions

The allowed Java versions are defined using the `<validVersion>` element, which are included in the `<validVersionList>`. Each of these versions contain the following fields:

- `<vendor>`: Java VM vendor to allow. The allowed values are: `sun` (to allow only Sun Microsystems JREs), `ibm` (for IBM JREs), `kaffe` (for Kaffe.org JREs), `openjdk` (for OpenJDK releases) and empty (for any vendor).
- `<minVersion>`: Minimum supported version of the JRE. Leave empty to not require a minimum version
- `<maxVersion>`: Maximum supported version of the JRE. Leave empty to not require a maximum version. If specified only with major and minor version numbers then it will match any number in the series. For example, 1.4 will match any 1.4.x version (1.4.1, 1.4.2, ...) but not a 1.5 series JRE.
- `<bitness>`: Bitness of Java application. Leave empty to not require a specific bitness of Java. If specified, only Java compiled for specified number of bits will be matched.
- `<requireJDK>`: Whether the Java version is a JDK.

The following example will select any Sun Microsystems JRE 1.3 32bit or newer (for example, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5) or any IBM JRE regardless of bitness with version number equal or greater than 1.4.2 but inside the 1.4 series (1.5 will not work).

```
<autodetectJava>
  <validVersionList>
    <validVersion>
      <vendor>sun</vendor>
      <minVersion>1.4.2</minVersion>
      <maxVersion>1.4</maxVersion>
      <bitness></bitness>
```

```

        </validVersion>
        <validVersion>
            <vendor>ibm</vendor>
            <minVersion>1.3</minVersion>
            <maxVersion></maxVersion>
            <bitness>32</bitness>
        </validVersion>
    </validVersionList>
</autodetectJava>

```

Upon successful autodetection, the following installer variables will be created:

- **java\_executable:** Path to the java command line binary (java.exe in Windows). For example /usr/bin/java, C:\Program Files\Java\j2re1.4.2\_03\java.exe.
- **javaw\_executable:** Path to javaw.exe binary, if found. Otherwise defaults to the value of java\_executable.
- **java\_version:** For example, 1.4.2\_03
- **java\_version\_major:** For example, 1.4
- **java\_vendor:** sun or ibm.
- **java\_autodetected:** Set to 1
- **java\_bitness:** 32 or 64.

If the autodetection is not successful, the variable `${java_autodetected}` will be set to 0 and the action will throw an error, which can be masked by setting `abortOnError="0"` and `showMessageOnError="0"` in the action.

The installer will look for valid JREs in the following places and select the first one that meets all of the requirements:

- Standard installation paths.
- Windows Registry, default environment PATH.
- Using JAVA\_HOME, JAVAHOME or JDK\_HOME environment variables, if present.

The default behavior of the `<autodetectJava>` action is to automatically pick one of the detected versions. However, it is possible to display a choice dialog to allow the user select which one he would like to use by setting `<promptUser>` to 1. You can specify the order in which the versions detected will be displayed using the `<selectionOrder>` tag. It allows `first`, to display the versions in the same order they were detected, `newest`, to list newer versions first and `oldest`, to display older versions first. The value defined in the `<selectionOrder>` will also determine which version will be returned by default when `<promptUser>` is set to 0.

For example, the below code will pick the newest Java version in the machine automatically and won't report an error if none is available:

```

<autodetectJava>
    <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
    <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
    <promptUser>0</promptUser>
    <selectionOrder>newest</selectionOrder>
    <validVersionList>
        <validVersion>
            <vendor></vendor>
            <minVersion></minVersion>
            <maxVersion></maxVersion>
        </validVersion>
    </validVersionList>
</autodetectJava>

```

When you do not have any requirement for the Java version, instead of providing a `<validVersion>` with all of its fields set to empty, you can just omit the `<validVersionList>`. The above code is then equivalent to the following:

```
<autodetectJava selectionOrder="newest" promptUser="0"/>
```

You can also combine the autodetection with a `<httpGet>` action and download the runtime if it is not available in the system:

```
<!-- Set abortOnError="0" and showMessageOnError="0" so the action does not report any error
if Java is not detected -->
<autodetectJava selectionOrder="newest" promptUser="0" abortOnError="0" showMessageOnError="0"/>
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <actionGroup>
      <actionList>
        <showProgressDialog>
          <title>Downloading files</title>
          <actionList>
            <httpGet>
              <filename>${installdir}/java.tar.gz</filename>
              <url>http://www.example.com/downloads/java/1.6/jre1.6.0_24-linux.tar.gz</url>
            </httpGet>
          </actionList>
        </showProgressDialog>
        <runProgram>
          <program>tar</program>
          <programArguments>xzf ${installdir}/java.tar.gz -C ${installdir}</programArguments>
        </runProgram>
      </actionList>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="linux"/>
    </ruleList>
  </actionGroup>
  <actionGroup>
    <actionList>
      <showProgressDialog>
        <title>Downloading files</title>
        <actionList>
          <httpGet>
            <filename>${installdir}/java.exe</filename>
            <url>http://www.example.com/downloads/java/1.6/jre1.6.0_24-windows.exe</url>
          </httpGet>
        </actionList>
      </showProgressDialog>
      <runProgram>
        <program>${installdir}/java.exe</program>
        <programArguments>/s INSTALLDIR="${installdir.dos}\JRE" REBOOT=Suppress</programArguments>
      </runProgram>
    </actionList>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows"/>
    </ruleList>
  </actionGroup>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
  <isFalse value="${java_autodetected}"/>
</ruleList>
```

```
</actionGroup>
```

## 18.2 Bundling a JRE

BitRock InstallBuilder can be used to package Java-based applications that provide their own Java Runtime Environment (JRE). You can download ready to use components containing a JRE and InstallBuilder component from the following location:

<http://installbuilder.bitrock.com/java/>

These components provide the following features:

- Deployment of JRE or JDK
- Creating a Java launcher binary that runs a specified JAR file
- For Microsoft Windows, automatically creating a Start Menu entry for the launcher

Java Runtime Environments are provided as a ZIP archive. Each archive contains JRE binaries as well as a Java component XML file that contains the packing and installation logic for the application.

Each archive contains a directory structure similar to:

- jre1.6.0\_18-windows - base directory; this name depends on JRE version and platform
- jre1.6.0\_18-windows/java.xml - Java component definition
- jre1.6.0\_18-windows/java-windows - JRE binaries for Microsoft Windows

You will need to unpack the zip file and use an `<include>` tag to reference the Java component XML file. By default, the names of the launcher and the start menu entry are the project `<shortName>` and `<fullName>`. You will need to provide a path to your application JAR using the `java_launcher_jar` variable.

The example below shows a project packaging a Java module for an application `Sampleapp.jar`.

```
<project>
  <shortName>samplejavaapp</shortName>
  <fullName>Sample Java Application</fullName>
  <componentList>
    <!-- application's component(s) - i.e. "default" created by installbuilder GUI -->
    <component>
      <name>default</name>
      <description>Default Component</description>
      <canBeEdited>1</canBeEdited>
      <selected>1</selected>
      <show>1</show>
      ...
    </component>

    <!-- include Java component XML definition -->
    <include file="/path/to/jre_package/java.xml"/>
  </componentList>

  <!-- set up variables for Java component -->
  <initializationActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>java_launcher_jar</name>
      <value>Sampleapp.jar</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
  </initializationActionList>
</project>
```



All of the logic for deploying the JRE, creating the Java launchers and adding shortcuts in start menu is handled by the Java component definition in `java.xml`.

Each JRE contains Java binaries for a single platform. It is possible to create a single project that ships binaries for multiple platforms by copying binaries for needed platforms into a single directory. Its structure needs to be as follows:

- `jre1.6.0_18` - base directory; can be any name, but it is recommended to name it using versions of the JRE
- `jre1.6.0_18/java.xml` - Java component definition
- `jre1.6.0_18-windows/java-windows` - JRE binaries for Microsoft Windows (32bit or 64bit)
- `jre1.6.0_18-windows/java-linux` - JRE binaries for Linux (32bit)
- `jre1.6.0_18-windows/java-linux-x64` - JRE binaries for Linux (64bit)

Java component deployment can be customized to fit an application's needs. The following variables are used by `java.xml`:

- **java\_launcher\_destination** - defines the destination where Java launcher should be created; defaults to `${installdir}`
- **java\_launcher\_binary\_name** - name of the launcher binary; defaults to `${project.shortName}-launcher.${platform_exec_suffix}`
- **java\_launcher\_arguments** - command line arguments to pass to the launcher; defaults to empty string
- **java\_launcher\_vm\_parameters** - additional parameters to pass to the Java VM; defaults to empty string
- **java\_launcher\_jar** - JAR file to use; defaults to empty string
- **java\_launcher\_mainClass** - JAR file to use; defaults to empty string
- **java\_launcher\_classpath** - classpath to pass to Java, comma separated regardless of target platform; defaults to empty string
- **java\_launcher\_startmenu\_shortcut\_name** - name for the start menu shortcut on Microsoft Windows; defaults to `Launch ${project.fullName}`
- **java\_launcher\_add\_to\_win\_startmenu** - whether the start menu item should be created on Microsoft Windows; defaults to 1
- **java\_install\_jre** - whether the JRE should be installed and used by default by the launcher binary; defaults to 1

The `java_launcher_jar`, `java_launcher_mainClass` and `java_launcher_classpath` variables specify how the launcher should run the application. If a `java_launcher_jar` is specified, the `java -jar` command is used to run the application. Otherwise `java` is run by specifying the class path and main class to run.

These variables map to the `<jarFile>`, `<classpath>` and `<mainClass>` attributes for `<createLaunchers>` action. This action is described in more detail in the next section.

## 18.3 Launchers

Java (tm) launchers are binaries that allow running Java-based applications as if they were native. They work by locating an installed JRE in the target machine or using one provided to launch a Java application with the right options.

Java Launchers are created using the `<createJavaLaunchers>` action. It allows creating multiple launchers in the specified destination, configurable through the `<destination>` tag. These launchers are added in its `<javaLauncherList>`. A launcher is specified using the `<javaLauncher>` tag.

The target file name for the launched application is specified in `<binaryName>`. The extension `.exe` is automatically appended on the Windows operating systems.

The details of how to run the Java application are provided using the tags `<classpath>`, `<mainClass>` and `<jarFile>` where `<jarFile>` takes precedence if it is specified. If a `<jarFile>` is provided, the JRE is called with the `-jar` option to execute it and `<classpath>` and `<mainClass>` are ignored. If `<jarFile>` is empty, the `<classpath>` is configured

with the `-cp` flag and the `<mainClass>` is passed as name of the class to run. Regardless of the operating system, paths in `<classpath>` are semi-colon separated.

The `<arguments>` tag specifies the arguments to pass to the Java application. Additional arguments can be passed to the launcher (that will in turn pass them to the Java application) through the command line if the `<allowCommandLineArguments>` tag enables it. These additional arguments will be appended after the predefined `<arguments>`.

The example below shows how to create two launchers at the end of the installation:

```
<postInstallationActionList>
  <createJavaLaunchers>
    <destination>${installdir}/javalaunchers</destination>
    <javaLauncherList>
      <!-- A launcher to call the com.bitrock.testapplication.MainClass
      class, looking for it in the testapplication.jar;additional.jar files -->
      <javaLauncher>
        <arguments></arguments>
        <binaryName>launcher1</binaryName>
        <classpath>testapplication.jar;additional.jar</classpath>
        <mainClass>com.bitrock.testapplication.MainClass</mainClass>
        <allowCommandLineArguments>1</allowCommandLineArguments>
        <preferredJavaBinary></preferredJavaBinary>
        <runInConsole>1</runInConsole>
        <workingDirectory>${installdir}/javalaunchers</workingDirectory>
      </javaLauncher>
      <!-- A launcher to call the testapplication.jar file -->
      <javaLauncher>
        <binaryName>launcher2</binaryName>
        <jarFile>testapplication.jar</jarFile>
        <mainClass></mainClass>
        <allowCommandLineArguments>1</allowCommandLineArguments>
        <preferredJavaBinary></preferredJavaBinary>
        <runInConsole>1</runInConsole>
        <vmParameters></vmParameters>
      </javaLauncher>
    </javaLauncherList>
  </createJavaLaunchers>
</postInstallationActionList>
```

This will create two test launchers. The first one, `testlauncher1` (or `testlauncher1.exe` on Windows) will run Java using `-cp` flags and specifying a main class name. The binary `testlauncher2` will run Java using the `-jar` option and Java will read the main class from the JAR file's **MANIFEST.MF** file.

The file names of the generated launchers are also automatically added to the uninstaller. They will be deleted when the uninstaller is run.

By default, Java launchers will use the default Java available on the system. It is also possible to set specific Java versions that it will accept. The `<validVersionList>` can be used to specify these accepted versions. It works as explained in the Java autodetection section.

The following example defines a launcher that will use any Sun Microsystems JRE 1.3 or newer (for example, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5) or any IBM JRE with version number equal or greater than 1.4.2 but inside the 1.4 series (for example, 1.5 will not be accepted as valid):

```
<javaLauncher>
  <arguments></arguments>
  <binaryName>launcher2</binaryName>
  <classpath></classpath>
  <jarFile>testapplication.jar</jarFile>
  <validVersionList>
    <validVersion>
      <minVersion>1.4.2</minVersion>
      <maxVersion>1.4</maxVersion>
```

```

        </validVersion>
      <validVersion>
        <vendor>ibm</vendor>
        <minVersion>1.3</minVersion>
        <maxVersion></maxVersion>
      </validVersion>
    </validVersionList>
  </javaLauncher>

```

On Windows systems the launcher executable resource information can be configured:

```

<createJavaLaunchers>
  <destination>${installdir}/javalaunchers</destination>
  <javaLauncherList>
    <javaLauncher>
      <binaryName>launcher1</binaryName>
      <classpath>testapplication.jar;additional.jar</classpath>
      <mainClass>com.bitrock.testapplication.MainClass</mainClass>
      ...
      <windowsResourceFileVersion>1.0.0.0</windowsResourceFileVersion>
      <windowsResourceLegalCopyright>Test Launcher 1</windowsResourceLegalCopyright>
      <windowsResourceLegalTrademarks>(c) 2010 Bitrock S.L.</ ↵
        windowsResourceLegalTrademarks>
      <windowsResourceOriginalFilename>launcher1.exe</windowsResourceOriginalFilename>
      <windowsResourceProductName>Test launcher 1</windowsResourceProductName>
      <windowsResourceProductVersion>1.0</windowsResourceProductVersion>
      <workingDirectory>${installdir}/javalaunchers</workingDirectory>
    </javaLauncher>
  </javaLauncherList>
</createJavaLaunchers>

```

In addition, it is possible to specify an icon file to use. It must point to an existing file in the target machine at the time the `<createJavaLaunchers>` action is executed. If not specified, the default icon for the launchers will be the same as the icon for the installer.

Windows launchers can also request running with administrative privileges using the `<requestedExecutionLevel>` tag. This is necessary for Windows Vista and Windows 7 operating systems where UAC may prevent some operations if the Java process is not elevated. It accepts the following values:

- **requireAdministrator** - Require administrator
- **asInvoker** - As invoker
- **highestAvailable** - Highest available

The example below covers using the `launcher.ico` file as the binary icon, which is located in the installation directory, and requires being administrator on UAC-enabled systems:

```

<javaLauncher>
  <arguments></arguments>
  <binaryName>launcher2</binaryName>
  <classpath></classpath>
  <jarFile>testapplication.jar</jarFile>
  <windowsExecutableIcon>${installdir}/launcher.ico</windowsExecutableIcon>
  <requestedExecutionLevel>requireAdministrator</requestedExecutionLevel>
</javaLauncher>

```

---

#### Note

Regardless of the operating system, paths in `<classpath>` are semi-colon separated.

---

## Chapter 19

# Regular expressions

InstallBuilder supports using regular expressions for processing text. It can be used for a large number of tasks such as checking if a text matches specified pattern or extracting text from a command output.

InstallBuilder supports extended regular expressions. This is the most commonly used syntax for regular expressions and is similar to the used in most programming languages.

Regular expressions can be used by the `<regExMatch>` rule to verify if a text matches a pattern. It can also be used by `<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>` to replace or extract a part of a match a part of a given text or in the `<substitute>` action to replace texts matching regular expression within a file.

### 19.1 Basics of regular expressions

Regular expressions allow defining a substring in a text through a pattern. This pattern can be as simple as a literal string, for example to check if some program stdout contains "success":

```
<regExMatch>
  <logic>matches</logic>
  <pattern>success</pattern>
  <text>${program_stdout}</text>
</regExMatch>
```

Or complex enough to allow extracting a port number from a configuration file:

```
<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
  <name>port</name>
  <pattern>.*\n\s*Listen\s+(\d+).*</pattern>
  <substitution>\1</substitution>
  <text>${httpdConf}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
```

A pattern can be constructed from one or more branches (sub patters), separated by the `|` character, meaning that if the text matches any of the branches, it matches the full pattern. For example the pattern `success|done|started` matches either "success", "done" or "started".

Each character, a group of characters or a potential match is called an atom. For example `done` consists of 4 atoms - `d`, `o`, `n` and `e`. The pattern `ok|yes` consists of two branches, one with `o` and `k` atoms and another with `y`, `e` and `s` atoms.

Regular expressions can also use special characters:

- `^` - Means the start of a line or the text. The pattern `^yes` specifies that the text must start with the `yes` string to match the regular expression.

- `$` - Means end of line or text. The pattern `yes$` specifies that the text must end with the `yes` string to match the regular expression.
- `.` - Means any character. For example `te.t` will match both "text" and "test".

If you need to specify one of those characters as a literal, you can escape them using a backslash (`\`) character. For example `done.` will match any text that has the word "done", followed by any character but the expression `done\.` will only match the literal "done.".

Certain characters preceded by a backslash also have a special meaning:

- `\e` - indicates the `ESC` character, which has an ascii value of 27
- `\r` - carriage return character, which has an ascii value of 13
- `\n` - newline character, which has an ascii value of 10
- `\t` - horizontal tab character, which has an ascii value of 9
- `\v` - vertical tab character, which has an ascii value of 11
- `\uABCD` - where `ABCD` are exactly four hexadecimal digits, specifies unicode character `U+ABCD`; for example `\u0041` maps to `A` character
- `\B` - synonym for `\` that can be used to reduce backslash doubling - for example `\\\n` and `\B\n` are synonyms, but the latter is more readable
- `\s` - Matches any blank character (new lines, tabs or spaces).

Regular expressions also accept quantifiers, which specify how many times a preceeding atom should be matched:

- `?` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match 0 or 1 times - for example `colou?r` matches both "color" and "colour"
- `*` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match 0 or more times - for example `\s*` matches an empty string or any number of spaces
- `+` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match 1 or more times - for example `/+` matches any number of consecutive slash characters
- `{m}` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match exactly `m` times - for example `-{20}` matches a series of 20 consecutive hyphen characters
- `{m,}` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match at least `m` times - for example `\s{1,}` matches a series of at least 1 space.
- `{m,n}` - Specifies that the preceeding atom should match between `m` and `n` times

Unlike branches and `|`, quantifiers only operate on the last atom. A pattern `colou?r` means that only the `u` character (the atom preceding the `?` quantifier), not the entire `colou` expression will be affected by the quantifier.

Grouping and bracket expressions, which are described later, can be used along quantifiers in more complex scenarios.

The `*` and `+` quantifiers are greedy by default. This means that they will match the longest substring if the remaining part of expression also matches. In the case of the expression `^.*-A`, it will match the longest substring that ends with `-A`. For the string `test1-A-test2-A-test3-B`, it will match to `test1-A-test2-A`.

In many cases a shortest match is more useful. In this case, a non-greedy counterparts `*?` and `+` can be used. They work the same, except that shortest substring matching the pattern will be captured (`test1-A` in the previous example). This is commonly used when extracting a part of text.

## 19.2 Bracket expressions

Regular expressions can specify a subset of characters to match, specified within square brackets. For example the following will match both "disk drive" and "disc drive":

```
<regExMatch>
  <logic>matches</logic>
  <pattern>dis[ck] drive</pattern>
  <text>${program_stdout}</text>
</regExMatch>
```

Please note that in the example just one character will match as it is not including any quantifier (diskc wont match)

It is also possible to specify a range of characters in the format of a–b where a is the first character and b is the last character to match. For example [A–Z] specifies any of upper case letters. Multiple ranges can be used such as [A–Za–z0–9] specifying upper and lower case letters and all digits.

The following will match between 8 and 20 characters, consisting of letters and digits only:

```
<regExMatch>
  <logic>matches</logic>
  <pattern>^[A-Za-z0-9]{8,20}$</pattern>
  <text>${program_stdout}</text>
</regExMatch>
```

In the example above, the bracket expression is considered a single atom, therefore the {8,20} quantifier applies to the whole [A–Za–z0–9] expression. The ^ and \$ characters cause the expression to only match if the entire text matches the expression.

If you need to include the literal – in the matching characters, it must be specified as the last character in the bracket expression: [A–Za–z0–9–].

Regular expressions also support specifying a character class, which can be used to as shorthand for commonly used sets of characters:

- [[:alpha:]] - A letter
- [[:upper:]] - An upper-case letter
- [[:lower:]] - A lower-case letter
- [[:digit:]] - A decimal digit
- [[:xdigit:]] - A hexadecimal digit
- [[:alnum:]] - An alphanumeric (letter or digit)
- [[:print:]] - An alphanumeric (same as alnum)
- [[:blank:]] - A space or tab character
- [[:space:]] - A character producing white space in the text
- [[:punct:]] - A punctuation character
- [[:graph:]] - A character with a visible representation
- [[:cntrl:]] - A control character

The following is an equivalent of previous example, using character classes:

```
<regExMatch>
  <logic>matches</logic>
  <pattern>^[[:alnum:]]{8,20}$</pattern>
  <text>${program_stdout}</text>
</regExMatch>
```

The following are also abbreviations for some of character classes:

- `\d` is equivalent of `[[ :digit: ]]`
- `\s` is equivalent of `[[ :space: ]]`
- `\w` is equivalent of `[[ :alnum: ]]`

## 19.3 Grouping

Atoms in regular expressions can also be grouped by using round brackets. Grouping can be used along with branches. The following example will match if a version begins with 9. or 10.:

```
<regExMatch>
  <logic>matches</logic>
  <pattern>^(9|10)\.</pattern>
  <text>${versionstring}</text>
</regExMatch>
```

The `|` character inside a group will only match substrings inside the group.

It is also possible to group one or more characters and use quantifiers for the entire group. A pattern `I am (very\s+)*happy` will match "I am happy", "I am very happy", "I am very very happy"...

The `very\s+` pattern will match the text "very" followed by at least 1 white space. Then, the `*` quantifier is applied to the entire `(very\s+)` group, which means 0 or more occurrences of "very" followed by at least 1 white space.

## 19.4 Substituting text in regular expression

The `<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>` action can be used to do regular expression substitution in a text.

The example below will replace any number of white spaces with a single space in the `${text}` variable:

```
<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
  <name>result</name>
  <pattern>[[ :space: ]]+</pattern>
  <substitution> </substitution>
  <text>${text}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
```

Grouping can also be used to match certain values, which can be used for replacing a text as well as extracting a part of text. All items that are grouped can be used in the `<substitution>` tag by specifying `\n`, where `n` is a number between 1 and 9 corresponding to the number of the matched group.

For example the following can be used to extract an extension from a filename:

```
<setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
  <name>extension</name>
  <pattern>.*\.(^[^\.]+)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\1</substitution>
  <text>${filename}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegEx>
```

Since `(^[^\.]+)` is the first grouping used in the expression, the `\1` in `<substitution>` tag will reference characters matched by it.

In order to extract individual values from a hyphen-separated text such as `1234-5678-ABCD`, we can use the following:

```

<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
  <name>value1</name>
  <pattern>^(.*?)-(.*?)-(.*?)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\1</substitution>
  <text>${value}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
  <name>value2</name>
  <pattern>^(.*?)-(.*?)-(.*?)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\2</substitution>
  <text>${value}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
  <name>value3</name>
  <pattern>^(.*?)-(.*?)-(.*?)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\3</substitution>
  <text>${value}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegex>

```

It can be used to get 1234 as value1, 5678 as value2 and ABCD as value3.

This can be used in combination with `<regexMatch>` to validate the input such as:

```

<throwError>
  <text>Invalid value for field: ${value}</text>
  <ruleList>
    <regexMatch>
      <logic>does_not_match</logic>
      <text>${value}</text>
      <pattern>^(.*?)-(.*?)-(.*?)$</pattern>
    </regexMatch>
  </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

In certain cases, grouping is used for matching more complex patterns, but should not be used for referencing. In this case, the grouping has to start with `? :`.

The following example will match the string separated by either – or a text " hyphen ", whereas the separator will not be matched, even though it is grouped:

```

<setInstallerVariableFromRegex>
  <name>value1</name>
  <pattern>^(.*?)(?:-| hyphen )(.*?)(?:-| hyphen )(.*?)$</pattern>
  <substitution>\1</substitution>
  <text>${value}</text>
</setInstallerVariableFromRegex>

```



## Chapter 20

# Rollback

InstallBuilder installers include a rollback feature that automatically backs up any files overwritten during the installation and restores them if an error occurs during the installation process. The rollback functionality only handles files overwritten by the installer during the file installation step (i.e., all files specified under any `<folder>` section), and it does not support rolling back files overwritten as a result of the execution of actions or scripts.

The rollback feature is enabled by default but it can be disabled by setting the project property `<enableRollback>` to false:

```
<project>
...
<enableRollback>0</enableRollback>
...
</project>
```

You can configure the directory where the overwritten files will be stored by setting the project property `<rollbackBackupDirectory>` (which defaults to an autoincremental `${installdir}/rollbackBackupDirectory`) to the desired path:

```
<project>
...
<rollbackBackupDirectory>${system_temp_directory}/backup</rollbackBackupDirectory>
...
</project>
```

The files will be automatically restored in the event that the installation aborts. The `rollbackBackupDirectory` folder will not be removed after a successful installation, so it can also be manually accessed and restored. It will, however, be automatically cleaned up after a successful restoration following a failed installation attempt (only those files that could not be restored will remain in the rollback backup directory). If no files were backed up as a result of the rollback process, the empty `rollbackBackupDirectory` folder will be automatically deleted after installation.

If you specifically do not want the `rollbackBackupDirectory` folder to remain on the disk after a successful installation, you can delete it during the `<postInstallationActionList>` using a `<deleteFile>` action:

```
<project>
...
<rollbackBackupDirectory>${system_temp_directory}/backup</rollbackBackupDirectory>
...
<postInstallationActionList>
  <deleteFile path="${project.rollbackBackupDirectory}"/>
</postInstallationActionList>
...
</project>
```

## Chapter 21

# Troubleshooting

InstallBuilder provides a number of features to help you debug failing installations. Installations can fail either because of internal factors (such as faulty logic) or external factors (such as running out of disk space)

### 21.1 Debugger

InstallBuilder allows including an embedded debugger within your installers. This built-in debugger makes easier to identify and correct issues, speeding and simplifying installer development. Its main features, detailed in successive sections, are:

- Viewing and interactively editing installer variables at runtime.
- Extended logging in the built-in log widget.
- Step-by-step execution.
- Allows recovering from unexpected errors during the installation.

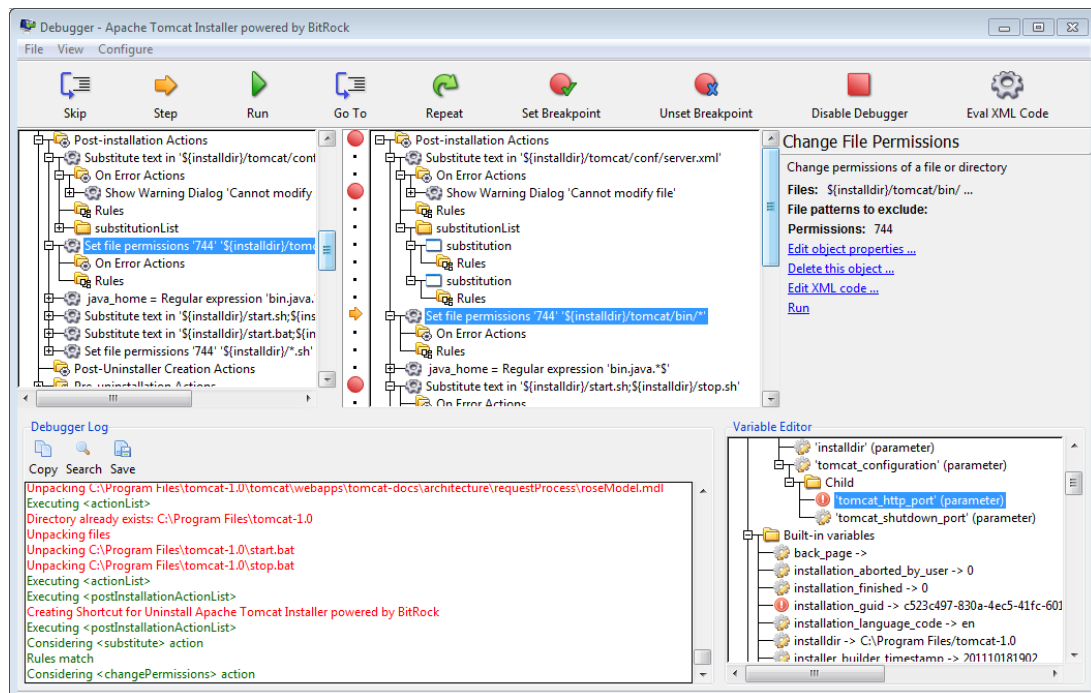


Figure 21.1: Debugger Window

### 21.1.1 Including the debugger in your installer

Packing the debugger is completely optional and configurable at build-time through the `<enableDebugger>` setting:

```
<project>
...
  <enableDebugger>1</enableDebugger>
...
</project>
```

This is very convenient when you do not want to allow your users to inspect the internals of the installer or simply to avoid the size overhead introduced (around 1.5MB).

Take into account that the setting is only considered when performing full builds. If you try to include the debugger in an existing installer (that does not already include the debugger) using the quickbuild, the builder won't pack it.

Similarly, you cannot remove the debugger from an existing installer by setting `<enableDebugger>0</enableDebugger>` and performing a quickbuild. However, although the debugger will be still packed, it won't be accessible at runtime so the only drawback will be the increment in size mentioned above.

### 21.1.2 Enabling the debugger at runtime

If the debugger was packed at build-time, it will be available at runtime by launching the installer from a console prompt as:

```
$> ./sample-1.0-windows-installer.exe --enable-debugger
```

If the debugger was not packed, the command line flag won't be available and thus you will get an error.

As the debugger is only available in `xwindow`, `win32`, `osx` and `unattended` modes, calling the installer with `--enable-debugger` will also reconfigure the graphical mode to the appropriate one in the running platform:

- `win32`: On Windows
- `osx`: On Mac OS X
- `xwindow`: On Linux (and other Unix platforms but OS X)
- `unattended`: When the installer is also launched with `--mode unattended` (all platforms allow it)

### 21.1.3 Testing installers with the debugger

InstallBuilder builder GUI provides an easy way to run the debugger.

To test your installer with the debugger enabled, simply click the Debug Run button.

---

**TODO: IMAGE**  
TODO: IMAGE

---

It will run a build of the installer to ensure it contains the debugger enabled and then start it with the debugger enabled.

If the installer does not currently have the debugger enabled, a full build of the installer will be made.

A quick build will be made if installer already has the debugger enabled - either `<enableDebugger>` setting enabled or was last built by clicking on the Debug Run button

---

### 21.1.4 Debugger usage

When the installer is started with the debugger enabled, it will cause the debugger window to be shown in addition to the installer window:

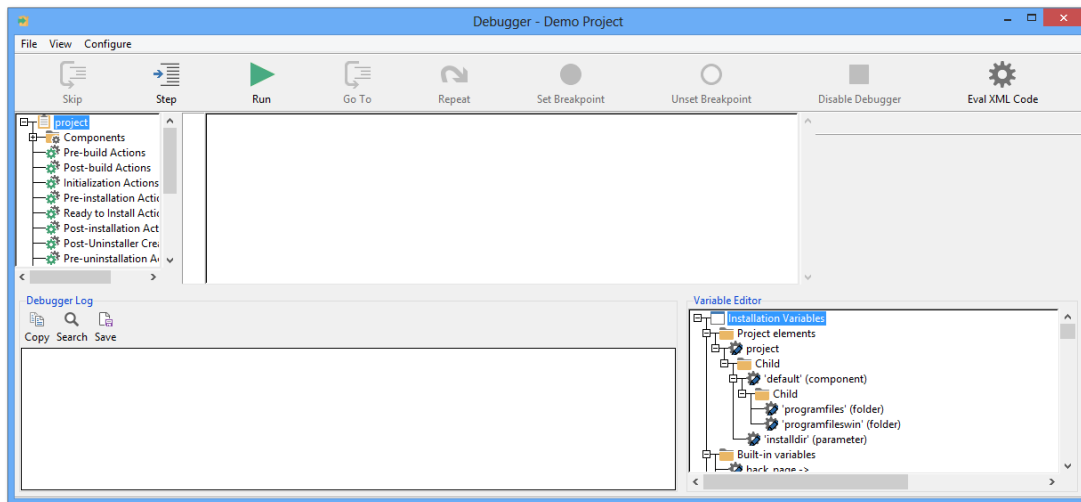


Figure 21.2: Debugger First Screen

After the debugger is initialized, it will keep waiting until the **run** button is clicked, and then the installer will start the installation (the `<initializationActionList>`). This allows you to set the appropriate breakpoints in those sections of your project that require debugging.

The debugger includes five main tools:

- **Project tree editor (1)**: A full tree that allows basic modifications of the overall project. Some features such as adding and removing parameters, folders and components are disabled.
- **Action List Execution Editor (2)**: A tree displaying the current action list being executed. The action lists are just loaded if they contain any `<breakpoint>` or if the debugger entered the action list in a step.
- **Debugger log (3)**: A configurable log including information about the installed files, executed programs, standard streams, actions, rules...
- **Variable Editor (4)**: A tree allowing the creation, editing and visualization of installer variables and project settings.
- **XML evaluator (5)**: Allows executing arbitrary InstallBuilder XML code with the same context of the installer (same variables and parameters).

It also includes a control toolbar ( ( 6 ) ) and a menu to configure the debugger.

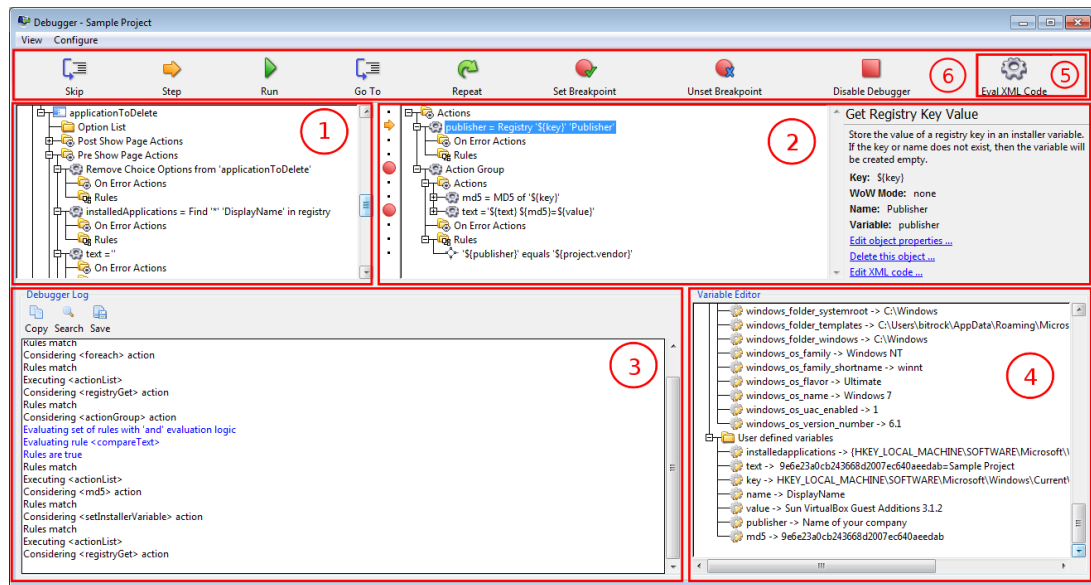


Figure 21.3: Debugger Tools

#### 21.1.4.1 The toolbar

The debugger toolbar is used to control the behavior of the debugger. The below listing explains the usage of its buttons:

- Step, Skip, Run, Go To, Repeat, Set Breakpoint, Unset Breakpoint: Used to control the Action List Execution Editor.
- Disable Debugger: When the debugger is disabled, it does not stop at breakpoints or log messages. This speeds up the execution in big projects until the installation reaches the desired point or simply lets the installation finish after you are done with the debugging.
- Eval XML Code: Launches the XML evaluator dialog.

#### 21.1.4.2 Project tree editor

The project tree editor allows basic modifications of the project. It is especially useful when the debugger is initialized, before the execution of the installer starts, to set breakpoints in the desired actions to debug.

To set a breakpoint on an action or action list, right-click on the desired element and select Set Breakpoint (or Unset Breakpoint if it is already set).

Its behavior is similar to the GUI builder tree. To modify an element such as a component, action or rule, just double-click it. New actions can also be added by double-clicking on an action list.

The tree can be also hidden from the "View" menu by unchecking "Main Tree".

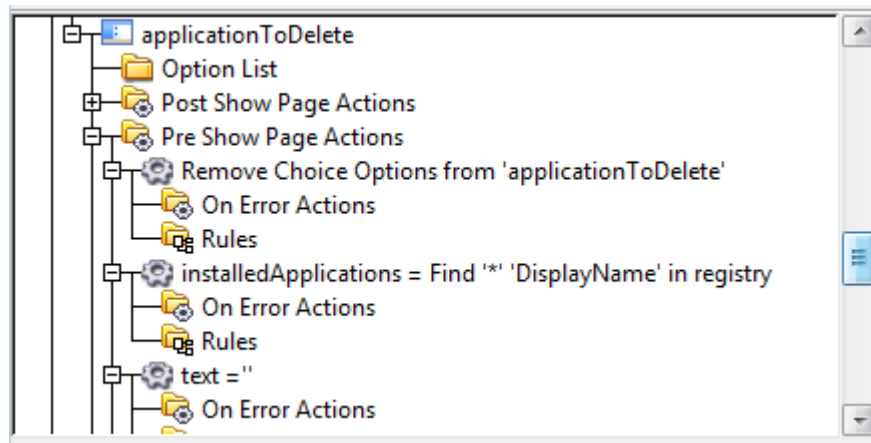


Figure 21.4: Debugger Tools - Main Tree

#### 21.1.4.3 Action List Execution Editor

When an action list contains a breakpoint (either in the action list or in any of its child actions) or the debugger stops at it because of a `step`, it is loaded in the `Action List Execution Editor`. The action list is represented in a tree with a left strip, displaying the breakpoints (represented by red dots) of the actions and the action being executed (marked by an orange arrow).

The tree allows moving, deleting and editing the actions, as well as adding new ones. It supports editing them either using the GUI pop-ups or using the built-in XML editor.

It also supports some operations, controlled by the main toolbar:

- **Skip:** When the debugger is stopped at a breakpoint or because it was performing an `step`, clicking on the `Skip` button will make the debugger jump to the next action. In the figure, the next action is a `<registryGet>` action, by clicking `Skip`, the debugger will not execute it and step into the next one, the `<actionGroup>`.
- **Step:** Allows the debugger to execute actions step by step. This is useful for reviewing the results of each action in the log or the `Variable Editor`.
- **Run:** Makes the debugger continuously execute actions until a breakpoint is reached.
- **Go To:** Allows jumping to any of the actions in the loaded action list. The appropriate action must be selected before clicking the button.
- **Repeat:** This button makes the debugger execute the current action without stepping into the next one afterwards. This is useful for troubleshooting an action that is failing by trial and error, for example, a regexp not matching.
- **Set Breakpoint:** This button sets a breakpoint in the selected action. Alternatively, you can click on the left strip in the desired position.
- **Unset Breakpoint:** This button unsets a breakpoint in the selected action. Alternatively, you can click on the left strip in the desired position.



Figure 21.5: Debugger Tools - Action List Execution Editor

If an error occurs in the action list being executed, the debugger will capture it before it is thrown and will display a dialog with the details and ask for the action to perform:

- **Abort:** Throws the error (the regular behavior)
- **Execute Actions and Abort:** Allows executing some custom actions and then throws the error.
- **Ignore:** The error is just ignored.
- **Execute Actions and Ignore:** Allows executing some custom actions and the error is ignored. This is helpful for recovering from errors and continue with the installation.

#### 21.1.4.4 Debugger log

The debugger log allows configuring which elements to log as well as the verbosity and color of the messages. These settings can be configured in the **Log** section of the **Configure->Preferences** menu. The configurable elements to log are:

- **Actions:** Actions executed, its properties before the execution.
- **Rules:** Evaluated rules with their results and properties.
- **Tracked Variables:** A message is logged when a variable being tracked (using the **Variables Editor**) is modified.
- **Installation logs:** The messages written in the installation log.

Apart from these elements, the debugger also logs the stdout, stderr (in red color) and exit code of all executed programs.

The log also allows saving its contents, copying the selected text and searching for specific entries.

The widget can be also hidden from the "View" menu by unchecking "Debugger log".

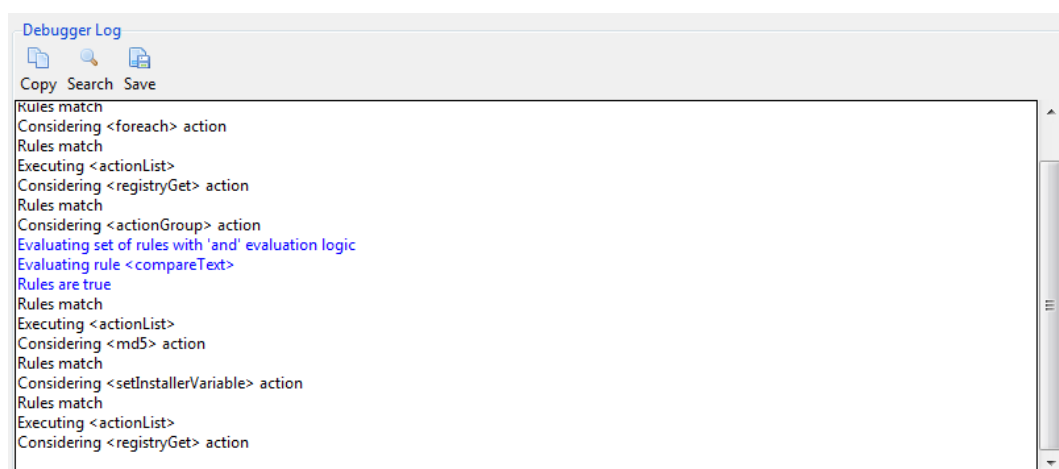


Figure 21.6: Debugger Tools - Log

#### 21.1.4.5 Variable Editor

The `Variable Editor` is displayed as a tree with three main branches:

- **Project Elements:** Displays all of the referenciable project elements (using the advanced syntax) in a hierarchical way. All of the elements can be modified but new elements cannot be added. The text in the tree displays the key name of the element (usually the `<name>` property) and its type (`component`, `folder` or `parameter`).
- **Built-in variables:** Displays all the built-in variables. Its values can be manually added but it does not allow adding new elements. The text in the tree displays the name of the variable and a preview of its contents (or the full value if it is not very long).
- **User defined variables:** Displays the variables created by the user through `<setInstallerVariable>` actions (or similar). It allows modifying the values of existing elements as well as adding new ones, which will result in the creation of new installer variables. The text in the tree displays the name of the variable and a preview of its contents (or the full value if it is not very long.)

In addition to manipulating the installation variables and project elements, the widget also allows marking elements to be tracked by the debugger. When a tracked variable (or project element) is modified, a message will be written in the debugger log, detailing the new contents of the variable. To mark a variable, right-click on the desired element and select `Track Variable` (or `Untrack Variable` if it is already being tracked). If the item to track is a project element, the contextual menu will display an entry `Track Object Menu`, that will allow selecting the settings to track.

The widget can be also hidden from the "View" menu by unchecking "Variable Editor".

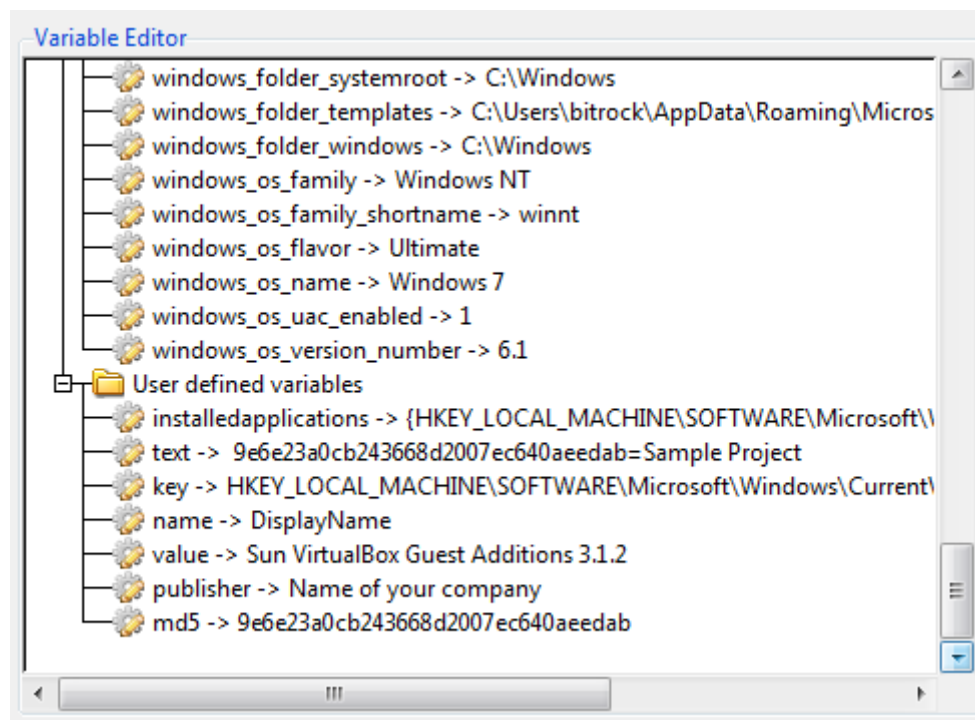


Figure 21.7: Debugger Tools - Variable Editor

#### 21.1.4.6 XML evaluator

The `XML evaluator` allows executing any XML code with the same installer environment (same variables and parameters) of the installation:



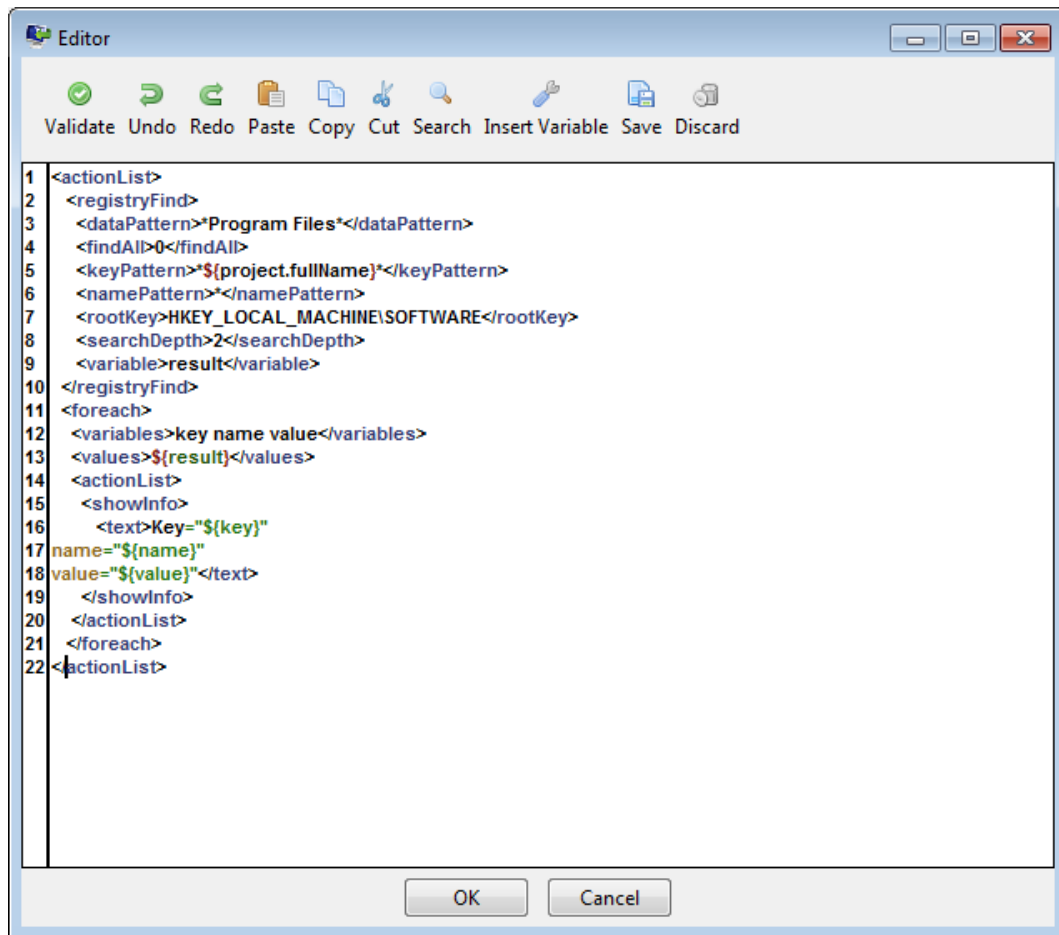


Figure 21.8: Debugger Tools - XML evaluator

## 21.2 Logs

### 21.2.1 Installation Log

#### 21.2.1.1 Where the Log is Located

All InstallBuilder installers create an installation log in the system's temporary directory.

The exact location of the log file is stored in the `${installer_installation_log}` variable. On Linux, Mac OS X and other Unix systems, this typically means the `/tmp` directory. On Windows, the log will be created in the user's local Temp directory, usually `C:\Documents and Settings\username\Local Settings\Temp`.

The default name of the generated log file is `bitrock_installer.log`, but if the file already exists from a previous installation, the installer will try to create a unique filename trying `bitrock_installer_[pid].log` and `bitrock_installer_[pid]_[uid].log` where `[pid]` is the PID of the process and `[uid]` is a unique identifier.

#### Note

The system Temp directory is stored in the built-in variable `${system_temp_directory}`. In Unix, if the `/tmp` directory is not writable, it will attempt to use `/var/tmp`, `/usr/tmp` and `~/tmp` instead.

You can use the `<installationLogFile>` and `<uninstallationLogFile>` project properties to specify an alternate location for the log file once the installation has completed. Of course, the initial log file is still created in the temporary directory, because the new location specified with that tag probably does not exist when the installer first runs.

```
<project>
...
<!-- Configures the final destination of the installation log -->
<installationLogFile>${installdir}/${project.shortName}-installLog.log</ ←
    installationLogFile>
<!-- Configures the final destination of the uninstallation log -->
<uninstallationLogFile>${system_temp_directory}/${project.shortName}-uninstallation.log ←
    </uninstallationLogFile>
...
</project>
```

It is possible to also mark a log file for deletion after the installation has completed.

```
<project>
...
<removeLogFile>1</removeLogFile>
...
</project>
```

### 21.2.1.2 Verbosity Level

Most common errors during installation are related to the execution of third party programs or system commands. The installation log will include the stdout and stderr output of the program, as well as the exit code:

```
Executing /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/bin/php -q /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/ ←
    bin/fixreg.php /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php
Script exit code: 0

Script output:
Patching /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/lib/php/.registry/archive_tar.reg
Patching /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/lib/php/.registry/console_getopt.reg
Patching /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/lib/php/.registry/pear.reg
Patching /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/lib/php/.registry/structures_graph.reg
Patching /home/bitrock/lampstack-1.2-2/php/lib/php/.registry/xml_util.reg

Script stderr:
```

By default, standard streams are always logged independently of whether or not the execution succeeds but the debug level can be decreased to only log them after an error:

```
<project>
...
<!-- Levels from 2 to 4 displays the streams -->
<debugLevel>0</debugLevel>
...
</project>
```

This will log the standard streams only in the event that an error occurs. Reducing the debug level also prevents the arguments for the programs being executed from being logged. This can be useful if as part of the installation you are passing sensitive information as command line options and you do not want it stored in the log file. A better approach is to add a .password suffix to the variable reference.

### 21.2.1.3 Logging custom information

You can add custom information to the log at runtime using the <logMessage> action. It is possible to specify an optional, custom timestamp:

```
<logMessage>
  <text>Uninstalling old installation...</text>
  <timeStampFormat>[%H:%M:%S]</timeStampFormat>
  <enableTimeStamp>1</enableTimeStamp>
</logMessage>
```

You could also use the `<writeFile>` and `<readFile>` actions to include important information from log files from other programs.

```
<preInstallationActionList>
  <readFile name="apacheErrorLog" path="${installdir}/apache2/log/error_log"/>
  <logMessage>
    <text>Apache Error Log:</text>
    <timeStampFormat>[%H:%M:%S]</timeStampFormat>
    <enableTimeStamp>1</enableTimeStamp>
  </logMessage>
  <writeFile text="${apacheErrorLog}" path="${project.installationLogFile}"/>
</preInstallationActionList>
```

## 21.2.2 Debugtrace Log

If you run into issues that are hard to track down, you may be asked to provide a debug trace. This is an internal dump of the inner workings of the installer, serialized as an XML file. It can help BitRock determine the root cause of the problem.

Both the Builder and the generated installers are capable of generating the debug file. You just need to use the `--debugtrace` flag:

```
$> sample-1.0-linux-installer.run --debugtrace debug.txt
Debug file written.
```

You can then send the `debug.txt` file to [support@bitrock.com](mailto:support@bitrock.com). Please provide as much context information as possible.

---

### Note

Take into account that the log is only serialized when the installer exits normally, either completing the installation or crashing with an error, but not if the process is killed by external methods.

---

## 21.3 Other Debugging Methods

As when debugging any program, the most basic (but useful nonetheless) method of debugging is to provide information of what is going on at different points in the process. This helps you determine if what is happening is indeed what you were expecting to happen at that particular point in time. You can use a `<showInfo>` action to display messages during the installation process.

This technique can help, for example, when debugging why an action seems not to be executed:

```
<showInfo text="About to run the program" />
<actionGroup>
  <actionList>
    <showInfo>
      <text>Sharing the same rules will check that they are correctly evaluated</text>
    </showInfo>
    <runProgram>
      <program>chown</program>
      <programArguments>-R bitrock ${installdir}</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </actionList>
</ruleList>
```

---

```
<platformTest type="linu"/>
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
<showInfo text="After executing the program"/>
```

If you run an installer that includes the above code, you will see the first and the third pop-ups, so something is wrong with the rule. A closer look will make you realize that the type field in the platformTest rule has a typo. It reads `linu`, when it should be `linux`. This particular case will be automatically reported to you by the builder when loading the project but other issues are tackled the same way.

A similar approach can be used to check that variables have the expected value:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="docLocation" value="${intalldir}/doc"/>
...
<renameFile origin="${intalldir}/app/oldDocDirectory" destination="${docLocation}"/>
```

The above code will not work because of a typo (`${intalldir}` instead of `{installdir}`). Adding a `<showInfo>` help will help track the issue:

```
<setInstallerVariable name="docLocation" value="${intalldir}/doc"/>
...
<showInfo text="Documents are stored in ${docLocation}"/>
<renameFile origin="${intalldir}/app/oldDocDirectory" destination="${docLocation}"/>
```

It will display: Documents are stored in \*\*\*unknown variable intalldir\*\*\*/doc

## Chapter 22

# Updates

It is a common scenario to use installers to upgrade previously installed applications. An upgrade can be divided in two basic parts:

- a. **Common to all installations:** Activities such as copying files, upgrading Add/Remove programs settings or upgrading the uninstaller. InstallBuilder provides support for most of this automatically.
- b. **Unique to each installation:** Activities such as backing up an existing database, populating it with new data, etc.

When most installers refer to upgrade functionality, they refer to a), when in reality the most critical part for a successful upgrade tends to be b), which cannot be easily automated.

### 22.1 What differentiates upgrade installers from normal installers?

Upgrade installers do not create a new uninstaller. Instead, the new installed files will be appended to the existing uninstaller, and persistent variables and parameters from the upgrade installer will also be registered in the existing uninstaller.

Additionally, on Windows an upgrade installer will not create a new entry on the ARP (Add/Remove Programs) Menu. Instead, it will update the "version" field for the existing entry of the application. Also, it will not create a new entry into the Start Menu.

### 22.2 Setting the installer to upgrade installation mode

It is currently possible to create an upgrade installer by setting the `<installationType>` project property (which defaults to "normal") to "upgrade" as follows:

```
<project>
...
<installationType>upgrade</installationType>
...
</project>
```

Another approach is to switch the installer to upgrade mode at run time, using a `<setInstallerVariable>` action to set the "installationType" installer variable to "upgrade". This approach allows you to create a **smart** installer which starts in normal installation mode and is capable of switching to upgrade mode under certain conditions, such as detecting an existing installation:

```
<project>
...
<installationType>normal</installationType>
```

```

...
<parameterList>
  <directoryParameter>
    <name>installdir</name>
    <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
    ...
    <!-- If we found an existing installation in the selected
    directory we set installationType=upgrade -->
    <postShowPageActionList>
      <setInstallerVariable>
        <name>project.installationType</name>
        <value>upgrade</value>
        <ruleList>
          <fileTest condition="exists" path="${installdir}"/>
        </ruleList>
      </setInstallerVariable>
    </postShowPageActionList>
  </directoryParameter>
</parameterList>
...
</project>

```

The following example detects an existing installation by checking the existence of the `${installdir}` directory, using a `<fileTest>` rule.

```

<project>
  ...
  <preInstallationActionList>
    <!-- detect existing installation, then switch to
    upgrade mode and display a note. -->
    <actionGroup>
      <actionList>
        <showInfo>
          <text>An existing installation has been detected in ${installdir}.</text>
        </showInfo>
        <setInstallerVariable name="project.allowComponentSelection" value="0"/>
        <setInstallerVariable name="project.installationType" value="upgrade"/>
        ...
        <!-- it also is possible to enable/disable components here: -->
        <componentSelection select="customcomponentname"/>
        <componentSelection deselect="customcomponentname"/>
        <!-- or to perform additional actions related to the upgrade installer. For
        example, hiding the ${installdir} page, as we already detected the installation ←
        -->
        <setInstallerVariable name="project.parameter(installdir).ask" value="0"/>
        ...
      </actionList>
      <!-- Assume an existing installation if ${installdir} directory exists -->
      <ruleList>
        <fileTest condition="exists" path="${installdir}"/>
      </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    ...
  </preInstallationActionList>
  ...
</project>

```

Other approaches can be used to detect an existing installation, such as reading a Windows registry key with `<registryGetKey>` or checking if the value of a system environment variable (`${env(PATH)}`, for instance) contains a particular value: this can be done using the `<compareText>` rule.

In addition to detecting the installation directory, you can also compare the installed version with the bundled one in case the user is trying to install an outdated version. On Windows, you could use the built-in registry key `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}\Version`, and check for an `.ini` file located in the old installation directory when working in other platforms:

```
<project>
...
<preInstallationActionList>
  <!-- Retrieve the old version -->
  <registryGet>
    <!-- By default, InstallBuilder stores the installation
    directory in this key -->
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
    <name>Version</name>
    <variable>oldVersion</variable>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows"/>
    </ruleList>
  </registryGet>
  <iniFileGet>
    <file>${oldInstalldir}/info.ini</file>
    <section>Main</section>
    <key>version</key>
    <variable>oldVersion</variable>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows" negate="1"/>
    </ruleList>
  </iniFileGet>
  <!-- Validate if the version bundled is valid for the update -->
  <throwError>
    <text>The existing installation is newer or equal that the bundled. Aborting...</
    text>
    <ruleList>
      <compareVersions>
        <logic>greater_or_equal</logic>
        <version1>${oldVersion}</version1>
        <version2>${project.version}</version2>
      </compareVersions>
    </ruleList>
  </throwError>
</preInstallationActionList>
...
</project>
```

### Selecting the files to upgrade

By default an upgrade installer (as well as a regular installer) will overwrite existing files on the disk. You can customize this global behavior by using the project property `overwritePolicy`, which can take the following values:

- **always** : an existing file on the disk will always be overwritten.
- **never** : an existing file on the disk will never be overwritten.
- **onlyIfNewer** : an existing file on the disk will only be overwritten if it has an older timestamp than the file being installed.

```
<project>
...
  <overwritePolicy>onlyIfNewer</overwritePolicy>
...
</project>
```

### Separating the upgrade functionality from the regular behavior in a smart installer

A good approach to separate the regular and update functionality is to include all of the update-related actions and files in a separate component, which will be disabled for normal installations and enabled for upgrade installations. You can enable and disable components inside an action list using the `<componentSelection>` action:

```
<project>
  ...
  <preInstallationActionList>
    ...
    <!-- For an upgrade installation -->
    <componentSelection>
      <select>upgradecomponent</select>
      <deselect>default,datacomponent</deselect>
      <ruleList>
        ...
      </ruleList>
    </componentSelection>

    <!-- For a normal installation -->
    <componentSelection>
      <select>default,datacomponent</select>
      <deselect>upgradecomponent</deselect>
      <ruleList>
        ...
      </ruleList>
    </componentSelection>
    ...
  </preInstallationActionList>
  ...
</project>
```

### Using built-in functionality to check for newer versions of the product on startup

You can make your installers check for the latest version at a specified URL. For that, you will need to include the following tags in your xml project file:

```
<project>
  ...
  <!-- versionId should be a positive integer number, and less than the
       version number you will use in the update.xml file below described -->
  <versionId>100</versionId>
  <checkForUpdates>1</checkForUpdates>
  <updateInformationURL>http://www.example.com/updates/update.xml</updateInformationURL>
  ...
</project>
```

The `<updateInformationURL>` points to a remote XML file in the server with the update information and should match the following structure:

```
<installerInformation>
  <versionId>2000</versionId>
  <version>4.0.1</version>
  <platformFileList>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>program-4.0.1.exe</filename>
      <platform>windows</platform>
      <md5></md5>
    </platformFile>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>program-4.0.1.run</filename>
      <platform>linux</platform>
      <md5></md5>
```



```

        </platformFile>
    </platformFileList>
    <downloadLocationList>
        <downloadLocation>
            <url>http://www.example.com/updates/download/</url>
        </downloadLocation>
        <downloadLocation>
            <url>ftp://www.example.com/updates/download/</url>
        </downloadLocation>
    </downloadLocationList>
</installerInformation>

```

The `<versionId>` will be compared with the current installer `<versionId>`. You can also specify a list with the download URL where the full download URL will be: `downloadLocation + filename`.

### Detecting the previous installation directory

On Windows, InstallBuilder automatically creates a registry entry for your program. You can use the `<registryGet>` action (for instance during the `<initializationActionList>`) to get the location in which your software has been installed.

```

<registryGet>
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</key>
    <name>Location</name>
    <variable>installdir</variable>
    <ruleList>
        <platformTest type="windows"/>
    </ruleList>
</registryGet>

```

Where `<windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix>` is a project property that defaults to `${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}`

## 22.3 Using normal mode when upgrading

The upgrade installation has a limitation: although it upgrades the installed files and the variables in the old uninstaller, it does not allow adding new actions to the `<preUninstallationActionList>` and `<postUninstallationActionList>`. In addition, as mentioned above, the Start Menu entry won't be modified. Because of these restrictions, sometimes it is desirable to update an existing installation using the regular mode.

In these scenarios, the simpler approach is to use the default `<overwritePolicy>` (always) so the uninstaller will be fully recreated for each installation, as all of the files will be reinstalled and registered. Another alternative is to add to the uninstaller the existing files before performing the update installation, which will just install new components or will use the `onlyIfNewer` or `never` `<overwritePolicy>`:

```

<project>
    ...
    <installationType>normal</installationType>
    ...
    <parameterList>
        <directoryParameter>
            <name>installdir</name>
            <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
            ...
            <!-- If we found an existing installation in the selected
            directory we configure the installer to perform the update but
            do not set the upgrade mode -->
            <postShowPageActionList>
                <actionGroup>
                    <actionList>
                        <!-- This is custom flag to set we are performing an upgrade

```

```

        but do not modify the 'installationType' of the project -->
        <setInstallerVariable name="isUpgradeMode" value="1"/>
        <componentSelection>
            <select>upgradecomponent</select>
            <deselect>default,datacomponent</deselect>
        </componentSelection>
        <setInstallerVariable name="project.overwritePolicy" value="onlyIfNewer" <↵
            "/>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileTest condition="exists" path="${installdir}"/>
        </ruleList>
        </actionGroup>
        </postShowPageActionList>
    </directoryParameter>
</parameterList>
<readyToInstallActionList>
    ...
    <!-- Add the files installed by the previous
    installation to the uninstaller -->
    <addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
        <addContents>1</addContents>
        <matchHiddenFiles>1</matchHiddenFiles>
        <files>${installdir}/data;${installdir}/core</files>
        <ruleList>
            <isTrue value="${isUpgradeMode}"/>
        </ruleList>
    </addDirectoriesToUninstaller>
    ...
</readyToInstallActionList>
    ...
</project>

```

In addition, if you are creating a Windows installer, you need to include some additional actions to clean old registry keys, the Start Menu shortcuts and the ARP (Add/Remove Programs) menu:

```

<project>
    ...
    <installationType>normal</installationType>
    ...
    <readyToInstallActionList>
        ...
        <actionGroup>
            <actionList>
                <!-- Delete old Start Menu entries if needed -->
                <deleteFile path="${windows_folder_common_startmenu}/${previousStartMenuName} <↵
                    }"/>
                <deleteFile path="${windows_folder_startmenu}/${previousStartMenuName}"/>

                <!-- Remove the old ARP Entry -->
                <!-- Get the old version -->
                <registryGet>
                    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}</ <↵
                        key>
                    <name>Version</name>
                    <variable>oldVersion</variable>
                </registryGet>
                <!-- Delete the old ARP registry keys -->
                <registryDelete>
                    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Uninstall\ <↵
                        ${project.fullName} ${oldVersion}</key>
                </registryDelete>
            </actionList>
        </actionGroup>
    </readyToInstallActionList>

```

```
        <registryDelete>
            <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\App  ←
                Management\ARPCache\${project.fullName} ${oldVersion}</key>
        </registryDelete>
    </actionList>
    <ruleList>
        <platformTest type="windows"/>
        <isTrue value="${isUpgradeMode}"/>
    </ruleList>
</actionGroup>
...
</readyToInstallActionList>
...
</project>
```

## Chapter 23

# AutoUpdate Tool

InstallBuilder bundles an automatic update tool that can be used to download and install packages over the Internet, AutoUpdate. It can be found in the `autoupdate/` directory under the main installation directory.

### 23.1 How to Use AutoUpdate in InstallBuilder

The AutoUpdate tool allows you to provide your users with an easy and automatable way to check for, download and apply updates to your software.

#### 23.1.1 How Does it Work?

When executed, the AutoUpdate wizard will poll your server to get information about the available software versions for the platform in which it is running. The detailed process is:

- Read the INI file that contains information about where to contact the server and which version is currently installed. This INI file must be delivered together with the binary and placed in the same directory.
- Get the XML file from the server, which contains available versions for each platform.
- If there's a newer version available for the target platform (checking that the version ID received is higher than the current one stored in INI file), download and install it or notify the user depending on the execution mode.

The AutoUpdate wizard is defined in an XML project, similar to a regular InstallBuilder project, but much simpler. The project XML file must have the main tag `<autoUpdateProject>` containing the list of customizations to apply to the wizard:

```
<autoUpdateProject>
  <fullName>Example Project</fullName>
  <shortName>example</shortName>
  <vendor>Acme Inc.</vendor>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <windowsExecutableIcon>images/updater.ico</windowsExecutableIcon>
  <leftImage>images/left-image.png</leftImage>
  <logoImage>images/logo-image.png</logoImage>
  ...
</autoUpdateProject>
```

The currently supported settings are:

- **General settings:**

- `<fullName>`: The full product name, as it will be displayed in the autoupdater

- `<shortName>`: The short version of product name. It can only contain alphanumeric characters
- `<vendor>`: Vendor name
- `<version>`: Product version number.
- `<rebootRequired>`: Determines whether or not to ask the user to reboot after the AutoUpdate process is completed (Windows-specific option).
- `<requireInstallationByRootUser>`: Whether or not running the autoupdater will require super user privileges (root on Linux, Administrator user on Windows and OS X). This setting will prevent the autoupdate from running if the user is not root or Administrator on all operating systems except for OS X. In OS X, the regular authentication dialog window will be shown, asking the user for the administrator password so the autoupdate wizard can be run with root privileges
- `<singleInstanceCheck>`: Check that only one autoupdater instance is running
- `<requestedExecutionLevel>`: UAC execution level of the AutoUpdate on Windows

• **Look And Feel:**

- `<height>`: Autoupdate wizard window height
- `<width>`: Autoupdate wizard window width
- `<leftImage>`: 163x314 GIF or PNG image that will be placed at the left side of the autoupdate wizard in the Welcome and Update Finished pages. If no image is specified, the default image will be used
- `<logoImage>`: 48x48 GIF or PNG logo image that will be placed at the top right corner of the autoupdate wizard. If no image is specified, the default image will be used
- `<splashImage>`: The GIF or PNG image that will appear when launching the autoupdate wizard.
- `<splashScreenDelay>`: Extra display time of the splash screen in milliseconds
- `<disableSplashScreen>`: Disable the initial splash screen.
- `<overrideGtkButtonText>`: Translate buttons to the selected language instead of using system-built values for Unix GTK mode
- `<wmImage>`: 48x48 GIF or PNG logo image that will be shown in the window manager task bar on Unix systems. If no image is specified, the default logo image will be used
- `<windowsExecutableIcon>`: ICO file with an specific format to set the icon for the autoupdate executable file on Windows systems. The allowed ICO formats are detailed in the Windows Icons section.
- `<osxApplicationBundleIcon>`: ICNS file to include in the AutoUpdate Application Bundle

• **Windows Resources:**

- `<windowsResourceComments>`: Comments for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceCompanyName>`: Company Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceFileDescription>`: File Description for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceFileVersion>`: File version for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceInternalName>`: Internal Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceLegalCopyright>`: Legal Copyright for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceLegalTrademarks>`: Legal Trademarks for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceOriginalFilename>`: Original Filename for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceProductName>`: Product Name for resources embedded in Windows executable
- `<windowsResourceProductVersion>`: Product Version for resources embedded in Windows executable

Once your `<autoUpdateProject>` is configured, you can build it using the `customize` tool, located in the `bin` folder, under the AutoUpdate directory. Depending on the OS, you will be able to build AutoUpdate binaries for `windows`, `osx`, `linux` or `linux-x64`, reusing the same AutoUpdate XML project.

The syntax to use the tool is:

```
$> installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/bin/customize build /path/to/autoUpdateProject.xml ↵  
windows  
  
Autoupdater successfully created. You can find it at  
  
installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/output/autoupdate-windows.exe
```

You can also check it invoking the tool without arguments:

```
$> installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/bin/customize  
  
Wrong syntax. Correct syntax is  
  
customize build /path/to/project.xml [windows|linux|linux-x64|osx]
```

As previously mentioned, the AutoUpdate wizard must be distributed along with an INI file. The basic information required, organized in the Update section of the INI file, is:

- **url**: Points to the remote location of the update data. Currently only HTTP is supported.
- **version\_id**: The local version identifier, which is compared to the remote version identifier to trigger the update process. Its value must be a positive integer.
- **update\_download\_location**: The path to the folder where the downloaded files will be saved. Downloading a file that already exists in the download location path will result in the new file being renamed in an incremental way, by appending a number at the end of the file name. If the download folder does not exist, the automatic update process will attempt to create it. If not specified, it defaults to `~/ .bitrock/updates`.
- **check\_for\_updates**: It is possible to enable and disable the AutoUpdate on demand by setting this boolean value.

#### Basic update.ini file

```
[Update]  
  
url = http://example.com:8080/update.xml  
version_id = 0100  
check_for_updates = 1  
update_download_location = ${installer_directory}/tmp
```

Apart from these basic keys, it is also possible to configure other AutoUpdate settings such as the proxy configuration (Proxy section):

- **enable**: Enables (1) or disables (0) the proxy. If the rest of keys are not provided, the proxy configuration from the system will be autodetected and used (if any).
- **server**: The proxy server.
- **port**: The port in the proxy server.
- **username**: Username in the proxy server (if required)
- **password**: The password in the proxy server (if required)

#### update.ini file with proxy configuration

```
[Update]  
  
url = http://example.com:8080/update.xml  
version_id = 0100  
check_for_updates = 1  
update_download_location = ${installer_directory}/tmp
```

```
[Proxy]

server=proxy.example.com
port=8080
username=foo
password=bar
```

Some of these settings can also be passed to the AutoUpdate through the command line when calling it. The provided values will then overwrite those configured in the INI file. You can check the available command line settings using the `--help` flag:

```
$> installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/runtimes/autoupdate-linux.run --help
Your Program 1.0
Usage:

--help                                Display the list of valid options

--unattendedmodeui <unattendedmodeui> Unattended Mode UI
                                     Default: none
                                     Allowed: none minimal minimalWithDialogs

--debuglevel <debuglevel>            Debug information level of verbosity
                                     Default: 2
                                     Allowed: 0 1 2 3 4

--settings_file <settings_file> Path to the local settings file, containing the HTTP URL ↵
                                     to update and the current version ID.
                                     Default: installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/runtimes/update. ↵
                                     ini

--url <url>                           HTTP URL that points to the xml file containing the update ↵
    data.
                                     Default:

--version_id <version_id>             Version ID of the local installation.
                                     Default:

--update_download_location <update_download_location> Path where the downloaded files will ↵
    be stored.
                                     Default: ~/.bitrock/updates

--check_for_updates <check_for_updates> Boolean value to specify whether to check for ↵
    updates or not.
                                     Default: 1
```

Apart from the INI file, you also must define an XML file (`update.xml`) with the available versions and make it available on your server, in the URL defined in the `update.ini` file. The server XML must define the below set of properties:

- **<version>**: Specifies the version of the update. This is the version that will be displayed to the end user. It is not taken into account by the update wizard when determining whether or not there is an update available. Instead, `<versionId>` is used for that.
- **<versionId>**: This is an integer, whose value is compared with the one located in the local `update.ini` file. If the value of `<versionId>` is bigger than the local one, it indicates that there is a new version of the software available.
- **<platformFileList>**: This section describes the available update installers for each platform. Each update binary is defined as a `<platformFile>`, in which you specify the `<filename>` that will be downloaded only if the user's operating system matches the one defined as `<platform>`. At the moment, OS X installers are expected to be compressed in a `.tgz` file but future versions will allow users to use other formats.
- **<downloadLocationList>**: List of download locations (`<downloadLocation>`), each containing a URL pointing to the remote folder where the files are located, which is used to generate the list of mirrors selectable in the AutoUpdate user

interface. The HTTP URL containing the update will be constructed by appending the file field to the mirror url. In the example below, it means the Linux version will be available from <http://www.example.com/updates/download/program-4.0.1.run> and <ftp://www.example.com/mirror/updates/download/program-4.0.1.run>

```
<installerInformation>
  <versionId>2000</versionId>
  <version>4.0.1</version>
  <platformFileList>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>program-4.0.1.exe</filename>
      <platform>windows</platform>
    </platformFile>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>program-4.0.1.run</filename>
      <platform>linux</platform>
    </platformFile>
  </platformFileList>
  <downloadLocationList>
    <downloadLocation>
      <url>http://www.example.com/updates/download/</url>
    </downloadLocation>
    <downloadLocation>
      <url>ftp://www.example.com/mirror/updates/download/</url>
    </downloadLocation>
  </downloadLocationList>
</installerInformation>
```

---

#### Note

<versionId> must be an integer which takes higher values for the newest versions.

---

### 23.1.2 Basic example

Imagine you have an application called *My Application* and you want to include the AutoUpdate functionality in version 1.0.0. You may also want, for example, for the update process to be run by an Administrator and prevent multiple instances of the AutoUpdate to run simultaneously. This wizard installer could be created with the simple code below:

```
<autoUpdateProject>
  <fullName>My Application</fullName>
  <shortName>myapp</shortName>
  <vendor>Acme Inc.</vendor>
  <version>1.0.0</version>
  <singleInstanceCheck>1</singleInstanceCheck>
  <requireInstallationByRootUser>1</requireInstallationByRootUser>
</autoUpdateProject>
```

You may also want to change the images and icons to have application-specific ones. To do so, you can add the options: <leftImage>, <logoImage>, <splashImage>, <wmImage>. Once all desired options are included in `autoUpdateProject.xml` file, you can build the AutoUpdate wizard using the `customize` command:

```
installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/bin/customize.run build autoUpdateProject.xml linux
installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/bin/customize.run build autoUpdateProject.xml windows
installbuilder-15.9.0/autoupdate/bin/customize.run build autoUpdateProject.xml osx
```

After that, binary files for Linux, OS X and Windows should be found in the AutoUpdate output directory.

Apart from the AutoUpdate binary, you will need to setup a server with the new installers and `update.xml` file. This example assumes the server is running locally in port 8080. (you can easily setup a web server using LAMPStack (Linux), WAMPStack (Windows) or MAMPStack (OS X) from [BitNami.org](http://bitnami.org)). Just copy the latest installers and an `update.xml` file describing that version, the filenames and mirrors to the server:



```
<installerInformation>
  <versionId>200</versionId>
  <version>2.0.0</version>
  <platformFileList>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>myapplication-installer-2.0.0.exe</filename>
      <platform>windows</platform>
    </platformFile>
    <platformFile>
      <filename>myapplication-installer-2.0.0.run</filename>
      <platform>linux</platform>
    </platformFile>

    <platformFile>
      <filename>myapplication-installer-2.0.0.app.tgz</filename>
      <platform>osx</platform>
    </platformFile>
  </platformFileList>
  <downloadLocationList>
    <downloadLocation>
      <url>http://127.0.0.1:8080/downloads/</url>
    </downloadLocation>
  </downloadLocationList>
</installerInformation>
```

where `<versionId>` has been set to a higher integer value than previous ones and a single mirror has been configured. You can include any number of mirrors by adding multiple `<downloadLocation>` elements though. In the example, the installers will be available from:

- `http://127.0.0.1:8080/downloads/myapplication-installer-2.0.0.run`
- `http://127.0.0.1:8080/downloads/myapplication-installer-2.0.0.exe`
- `http://127.0.0.1:8080/downloads/myapplication-installer-2.0.0.app.tgz`

To provide AutoUpdate with the needed information to find the XML file in the server and to check the information on it, you must write an `update.ini` file:

```
[Update]
url = http://127.0.0.1:8080/update.xml
version_id = 100
check_for_updates = 1
update_download_location = /tmp
```

In this case, `update.xml` will be obtained from `localhost`, saving temporary installers inside the `/tmp` path. The application upgrade process will be done if the received `<versionId>` is greater than 100.

Once you have placed your binary files and `update.xml` on your server and the `update.ini` file is in the same directory as the AutoUpdate binary, it is ready to go. You can launch it by double-clicking on it or from a command line prompt:

```
$> autoupdater-linux.run
```

When it is started, according to the settings you configured in the XML project, if the user running the updater is not an Administrator, he will be notified and the AutoUpdate process will end. If there is another instance already running, a notification will let the user know and he or she will be able to indicate whether or not the process should continue. If both requirements are met, a welcome screen will appear:

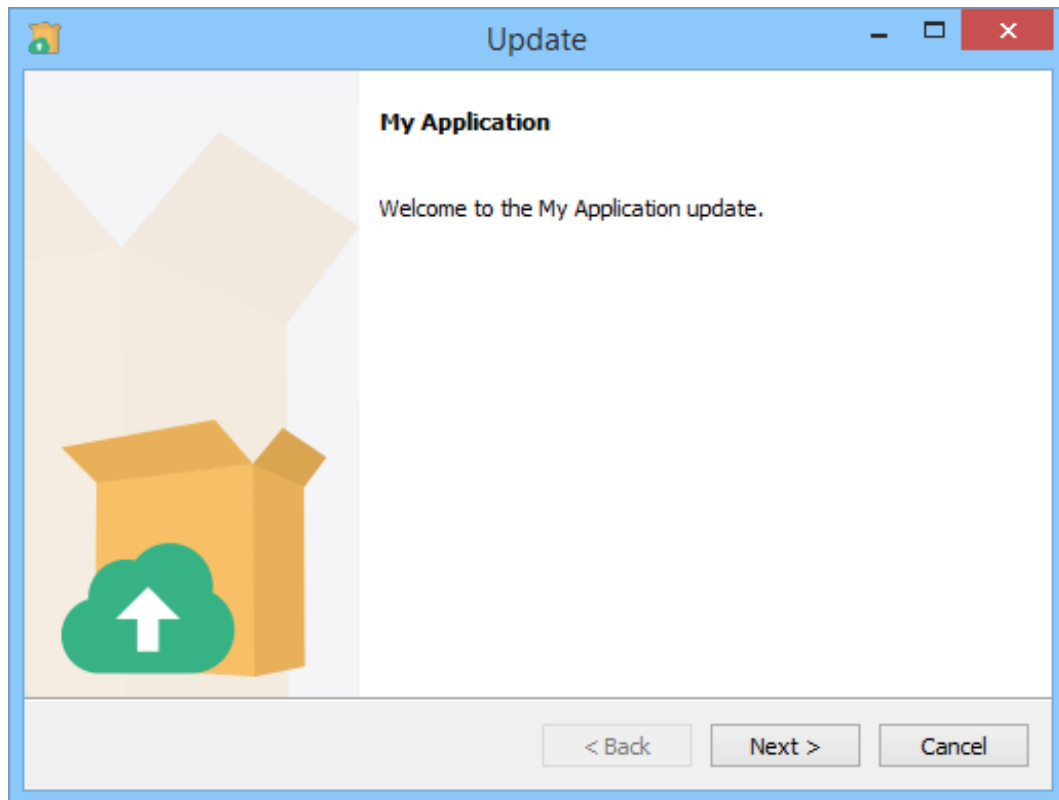


Figure 23.1: Welcome to the My application update

After clicking **Next**, you will get a screen to configure a proxy if it is necessary.

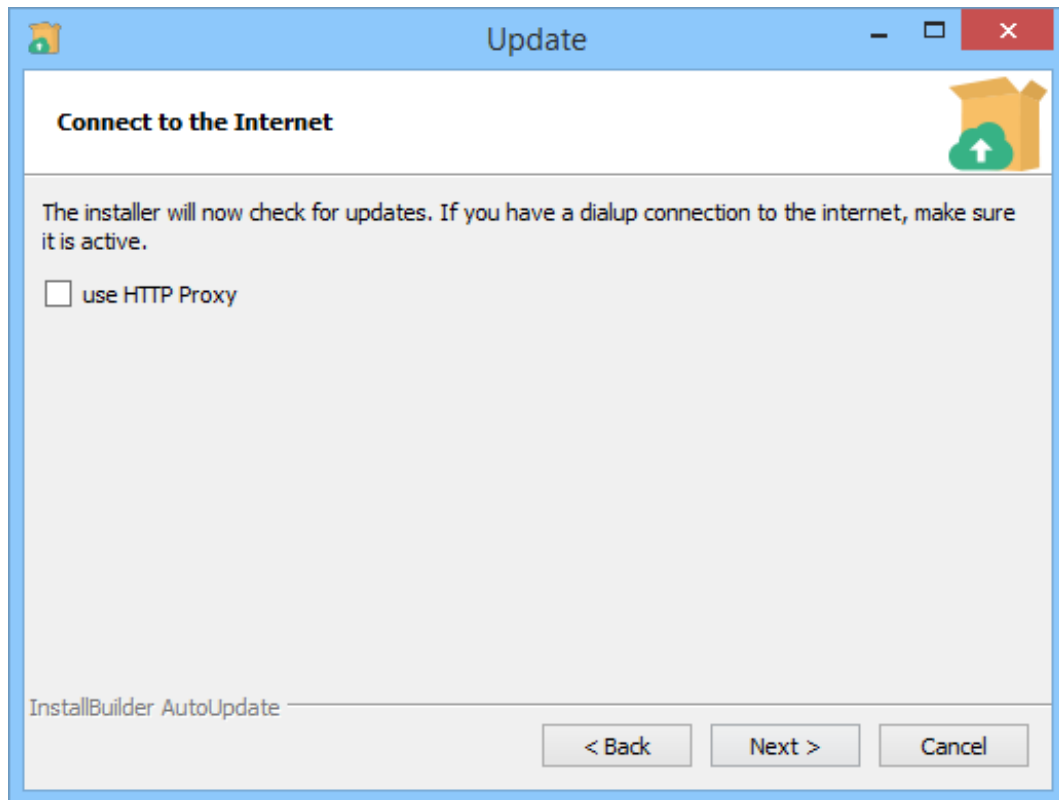


Figure 23.2: Connect to the Internet

It will contact the server and check if there are new versions available. If there is an update, the following screen will be shown:

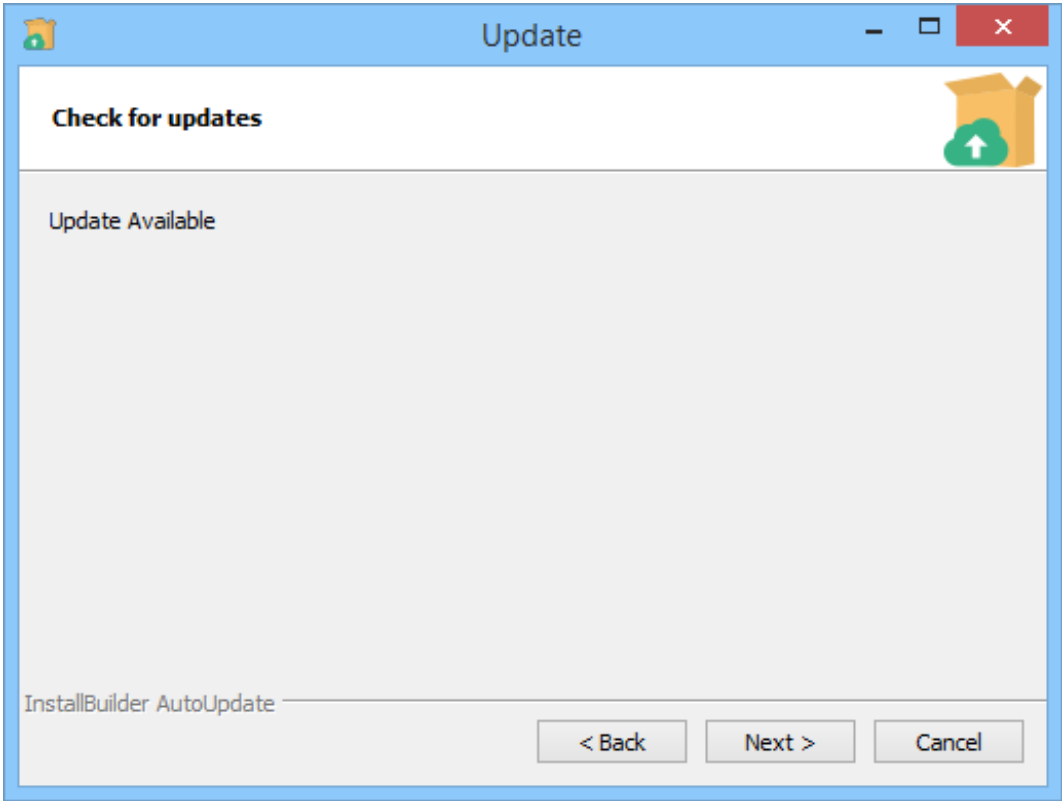


Figure 23.3: Check for updates

If you click Next, a new window with the list of mirrors will be displayed:

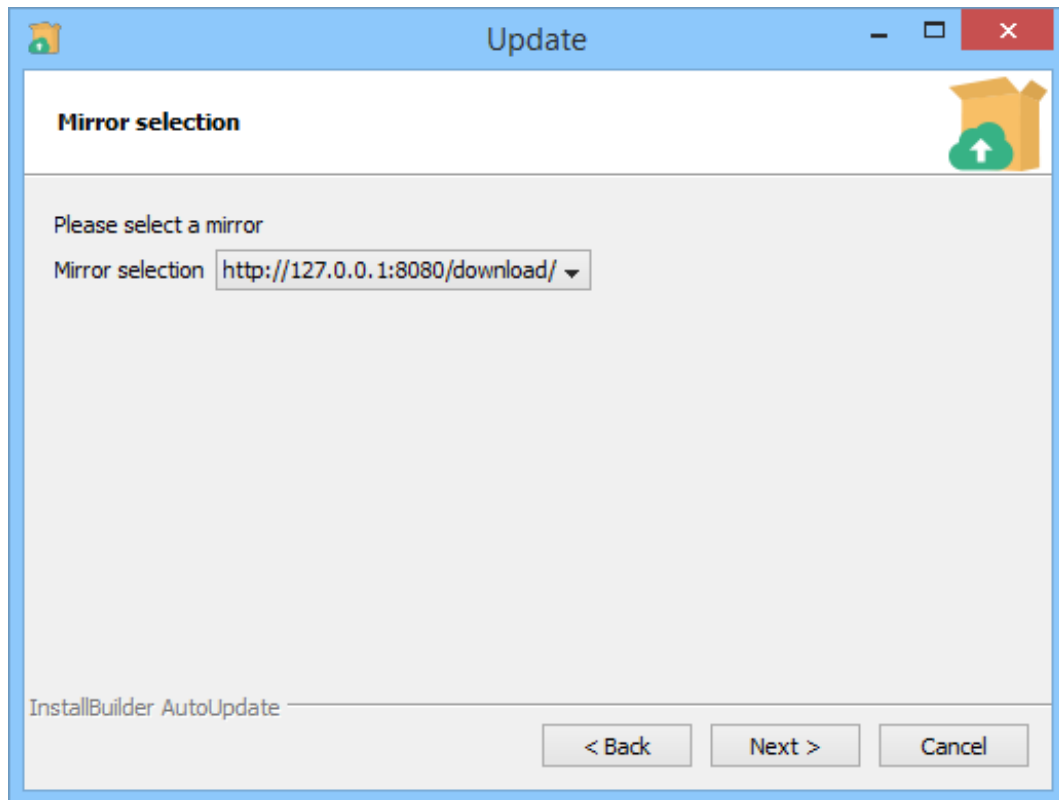


Figure 23.4: Mirror selection

If you just provided a single download location for the binaries, the mirrors page will be skipped.

After the details of the connection have been configured, the download process starts:

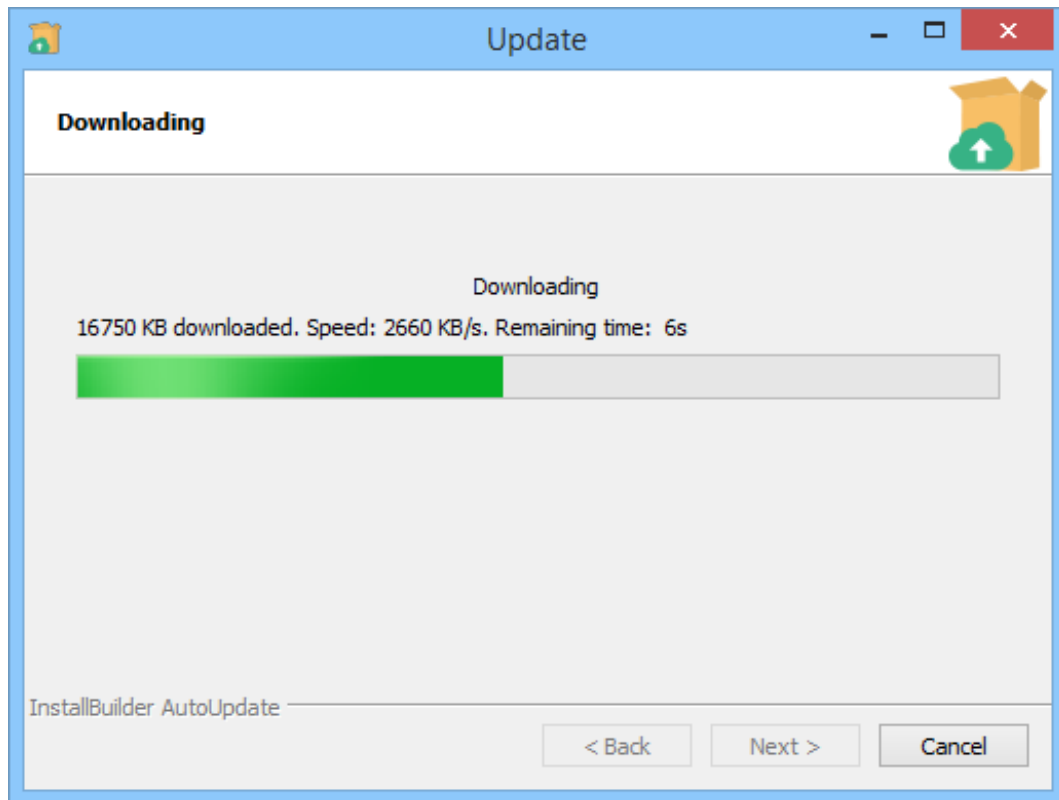


Figure 23.5: Downloading Updates

Once the download finishes, the update installer is automatically started.

## 23.2 Adding the AutoUpdate to an Existing InstallBuilder project

The only steps required to include the new feature as part of the application installation is to copy the appropriate AutoUpdate wizard file for each operating system and place the configured `update.ini` file in the same folder. For instance, you can define a component in the following way:

```
<component>
  <name>autoupdater</name>
  <description>includes tool to perform updates</description>
  <canBeEdited>0</canBeEdited>
  <selected>1</selected>
  <show>0</show>
  <folderList>
    <folder>
      <name>autoupdaterwin</name>
      <destination>${installdir}</destination>
      <platforms>windows</platforms>
      <distributionFileList>
        <distributionFile origin="autoupdater-windows.exe"/>
      </distributionFileList>
    </folder>
    <folder>
      <name>autoupdaterlinux</name>
      <destination>${installdir}</destination>
      <platforms>linux</platforms>
      <distributionFileList>
```

```

        <distributionFile origin="autoupdater-linux.run"/>
    </distributionFileList>
</folder>
</folderList>
<postInstallationActionList>
    <writeFile>
        <path>${installdir}/update.ini</path>
        <text>[Update]
url = ${update_xml_url}
version_id = ${application_version_id}
update_download_location = ${system_temp_directory}
check_for_updates = 1
</text>
    </writeFile>
</postInstallationActionList>
</component>

```

Where the `update_xml_url` installer variable must be setup to the point where `update.xml` can be fetched and `application_version_id` must be modified to a higher value on each installer update. This component will automatically take the AutoUpdate binaries from the project directory and deploy the appropriate one on the target machine.

### 23.3 Using AutoUpdate as a notifier

Another interesting feature you could add to your installations is using the AutoUpdate as a notifier which will silently check for updates. This can be achieved by calling the tool in unattended mode:

```
$ autoupdater.run --mode unattended
```

The exit code will be 0 if an update is available and >0 if not. Once a new version is detected, you could then show a popup to your users with a There's a new update available message. To do so, you just call the process in background and generate the message if the returned code is 0:

```

if (system("path/to/autoupdater --mode unattended") == 0){
    printf("Update available. Run autoupdate to apply it.");
}

```

Something similar may be added when the application starts, or as a cron task if it is a web application, so that the user detects that there's a new update without having to run AutoUpdate manually to check it.

### 23.4 How to execute custom actions after the update installer is downloaded

The default behavior of AutoUpdate is to launch the downloaded installer but sometimes it is necessary to perform some validation over the downloaded files, for example to check the integrity of the downloaded data. These kind of custom actions can be defined using the `<postUpdateDownloadActionList>`:

```

<postUpdateDownloadActionList>
    <!-- Execute some validations here -->
    ...
    <!-- The path to the downloaded update will be stored in
the ${downloadedFilePath} built-in variable. We calculate the MD5 -->
    <runProgram>
        <program>md5sum</program>
        <programArguments>${downloadedFilePath}</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <!-- You can use any action like using httpGet to retrieve a valid
value for the md5sum or directly send the md5 to the server to validate it it -->
    <throwError>

```

```

    <text>It seems the downloaded installer was corrupted</text>
    <ruleList>
        <compareText>
            <text>${program_stdout}</text>
            <logic>does_not_equal</logic>
            <value>${someExpectedValue}</value>
        </compareText>
    </ruleList>
</throwError>
...
<!-- Launch the installer -->
<runProgram>
    <program>${downloadedFilePath}</program>
    <programArguments>--prefix /tmp/someDir --enable_component_a 1 --is_update 1 & amp ←
        ;</programArguments>
</runProgram>
</postUpdateDownloadActionList>

```

Please note the usage of the built-in `${downloadedFilePath}` variable to get the path of the update installer. This is necessary because although you define the `update_download_location` key in the `update.ini` file, if an older file with the same name is found there, a suffix will automatically be appended to the file name: `sample-1.0-windows-installer.exe.1`, `sample-1.0-windows-installer.exe.2`...

In addition, you will have to manually launch the downloaded file because the default behavior was overridden.

This is especially useful to launch the updates in unattended mode or to pass some command line argument as in the example.

## 23.5 AutoUpdate installers in unattended mode

The AutoUpdate installer can be executed in unattended mode just as with regular InstallBuilder installers:

```
autoupdate-linux.run --mode unattended
```

As mentioned in the previous section, when launched in unattended mode, AutoUpdate will simply check if an update is available and then will finish its execution. However, this behavior is configurable.

### 23.5.1 Regular unattended mode

```
autoupdate-linux.run --mode unattended
```

In this mode, AutoUpdate is executed as a checker. It will return a `0` exit code if it finds a new update and a positive integer otherwise. The snippet below shows how to use it from an InstallBuilder installer which bundled AutoUpdate:

```

<project>
    ...
    <initializationActionList>
        <showQuestion default="yes" text="Would you like to check for updates?" variable ←
            ="shouldCheckForUpdates" />
        <actionGroup>
            <actionList>
                <!-- Once you have unpacked the bundled autoupdate and update.ini to some ←
                    folder, like /tmp/autoupdate -->
                <runProgram>
                    <program>/tmp/autoupdate/autoupdate-linux.run</program>
                    <programArguments>--mode unattended</programArguments>
                </runProgram>
                <showInfo text="An update is available!">
            </actionList>
        </actionGroup>
    </initializationActionList>

```



```

        <isFalse value="{program_exit_code}" />
    </ruleList>
</showInfo>
<showInfo text="Sorry, no update is available...">
    <ruleList>
        <compareText text="{program_exit_code}" value="0" logic="↔
            does_not_equal" />
    </ruleList>
</showInfo>
</actionList>
<ruleList>
    <compareText text="{shouldCheckForUpdates}" value="yes" logic="equals" />
</ruleList>
</actionGroup>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

### 23.5.2 Download unattended mode

```
autoupdate-linux.run --mode unattended --unattendedmodebehavior download
```

The default value for `unattendedmodebehavior` is `check`, which causes AutoUpdate tool to only check for updates. If instead of only checking for updates, you want to download and install the update, the `unattendedmodebehavior` has to be set to `download`.

As mentioned, a 0 return code means "An update is available" and a non-zero return code means "No update available" but in some scenarios you need more information. To provide this information, AutoUpdate uses the return codes summarized below:

- 0: Successfully downloaded and executed the installer.
- 1: No updates available
- 2: Error connecting to remote server or invalid XML file
- 3: An error occurred downloading the file
- 4: An error occurred executing the downloaded update or evaluating its `<postUpdateDownloadActionList>`
- 5: Update check disabled through `check_for_updates` setting

Return codes 0, 1, 2 and 5 are common for both modes while 3-4 are exclusive to *download* mode.

When launching AutoUpdate from a Windows cmd, as it is compiled as a GUI application, it will launch it in background, reporting 0 as the exit code if the file can be executed. To force the cmd to wait for the process to finalize and retrieve the correct code returned by AutoUpdate it should be launched as:

```
cmd /W /C autoupdate-windows.exe --mode unattended
```

This is not necessary if the AutoUpdate is launched from a BitRock installer using an action.

If no errors occur in the process, this will download and install the update. However, if the update is a big file you may want to provide some feedback to the user. To achieve it you can add `--unattendedmodeui minimal` or `--unattendedmodeui minimalWithDialogs` to the command line options. This will display a download progress bar as displayed in the image:

```
autoupdate-linux.run --mode unattended --unattendedmodebehavior download --unattendedmodeui ↔
    minimalWithDialogs
```

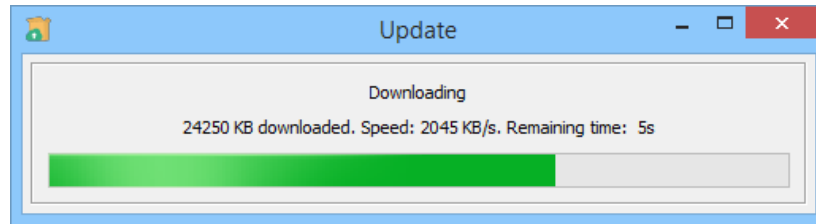


Figure 23.6: Unattended Update Download

## 23.6 Sequential updates

The easiest way to create update installers is to include some additional code in your latest installer to handle outdated installations. However, using this update method implies that the user has to download a full installer even if the update is minimal, like updated documentation. In these cases, it may be desirable to deliver small delta installers instead, including just the new files and logic to install and configure them.

Currently, the AutoUpdate tool just allows defining one update - the latest one released for a product instead of allowing multiple delta updates and dependencies between them. However, this does not mean you cannot use AutoUpdate to develop these kind of updates. This section details how to achieve it with a step-by-step example.

To implement the multiupdate feature, you just need a regular InstallBuilder installer that will make use of a bundled AutoUpdate. The workflow at runtime would be:

- Unpack the AutoUpdate and write an update.ini file, with an url containing the <versionId> of the current version, for example: <http://192.168.1.182:8080/updates.php?versionId=101>
- Call the AutoUpdate in unattended mode to check and download the update if any
- Update the update.ini with the updated version id from the update
- Repeat step 2 with the updated information
- ...

Using a PHP script as the update URL, you allow the server to decide which update.xml file to deliver. For example, if you store your update.xml files in a directory `versions` in your server, you could use the below code:

```
<?php

/* Define the higher version released*/
$maxVersion=12;

/* Get the current version sent by the autoupdate */
$version=$_GET['versionId'];

/* Check if the requested version is correct */
if (!isset($_GET["versionId"]) || $_GET["versionId"] > $maxVersion) {
    echo "Incorrect version";
    exit();
} else {
    /* Depending on the current version, we decide which update to deliver */

    /* We provide an update pack for versions in the range 1-3 */
    if ($version < 4 ) {
        $file="update-pack-1.xml";

        /* We provide an update pack for versions in the range 4-7 */
    } elseif ($version < 8 ) {
```

```

    $file="update-pack-2.xml";

    /* For versions below the max, we deliver the next one */
    } elseif ($version < $maxVersion) {
        $file="update".($version+1).".xml";

    /* For the latest version, we resend it, it will be discarded by the AutoUpdate */
    } else {
        $file="update".$maxVersion.".xml";
    }

    $data=file_get_contents('./versions/'.$file);
    echo $data;
    exit();
}
?>

```

The PHP script will return update packs for the older versions and individual updates for the latest ones. This allows controlling the granularity of the updates.

The next step is to include the update code in the XML project:

```

<project>
    <!-- bundled version -->
    <versionId>100</versionId>
    ...
    <componentList>
        <component>
            <name>autoupdate</name>
            <folderList>
                <folder>
                    <name>autoupdate</name>
                    <destination>${installdir}/autoupdate</destination>
                    <distributionFileList>
                        <distributionFile>
                            <origin>path/to/autoupdate.run</origin>
                        </distributionFile>
                    </distributionFileList>
                </folder>
            </folderList>
        </component>
    </componentList>
    ...
    <parameterList>
        <!-- This parameter will be used to enable/disable checking for updates -->
        <booleanParameter name="enableUpdates" ask="0" value="1"/>
    </parameterList>

    <!-- After installing the bundled version, we query our servers for updates -->
    <postInstallationActionList>
        <!-- Write the initial update.ini file -->
        <writeFile>
            <path>${installdir}/autoupdate/update.ini</path>
            <text>[Update]
url = http://www.example.com/versions.php?versionId=${project.versionId}
version_id = ${project.versionId}
update_download_location = ${installdir}/autoupdate/updateInstallers
check_for_updates = 1
</text>
        </writeFile>

        <!-- Keep asking for updates while available -->

```

```

<while>
  <actionList>
    <showProgressDialog>
      <actionList>
        <runProgram progressText="Checking for updates...">
          <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
          <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
          <program>${installdir}/autoupdate/autoupdate.run</program>
          <programArguments>--mode unattended</programArguments>
        </runProgram>
      </actionList>
    </showProgressDialog>
    <!-- Break the loop if there is no update available (exit code > 0) -->
    <break progressText="No Update Available">
      <ruleList>
        <compareValues>
          <value1>${program_exit_code}</value1>
          <logic>greater</logic>
          <value2>0</value2>
        </compareValues>
      </ruleList>
    </break>
    <showProgressDialog>
      <actionList>
        <runProgram progressText="Downloading the update...">
          <program>${installdir}/autoupdate/autoupdate.run</program>
          <programArguments>--mode unattended --unattendedmodebehavior download</ ←
            programArguments>
          </runProgram>
        </actionList>
      </showProgressDialog>
    </actionList>
    <conditionRuleList>
      <isTrue value="${parameter(enableUpdates).value}"/>
    </conditionRuleList>
  </while>
</postInstallationActionList>
</project>

```

At this point you have a project that unpacks AutoUpdate and uses it to check for updates while displaying a progress dialog. If your updates follow the same structure, the next installed version will update the `update.ini` file and, if `${parameter(enableUpdates).value}` is enabled, it will check for updates again. As this is not the desired behavior, the AutoUpdate project will be configured to disable it:

```

<autoUpdateProject>
  ...
  <postUpdateDownloadActionList>
    <!-- Launch the update specifying the ${installdir} and disabling checking for updates ←
      -->
    <runProgram>
      <program>${downloadedFilePath}</program>
      <programArguments>--prefix "${installer_directory}/../" --enableUpdates 0 --mode ←
        unattended --unattendedmodeui minimalWithDialogs</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
  </postUpdateDownloadActionList>
</autoUpdateProject>

```

The above code installs the download update in the same installation directory using the `${installer_directory}` built-in variable, containing the AutoUpdate parent directory.

## Chapter 24

# Native Packages

### 24.1 Generation of Native Packages

The Professional and Enterprise versions of InstallBuilder support generation of native packages. To generate the packages, the appropriate command line tools must be present in the Linux system used at build-time, such as rpm or dpkg. The target platform needs to be specified as rpm or deb in the command line environment or can be selected in the build screen using the GUI builder.

### 24.2 Integration with Native Package Systems

BitRock InstallBuilder allows you to register the software being installed with the RPM or DEB package databases.

To enable RPM and DEB registration support add `<registerWithPackageDatabase>1</registerWithPackageDatabase>` to your installer project file. This will register your installation with the RPM and DEB database. From this point on, users will be able to query data about your application and its installed files using your distribution's rpm-based tools as with any other existing rpm package. You will also be able to uninstall the application using your distribution's rpm-based tools.

RPM database integration requires installation as root in an RPM-based distribution. Otherwise, the setting will be ignored. Also, if the RPM generation is performed on a 64bit machine, then 64bit RPM packages will be generated instead of 32bit ones.

To generate the packages, the appropriate command line tools need to be present in the Linux system used at build-time, such as rpm or dpkg. The target platform will be specified as rpm and deb in the command line environment or can be selected in the build screen using the GUI builder.

Additionally, to successfully register an RPM, the following tags must be also present in the XML project file:

#### RPM information tags

```
<project>
...
<vendor>Your Company Name</vendor>
<summary>Detailed description of your software</summary>
<release>0</release>
<description>A one-line description of your software</description>
...
</project>
```

The name of the RPM package registered will be `${project.shortName}-${project.version}-${project.release}`

## 24.2.1 Creating custom spec files for RPM installers

RPM packages use a spec file to describe a package. When creating an RPM package, InstallBuilder creates it using built-in templates by default.

InstallBuilder allows creating RPM packages that use a custom spec file. This is useful when an RPM package has to specify dependencies or other fields in the spec file.

If you need to create your own spec file, simply enable the `<rpmSpecFileTemplate>` option in your project:

```
<project>
  <rpmSpecFileTemplate>path/to/package.spec</rpmSpecFileTemplate>
  ...
</project>
```

Where `path/to/package.spec` should point to a spec file.

A template for a default spec file is as follows:

```
%define _unpackaged_files_terminate_build 0
%define installdir /
%define _topdir ${bitrock_rpm_topdir}
%define _rpmdir %{_topdir}
BuildRoot: ${bitrock_rpm_buildroot}
Name: ${bitrock_rpm_name}
Version: ${bitrock_rpm_version}
Release: ${bitrock_rpm_release}
Group: ${bitrock_rpm_group}
Vendor: ${bitrock_rpm_vendor}
Summary: ${bitrock_rpm_summary}
License: ${bitrock_rpm_copyright}
Provides: ${bitrock_rpm_name}
%description
${bitrock_rpm_description}
%post
${bitrock_rpm_post}
%preun
${bitrock_rpm_preun}
%postun
${bitrock_rpm_postun}
%files
%defattr(-,root,root)
${bitrock_rpm_files}
```

The `${bitrock_*}` variables are substituted when building the installer.

More information regarding creating and contents of the spec file can be found on RPM.org:

<http://www.rpm.org/max-rpm/s1-rpm-build-creating-spec-file.html>

## Chapter 25

# Builder

InstallBuilder supports two build modes, "build" and "quickbuild", which are explained in the following sections.

### 25.1 Build

This is the slower but safer build process. For each build process, if a file already exists with the name of the installer to build, it will be first deleted. The list of steps performed for a full build are:

- Load and validate the XML project. If the GUI builder is being used, the project has already been loaded and validated.
- Check if the destination filename is locked, for example if it is currently running
- Execute the `<preBuildActionList>`
- Replace the current file in the output directory
- Modify Windows resources and icons if the target is Windows
- Add language files, licenses, readmes and images to the installer
- Pack all the files defined in the XML project
- Execute the `<postBuildActionList>`

### 25.2 Quickbuild

A regular build always creates a new installer and repacks all of the files. On the contrary, using Quick Build makes it possible to do incremental builds in which only new files or files that have changed will be repackaged. If you are packaging hundreds of megabytes, this should result in significantly quicker builds, but the resulting installers may increase in size with each new incremental build. It is recommended that you use quickbuild during the development process and do a full builds before the official release.

```
bin/builder quickbuild /path/to/project.xml
```

It is also possible to only update project files like logos, splash screen, readme a license files and project XML without repackaging any files at all. You can do so with the following option:

```
bin/builder quickbuild /path/to/project.xml --onlyprojectfiles
```

This build process is slightly different:

---

- Load and validate the XML project. If the GUI builder is being used, the project has already been loaded and validated.
- If the file does not exist, abort quickbuild and perform a regular full build
- Check if the destination filename is locked, for example if it is currently running
- Execute the `<preBuildActionList>`
- Modify Windows resources and icons if the target is Windows. The `<requestedExecutionLevel>` property is ignored in quickbuilds
- Add language files, licenses, readmes and images to the installer
- Pack just new or modified files
- Execute the `<postBuildActionList>`

## 25.3 Using the Command Line Interface

One of the most useful features of InstallBuilder is the ability to automate the build process. Installers can be built from a shell script or the command line by issuing the following command:

```
$> bin/builder build /path/to/project.xml
```

By default, it will build an installer for the current platform. However, you can pass an optional argument to the command line to indicate the target platform to build for. For example:

```
$> bin/builder build /path/to/project.xml windows
```

On Windows, there are separate executables for the Graphical Builder Interface (`builder.exe`) and the Command Line Interface (`builder-cli.exe`). This is because Windows imposes a compilation-time switch to distinguish between command line applications and graphical applications, the latter lacking the ability to write to the console.

You can build an installer from the command line on Windows by issuing the following command:

```
C:\Program Files\Bitrock InstallBuilder\bin/builder-cli.exe build /path/to/project.xml linux ↵
```

It is also possible to set different project settings and variables from the command line by passing the option `--setvars` and its arguments as in the following example:

```
bin/builder build /path/to/project.xml --setvars project.fullName="New Project Name"
project.version=0.1beta some_variable_name=some_value
```

where `some_variable_name` is a variable that will be available in the installer `<preBuildActionList>`.

In addition, the builder application allows some options for both the console and the GUI build process:

<code>--help</code>	Display the list of valid options
<code>--version</code>	Display product information
<code>--verbose</code> builds	Write files being packed on command line ↵
<code>--license &lt;license&gt;</code>	Provide an alternative license to the builder Default:
<code>--setvars &lt;setvars&gt;</code> process: <code>--setvars installdir=/tmp project.version=1.5</code>	Modify project variables before the build ↵ Default:



<code>--downloadable-components files</code>	Build downloadable components as separate files ↩
<code>--onlyprojectfiles</code> without considering new packed files	On quickbuild mode, just update project files ↩
<code>--project &lt;project&gt;</code>	Open specified project for editing Default:
<code>--disable-parallel-compression</code> compression using multiple cores	Disable performing LZMA / LZMA Ultra ↩
<code>--disable-parallel-compression-throttling</code> LZMA / LZMA Ultra at lower priority	Disable performing parallel compression for LZMA / LZMA Ultra ↩
<code>--parallel-compression-cores &lt;cores&gt;</code> parallel compression	Number of cores to use for LZMA / LZMA Ultra ↩ Default: auto

## 25.4 Creating Custom Builds

The preceding sections introduced the basic command line build process, specifying the project to build and the target platform. They also presented the `--setvars` flag, which allows some project elements to be modified. However, the build process allows much more significant customizations.

This example assumes that you plan to build two different installers. A complete project, including documentation and some optional applications and a lightweight installer, that will only bundle the main project files. The obvious solution would be to have two projects: one that bundles all of the components and the other with the primary project files. This can be achieved by organizing the files and logic into components and using the `<include>` directive, which will allow you to separate them into multiple `.xml` files.

The drawback of this approach is that you will be forced to duplicate some logic, such as the project properties. A more efficient approach would be to have a single XML project file and decide whether or not to pack the components based on the build target. For example, you could use:

```
$> builder build project.xml --setvars buildFlavor=full
```

To build the complete installer and

```
$> builder build project.xml --setvars buildFlavor=minimal
```

to only pack the main application.

For this approach, you simply have to create a hidden parameter to make the `buildFlavor` type persistent at runtime and use the `<shouldPackRuleList>`:

```
<project>
  <shortName>myProject</shortName>
  <version>1.4</version>
  ...
  <parameterList>
    ...
    <stringParameter name="buildFlavor" value="minimal" ask="0"/>
    ...
  </parameterList>
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>main</name>
      ...
    </component>
```

```

        <component>
            <name>optionalComponent</name>
            ...
            <shouldPackRuleList>
                <compareText text="{buildFlavor}" logic="equals" value="full"/>
            </shouldPackRuleList>
        </component>
    </componentList>
</project>

```

You could also combine it with the `<preBuildActionList>` and customize the particular aspects of the project as in:

```

<preBuildActionList>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.fullName"
                value="Basic Product Installation"/>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.windowsExecutableIcon"
                value="/path/to/minimal.ico"/>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.installerFilename"
                value="minimal-installation.exe"/>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="{buildFlavor}" logic="equals" value="minimal"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.fullName"
                value="Full Product Installation"/>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.windowsExecutableIcon"
                value="/path/to/full.ico"/>
            <setInstallerVariable name="project.installerFilename"
                value="full-installation.exe"/>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="{buildFlavor}" logic="equals" value="full"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
</preBuildActionList>

```

All the above functionality would work if you defined `buildFlavor` as a regular variable instead of creating a hidden parameter, but you would not be able to access it at runtime in that case.

You can use that functionality, for example, to show a link to a download page at the end of installation if the user wants to download optional applications:

```

<finalPageActionList>
    <launchBrowser url="www.downloads.com/optional" progressText="Would you
        like to visit our website to download additional modules?">
        <ruleList>
            <compareText text="{buildFlavor}" logic="equals" value="minimal"/>
        </ruleList>
    </launchBrowser>
</finalPageActionList>

```

## 25.5 Compression algorithms

InstallBuilder provides three compression types that can be set in the project properties.

The available algorithms are:

- **ZIP:** Provides fast installer build time and decompression, but compression ratio is low
- **LZMA Ultra:** Very slow installer build time, but provides reasonable decompression speed, often on par with ZIP algorithm; provides the best compression ratio
- **LZMA:** Installer is built faster compared to LZMA Ultra, but slower than ZIP ; installation time is often slower than other algorithms; the compression ratio is better than ZIP but worse than LZMA Ultra

Different algorithm may be used depending on requirements. The ZIP compression is recommended for installers that deliver small installers or consists of files that cannot be effectively compressed - such as consisting mainly of media files.

LZMA Ultra is recommended for installers that deliver payload that can be compressed - such as binary files or other file formats that are not compressed.

In terms of memory usage, ZIP requires the least memory when building the installers as well as at runtime.

LZMA algorithm has slightly higher memory requirements when installing and larger memory requirements when building.

LZMA Ultra compression requires more memory than either ZIP or LZMA algorithms - both when building the installers and when installer is unpacking the files.

### 25.5.1 LZMA Ultra Block Size

Memory that is used by LZMA Ultra can be configured by setting the `<lzmaUltraBlockSize>` option. This option specifies the maximum size of a block in megabytes that will be used to compress files.

The value affects memory requirements both for build time as well as installation time. The default value is **80**, which means a block up to 80MB will be used. The recommended value range is between 40 and 100.

Setting this value to a lower value will decrease the memory requirements, but at the same time make the installer slightly larger. Setting this value to a higher value will increase memory requirements, but may decrease installer size.

Below is an example to decrease the block size to 40MB:

```
<project>
  <compressionAlgorithm>lzma-ultra</compressionAlgorithm>
  <lzmaUltraBlockSize>40</lzmaUltraBlockSize>
  ...
</project>
```

---

#### Setting this value too high may cause builder to run out of memory

Setting `<lzmaUltraBlockSize>` to high values such as 120 may cause the 32-bit versions of the builder to run out of memory.

If the project has to be built with `<lzmaUltraBlockSize>` set to a high value, it is recommended to use the InstallBuilder on Linux 64-bit platform as it can use more than 4GB of process memory.

---

## 25.6 Parallel compression

InstallBuilder supports using multiple cores and/or threads for building installers.

This is supported for projects that use LZMA and LZMA Ultra compression algorithms and when the payload encryption is disabled.

This functionality is enabled by default and uses all of the logical CPUs that the machine has. For example a machine with 4 cores that have 2 threads each will try to use all 8 logical processors.

When using the command line tool the compression can be customized using options described in more details below. The settings are applied to current build only.

---

When using the GUI building tool, the settings for parallel compression can be found by opening the Preferences window. The settings from the preferences window are stored in user settings and used by all builds made from the GUI.

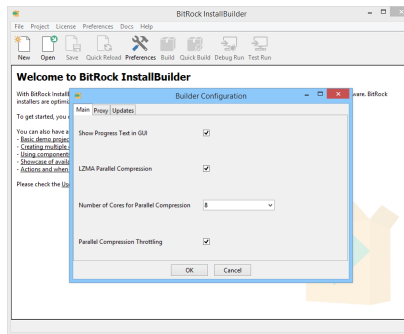


Figure 25.1: InstallBuilder Preferences Window

The **LZMA Parallel Compression** option allows disabling this functionality entirely. When the option is disabled, InstallBuilder will only use single core when performing the compression.

The command line equivalent is `--disable-parallel-compression`, which will disable the parallel compression for the current build. Example usage:

```
$> bin/builder build project.xml --disable-parallel-compression
```

The **Number of Cores for Parallel Compression** option allows specifying number of logical processors that will be used for the build process.

The value **Auto** indicates using all available logical processors and is the default value. Setting it to any other value will cause InstallBuilder to use that amount of logical processors for the compression, regardless of machine's current processor count.

The command line equivalent is `--parallel-compression-cores`. Example usage:

```
$> bin/builder build project.xml --parallel-compression-cores 4
```

It is also possible to specify `auto` or `auto-N`, where N is the number of cores to not use. For example the below build will use all but 2 cores (such as using up 6 out of 8 cores):

```
$> bin/builder build project.xml --parallel-compression-cores auto-2
```

The **Parallel Compression Throttling** option enabled or disabled running the compression processes at lower priority.

When enabled, this option prevents InstallBuilder from using all of machine's resources which may degrade performance of other applications or processes running on the machine.

It is recommended to leave this option enabled.

The command line equivalent is `--disable-parallel-compression-throttling`, which will disable the using the lower priority for the current build. Example usage:

```
$> bin/builder build project.xml --disable-parallel-compression-throttling
```

## 25.7 Parallel decompression

InstallBuilder supports using multiple cores and/or threads when installing files on the target machine.

This is supported for installers that are built using the LZMA and LZMA Ultra compression algorithms and when the payload encryption is disabled.

This functionality is enabled by default and by default InstallBuilder uses all of the logical processors that the machine has.

The limit for maximum number of cores to use is 8. This is because using more cores will not decrease the installation time, but the process will use more memory.

It is possible to customize it using the `<parallelDecompressionCores>` project property, which will specify the maximum number of cores to use during uncompression.

```
<project>
  <parallelDecompressionCores>4</parallelDecompressionCores>
  ...
</project>
```

This option is mainly useful when installer will often be run on machines with large number of processors, but very little memory being available and it is not recommended to change the default value.

Regardless of the value for `<parallelDecompressionCores>`, the installer will use either the number of logical processors available on the target machine if it is lower than `<parallelDecompressionCores>`.

It is also possible to customize the number of logical processors to use when running the installer from the command line by using the `--parallel-decompression-cores` option. Such as:

```
$> output/installer.run --parallel-decompression-cores 2
```

Setting the value to 1 will completely disable the parallel decompression functionality.

## Chapter 26

# Windows

This section summarizes all of the Windows-specific features that InstallBuilder provides as well as describes solutions for commonly-found scenarios when creating Windows installers.

### 26.1 Windows Registry

The Windows Registry is a central hierarchical database in which Windows stores configuration information about the system and information about the installed applications and devices.

It can be manually edited using the command line through the `reg.exe` command or executing the graphical registry editor, `regedit.exe`. It is organized in keys, which can contain other keys (subkeys) and values, which can have different formats. The root keys on Windows, which contain all of the other subkeys and values are:

- **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE (HKLM)**: This key contains information about the configuration of the system that is common for all users. One of its subkeys, `HKLM\SOFTWARE`, contains information about the software in the machine organized by vendor (including Microsoft, for Windows itself). This subkey is especially useful to store per-application information such as the version installed and the installation directory. This makes the detection of existing installations of your product a trivial task using InstallBuilder registry actions.
- **HKEY\_USERS (HKU)**: Contains all the user profiles configuration in the system.
- **HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER (HKCU)**: This key contains information about the current logged-in user. It is not a real key but a link to the appropriate subkey inside `HKEY_USERS`. The same information is stored in both keys and writing in one of them automatically updates the other.
- **HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT (HKCR)**: Contains information about registered applications such as file associations. From Windows 2000, this key is a mix of the values in `HKCU\Software\Classes` and `HKLM\Software\Classes`. If a value is defined in both, the one in `HKCU\Software\Classes` is used so per-user configuration always takes precedence.
- **HKEY\_CURRENT\_CONFIG**: Contains information about the hardware profile used by the computer at boot time.

These main keys contain many other subkeys, which allow hierarchically organizing the registry. Inside those keys, the data is stored in values, which allow the following types:

- **REG\_NONE**: Data without type defined, treated as binary information.
  - **REG\_SZ**: Used for string values, for example paths.
  - **REG\_EXPAND\_SZ**: This value is also intended to hold string values but in addition allows them to contain environment variables, which will be expanded when reading the data. For example if the data stored is `%TEMP%\myFolder`, it will be automatically expanded to `C:\Users\bitrock\AppData\Local\Temp\myFolder` when accessed while a regular `REG_SZ` value would have been resolved to just `%TEMP%\myFolder`. The Path environment variable defined in `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\Environment` is a good example of a `REG_EXPAND_SZ` value.
-

- REG\_BINARY: Binary data.
- REG\_DWORD: A 32bit unsigned integer (little-endian)
- REG\_DWORD\_BIG\_ENDIAN: A 32bit unsigned integer (big-endian)
- REG\_LINK: This is used to create symbolic links to other keys, specifying the root key and the path to the target key.
- REG\_MULTI\_SZ: Stores a list of non-empty list of elements, separated by the null character. An example of this key is the value `PendingFileRenameOperations` under the key `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager`, used to specify files to rename the next time the machine is restarted.
- REG\_RESOURCE\_LIST: A resource list. Used to store nested arrays by hardware devices

### 26.1.1 Managing the Windows Registry From InstallBuilder

Although the registry can be managed using the `reg.exe` command line tool using a `<runProgram>` action, InstallBuilder includes a set of built-in actions that allow it to easily read, write and even find data in the registry:

- `<registryGet>`: Store the value of a registry key in an installer variable. If the key or name does not exist, then the variable will be created empty.

```
<registryGet>
  <!-- By default, InstallBuilder stores the installation
  directory in this key -->
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name>Location</name>
  <variable>previousInstallDir</variable>
</registryGet>
```

- `<registrySet>`: Create a new registry key or modify the value of an existing registry key.

```
<registrySet>
  <!-- Update the installed version -->
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name>Version</name>
  <type>REG_SZ</type>
  <value>${project.version}</value>
</registrySet>
```

- `<registryDelete>`: Delete a registry entry. If the entry to delete is only a registry key and it does not exist, the action will be ignored. Deleting a registry value (key + name combination) that does not exist will trigger a regular error.

```
<!-- Clean installed keys -->
<registryDelete>
  <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name></name>
</registryDelete>
```

- `<registryGetKey>`: Store in *variable* the first registry key that matches the given pattern, or set the variable to empty otherwise. The search is case-sensitive for the whole key provided.

```

<!-- Gets the first key referencing one of the applications
under ${project.vendor} -->
<registryGetKey>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\*</key>
  <variable>application</variable>
</registryGetKey>

```

- **<registryGetMatch>:** Store the value of the first match of a registry key matching a certain expression in an installer variable. If the key or name does not exist, then the variable will be created empty. The name can contain a wildcard expression (using \*)

```

<!-- Gets the data of the first value in our
application key -->
<registryGetMatch>
  <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
  <name>Loc*</name>
  <variable>location</variable>
</registryGetMatch>

```

- **<registryFind>:** Retrieve the first registry hive and content matching a certain expression and store it as a list in an installer variable. If no match is found the variable will be created empty. This is an extension of the **<registryGetMatch>** and **<registryGetKey>** actions, and much more powerful. If the **<findAll>** tag is set to 1, it will return a space-separated list of all of the matches. The result of this action is intended to be interpreted using a **foreach** action:

```

<registryFind>
  <dataPattern>*Program Files*</dataPattern>
  <findAll>0</findAll>
  <keyPattern>*\${project.fullName}*</keyPattern>
  <namePattern>*</namePattern>
  <rootKey>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE</rootKey>
  <searchDepth>2</searchDepth>
  <variable>result</variable>
</registryFind>
<foreach>
  <variables>key name value</variables>
  <values>${result}</values>
  <actionList>
    <showInfo>
      <text>Key="${key} "
name="${name} "
value="${value}"</text>
    </showInfo>
  </actionList>
</foreach>

```

A much more complex application of the **<registryFind>** action is explained [here](#).

InstallBuilder also provides a **<registryTest>** rule:

```

<!-- Set update mode if we detect that a well-known
key exists -->
<setInstallerVariable>
  <name>project.installationType</name>
  <value>upgrade</value>
  <ruleList>
    <registryTest>
      <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}\</key>
      <logic>exists</logic>
    </registryTest>
  </ruleList>
</setInstallerVariable>

```



```

        <name>Location</name>
    </registryTest>
</ruleList>
</setInstallerVariable>

```

```

<!-- Throw an error if a required product is not installed -->
<initializationActionList>
    <throwError>
        <text>You need to install "Some Other Product" to install ${project.fullName}</text>
        <ruleList>
            <registryTest>
                <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Some Vendor\Some Other Product</key>
                <logic>exists</logic>
                <name></name>
            </registryTest>
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</initializationActionList>

```

It is even possible to check the type of key:

```

<throwError>
    <text>The registry key was corrupted. It exists but it is not a 'REG_EXPAND_SZ' name</ ←
        text>
    <ruleList>
        <registryTest>
            <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
            <logic>exists</logic>
            <name>myPath</name>
        </registryTest>
        <registryTest>
            <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\${project.vendor}\${project.fullName}</key>
            <logic>is_not_type</logic>
            <name>myPath</name>
            <type>REG_EXPAND_SZ</type>
        </registryTest>
    </ruleList>
</throwError>

```

---

### Keys representing a "path" in the registry must be separated by backslashes

When referring to a key of the registry you have to provide a "path" with all of the parent keys as you would do with a real directory. Although InstallBuilder accepts using forward slashes instead of backslashes in Windows paths, backslashes are mandatory when working with the registry.

An example of a correct reference to the key InstallBuilder:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\BitRock\InstallBuilder
```

But if you use:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\BitRock/InstallBuilder
```

What the installer is going to look for is a key named BitRock/InstallBuilder, which is a perfectly valid key name but not the one you expected.

---

## 26.1.2 Windows Registry in 64bit Systems

When accessing the registry, 32bit applications running on 64bit Windows are presented with a different view of some of the keys. This process allows the isolation of 32 and 64bit applications. If you take a look to how the registry looks in Windows 64bit with regedit you will see that some keys include a subkey named Wow6432Node. This key contains the registry keys corresponding to the 32bit view. For example, if a 32bit application tries to access HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Bit

---

Rock it will be transparently redirected to `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\BitRock`. This process is known as "registry redirection". The special key `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node` is not visible from the 32bit view, but although it is discouraged by Microsoft guidelines, in some Windows versions it can be accessed from the 64bit view.

As InstallBuilder generates 32bit applications, it will by default follow the same registry redirection when using any of its registry actions. This may be convenient if you are bundling a 32bit application or if you are trying to read keys written by other 32bit applications but there are scenarios in which it is desirable to access the 64bit view of the registry (for example if you are bundling a 64bit application).

For these scenarios, InstallBuilder includes two ways of configuring which view of the registry should be used:

- **Project-level configuration:** The easiest way to make your application access the 64bit view of the registry by default is by using the project property `<windows64bitMode>`. As explained in the next section, this setting enables much more than just making the 64bit view of the registry visible. Although the registry redirection is just enabled in 64bit OS, this setting can be just always enabled, as it will be ignored in 32bit Windows. This way there is no need to maintain two different projects for the 32 and 64bit versions of your installer or to configure this setting at build-time. This setting is applied at the very beginning of the installation process so it cannot be configured at runtime, it must be set at build-time or hardcoded in the XML project.

```
<project>
...
<!-- This will be ignored in 32bit
systems without consequences -->
<windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
...
</project>
```

---

#### Is safe to always enable `<windows64bitMode>`

Even if you are building a 32bit installer, you can keep `<windows64bitMode>` enabled in you project. On 32bit systems it will just be ignored.

---

- **Per-action configuration:** All of the registry actions explained in the previous section accept an extra tag, `<wowMode>`, which allows configuring the registry view that will be accessed. Its default value is `none`, which allows the action use the default view. Setting `none` when using `<windows64bitMode>` will make the actions use the 64bit view on Windows x64. The tag also accepts `64` (which selects the 64bit view) and `32` as values (selecting the 32bit view) as values. The same way the `<windows64bitMode>` tag is ignored in 32bit systems, setting `64` will also be ignored on them.

The `<wowMode>` tag takes precedence over the `<windows64bitMode>` so it is easy to configure the installer to use the 64bit view by default and just use the 32bit view when needed.

The example below tries to get the installed version of Microsoft SQL Server in the system, checking in both registry views if the platform is 64bit:

```
<initializationActionList>
  <registryGet>
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\MSSQLServer\MSSQLServer\CurrentVersion</ ←
      key>
    <name>CurrentVersion</name>
    <variable>currentVersion</variable>
  </registryGet>
  <!-- The 64bit version takes precedence so we check it in second place -->
  <registryGet>
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\MSSQLServer\MSSQLServer\CurrentVersion</ ←
      key>
    <name>CurrentVersion</name>
    <variable>currentVersion</variable>
```

---

```

        <wowMode>64</wowMode>
    </ruleList>
    <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
</ruleList>
</registryGet>
</initializationActionList>

```

Or, if you are using `<windows64bitMode>`, force checking in the 32bit version:

```

<project>
...
<windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
...
<initializationActionList>
    <registryGet>
        <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Microsoft SQL Server\Microsoft SQL Server\CurrentVersion</key>
        <name>CurrentVersion</name>
        <variable>currentVersion</variable>
    </registryGet>
    <!-- If we are using <windows64bitMode> and we couldn't detect
    a 64bit version , check the 32bit key -->
    <registryGet>
        <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Microsoft SQL Server\Microsoft SQL Server\CurrentVersion</key>
        <name>CurrentVersion</name>
        <variable>currentVersion</variable>
        <wowMode>32</wowMode>
        <ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
            <isTrue value="{project.windows64bitMode}"/>
            <compareText text="{currentVersion}" logic="equals" value=""/>
        </ruleList>
    </registryGet>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

In some versions of Windows, a 32bit key on Windows x64 can be accessed in two ways:

- Using the `<wowMode>32</wowMode>` setting (selecting the 32bit view):

```

<project>
...
<windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
...
<initializationActionList>
    <registryGet>
        <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\BitRock\BitRock InstallBuilder Enterprise</key>
        <name>Version</name>
        <variable>ibVersion</variable>
        <wowMode>32</wowMode>
        <ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
        </ruleList>
    </registryGet>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>

```

- Accessing the redirected key in the 64bit registry:

```
<project>
...
<windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
...
<initializationActionList>
  <!-- This should be avoided -->
  <registryGet>
    <key>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\BitRock\BitRock InstallBuilder ↔
      Enterprise</key>
    <name>Version</name>
    <variable>ibVersion</variable>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
    </ruleList>
  </registryGet>
</initializationActionList>
...
</project>
```

The latter way of accessing the 32bit key is discouraged by Microsoft guidelines and does not work in some Windows versions. The reason is that Wow6432Node is a special key and is not intended to be accessed directly.

---

#### Never access 32bit keys using the 64bit registry view through the Wow6432Node key

Microsoft guidelines discourage accessing key under Wow6432Node directly from the 64bit view of the registry. It is known to fail in some Windows versions. The correct way of accessing a 32bit key from the 64bit view (enabled using <windows64bitMode>) is setting wowMode="32".

---

### 26.1.3 InstallBuilder built-in registry keys

By default, all InstallBuilder-generated installers write some values in the registry. These values can be organized in two keys:

**Software Key** InstallBuilder writes some basic information about the installed version of the product under the key:

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\\${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix}

Where \${project.windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix} resolves to the value of <windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix> (\${project.vendor}\\${product\_fullname} by default).

The values written are:

- Version: Configured through the <version> project property.
- Location: The installation directory (\${installdir}).
- Language: The installation language (\${installation\_language\_code}).

To prevent this key from being created you just have to set <windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix> to empty.

Another case in which the key won't be created is when <installationType> is set to normal and <createUninstaller> is set to 0. This will also result in no uninstaller being created.

If <installationType> is set to upgrade, the installer will automatically update the Language and Version values if they exist (written in a previous installation being upgraded), regardless of the value of <windowsSoftwareRegistryPrefix> or <createUninstaller>. In addition, when working in upgrade mode, if the Language value exists, its value will be used as the default installation language.

---

---

**How to prevent the creation of the Software keys**

To prevent the installer from writing the values under the HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE key, just set the <windows SoftwareRegistryPrefix> to empty.

---

**Add/Remove Program Menu Key** The information stored in this key is used to populate the Add/Remove Program Menu. The information is organized in a set of values under the key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Uninstall\${project}. ←  
windowsARRegistryPrefix}
```

Where `${project.windowsARRegistryPrefix}` resolves to the value of <windowsARRegistryPrefix> (`${project.fullName} ${project.version}` by default). The values written by InstallBuilder are:

- **DisplayName:** Configured through the <productDisplayName> project property.
- **DisplayVersion:** Configured through the <version> project property.
- **Publisher:** Configured through the <vendor> project property.
- **DisplayIcon:** Configured through the <productDisplayIcon> project property.
- **UrlInfoAbout:** Configured through the <productUrlInfoAbout> project property.
- **Comments:** Configured through the <productComments> project property.
- **Contact:** Configured through the <productContact> project property.
- **HelpLink:** Configured through the <productUrlHelpLink> project property.
- **UninstallString:** Contains the path to the uninstaller.
- **InstallLocation:** The installation directory (`${installdir}`)
- **NoModify:** If set to 1, disables the Modify button in the ARP Menu.
- **NoRepair:** If set to 1, disables the Repair button in the ARP Menu.
- **EstimatedSize:** The size of the installed application. This value is calculated at runtime based on the installed files.
- **InstallDate:** The installation date.

This key is also just created when <installationType> is set to normal and <createUninstaller> is set to 1.

If <installationType> is set to upgrade, the installer will update the DisplayVersion and DisplayName values if they exist (written in a previous installation being upgraded).

Setting <installationType> to normal and <createUninstaller> to 0 will avoid creating or updating any key.

These keys are automatically deleted when uninstalling the product so you don't have to add any additional logic to the uninstaller for that.

## 26.2 Windows 64bit

InstallBuilder allows you to build installers that are 32bit applications, but can be used to properly deploy applications and drivers to 64bit operating systems.

Although 32bit installers are fully compatible with 64bit systems, they are treated differently than native 64bit applications. They most important differences are:

---

- When accessing the registry, they are automatically redirected to keys in the 32bit view of the registry. This can be configured using the `<wowMode>` tag in the registry actions or through the `<windows64bitMode>` project property. The registry redirection process is explained in detail in the Windows 64bit registry section.
- When executing Windows commands (such as `cmd.exe`) the filesystem redirection provides a 32bit binary version of them. Specifically the below directories are redirected (`%windir%` usually resolves to `c:\Windows`):

- Access to `%windir%\System32` is redirected to `%windir%\SysWOW64`
- Access to `%windir%\lastgood\system32` is redirected to `%windir%\lastgood\SysWOW64`
- Access to `%windir%\regedit.exe` is redirected to `%windir%\SysWOW64\regedit.exe`.

With some exceptions, which are not redirected:

- `%windir%\system32\catroot`
- `%windir%\system32\catroot2`
- `%windir%\system32\drivers\etc`
- `%windir%\system32\logfiles`
- `%windir%\system32\spool`

This can be solved by manually disabling the redirection using the `<wow64FsRedirection>` action. This action can be used at any point during the installation and allows disabling and enabling the filesystem redirection. For example, you could use it to disable the redirection, copy a binary to `%windir%\system32` and enable it again:

```
<project>
...
<postInstallationActionList>
  <wow64FsRedirection>
    <action>disable</action>
  </wow64FsRedirection>
  <copyFile>
    <origin>${installdir}/myApp.exe</origin>
    <!-- ${windows_folder_system} is a
    Built-in variable resolved to %windir% -->
    <destination>${windows_folder_system}</destination>
  </copyFile>
  <wow64FsRedirection>
    <action>enable</action>
  </wow64FsRedirection>
</postInstallationActionList>
...
</project>
```

Using `<windows64bitMode>` will also disable the filesystem redirection on 64bit Windows.

- The environment variables presented to the 32bit application are modified. These modifications affect, for example, to the default installation directory, which is configured to be under `C:\Program Files (x86)` instead of `C:\Program Files`. The only way to safely reverse this is to use `<windows64bitMode>`.

If you are installing a 32bit application, Microsoft guidelines recommend that you respect the above behavior, as it is used to provide the 32bit application with the appropriate environment. However, if the application bundled is a native 64bit binary, the best way of properly configuring the installer is by enabling the `<windows64bitMode>` project property. As explained in the Windows 64bit registry section, the setting is ignored in 32bit systems so it can be safely enabled in a project shared by 32 and 64bit applications.

**Enable <windows64bitMode> when packing native 64bit applications for Windows**

The <windows64bitMode> project property makes an installer behave as a 64bit application by modifying its access to the environment:

- Disables the filesystem redirection
- Disables the registry redirection
- Gives access to the 64bit environment variables

In addition, it can always be enabled as it will be ignored on 32bit Windows (or non-Windows systems such as Linux and OS X).

**26.2.1 Creating specific Windows 64bit installers**

Although InstallBuilder does not support a windows-x64 platform, if you want to distribute both 32 and 64bit versions of your installer, the project can still be configured for this purpose. The example below explains how to construct an XML project that will allow building a 32 or 64bit Windows installer on demand. It also includes some validations at runtime to prevent the user from trying to install the wrong binary on each platform.

The first step is to include your files with some "should pack rules" attached. You can find a detailed explanation of the process in the "Custom Build Targets" section:

```
<project>
  <shortName>myProject</shortName>
  <version>1.4</version>
  ...
  <windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
  ...
  <parameterList>
    ...
    <stringParameter name="windowsArchitecture" value="x86" ask="0"/>
    ...
  </parameterList>
  <componentList>
    <component>
      <name>windowsx86</name>
      ...
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <name>windowsx86</name>
          <destination>${installdir}</destination>
          <distributionFileList>
            <distributionDirectory>
              <origin>path/to/32bit/windows-app</origin>
            </distributionDirectory>
          </distributionFileList>
        </folder>
      </folderList>
      ...
      <shouldPackRuleList>
        <compareText text="${windowsArchitecture}" logic="equals" value="x86"/>
      </shouldPackRuleList>
    </component>
    <component>
      <name>windowsx64</name>
      ...
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <name>windowsx64</name>
```

```

        <destination>${installdir}</destination>
        <distributionFileList>
            <distributionDirectory>
                <origin>path/to/64bit/windows-app</origin>
            </distributionDirectory>
        </distributionFileList>
    </folder>
</folderList>
...
<shouldPackRuleList>
    <compareText text="${windowsArchitecture}" logic="equals" value="x64"/>
</shouldPackRuleList>
</component>
</componentList>
</project>

```

Please note that the above also enables the `<windows64bitMode>` to make your installer behave as a native 64bit application on Windows x64.

At this point, you can select whether to build a 32 or a 64bit application by passing the appropriate value when using the command line:

```
$> builder build project.xml --setvars windowsArchitecture=x64
```

The next step is to include the validation. You can include it in the components so the code will only be executed when the platform in which the installer is running does not match its bundled files:

```

<project>
    <shortName>myProject</shortName>
    <version>1.4</version>
    ...
    <windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
    ...
    <parameterList>
        ...
        <stringParameter name="windowsArchitecture" value="x86" ask="0"/>
        ...
    </parameterList>
    <componentList>
        <component>
            <name>windowsx86</name>
            ...
            <initializationActionList>
                <throwError>
                    <text>You are trying to install a 32bit application in a
64bit system. Please download the correct binary from our website</text>
                    <ruleList>
                        <platformTest type="windows-x64"/>
                    </ruleList>
                </throwError>
            </initializationActionList>
            <shouldPackRuleList>
                <compareText text="${windowsArchitecture}" logic="equals" value="x86"/>
            </shouldPackRuleList>
        </component>
        <component>
            <name>windowsx64</name>
            ...
            <initializationActionList>
                <throwError>
                    <text>You are trying to install a 64bit application in a
32bit system. Please download the correct binary from our website</text>

```



```

        <ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows-x86"/>
        </ruleList>
    </throwError>
</initializationActionList>
...
<shouldPackRuleList>
    <compareText text="{windowsArchitecture}" logic="equals" value="x64"/>
</shouldPackRuleList>
</component>
</componentList>
</project>

```

This code will prevent the wrong binary from being installed even if the platform supports running the installer.

If you want to relax the validation in the 32bit component running on Windows 64bits because the OS will accept it and just give the the end user the opportunity to continue or abort, you could use the below code instead:

```

<project>
    <version>1.4</version>
    ...
    <windows64bitMode>1</windows64bitMode>
    ...
    <componentList>
        <component>
            <name>windowsx86</name>
            ...
            <initializationActionList>
                <actionGroup>
                    <actionList>
                        <showQuestion>
                            <default>yes</default>
                            <text>You are trying to install a 32bit application in a
64bit system. A 64bit installer can be downloaded from our website. Do you
want to continue anyway?</text>
                            <variable>shouldinstall</variable>
                        </showQuestion>
                        <exit>
                            <exitCode>1</exitCode>
                            <ruleList>
                                <isFalse>
                                    <value>${shouldinstall}</value>
                                </isFalse>
                            </ruleList>
                        </exit>
                    </actionList>
                </actionGroup>
            </initializationActionList>
            ...
            <shouldPackRuleList>
                <compareText text="{windowsArchitecture}" logic="equals" value="x64"/>
            </shouldPackRuleList>
        </component>
    </componentList>
    ...
</project>

```

## 26.2.2 Installing applications in 32bit and 64bit folders

It is also possible to install 32bit and 64bit components into different directories. This example sets up a 32bit application installer that will install additional components - such as 64bit libraries - when executed on Windows 64bit.

To do so, you could create a `<parameterGroup>` with two instances of `<directoryParameter>` - one for 32bit parts and one for 64bit parts. Next, initialize a default value for them in `<initializationActionList>` and pass this value to `<default>` tag.

```
<project>
  <windows64bitMode>0</windows64bitMode>
  ...
  <initializationActionList>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>installationroot32</name>
      <value>${platform_install_prefix}</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>installationroot64</name>
      <value>${platform_install_prefix}</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>installationroot64</name>
      <value>${env (ProgramW6432) }</value>
    <ruleList>
      <platformTest>
        <type>windows-x64</type>
      </platformTest>
    </ruleList>
    </setInstallerVariable>
  </initializationActionList>
  ...
  <componentList>
    <component>
      ...
      <folderList>
        <folder>
          <description>Program Files (32bit)</description>
          <destination>${installdir}</destination>
          <name>programfileswindows</name>
          <platforms>windows</platforms>
          <ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows" />
          </ruleList>
          (...)
        </folder>
        ...
        <folder>
          <description>Program Files (64bit)</description>
          <destination>${installdirx64}</destination>
          <name>programfileswindowsx64</name>
          <platforms>windows</platforms>
          <ruleList>
            <platformTest type="windows-x64" />
          </ruleList>
          ...
        </folder>
      </folderList>
    </component>
  </componentList>
  ...
</parameterList>
```

```

<parameterGroup>
  <name>installdirs</name>
  <explanation></explanation>
  <value></value>
  <default></default>
  <parameterList>
    <directoryParameter>
      <name>installdir</name>
      <description>Installer.Parameter.installdir.description</description>
      <explanation>Installer.Parameter.installdir.explanation</explanation>
      <value></value>
      <default>${installationroot32}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
      <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
      <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
      <mustBeWritable>1</mustBeWritable>
      <mustExist>0</mustExist>
      <width>40</width>
    </directoryParameter>

    <!-- folder for 64-bit specific files -->
    <directoryParameter>
      <name>installdirx64</name>
      <description>Installer.Parameter.installdirx64.description</description>
      <explanation>Installer.Parameter.installdirx64.explanation</explanation>
      <value></value>
      <default>${installationroot64}/${project.shortName}-${project.version}</default>
      <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
      <cliOptionName>prefix</cliOptionName>
      <mustBeWritable>1</mustBeWritable>
      <mustExist>0</mustExist>
      <width>40</width>
      <ruleList>
        <platformTest>
          <type>windows-x64</type>
        </platformTest>
      </ruleList>
    </directoryParameter>
  </parameterList>
</parameterGroup>
</parameterList>
</project>

```

On 32bit Microsoft Windows operating systems, the user will only be asked about one installation directory. The installer will deploy the 32bit files to that directory while 64bit files will be skipped.

On 64bit systems, the user will have the option of choosing directories for both 32bit and 64bit files. The installer will deploy the 32bit and 64bit files to the appropriate directories. As the installer is running as a 32bit application, certain target directories will point to their 32bit counterparts - such as the `system` directory for installing drivers. You must use `<wow64FsRedirection>` action to enable/disable this redirection when deploying drivers and/or other files to the `WINDOWS` directory.

---

#### The installer must be running in 32bit mode

The `<windows64bitMode>` project setting must be set to 0 (the default value) to make the installer run in 32bit mode. If installer were running in 64bit mode, the default `installdir` would be `C:\Program Files`, not `C:\Program Files (x86)`.

---

## 26.3 Managing Access Control Lists

Access Control Lists (ACLs) allow defining which users or groups can perform certain operations on one or more files. This allows preventing or granting access to reading or writing to files to certain users.

The `<setWindowsACL>` action allows configuring the ACLs of the desired files for the specified set of users. For example, to grant all permissions to all users you could use the following code:

```
<setWindowsACL>
  <action>allow</action>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
  <permissions>generic_all</permissions>
  <users>S-1-1-0</users>
</setWindowsACL>
```

The `<setWindowsACL>` action supports the following tags:

- `<users>`: Comma separated list of users to set permissions for.
- `<action>`: Whether to allow (allow action) or deny (deny action).
- `<permissions>`: Space-separated list of permissions to set
- `<files>`: List of files or file patterns to match; separated by semi-colon or newlines.
- `<excludeFiles>`: List of files or file patterns to exclude from the defined `<files>`.
- `<self>`: Determines if the objects specified in the `<files>` tag will be modified or just their children, if the recursion tags are enabled.
- `<recurseOneLevelOnly>`: If enabled, the action will only affect the first level of hierarchy if one of the below is enabled.
- `<recurseObjects>`: The action will affect to child objects (files)
- `<recurseContainers>`: The action will affect to child to containers (folders)

The `<clearWindowsACL>` action allows removing all of the ACLs for the specified files or directories.

For example, in order to make sure just the Administrators group can access some files, you should first remove all of the current ACLs (that may be inherited from a parent directory) and then the permissions appropriately:

```
<clearWindowsACL>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
</clearWindowsACL>
<setWindowsACL>
  <action>allow</action>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
  <permissions>file_all_access</permissions>
  <users>S-1-5-32-544</users>
</setWindowsACL>
```

The `<clearWindowsACL>` action supports the following tags:

- `<files>`: List of files or file patterns to match; separated by semi-colon or newlines
- `<excludeFiles>`: List of files or file patterns to exclude from the defined `<files>`.

It is also possible to retrieve the ACL for a given user over a certain file using the `<getWindowsACL>` action. For example, the following will set `granted` and `denied` variables to the space-separated list of permissions for specified user:

```
<getWindowsACL>
  <deniedPermissions>denied</deniedPermissions>
  <file>${installdir}/admin</file>
  <grantedPermissions>granted</grantedPermissions>
  <username>S-1-1-0</username>
</getWindowsACL>
```

The `<getWindowsACL>` action supports the below tags:

- `<file>`: File to retrieve the list of permissions for.
- `<username>`: User or group to retrieve the list of permissions for.
- `<grantedPermissions>`: Variable used to store the list of granted permissions.
- `<deniedPermissions>`: Variable used to store the list of denied permissions.

When specifying a user for ACL actions, it can either be a user name, group name or a Security Identifier (SID). User names and group names are names of local or domain users and groups. SIDs are internal identifiers that specify unique user identification as well as several global values that are the same for all Windows based computers - such as `Everyone`, which maps to `S-1-1-0` and `Administrators` which maps to `S-1-5-32-544`. Using SIDs is the recommended approach when referring to well known groups as the name of the groups is localized depending on the OS language.

More details on universal well-known SID values can be found on MSDN:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa379649.aspx>

The `<permissions>` tag can include any number of permissions, separated by space. The following permissions are allowed in the ACL related actions:

Table 26.1: ACL permissions

ACL permissions		
permission	file permission	directory permission
file_read_data	allow reading from file	allow listing contents of directory
file_write_data	allow writing to file	allow creating files
file_append_data	allow appending data to file	allow creating subdirectory
file_read_ea	allow reading extended attributes	allow reading extended attributes
file_write_ea	allow writing extended attributes	allow writing extended attributes
file_execute	allow running a binary	allow traversing directory
file_delete_child	N/A	allow deleting directory and its children, even if files are read-only
file_read_attributes	allow reading attributes	allow reading attributes
file_write_attributes	allow writing attributes	allow writing attributes

For setting access, the following generic permissions can also be used:

Table 26.2: Generic ACL permissions

Generic ACL permissions	
permission	description
file_all_access	allow all available permissions
file_generic_read	allow common read permissions for file, directory and its attributes

Table 26.2: (continued)

Generic ACL permissions	
file_generic_write	allow common write permissions for file, directory and its attributes
file_generic_execute	allow common execution permissions for file, directory and its attributes

More details on permissions related to files can be found on MSDN:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa394063.aspx#properties>

---

**ACLs are only supported on NTFS file systems.**

If the action is used in a non-supported file system, it will silently fail.

---

## 26.4 Changing file attributes

File and folder attributes are set using the `<changeWindowsAttributes>` action.

For example, the following action can be used to set read-only and system attributes for admin subdirectory and all its child files:

```
<changeWindowsAttributes>
  <files>${installdir}/admin;${installdir}/admin/*</files>
  <readOnly>1</readOnly>
  <system>1</system>
</changeWindowsAttributes>
```

It accepts the following tags:

- `<files>`: List of files or file patterns to match; separated by semi-colon or newlines
- `<excludeFiles>`: List of files or file patterns to exclude from the defined `<files>`.
- `<hidden>`: Whether or not the specified files should not be visible in applications such as Windows Explorer.
- `<readOnly>`: Whether or not the specified files should allow write access.
- `<system>`: Whether or not the specified files must be marked as system files.
- `<archive>`: Whether or not the specified files must be marked to be archived. Some applications use this attribute to know which files should be backed up.

Please note that only setting these attributes does not prevent users from modifying the files, as the user can still unset each of these attributes manually. In order to prevent users (such as non-administrators) from modifying or accessing certain files, Access Control Lists should be used instead.

Read-only and system attributes can only be set for files. They are ignored by the operating system if applied to a folder. It is documented in more detail by Microsoft:

<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/326549>

---

## Chapter 27

# OS X

### 27.1 Packaging installers as ZIP files

OS X application bundles are merely directories with some metadata specified through the Info.plist file. Because of that, to deliver your application you must pack it somehow. InstallBuilder enables packaging the Mac OS X installer as a zip archive.

In order to use this functionality, simply enable the `<createOsxBundleZip>` setting in your project - such as:

```
<project>
...
  <createOsxBundleZip>1</createOsxBundleZip>
...
</project>
```

This will cause the installer to build the output app bundle, followed by packaging the app bundle in a zip file, which is stored in the same location and with the `.zip` prefix.

For example if your application is created as `~/Documents/InstallBuilder/output/sample-1.0-osx-installer.app`, the archive will be created as `~/Documents/InstallBuilder/output/sample-1.0-osx-installer.app.zip`.

The output ZIP archive will also have proper permissions set for all of the files inside the archive, so it is possible to create Mac OS X installers from any platform - including Windows.

### 27.2 Using DMGs to bundle your installers

The most common way used to deliver applications on OS X is using DMG files. A DMG is simply a disk image, which is mounted as separate volumen when opened.

InstallBuilder allows automatically bundling your installer on Windows, OS X and Linux. However, it currently only allows basic customizations (setting the background image). If you need to further customize the DMGs and are building on OS X, you could follow the manual DMG creation section instead.

To enable this functionality, you just need to enable the `<createOsxBundleDmg>` setting:

```
<project>
...
  <createOsxBundleDmg>1</createOsxBundleDmg>
...
</project>
```

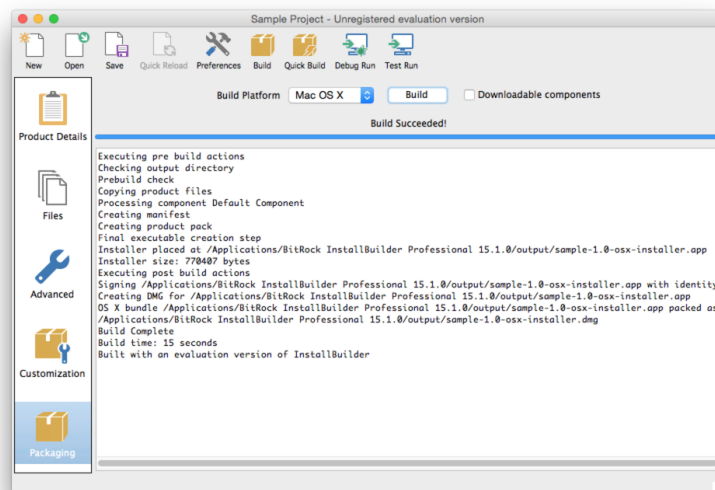


Figure 27.1: Builder Creating a DMG

You can see the result in Figure 27.1

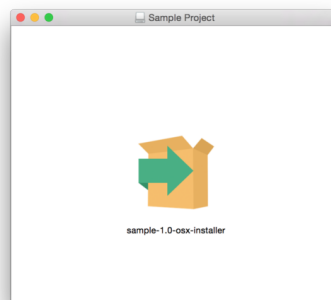


Figure 27.2: Simple DMG

As previously mentioned, it is also possible to provide a background image using the `<osxDmgBackgroundImage>` tag. The OS X bundle will be centered based on the image dimensions:

```
<project>
...
<createOsxBundleDmg>1</createOsxBundleDmg>
<osxDmgBackgroundImage>${build_project_directory}/images/bitnami-clouds.png</ ←
  osxDmgBackgroundImage>
...
</project>
```



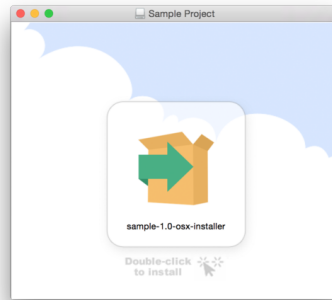


Figure 27.3: DMG with Custom Background

### 27.2.1 Manual DMG creation

Although InstallBuilder built-in DMG creation is really easy to use, sometimes you will require to further customize the generated DMGs. In those case, if you are creating your installers on OS X, you could use the below code to automatically create your DMG file in the `<postBuildActionList>`:

```
<project>
...
<postBuildActionList>
  <createTimeStamp>
    <format>%Y%m%d%H%M%S</format>
    <variable>timestamp</variable>
  </createTimeStamp>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>tempDir</name>
    <value>/tmp/.tmpDir${timestamp}</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>dmgName</name>
    <value>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
      value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>tempDmgFile</name>
    <value>${tempDir}/tmp.dmg</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <deleteFile>
    <path>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
      path>
  </deleteFile>
  <deleteFile>
    <path>${tempDir}</path>
  </deleteFile>
  <createDirectory>
    <path>${tempDir}/output</path>
  </createDirectory>
  <copyFile>
    <destination>${tempDir}/output</destination>
    <origin>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}</ ←
      origin>
  </copyFile>
  <runProgram>
    <program>hdiutil</program>
```

```
<programArguments>create -srcfolder "${tempDir}/output" -volname "${project. ↵
    fullName}" -fs HFS+ -fsargs "-c c=64,a=16,e=16" -format UDRW "${tempDmgFile ↵
    }"</programArguments>
</runProgram>
<runProgram>
    <program>hdiutil</program>
    <programArguments>convert "${tempDmgFile}" -format UDZO -imagekey zlib-level=9 ↵
        -o "${dmgName}"</programArguments>
</runProgram>
<deleteFile>
    <path>${tempDir}</path>
</deleteFile>
</postBuildActionList>
...
</project>
```

Now you can test the generated DMG file by doubleclicking on it under the output directory:

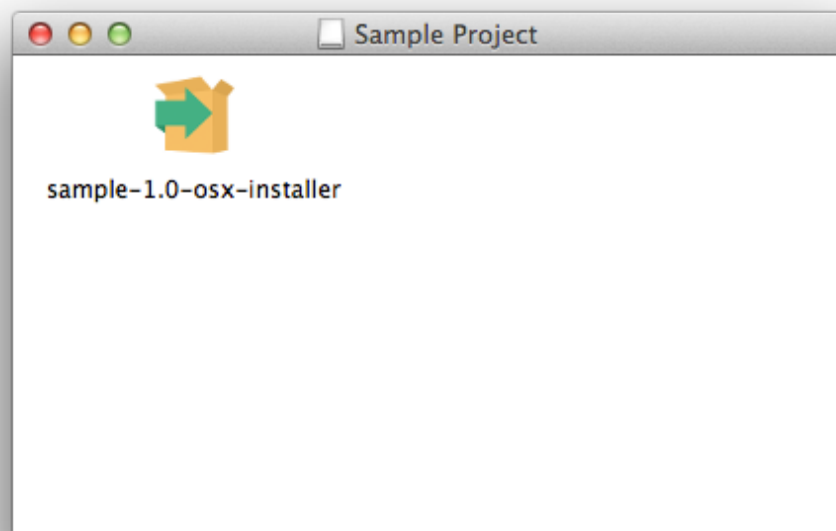


Figure 27.4: Installer bundled in a DMG

A new volume will appear in your desktop:

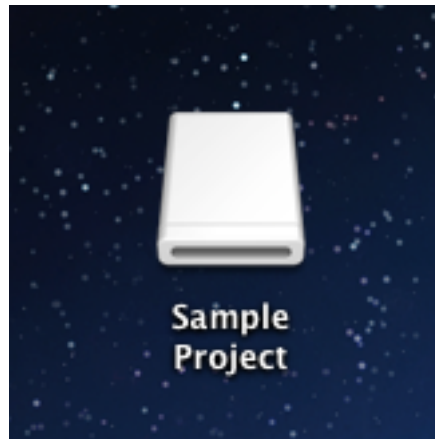


Figure 27.5: DMG Volume

The new volume uses the default icon. If you have seen other commercial software DMGs, they usually display a customized volume icon, that is also possible with InstallBuilder. You will just need to create the appropriate `icns` file (`dmg-icon.png` in our example, placed in the folder `images` in ur project directory) and use the updated version of the code:

```
<project>
...
<postBuildActionList>
  <createTimeStamp>
    <format>%Y%m%d%H%M%S</format>
    <variable>timestamp</variable>
  </createTimeStamp>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>tempDir</name>
    <value>/tmp/.tmpDir${timestamp}</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>dmgName</name>
    <value>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
      value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <setInstallerVariable>
    <name>tempDmgFile</name>
    <value>${tempDir}/tmp.dmg</value>
  </setInstallerVariable>
  <deleteFile>
    <path>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
      path>
  </deleteFile>
  <deleteFile>
    <path>${tempDir}</path>
  </deleteFile>
  <createDirectory>
    <path>${tempDir}/output</path>
  </createDirectory>
  <createDirectory>
    <path>${tempDir}/mnt</path>
  </createDirectory>
  <copyFile>
    <destination>${tempDir}/output</destination>
    <origin>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}</ ←
      origin>
  </copyFile>
</actionGroup>
```

```

        <actionList>
            <copyFile>
                <destination>${tempDir}/output/.VolumeIcon.icns</destination>
                <origin>${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.png</origin>
            </copyFile>
            <runProgram>
                <program>SetFile</program>
                <programArguments>-c icnC "${tempDir}/output/.VolumeIcon.icns"</ ←
                    programArguments>
            </runProgram>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.png"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <runProgram>
        <program>hdiutil</program>
        <programArguments>create -srcfolder "${tempDir}/output" -volname "${project. ←
            fullName}" -fs HFS+ -fsargs "-c c=64,a=16,e=16" -format UDRW "${tempDmgFile ←
            }"</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>attach "${tempDmgFile}" -mountpoint "${tempDir}/mnt"</ ←
                    programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>SetFile</program>
                <programArguments>-a C "${tempDir}/mnt"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>detach "${tempDir}/mnt"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.png"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <runProgram>
        <program>hdiutil</program>
        <programArguments>convert "${tempDmgFile}" -format UDZO -imagekey zlib-level=9 ←
            -o "${dmgName}"</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <deleteFile>
        <path>${tempDir}</path>
    </deleteFile>
</postBuildActionList>
...
</project>

```

The new volume should now display your custom icon:

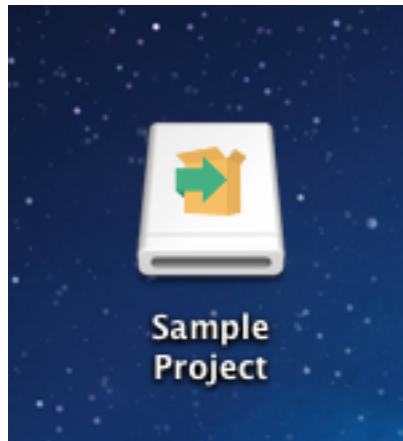


Figure 27.6: DMG Volume With Custom Icon

### 27.2.2 Creating fancy DMG

The DMG created in the previous section just included a custom volumen icon but it can be customized much further, like changing the background, the position of the icons and the size of the window. To do that, you must use AppleScript so you must have enabled the "Enable access for assistive devices" setting. You must also have access to the window server (command line builds using non-logged in users will fail). The below code uses some command-line configurable settings to create a customized DMG with a custom background (dmg-background.png in the images directory):

```
<project>
  <shortName>sample</shortName>
  <fullName>Sample Project</fullName>
  <version>1.0</version>
  ...
  <postBuildActionList>
    <createTimeStamp>
      <format>%Y%m%d%H%M%S</format>
      <variable>timestamp</variable>
    </createTimeStamp>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>tempDir</name>
      <value>/tmp/.tmpDir${timestamp}</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>dmgName</name>
      <value>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
        value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <setInstallerVariable>
      <name>tempDmgFile</name>
      <value>${tempDir}/tmp.dmg</value>
    </setInstallerVariable>
    <deleteFile>
      <path>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}.dmg</ ←
        path>
    </deleteFile>
    <deleteFile>
      <path>${tempDir}</path>
    </deleteFile>
    <createDirectory>
      <path>${tempDir}/output</path>
    </createDirectory>
    <createDirectory>
```

```

        <path>${tempDir}/mnt</path>
    </createDirectory>
    <copyFile>
        <destination>${tempDir}/output</destination>
        <origin>${installbuilder_install_root}/output/${project.installerFilename}</ ←
        origin>
    </copyFile>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <copyFile>
                <destination>${tempDir}/output/.VolumeIcon.icns</destination>
                <origin>${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.icns</origin>
            </copyFile>
            <runProgram>
                <program>SetFile</program>
                <programArguments>-c icnC "${tempDir}/output/.VolumeIcon.icns"</ ←
                programArguments>
            </runProgram>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.icns"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <createDirectory>
                <path>${tempDir}/output/.background</path>
            </createDirectory>
            <copyFile>
                <destination>${tempDir}/output/.background/background.png</destination>
                <origin>${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-background.png</origin>
            </copyFile>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-background.png"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <runProgram>
        <program>hdiutil</program>
        <programArguments>create -srcfolder "${tempDir}/output" -volname "${project. ←
        fullName}" -fs HFS+ -fsargs "-c c=64,a=16,e=16" -format UDRW "${tempDmgFile ←
        }"</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>attach "${tempDmgFile}" -mountpoint "${tempDir}/mnt ←
                "</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>SetFile</program>
                <programArguments>-a C "${tempDir}/mnt"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>detach "${tempDir}/mnt"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-icon.icns"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>

```

```

    </actionGroup>
    <actionGroup>
        <actionList>
            <runProgram>
                <abortOnError>0</abortOnError>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>detach "/Volumes/${project.fullName}"</ ←
                    programArguments>
                <showMessageOnError>0</showMessageOnError>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>attach -readwrite -noverify -noautoopen "${ ←
                    tempDmgFile}"</programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>osascript</program>
                <programArguments>-e 'tell application "Finder"
tell disk "${project.fullName}"
open
set current view of container window to icon view
set toolbar visible of container window to false
set statusbar visible of container window to false
set the bounds of container window to ${dmg_window_bounds}
set theViewOptions to the icon view options of container window
set arrangement of theViewOptions to not arranged
set icon size of theViewOptions to ${dmg_icon_size}
set background picture of theViewOptions to file ".background:background.png"
delay 5
update without registering applications
set position of item "${project.installerFilename}" of container window to ${ ←
    dmg_icon_position}
update without registering applications
delay 5
end tell
end tell'
                </programArguments>
            </runProgram>
            <runProgram>
                <program>hdiutil</program>
                <programArguments>detach "/Volumes/${project.fullName}"</ ←
                    programArguments>
            </runProgram>
        </actionList>
        <ruleList>
            <fileExists path="${build_project_directory}/images/dmg-background.png"/>
        </ruleList>
    </actionGroup>
    <runProgram>
        <program>hdiutil</program>
        <programArguments>convert "${tempDmgFile}" -format UDZO -imagekey zlib-level=9 ←
            -o "${dmgName}"</programArguments>
    </runProgram>
    <deleteFile>
        <path>${tempDir}</path>
    </deleteFile>
</postBuildActionList>
...
<parameterList>
    <stringParameter name="dmg_icon_position" value="300, 100" ask="0"/>
    <stringParameter name="dmg_window_bounds" value="400, 100, 885, 430" ask="0"/>
    <stringParameter name="dmg_icon_size" value="72" ask="0"/>

```

```
</parameterList>
</project>
```

Figure 27.3 shows an example with a customized background, the application centered and an increased icon size

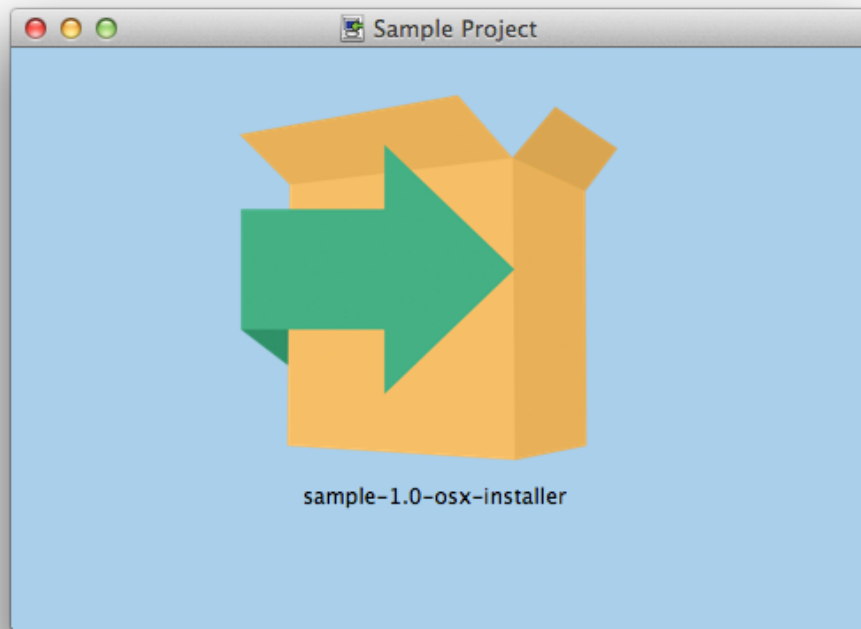


Figure 27.7: Custom DMG

## 27.3 Adding support for legacy OS X versions

Versions previous to InstallBuilder included by default support for PowerPC versions of Mac OS X.

For InstallBuilder versions 9 and later you need to explicitly enable support for those platforms by setting `<osxPlatforms>` to include the required platforms.

The value for the `<osxPlatforms>` tag should contain one or more of the following values:

- `osx-intel` — include support for Intel based processors
- `osx-ppc` — include support for PowerPC based processors
- `osx-10.2` — include support that supports Mac OS X 10.2 for PowerPC based processors

To revert to behavior in previous versions of InstallBuilder and include support for all of the platforms, the project should have the following setting:

```
<project>
  <osxPlatforms>osx-intel osx-ppc osx-10.2</osxPlatforms>
  ...
</project>
```



In order to provide Intel and PowerPC support, but without the Mac OS X 10.2 compatibility, the setting should include both `osx-intel` and `osx-ppc` - such as:

```
<project>
  <osxPlatforms>osx-intel osx-ppc</osxPlatforms>
  ...
</project>
```

## Chapter 28

# Encryption and password protection

This section specifies how InstallBuilder can be used to create an installer that requires specifying a valid password and its payload is encrypted.

### 28.1 Encrypting payload of the installer

InstallBuilder provides support for encrypting contents of the installer so that a valid password must be specified in order to be able to install or unpack files from the installer.

Enabling the encryption requires specifying `<enableEncryption>` and `<encryptionPassword>` in the project.

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
</project>
```

This will cause the installer to be encrypted. As password is only used at build time, it has to be specified at runtime by the user. InstallBuilder will require user to specify password before doing any operations. A dialog window will be shown requesting the user to specify a valid password.

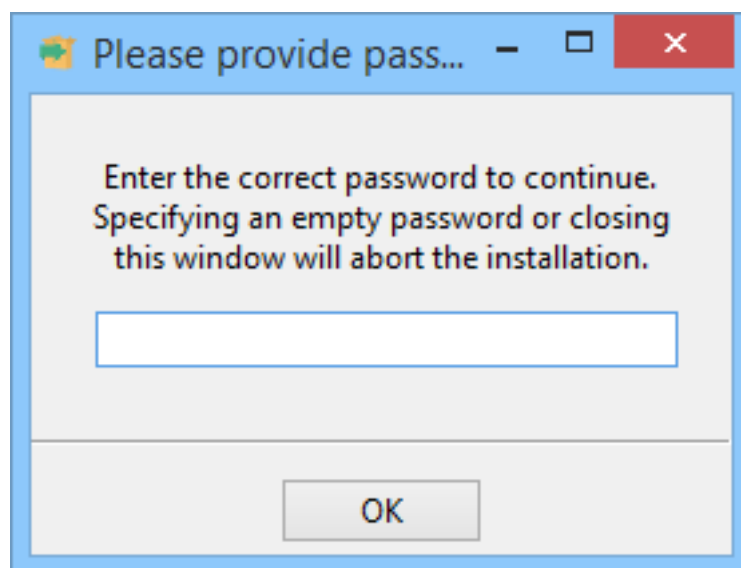


Figure 28.1: Prompt for providing password

The user cannot continue until a correct password is entered. Specifying an empty password or closing the window causes the installer to exit immediately.

## 28.2 Support for platforms and build types

### 28.2.1 Supported platforms

Encryption is supported on the following platforms:

- Linux x86 and x64
- Microsoft Windows
- Mac OS X

When building an installer for other platforms, encryption is not enabled and the `<setEncryptionPassword>` action must not be invoked.

---

#### Support for older operating systems

Encryption is not supported on Mac OS X 10.2 and Linux x86 when legacy mode is enabled. On those platforms, if encryption is enabled, InstallBuilder will not allow be able to decrypt its contents and `<setEncryptionPassword>` action will report appropriate error.

---

### 28.2.2 RPM and DEB packages

Encryption is not supported for creation of RPM and DEB packages creation. In those modes, files are copied and installed by native package system and not InstallBuilder.

Enabling encryption in these targets is ignored and built same as when encryption is disabled.

### 28.2.3 Downloadable components

When encryption is enabled, all downloadable components are also encrypted using the same key as files embedded in the installer.

An installer with downloadable components will work the same both when its contents is encrypted and when encryption is disabled.

### 28.2.4 Multiplatform CD-ROM mode

Creating a CD-ROM mode installer with encrypted contents requires enabling both `<enableEncryption>` and `<compressPackedFiles>`.

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
  <compressPackedFiles>1</compressPackedFiles>
  ...
</project>
```

When encryption is enabled and building CD-ROM installer, contents of all files is encrypted and installers only for supported platforms will be able to properly perform the installation. Installers for platforms without support for encryption will not be able to access the data due to it being encrypted.

Therefore it is recommended to specify platforms to build for CD-ROM mode using `<cdromPlatforms,project.cdromPlatforms>` tag.

---

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
  <compressPackedFiles>1</compressPackedFiles>
  <cdromPlatforms>osx windows linux linux-x64</cdromPlatforms>
  ...
</project>
```

This will not create installers for platforms that will be able to access encrypted files.

## 28.3 Manually specifying password

It is also possible to disable the default dialog that prompts the user for password and use `<setEncryptionPassword>` action to specify the password. This can be done by specifying 0 for `<requirePasswordOnStartup>`.

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
  <requirePasswordOnStartup>0</requirePasswordOnStartup>
</project>
```

With the password prompt disabled, the installer will show the frontend, however, any file operations will fail until `<setEncryptionPassword>` action is run with correct password. It can be put in a parameter's `<validationActionList>` to disallow continuing until a valid password is specified.

The following parameter will ask the user for payload password and run the `<setEncryptionPassword>` action to verify and set the password.

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
  ...
  <parameterList>
    ...
    <stringParameter>
      <name>password</name>
      ...
      <validationActionList>
        <setEncryptionPassword>
          <password>${password}</password>
        </setEncryptionPassword>
      </validationActionList>
    </stringParameter>
  </parameterList>
</project>
```

The action `<setEncryptionPassword>` throws an error whenever password is incorrect and user will not be able to proceed until a valid password is specified. The action may take up to 1 second as the number of computations to verify the password is very large.

After the action is run without errors, the installation may proceed.

---

### Accessing files and folders using actions

Since payload is encrypted, it is not possible to use actions such as `<unpackFile>` and `<unpackDirectory>` before user specifies the password and `<setEncryptionPassword>` action is run if `<requirePasswordOnStartup>` is set to 0. After the action is invoked, the actions to unpack contents of installer may be invoked freely and will work normally.

---

### 28.3.1 Retrieving password over the Internet

Often it is more feasible not to provide end users with password to extract the payload but to allow users to specify their individual key or login and password. This, combined with HTTPS protocol, can be used to request a password based on other information.

```
<project>
  <enableEncryption>1</enableEncryption>
  <encryptionPassword>RandomGeneratedPassword</encryptionPassword>
  <requirePasswordOnStartup>0</requirePasswordOnStartup>
  ...
  <parameterList>
    <parameterGroup>
      <name>retrievepassword</name>
      <title>Activate application</title>
      <explanation>Please specify example.com username and password</explanation>
      <parameterList>
        <stringParameter>
          <name>username</name>
          <description>Username</description>
          <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
        </stringParameter>
        <passwordParameter>
          <name>password</name>
          <description>Password</description>
          <allowEmptyValue>0</allowEmptyValue>
          <askForConfirmation>0</askForConfirmation>
        </passwordParameter>
      </parameterList>
    </parameterGroup>
  </parameterList>
  <validationActionList>
    <httpPost>
      <customErrorMessage>Unable to contact activation server</ ←
      customErrorMessage>
      <filename>${system_temp_directory}/encryptionpassword</filename>
      <url>https://example.com/api/installer/getpasswordkey</url>
      <queryParameterList>
        <queryParameter>
          <name>username</name>
          <value>${username}</value>
        </queryParameter>
        <queryParameter>
          <name>password</name>
          <value>${password}</value>
        </queryParameter>
      </queryParameterList>
    </httpPost>
    <readFile>
      <name>encryptionpassword</name>
      <path>${system_temp_directory}/encryptionpassword</path>
    </readFile>
    <deleteFile>
      <path>${system_temp_directory}/encryptionpassword</path>
    </deleteFile>
    <setEncryptionPassword>
      <customErrorMessage>Activation failed</customErrorMessage>
      <password>${encryptionpassword}</password>
    </setEncryptionPassword>
  </validationActionList>
</parameterGroup>
</parameterList>
</project>
```

Example above shows how to ask for username and password so that remote server will either accept and provide a password valid for this product version or reject the request and provide an empty result.